

Operator's Manual



Crane Serial Number

The crane serial number is on the Crane Rating Manual in the lower right interior of the operator's cab. The crane serial number should always be furnished when ordering parts for the crane, or when corresponding with the Link-Belt Distributor or factory regarding the crane. The serial number is the only method the Link-Belt Distributor or factory has of ensuring that the correct parts will be furnished.

In the event the serial number cannot be found on the Crane Rating Manual, a number is stamped on the top, right side of the carrier and on the right side of the upper frame just below the boom hoist cylinder mounting lug. This number can then be used to identify the crane.



WARNING: Breathing diesel engine exhaust exposes you to chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm.

- Always start and operate the engine in a well-ventilated area.
- If in an enclosed area, vent the exhaust to the outside.
- Do not modify or tamper with the exhaust system.
- Do not idle the engine except as necessary.

For more information go to www.P65warnings.ca.gov/diesel.



WARNING: Cancer and Reproductive Harm-
www.P65warnings.ca.gov/diesel.

Operator's Manual



WARNING

CONSTRUCTION EQUIPMENT CAN BE DANGEROUS IF IMPROPERLY OPERATED OR MAINTAINED. THIS CRANE SHOULD BE OPERATED AND MAINTAINED ONLY BY TRAINED AND EXPERIENCED PEOPLE WHO HAVE READ, UNDERSTOOD, AND COMPLY WITH THE OPERATOR'S & MAINTENANCE MANUAL.

The productive life of construction equipment depends largely on the care and consideration given to it. This especially holds true for hydraulic cranes. This Operator's & Maintenance Manual was compiled to explain the procedures and adjustments necessary for proper operation of this crane.

A study of this Operator's Manual will acquaint the operator and service personnel with the construction of this crane. It will enable them to identify and remedy most problems that may occur. Any questions pertaining to the care and upkeep of this crane which are not covered in this Operator's Manual should be directed to your Link-Belt Distributor.

The Operator's Manual is stored in the pocket on the rear of the operator's seat. The Operator's Manual should remain in the operator's cab and accessible at all times. **If the Operator's Manual becomes lost, damaged, or unreadable, it must be replaced before operating the crane.**

In addition to this Operator's & Maintenance Manual, a Parts Manual, Crane Rating Manual, and Safety Manual are supplied with the crane. Read and understand all safety guidelines before operating the crane. Additional copies of all manuals are available through your Link-Belt Distributor.

Operator's Manual

Throughout this Operator's Manual, reference is made to the left, right, front, and rear pertaining to direction and locations. These reference directions are relative to the operator, sitting in the operator's seat with the upper directly over the front of the carrier (single axle to the front), unless otherwise stated.

Danger, warning, and caution captions as well as special notes are used throughout this Operator's Manual and on the crane to emphasize important and critical instructions. Labels, plates, decals, etc. should be periodically inspected and cleaned as necessary to maintain good legibility for safe viewing. **If any instruction, caution, warning, or danger labels, decals, or plates become lost, damaged, or unreadable, they must be replaced.** Information contained on such labels, decals, and plates is important and failure to follow the information they contain could result in an accident. Replacement labels, decals, and plates can be ordered through your Link-Belt Distributor. For the purpose of this Operator's Manual, and the labels which are placed on the crane, danger, warning, and caution captions and notes are defined as follows:



DANGER

An operating procedure, practice, etc. which, if not correctly followed, will result in severe personal injury, dismemberment, or loss of life.



WARNING

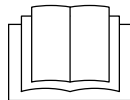
An operating procedure, practice, etc. which, if not correctly followed, may result in personal injury and may result in damage to or destruction of equipment or property.

CAUTION

An operating procedure, practice, etc. which, if not correctly followed, may result in damage to or destruction of equipment or property.

NOTE

Note: An operating procedure step, condition, etc. which is essential in order for the process to be completed properly.



This symbol may appear in this Operator's Manual and/or on a label on the crane to alert personnel that additional instructions are included in the crane Operator's Manual.

Operator's Manual

General Index

A detailed Table Of Contents for each Section of this Operator's Manual is included at the beginning of each Section. The following is a description of each Section:

Section 1 – Operating Instructions Pages 1–1 Thru 1–208

Section 1 includes the necessary information for safe, productive crane operation. It includes the nomenclature and operation of all control switches, levers, pedals, and instrumentation of the crane.

Section 2 – Lubrication And Preventive Maintenance Pages 2–1 Thru 2–34

Section 2 includes the necessary information for proper lubrication and preventive maintenance for daily operations. It includes the check/change intervals and procedures for maximizing the service life of the crane under normal working conditions. It also includes lubrication types and specifications approved for use in the crane.

Section 3 – Periodic Adjustments Pages 3–1 Thru 3–28

Section 3 includes the adjustments which must be made periodically to keep the crane in proper, safe working order. It includes the procedures and necessary information for adjusting the brakes, mechanical linkages, and hydraulic pressures on the crane.

Section 4 – Attachments Pages 4–1 Thru 4–54

Section 4 includes the use and operation of the crane attachments. It includes the necessary information for installation, erection, storage, and removal of the auxiliary lifting sheave and lattice fly section.

Section 5 – General Information Pages 5–1 Thru 5–30

Section 5 includes general information on the Crane Rating Manual and serial number as well as wire rope specifications, inspection, replacement, connections, and reeving. General specifications for the crane are also included.

Section 6 – Fundamental Terms Pages 6–1 Thru 6–10

Section 6 includes a list of terms which are used to refer to crane functions, assembly, operation, and maintenance. These terms are defined as to how they are used in this Operator's Manual.

Operator's Manual

Table Of Contents

Crane Nomenclature	1-1
On Delivery	1-1
Operating Safety	1-1
General Safety Rules	1-2
Operator Awareness	1-2
Thermal Effects on Hydraulic Cylinders	1-9
Boom Rebound	1-11
Electrical Dangers	1-12
Radio Frequency Or Electro Magnetic Interference (RFI Or EMI)	1-15
Protective Equipment	1-15
Signal Persons And Bystanders	1-16
Crane Inspections And Adjustments	1-17
Wire Rope	1-19
Crane And Area Clearance	1-19
Weights, Lengths, And Radii	1-20
Traveling	1-24
Leaving The Station	1-24
Personnel Handling Guidelines	1-25
Introduction	1-25
Authorization	1-26
Equipment	1-26
Maintenance, Lubrication, And Adjustments	1-27
Inspection And Rigging	1-27
Crane Test Procedures	1-28
Operation And Safety	1-29
Additional Requirements For Offshore Cranes	1-30
Operator's Cab	1-32
Fire Extinguisher	1-33
Windshield Washer Reservoir	1-33
RCL Light Bar (If Equipped)	1-33
Top Hatch	1-33

Operator's Manual

Top Hatch Wiper And Washer	1-33
Top Hatch Window	1-33
Top Hatch Sunscreen	1-33
Diagnostic Panel	1-34
Right Side Control Console	1-35
Operator's Cab Seat Console Control Switches And Levers	1-38
Crane Control Display	1-40
Upper Control Screen	1-44
Engine Data And Exhaust System Cleaning Control Screen	1-45
Controller Diagnostic Screen	1-47
Telescope Diagnostic Screen	1-48
Service Info Screen	1-49
Service Indicators	1-50
More Info – Hydraulic Oil Life	1-51
Hour Meter Reset	1-52
Adjusting Engine Oil, Hydraulic Oil, Service Intervals And Disabling/Enabling Change Reminders ..	1-53
Travel Display Screen	1-55
Travel Diagnostic Screen	1-56
Crane Control Display Brightness Adjustment	1-57
Exhaust System Cleaning	1-58
Exhaust System Cleaning Indicators	1-58
High Exhaust System Temperature Indicator Light	1-59
Exhaust System Cleaning Inhibit Switch	1-59
To Turn The Exhaust System Cleaning Inhibit Switch ON	1-59
To Turn The Exhaust System Cleaning Inhibit Switch OFF	1-60
Stationary Exhaust System Cleaning	1-61
Diesel Exhaust Fluid	1-63
Diesel Exhaust Fluid Indicators	1-63
Radio Operation	1-64
System Menu	1-67
Battery Alarm Operation	1-67
Auxiliary Input	1-67

Operator's Manual

Preset Stations	1-68
Weather Band Operation	1-68
MP3/WMA Operation	1-69
Media Requirements	1-69
ID3 Support	1-69
Installing a USB Device	1-69
MP3/WMA Directory Search	1-69
iPod Operation	1-70
Accessing iPod Mode	1-70
Turning The iPod ON/OFF	1-70
iPod Search Mode	1-70
Bluetooth® Operation	1-70
Bluetooth Menu Options	1-71
Pairing A Bluetooth Device	1-71
Answering A Call	1-71
BT Audio (A2DP)	1-72
Care And Maintenance	1-72
Ignition	1-72
Interference	1-72
Radio Troubleshooting	1-73
Winch And Right Swing View Cameras	1-74
Camera Monitor	1-75
Split Screen Function	1-77
Normal/Mirror Function	1-80
Up/Down Function	1-81
SCAN Function	1-82
Reset	1-83
Care and Maintenance	1-83
Manual Pump Disconnect (If Equipped)	1-84
To Engage The Main Pump	1-84
To Disengage The Main Pump	1-84
Steering Column And Wheel	1-85

Operator's Manual

Transmission Controls	1-87
Operating The Transmission Shifter	1-88
Operator's Cab Heater	1-89
Air Conditioning (If Equipped)	1-89
Foot Operated Controls	1-90
Combination Steering	1-91
Conventional Steer Mode	1-91
Rear Wheel Steer Mode	1-91
4-Wheel Steer Mode	1-91
Crab Steer Mode	1-91
Changing Steering Modes	1-91
Operator's Seat	1-93
Electrical Center And Battery Box	1-94
Battery Box	1-94
Battery Warmer	1-94
Battery Disconnect Switches	1-95
Hour Meter	1-95
RCL By-Pass Keyswitch	1-95
Upper Circuit Breakers	1-96
Mega Fuses	1-96
Upper Fuse Box	1-97
Outrigger Operation	1-98
To Extend Outrigger Beams	1-98
To Extend Outrigger Jacks – Raise The Crane	1-99
To Retract Outrigger Jacks – Lower The Crane	1-99
To Retract Outrigger Beams	1-100
Outrigger Removal System	1-100
Outrigger Box Removal	1-100
Outrigger Box Installation	1-103
Crane System Controls	1-103
Engine Throttle	1-103
Throttle Lock System	1-103

Operator's Manual

Swing System	1-104
Swing Brake Pedal	1-104
Swing Control Lever	1-104
Travel Swing Lock	1-106
Swing Park Brake	1-106
360° Swing Lock	1-107
Wire Rope Winch System	1-107
Warm-Up Procedure	1-108
Front Winch Control Lever	1-108
Rear Winch Control Lever (If Equipped)	1-108
Winch Operation	1-108
Winch Control Switch(es)	1-108
High Speed Hoist Or Lower	1-108
Winch Disable	1-109
Drum Rotation Indicators	1-109
First Layer/Third Wrap Indicator (If Equipped)	1-109
Boom Hoist System	1-110
Boom Telescope System	1-110
Boom Telescope Control Pedal	1-111
Boom Telescope Override Switches	1-111
To Extend The Boom Sections	1-111
To Retract The Boom Sections	1-111
Operator's Cab Tilt	1-113
Fine Metering Control	1-114
Crane Monitoring System	1-115
Wind Speed Indicator	1-115
Operating In Wind Or Lightning	1-116
Wind Gusts At Various Heights	1-117
Capacity Reduction for Loads with Large Wind Sail Area	1-118
Boom Angle Indicator	1-119
Anti-Two Block Warning System	1-119
Lockout Clip	1-120

Operator's Manual

Rated Capacity Limiter	1-122
System Description	1-122
Display Unit	1-123
System Operation	1-125
System Bypass	1-125
System Inoperative Or Malfunctioning	1-126
System Navigation	1-127
Configuration Selection	1-128
To Select Rigging And Travel Modes	1-138
Cancel Audible Alarm And Reset Function Limiters	1-139
Operator Settable Alarms	1-140
Setting Angle, Length, Height, Radius, And Swing Operator Settable Alarms	1-142
Operator Defined Area Alarm	1-151
Outrigger Position Screen	1-154
Active System Faults	1-156
Sensor Data	1-158
Highlight Data Menu	1-159
About Menu	1-160
Function Time Monitoring	1-161
Telematics	1-162
Transmitting Data	1-162
Computer Return And Stored Data Disclosure	1-162
Entering And Exiting The Operator's Cab	1-165
Function Lockout Switch	1-166
Movable Left Side Console	1-166
Upper Guard Rails	1-167
Break-In Period	1-169
Before Starting Operations	1-169
Engine	1-169
Gear Cases	1-169
Hydraulic System	1-169
Lubrication	1-169

Operator's Manual

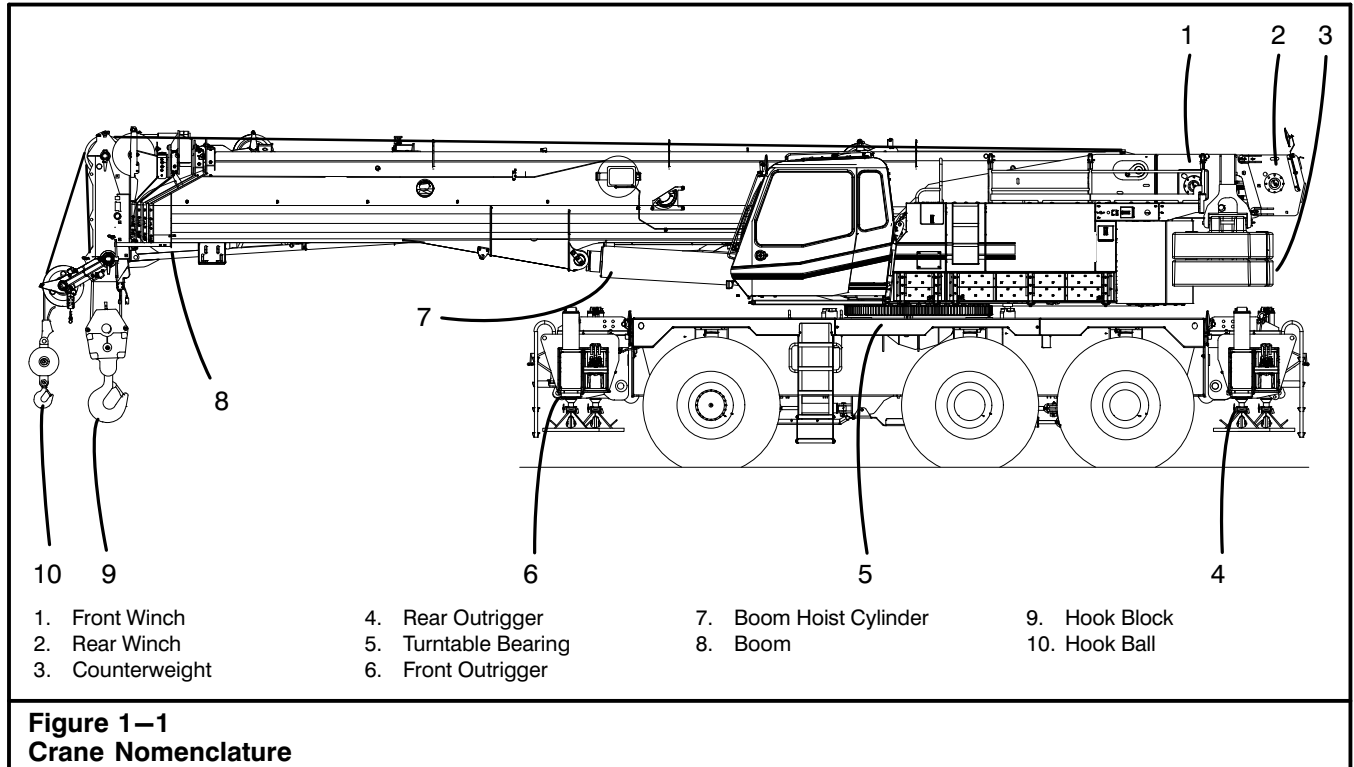
Tires And Wheels	1-169
Wire Rope And Sheaves	1-169
General Inspection	1-169
Electrical System	1-169
Brakes	1-169
Controls	1-169
Carrier Suspension	1-169
Boom Distortion Due To Thermal Effects Of The Sun	1-170
Fire Extinguisher	1-170
Engine Starting Procedure	1-170
Engine Shutdown Procedure	1-171
Cold Engine Starting	1-172
Electric Engine Block Preheater	1-173
To Start The Electric Engine Block Preheater	1-173
To Stop Electric Engine Block Heater	1-173
Arctic Weather System	1-174
Diesel Fired Engine Block Preheater (Style 1)	1-174
Arctic Heater Timer	1-175
Timer Definitions	1-177
Diesel Fired Engine Block Preheater (If Equipped)	1-179
Starting Preheater	1-179
Stopping Preheater	1-179
Timer Operation	1-180
Heater Preset Operation	1-180
Setting The Heater Preset Start Time	1-180
Operating Time Duration Operation	1-180
Setting The Operating Time Duration	1-180
Remaining Operating Time Operation	1-180
Setting The Remaining Operating Time	1-180
Setting The Clock And Day Of The Week	1-180
Viewing The Time	1-180
Setting The Alarm Clock	1-180

Operator's Manual

Troubleshooting	1-180
General Failure Symptoms	1-181
Heater Lockout Reset Procedure	1-181
Maintenance	1-181
Annual Maintenance	1-181
Enclosure And Heater	1-181
Electrical System	1-181
Combustion Air System	1-182
Exhaust System	1-182
Fuel System	1-182
Coolant System	1-182
Operational Test	1-182
Remote Jumper Terminals	1-184
Jump Starting The Crane	1-185
Crane Operation	1-186
During Operation	1-187
Hand Signals	1-188
Counterweight Removal System	1-189
Counterweight Removal	1-189
Counterweight Installation	1-191
Traveling The Crane	1-192
Reducing Speed	1-192
Traveling On A Slope	1-193
Ascending A Grade	1-194
Descending A Grade	1-194
Highway Travel	1-195
Job Site Travel	1-196
Pick And Carry Operation	1-198
Towing The Crane	1-199
Lifting The Crane	1-200
Caging The Park Brake	1-202
Uncaging The Park Brake	1-202

Operator's Manual

Transporting The Crane	1-203
Prepare crane as follows before transporting it:	1-203
Suspension Height Adjustment	1-205
Crane Storage	1-207
Short Term Storage	1-207
Long Term Storage	1-207



On Delivery

When a new crane is delivered, follow the instructions outlined in the latest version of Technical Bulletin General Series #213.


Operating Safety

Remember SAFETY every day. Someone's LIFE may depend on it, **MAYBE YOUR OWN**.

Safe operations of a hydraulic crane requires a well trained, qualified operator. Crane operation is more involved than it may appear, and operation by a careless or unqualified person can result in a serious accident.

When a hydraulic crane is maintained and used properly it can be a safe, highly productive piece of equipment, but if not used properly, it can be dangerous.

Think Safety – You, the operator, are in charge of an important piece of equipment. It is very important that you know what it can do. It is also important that you know what it should not do. No set of instructions can anticipate all of the situations you will encounter. The rules given here cover the general usage, and some of the more common specific cases. If conditions arise not covered by these rules, consult your nearest distributor. A phone call could save someone's life.



WARNING

Do not lift, suspend, swing or lower loads or attachments over anyone. Do not allow anyone to ride on any part of load or attachment.

SAFETY INSTRUCTIONS

Construction equipment can be dangerous if improperly operated or maintained. This crane should be operated and maintained only by trained and experienced people who have read, understood, and complied with the Operator's Manual.

Before leaving operator's position, lower load to the ground.

Do not use swing brake for swing lock.

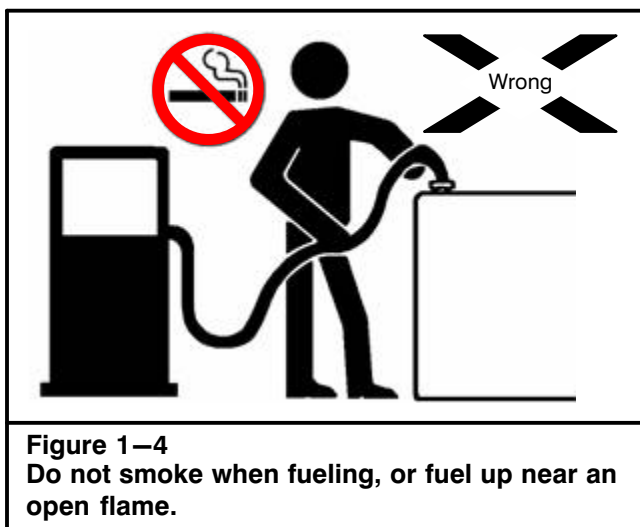
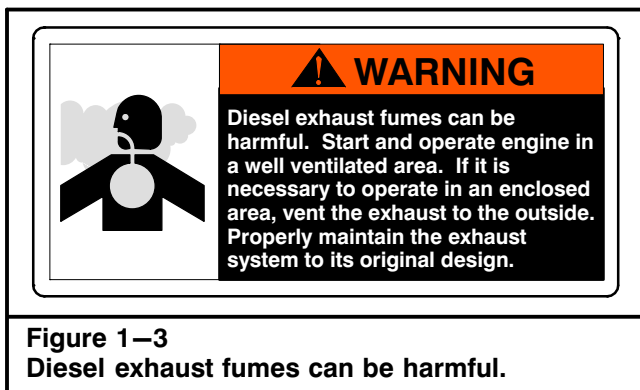
When facing over rear some functions will be reversed relative to operator.

Raise the crane on outriggers, or block the wheels before working on the crane. Replace all guards or panels before operating the crane.

Do not deface or remove this label from the crane.

Figure 1-2
Read and understand all points covered in the Operator's Manual before operating the crane.

Operator's Manual

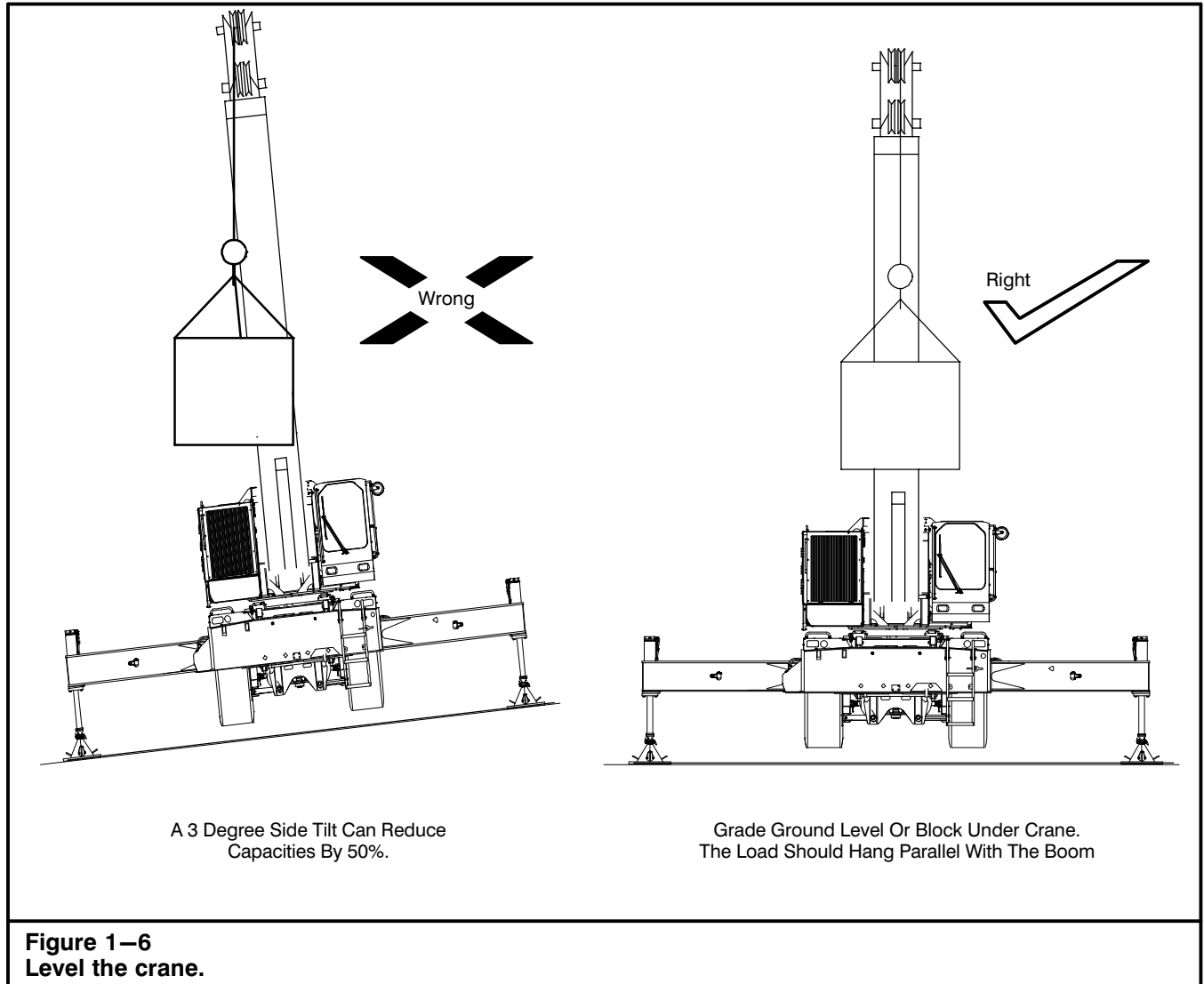


General Safety Rules

The following is a list of safety rules which should be followed during all crane operations.

Operator Awareness

1. Read and understand this Operator's Manual, all Safety Manuals, and the Crane Rating Manual and heed them. These Manuals contain important information.
2. An operator must not eat, read, or otherwise divert his attention while operating a crane. Remember—operating is a full-time job.
3. Start and operate the engine in a well ventilated area. Diesel exhaust fumes can be harmful. If it is necessary to operate in an enclosed area, vent the exhaust to the outside. Properly maintain the exhaust system to its original design.
4. Don't smoke when fueling, or fuel up near an open flame. Keep the nozzle in contact with the filler neck to prevent static electric sparks. Shutdown the engine when fueling.
5. Keep fingers, feet, and clothing away from sheaves, drums, and wire rope(s) unless the crane is shutdown and everyone knows what you are doing. Do not place a hand on wire rope(s) when climbing on the crane. A sudden movement could pull you into the drums or sheaves.
6. Keep all walking surfaces (steps, ladders, platforms, etc.) and non-skid materials on the crane clean. Non-skid materials are placed on the crane to assist operators and service personnel with safe access/egress to/from the crane and to/from adjustment and inspection areas. Do not allow non-skid materials to become contaminated with mud, snow, ice, oil, paint, wax, etc. Any contamination can cause the non-skid materials to become slick, reducing their effectiveness for safety while walking on the crane. If any non-skid materials become ineffective due to wear, age, or destroyed in any way, they must be replaced.
7. Keep your shoes clean. Before entering the operator's cab, wipe clean any mud, gravel, snow, ice, moisture, or grease from your shoes. Slippery shoes could cause momentary loss of control of crucial foot operated controls.
8. To prevent movement of the individual boom sections, shutdown engine and ensure the operator has vacated the cab before putting your hands or tools inside the boom. Unexpected movement of boom sections could sever fingers, hands, arms, etc.
9. The operator, supervisor, or person in charge of the load must observe the following rules:
 - a. Loads must be well secured before lifting. Ensure that the rigging cannot slip off or pull away from the load, or get out of position on the load. Use a three-point sling if necessary to keep the load from rolling or turning over.
 - b. Chains and slings must be of adequate size, in good condition, and not twisted around each other.



- c. The load must not catch on an obstruction when lifting or swinging. Ensure the load, winch wire rope(s), or any other parts of the crane do not snag or strike any obstruction.
- d. Do not allow the load to rotate out of control. Personal injury to ground personnel, load damage, crane damage, or damage to anti-two block system may occur.
- e. When hoisting with single part line, especially in long falls applications, the design of wire rope and hookball is crucial to minimize the potential for uncontrolled wire rope and/or load rotation. Rotation-resistant wire rope is recommended for single part of line applications. See the Wire Rope Capacity Chart in the Crane Rating Manual for the specific types of rotation resistant wire rope recommended for the crane.
- f. Avoid sudden starts and stops. Lift carefully, swing gently, brake smoothly, lower and set loads carefully. Jerking the load, swinging and engaging swing brake roughly, and lowering the load rapidly and slamming on brakes, will put shock loadings and possible side loadings on the boom. Unnecessary abuse labels the operator as a beginner. Be a professional.
- g. Do not wrap the winch wire rope around the load. Do not use discarded, worn, or damaged wire rope(s) for slings. They may fail and drop the load.
- h. The crane must be level before making a lift. Use the bubble level, to level the crane. Check its accuracy frequently with a carpenter's level. Remember, a three degree side tilt can reduce capacities by 50% or more.
- i. If working at night, ensure adequate lighting is provided so the operator and all other workers can see all movements of the crane, attachment, and load.

Operator's Manual

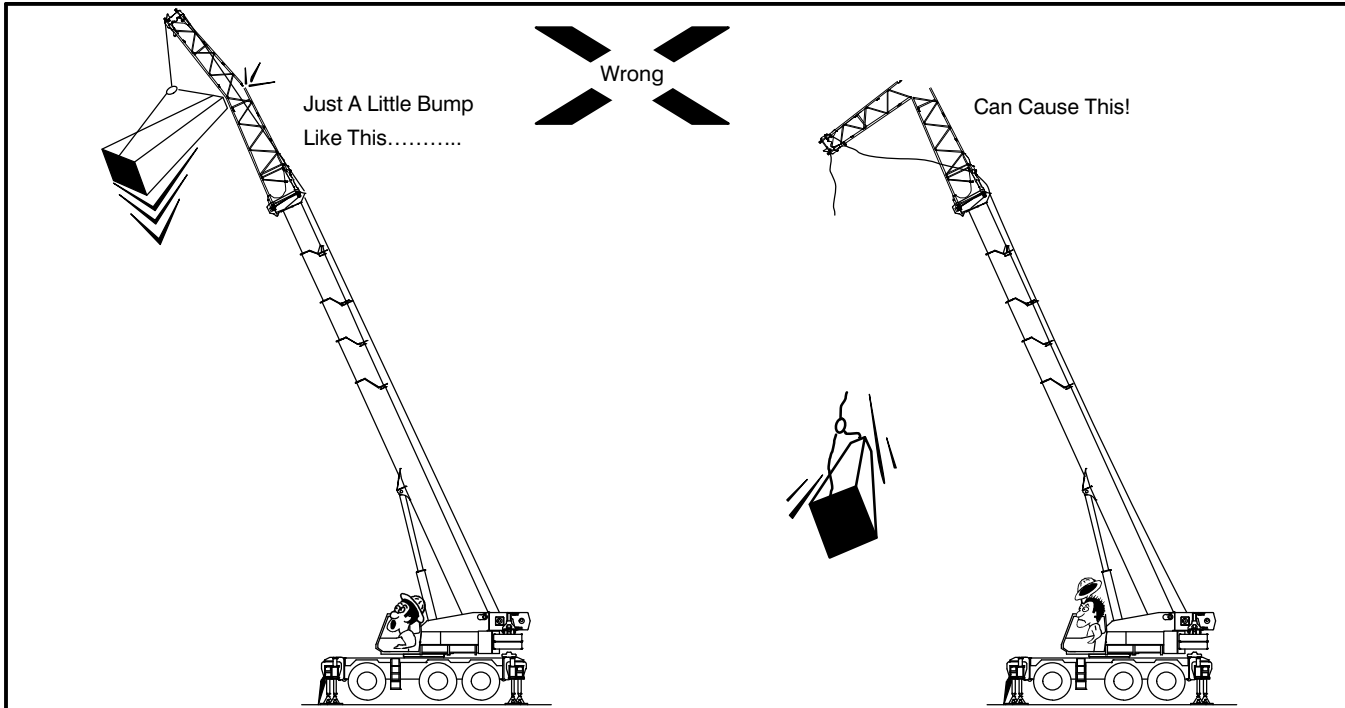


Figure 1-7
Do not let the load hit the boom or fly.

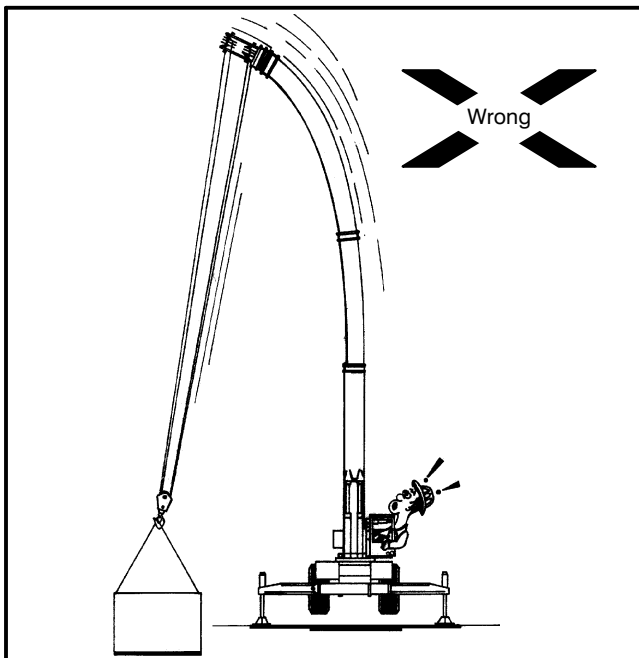


Figure 1-8
Do not use the boom to pull sideways.

10. Operate the crane from the operator's seat only. Operating the crane from any other position, such as reaching in a window, constitutes a safety hazard.

11. Watch the load or a signal person at all times. A suspended load must have your undivided attention.
12. Don't let the load or bucket hit the boom or fly. Don't let the boom or attachment rest on, or hit, a building or any other object. A dent or other damage could result, which will weaken the boom or attachment. If the damage is severe, the attachment could collapse. If a lattice or diagonal bracing member on the fly is broken, cracked, or bent, contact your local distributor for repair procedures. If the boom or fly is struck, or damaged by anything, STOP. The loading on a boom or attachments increases as they are lowered, therefore their suspension systems could collapse during lowering. Use another crane to lower a damaged boom or attachment.
13. Don't pull sideways on the boom or fly, not even a little. Lift straight up on every load. Moving trucks, rail cars, barges, or anything else pulling sideways on the winch wire rope could buckle the boom or fly. It could also damage the swing mechanism. Pulling sideways on a boom or fly can overturn the crane.
14. Heat from the sun only on one side of the boom may cause a temperature differential between the sides of the boom. The thermal effects may cause boom distortion (the boom to "deflect" to one side) creating a side load on the boom and/or fly. Side loading is dangerous and shall be avoided.

Operator's Manual

15. Do not “two block” (pulling the hook block, hook ball, or load into the head machinery) as this can cause winch wire rope and sheave breakage resulting in an accident.
16. After slack winch wire rope operation, ensure the winch wire rope is properly seated in sheaves and on drums before continuing to operate. Use a stick or mallet to set the winch wire rope, not your hands.
17. Do not lower the load beyond the point where less than three full wraps of winch wire rope are left on the drum. This condition could occur when lowering a load beyond ground level. If all the winch wire rope runs off the drum, the load will jerk which could break the winch wire rope.
18. Confirm that there is a safety latch on the hook, and that it works properly. Without a latch, it is possible for slings or chains to come off the hook, allowing the load to fall.
19. Don't alter any part of the crane. Additions to or changes in any part of the equipment can create loadings for which the crane was not designed. Such changes may seriously affect the usable capacities and make the entire Crane Rating Manual invalid. Alterations can dangerously overload or weaken critical parts and may cause disastrous failure.
20. Do not exceed the rated capacities of the crane under any circumstances. While a crane has more stability when lifting over a corner (as compared to straight over the side) the crane capacity is not increased. Anytime the load exceeds the rated capacities listed in the Crane Rating Manual, the crane is overloaded. Overloads can damage the crane and such damage could cause failure and accidents.
21. Use care during all access/egress to/from the crane. Use the hand rails, hand grips, steps ladders, guard rails, etc. to prevent slips and falls. Remain in three point contact (two hands and one foot or two feet and one hand) with the crane at all times.
22. When operating on outriggers, all beams must be equally extended; all fully retracted, all intermediate extended or all fully extended. All jacks must be extended so all tires are clear of the ground, and the crane must be level. Ensure that pontoons are set on firm surface, adequate to support the blocking, pontoon, crane and load without settling, slipping or collapsing. Blocking or matting under pontoons must form a smooth level surface under the entire pontoon. Do not block under outrigger beams inside the pontoons as this reduces stability. Blocking must be under pontoons only. Remember—there are tremendous loadings on pontoons and blocking – the weight of the entire crane plus any load.

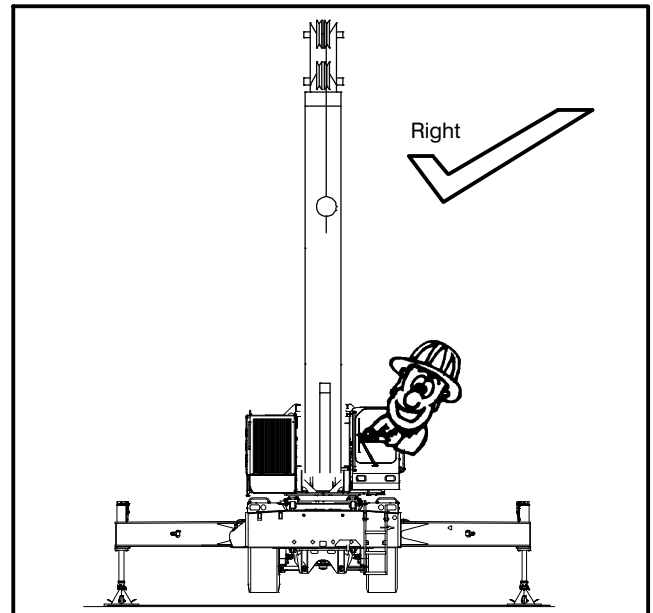
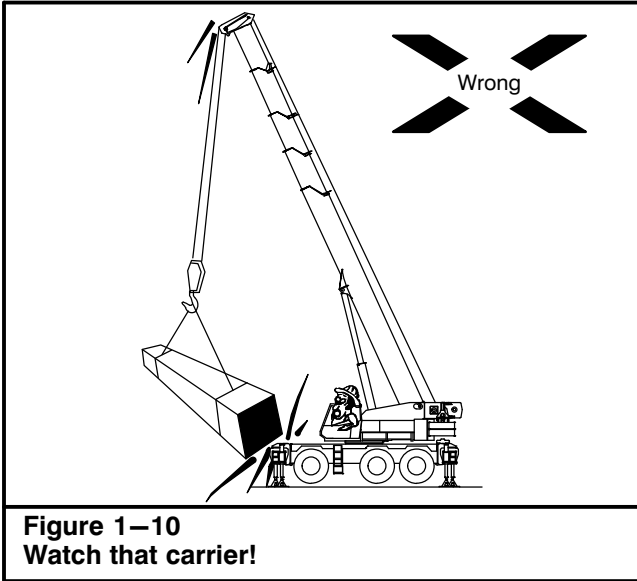


Figure 1—9
Crane level, all beams extended equally (all fully extended, intermediate extended or fully retracted) and tires clear of the ground.

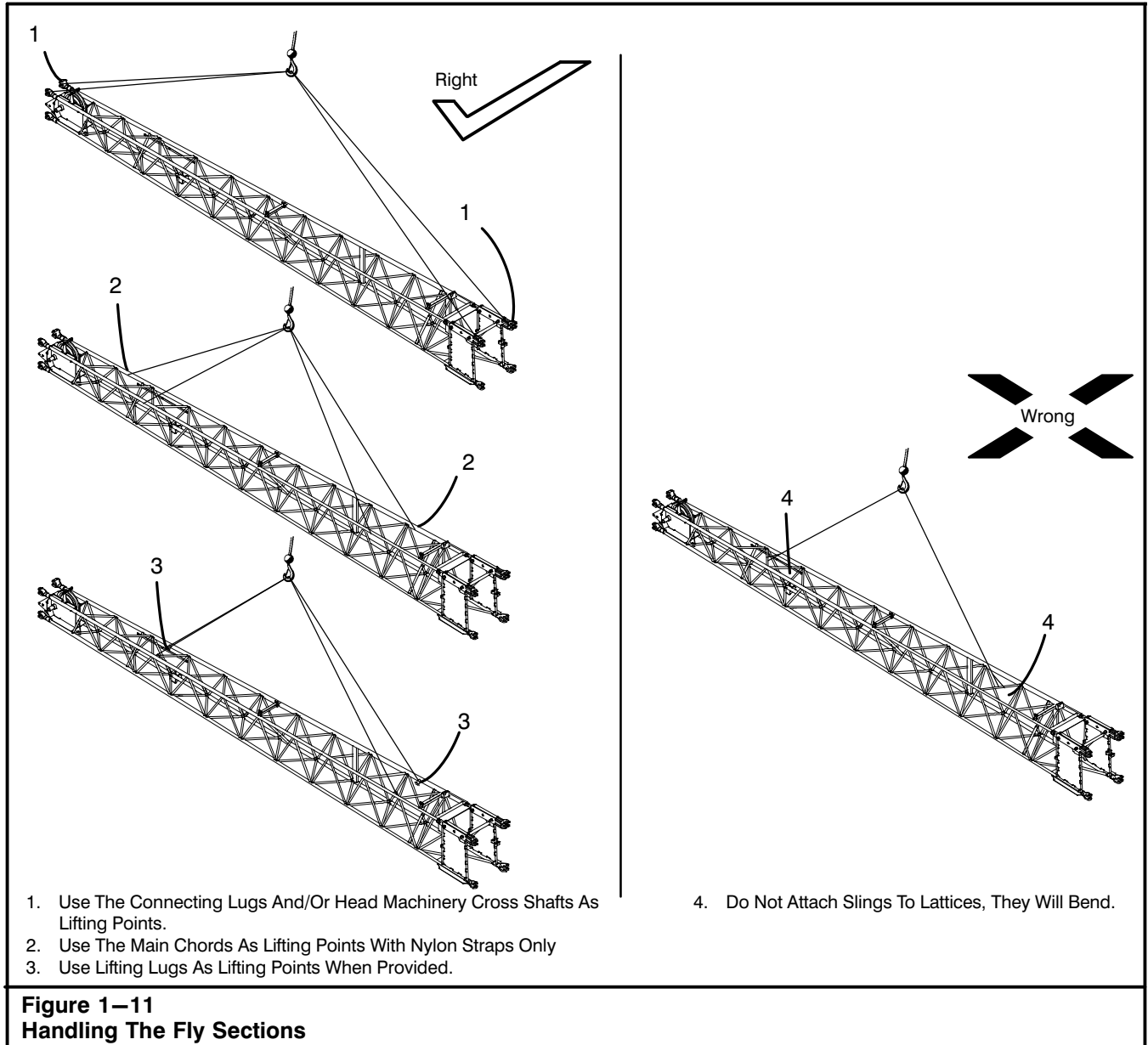
When blocking or matting under pontoons, ensure that each pontoon is supported fully – no unsupported pontoon area is permissible. Ensure pontoons are on a smooth surface. Rough surface, rocks, etc., under pontoons will cause unequal loadings, and can puncture them, causing them to collapse.

Capacities are based on all outriggers being equally extended: all fully retracted, all intermediate extended, or all fully extended. Working on outriggers that are not equally extended will reduce capacities and crane stability considerably and could cause an accident. Do not make any lifts while on outriggers without the outrigger beams equally extended.

Operator's Manual



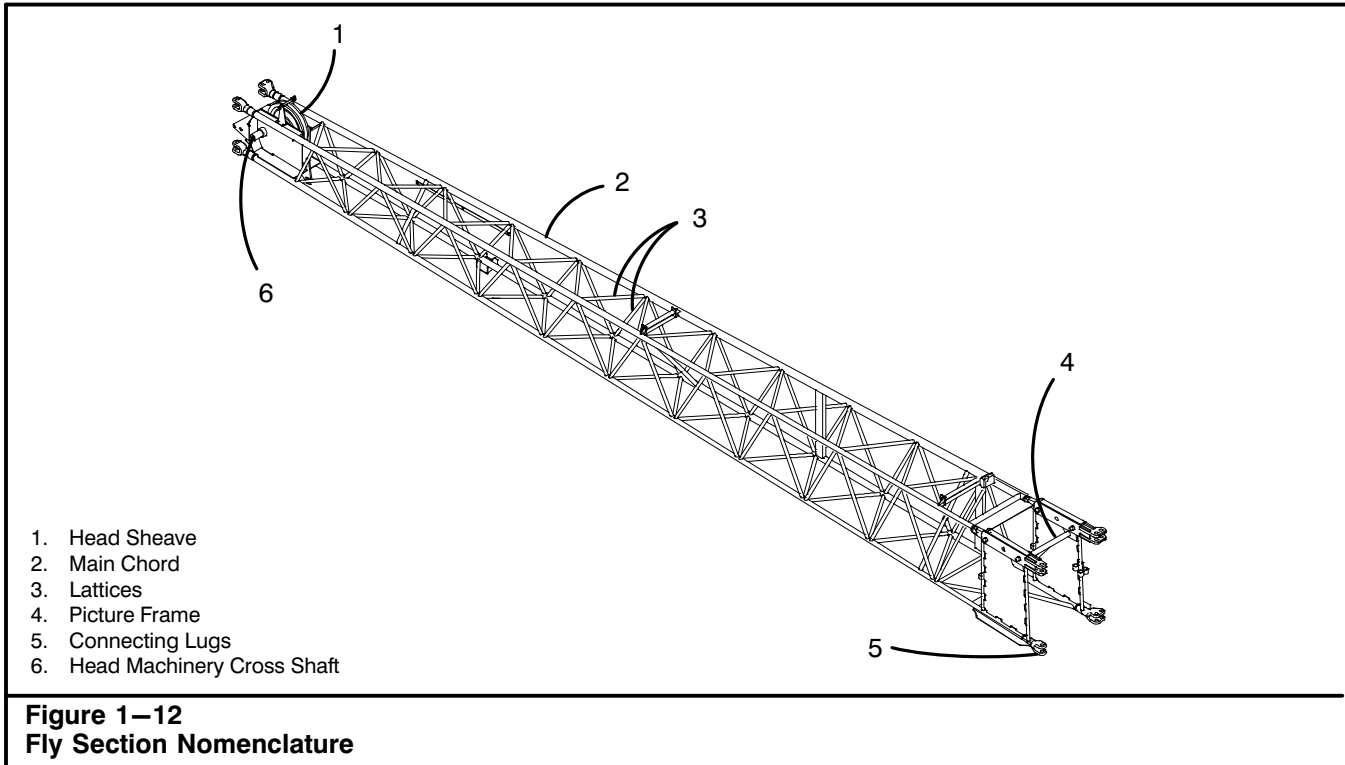
23. Before attempting to move the carrier, ensure there is enough oil pressure to operate the brakes. Always check the brake operation before traveling the crane.
24. Brake firmly in one application. Avoid fanning the brakes. This could exhaust oil pressure so fast that the pump may not supply enough oil.
25. Do not coast downhill with the transmission shifter in neutral. It makes control of the crane more difficult and dangerous.
26. Position the transmission shifter to neutral before operating the crane. When parking, shift to neutral and engage the park brake. Block wheels if on an unlevel surface.
27. When operating with the boom at a high angle, use care not to let the load hit the carrier.



28. Use care handling the fly when loading, transporting, and unloading. Damage that occurs during these operations can go undetected and could result in failure of these components, once subjected to loading. Do not attach slings to the lattices when lifting the fly, as they will bend. Use the connecting lugs and/or head machinery cross shaft as the lifting points. However, it is permissible to attach nylon straps around all four main chords.

29. Block under and between the fly sections when loading them on a transport vehicle. When securing the fly to a transport vehicle, it is best to use synthetic webs or slings. If using wire rope slings, pad the fly to protect it from damage. Do not overtighten the tie downs or the fly may be damaged. Do not use chain tie downs, as they may dent and damage the fly section.

Operator's Manual



30. Thoroughly inspect all the elements of the fly section before installing it on the crane. Check each main chord, picture frame, diagonal, lattice, and connecting lug for bends, dents, and cracked or

corroded welds. Picture frames must be square. Do not use any fly or jib section that is even slightly damaged. Contact your local Link-Belt Distributor for the proper repair procedures.

Operator's Manual

31. Cold weather operation requires some special attention by the operator to allow for changes in everyday routines:
- Clean the crane, especially the boom, of accumulated amounts of ice or snow. Operating the crane with an ice covered boom is dangerous. The added weight of the ice or snow can drastically reduce the capacity of the crane. Also, falling ice may pose danger for ground personnel.
 - Clean all snow and ice from steps, ladders, platforms, etc. to eliminate slippery walking surfaces.
 - If cold weather starting aids are provided on the crane, use them. Do not use starting fluids to aid in engine start up.
 - Pay close attention to the gauges in the operator's cab when starting the engine. Normal "warm up" times will be longer. Ensure pressures and temperatures are within normal ranges before beginning operations.
 - Always handle flammable materials according to the manufacturer's instructions. Propane, diesel, or other fuel for auxiliary heaters can be dangerous if not properly handled. Do not store such fuels on the crane.
 - Use caution when lifting any load during freezing weather, as it may be frozen to the ground or the supporting surface. The added tension, to break the load free, could cause an unexpected overload situation. Also, when the load does finally break loose it could create an erratic motion causing damage or injury.
 - At the end of the work shift, park the crane where it will not freeze to the ground. Major damage to the drive mechanism could occur while trying to free the crane from a frozen surface.

Thermal Effects on Hydraulic Cylinders

Hydraulic oil expands and contracts when heated or cooled. This is a natural occurrence that effects all liquids. The coefficient of expansion for API Group 1 hy-

draulic oil is approximately 0.00043 cubic inches per cubic inch of volume for 1°F of temperature change. Thermal contraction will allow a cylinder to retract as the trapped hydraulic fluid in the cylinder cools. The change in length of a cylinder is proportional to the extended length of the cylinder and to the change in temperature of the oil in the cylinder. For example, a cylinder extended 20 feet and the oil cools down 40°F would retract the cylinder approximately 4 inches (refer to Cylinder Drift Chart). A cylinder extended 5 feet and the oil cools down 40°F would only retract the cylinder approximately 1 inch. The rate at which the oil cools depends on many factors and will be more noticeable with a larger difference in oil temperature verses the ambient temperature.

Thermal contraction combined with improper lubrication or improper boom wear pad adjustments may cause a "stick-slip" condition in the boom. This condition could result in the load not moving smoothly. Proper boom lubrication and wear pad adjustment is important to permit the boom section to slide freely. Slow movement of the boom may be undetected by the operator unless a load is suspended for a long period of time.

This situation can also occur in reverse. If the crane is setup on a cold morning and as the daytime ambient temperature heats the oil, the cylinders will extend in similar proportions.

The Cylinder Drift chart can assist in determining the approximate amount of retraction/extension that may be expected from a hydraulic cylinder as a result of a change in temperature of the hydraulic oil inside the cylinder. That chart is for dry rod cylinders. If the cylinder rod is filled with hydraulic oil, the contraction rate is somewhat greater.

Note: Operators and service personnel must be aware that load movement as a result of thermal expansion/contraction of hydraulic oil within cylinders can be mistaken as leaking cylinder seals or faulty holding valves.

Operator's Manual

CYLINDER DRIFT (Cylinder Length Change in Inches)										
Stroke (Ft.)	Temperature Change (°F)									
	10	20	30	40	50	60	70	80	90	100
5	0.26	0.52	0.77	1.03	1.29	1.55	1.81	2.06	2.32	2.58
10	0.52	1.03	1.55	2.06	2.58	3.10	3.61	4.13	4.64	5.16
15	0.77	1.55	2.32	3.10	3.87	4.64	5.42	6.19	6.97	7.74
20	1.03	2.06	3.10	4.13	5.16	6.19	7.22	8.26	9.29	10.32
25	1.29	2.58	3.87	5.16	6.45	7.74	9.03	10.32	11.61	12.90
30	1.55	3.10	4.64	6.19	7.74	9.29	10.84	12.38	13.93	15.48
35	1.81	3.61	5.42	7.22	9.03	10.84	12.64	14.45	16.25	18.06
40	2.06	4.13	6.19	8.26	10.32	12.38	14.45	16.51	18.58	20.64

Length change in inches = Stroke (ft.) X Temperature Change (°F) X Coefficient (in³/in³/°F) X 12 in/ft.
Coefficient = 0.00043 (in³/in³/°F)

CYLINDER DRIFT (Cylinder Length Change in Millimeters)										
Stroke (M.)	Temperature Change (°C)									
	5	10	15	20	25	30	35	40	45	50
1	4	8	12	15	19	23	27	31	35	39
2	8	15	23	31	39	46	54	62	70	77
3	12	23	35	46	58	70	81	93	104	116
4	15	31	46	62	77	93	108	124	139	155
5	19	39	58	77	97	116	135	155	174	194
6	23	46	70	93	116	139	163	186	209	232
7	27	54	81	108	135	163	190	217	244	271
8	31	62	93	124	155	186	217	248	279	310
9	35	70	104	139	174	209	244	279	313	348
10	39	77	116	155	194	232	271	310	348	387
11	43	85	128	170	213	255	298	341	383	426
12	46	93	139	186	232	279	325	372	418	464
13	50	101	151	201	252	302	352	402	453	503

Length change in millimeters = Stroke (m) X Temperature Change (°C) X Coefficient (mm³/mm³/°C) X 1000 mm/m
Coefficient = 0.000774 (mm³/mm³/°C)

Operator's Manual

Boom Rebound

Sometimes boom rebound is experienced on cranes. This is due to the compressibility of the hydraulic fluid (all hydraulic fluids have compressibility) in the cylinder. Compressibility can vary a little based on type of hydraulic fluid and the amount of air entrained in the hydraulic oil. The average amount of compressibility or reduction in volume per 1,000 psi pressure increase is about 1/2% for most hydraulic oils.

When an operator lifts a heavy load or retracts the cylinder with high retract pressure they compress the oil in the extend side of the cylinder (example: with increase of 2,000 psi they compress the extend oil 1% by volume). When they take the heavy load off the cylinder or release the high pressure on the retract side of the cylinder, the cylinder will extend a small amount due to this decompression. The problem is volume related and is worse at higher boom angles when the most volume is in the extend side of the cylinder.

CYLINDER COMPRESSION (Cylinder Length Change in Inches)			
	Pressure Change (psi)		
Stroke (Inches)	1,000	2,000	3,000
20	.10"	.20"	.30"
40	.20"	.40"	.60"
60	.30"	.60"	.90"
80	.40"	.80"	1.20"
100	.50"	1.00"	1.50"
120	.60"	1.20"	1.80"

Length change in inches = Stroke (inches) X Pressure Change (1,000 psi) X .005 (1/2% per 1,000 psi)
Coefficient = 0.00043 (in³/in³/°F)

Operator's Manual

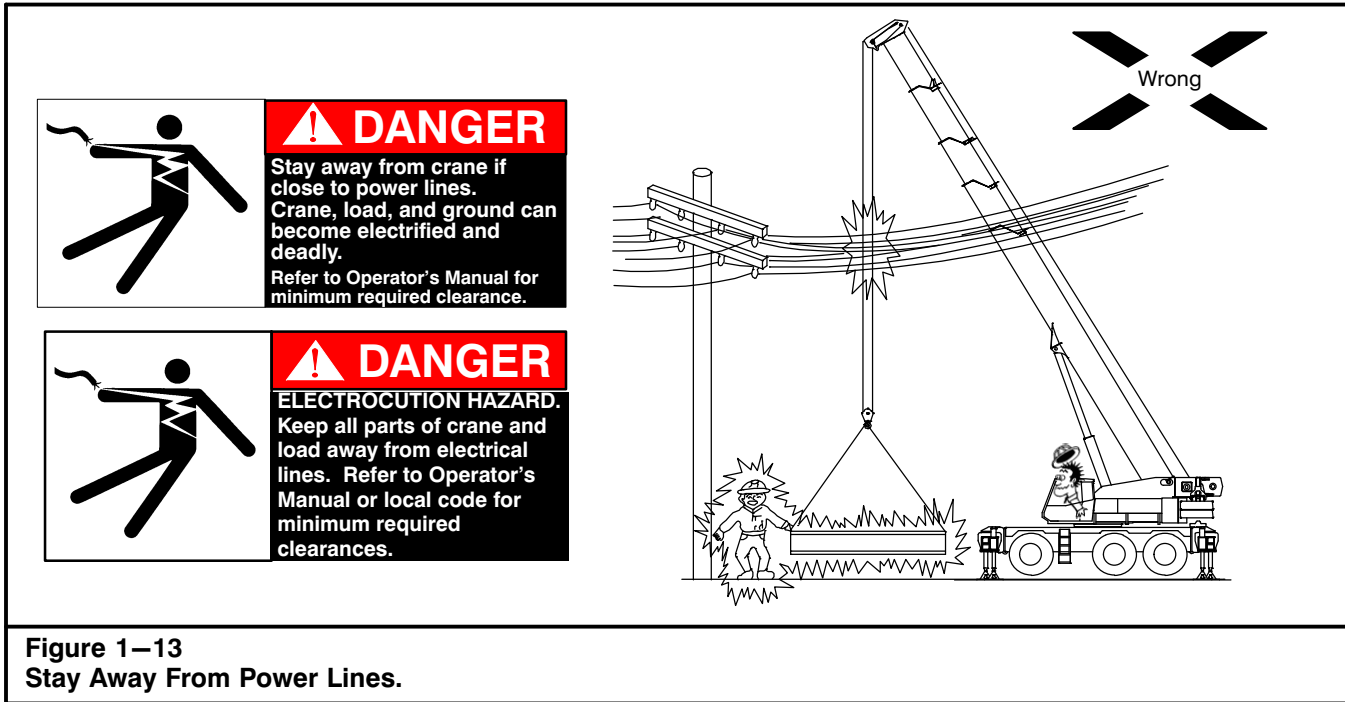
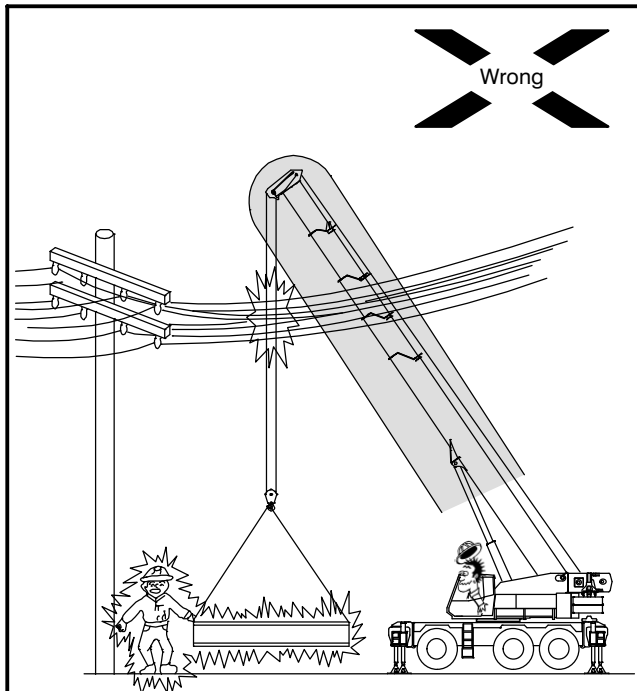


Figure 1–13
Stay Away From Power Lines.

Minimum Clearance When Operating Near High Voltage Power Lines Or During Crane Assembly/Disassembly	
Normal Voltage, kV (Phase to Phase)	Minimum Required Clearance, ft (m) See Note 1
To 200	15 (4.57)
Over 200 To 350	20 (6.10)
Over 350 To 500	25 (7.62)
Over 500 To 750	35 (10.67)
Over 750 To 1000	45 (13.72)
Over 1000	As established by the power line owner/operator or registered professional engineer who is a qualified person with respect to electrical power transmission and distribution.
Minimum Clearance When Traveling With No Load	
To 345	15 (4.57)
Over 345 To 750	16 (4.87)
Over 750 To 1000	20 (6.10)
Over 1000	As established by the power line owner/operator or registered professional engineer who is a qualified person with respect to electrical power transmission and distribution.
Note 1: Maintain 50 ft (15.2m) minimum clearance from power lines if voltage is unknown. If unknown but yet known to be less than 350 kV, maintain 20 ft (6.1m) minimum clearance.	
Note 2: Environmental conditions such as wind, fog, smoke, or precipitation may require increased clearances.	
High Voltage Power Line Clearance Chart	

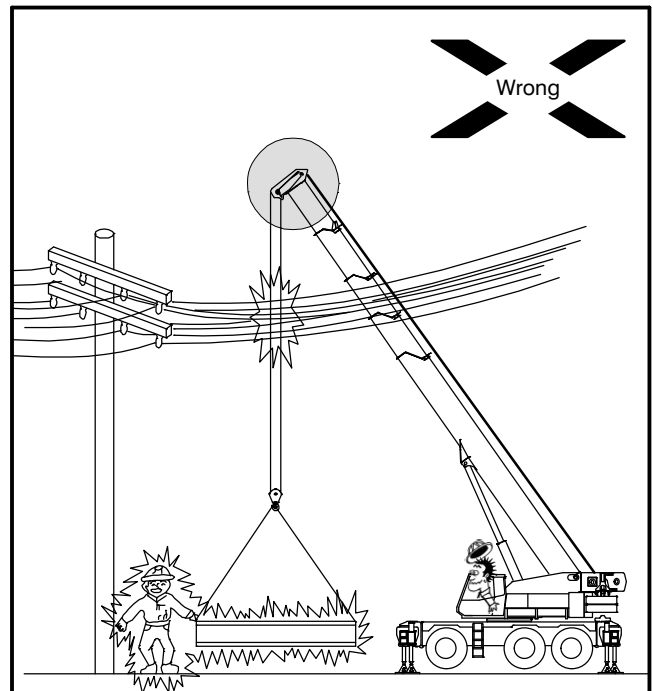
Electrical Dangers

1. All Electrical Power Lines Are Dangerous. Contact with them, whether insulated or not, can cause death or injury. When operating near power lines, the best rule is to have the power company turn off the power and ground the lines. However, in some cases, the operator may be unable to have the power turned off. Follow these rules whether the power is turned off or not. Follow all requirements per OSHA regulations 1926.1407 through 1926.1411 as applicable while assembling, disassembling, operating, or traveling the crane in the vicinity of any power lines.
 - a. Be alert. You are working around conditions which can cause death.
 - b. Keep all parts of the crane – winch wire rope(s), hook block, hook ball, and load – at least the distance from the power line as specified in the “High Voltage Power Line Clearance Chart”, or such distance as required by any other state or local requirements.
 - c. Assume that every line is “Hot”.
 - d. Appoint a reliable person equipped with a loud signal (whistle or horn) to warn the operator when any part of the crane is working around the power line. This person should have no other duties while the crane is working around the power line.
 - e. Do not perform any crane assembly/disassembly under any energized power line.



Shaded area shows "sensitivity zone" with full boom length sensor used. Contact can be made outside this zone by the winch wire rope(s), operator's cab, etc. In such cases, the alarm will not sound, but the crane will be electrified and deadly.

Figure 1–14
Crane equipped with proximity warning device on the entire boom.



Shaded area shows "sensitivity zone" with the probe near the boom peak. Contact can be made outside this zone by the winch wire rope(s), operator's cab, etc. In such cases, the alarm will not sound, but the crane will be electrified and deadly.

Figure 1–15
Crane equipped with proximity warning device on boom tip.

- f. Warn all personnel of the potential danger. Do not allow unnecessary persons in the area. Don't allow anyone to lean against or touch the crane. Don't allow workers or load handlers to hold load, load lines, or rigging gear unless absolutely necessary. In these cases, use dry hemp or plastic rope(s) as tether lines. Make certain everyone stays at least the distance away from the load as specified in the "High Voltage Power Line Clearance Chart", or such distance as required by any other state or local requirements.
- g. The use of boom point guards, proximity devices, insulated hooks or swing limit stops do not assure safety. Even if codes or regulations require the use of such devices, you must follow rules listed here. If you do not follow them, the result could be serious injury or death.

- h. Grounding the crane can increase the danger. Poor grounding such as a pipe driven into the ground, will give little or no protection. In addition, a grounded crane may strike an arc so heavy that a live line may be burned down. This could cause the crane and the area around it to be electrified.
 - i. When operating near radio or T.V. transmitting stations, high voltage can be induced in metal parts of the crane, or in the load. This can occur even if the crane is some distance from the transmitter or antenna. Painful, dangerous shocks could occur. Contact trained electronic personnel before operating the crane to determine how to avoid electrical hazards.
2. **What do you do if a power line is touched by a crane or load?**
- a. Remain calm – think – a mistake can kill someone.
 - b. Warn all personnel to keep clear.
 - c. If crane will still operate, try to move it away from contact. You, the operator are reasonably safe in the cab unless the crane is on fire or an arc is cutting through the cab.

Operator's Manual

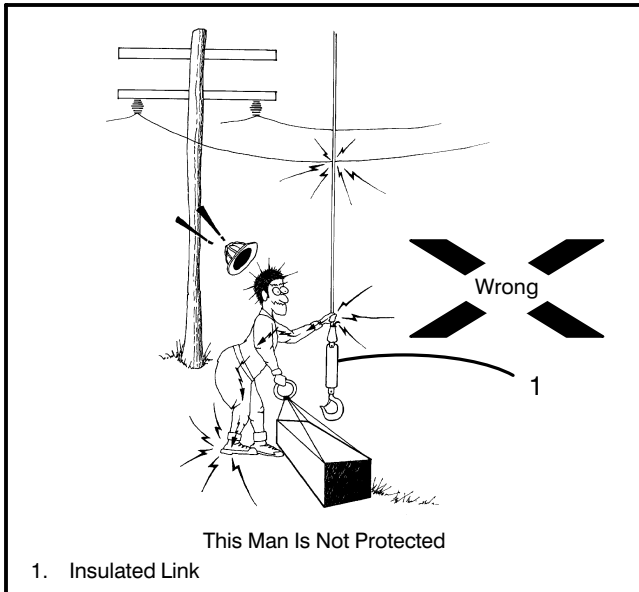


Figure 1-16
Crane equipped with insulated link.

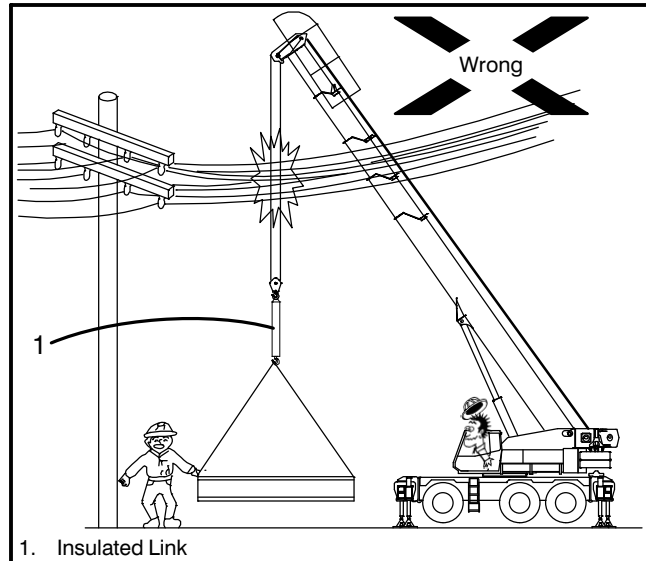


Figure 1-17
Crane equipped with insulated link and boom point guard.

- d. Move away from contact in the reverse direction to that which caused the contact. Example: If you swing left to the wire, swing to the right to break contact. Remember – once an arc has been struck, it will stretch out much farther than you think before it breaks. Keep moving until the arc has been broken.
 - e. When the arc breaks, continue moving until you are at least the minimum distance away as specified in the “High Voltage Power Line Clearance Chart”, or such distance as required by any other state or local requirements. Stop the crane. Thoroughly inspect crane and repair any damage before further use. Contact a Link-Belt Distributor and request a “Crane Inspection After Contacting Power Line” form which lists necessary inspection items.
 - f. If you cannot disengage from the electrical line, and the crane is not on fire or no arc is cutting through the cab, stay in your seat until power line can be turned off.
 - g. If you must leave the crane, don't step off. Leap from the crane as far as you can, landing with feet together, then hop away from the crane with feet together, or shuffle feet to keep them close together. This could help prevent personal injury.
3. When using a magnet:
- a. Lifting magnet generators produce voltage in excess of 200 volts and present an electrical shock hazard. Only trained personnel should work on the magnet, controller, or wiring. Don't open the controller door with the generator running.

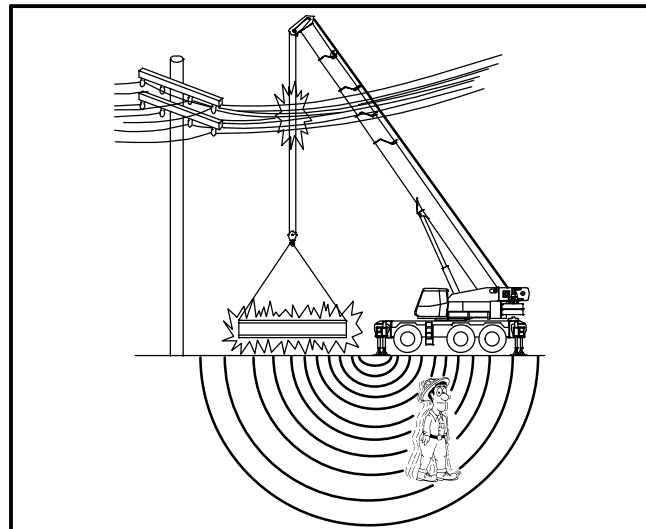


Figure 1-18
If you must leave the crane, do not step off. Leap as far as you can with feet together and hop or shuffle away from the crane.

- b. Do not let workers touch magnet or load.
- c. Do not let workers get between magnet and a metal object.
- d. If necessary to position a load, use a dry, wooden stick.
- e. Open magnet disconnect switch at magnet control panel before connecting or disconnecting leads.

Operator's Manual

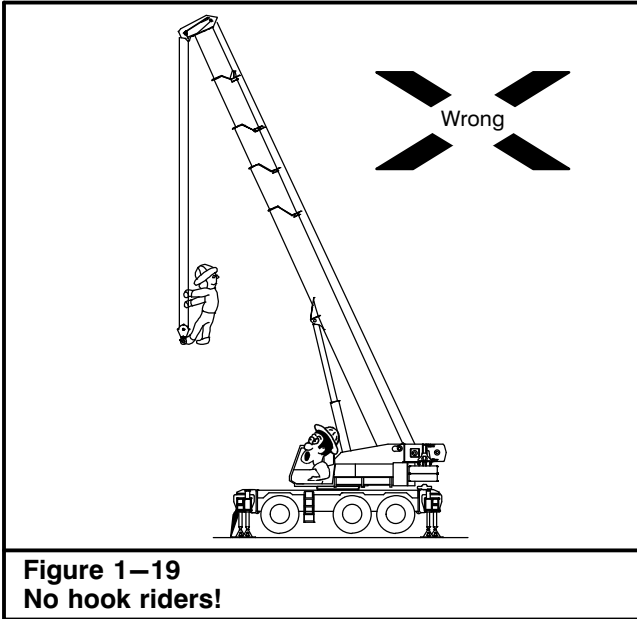
Radio Frequency Or Electro Magnetic Interference (RFI Or EMI)

Certain areas may contain high Radio Frequency Or Electro Magnetic Interference (RFI or EMI). In these areas the boom can act like an antenna and produce an electrical current that may cause electrical shocks and/or the crane to malfunction. If operating in an area where these conditions may exist, test the crane or have the area tested for the magnitude of this interference before operating the crane. Operation may not be possible or boom length may be limited. Comply with all local, state, and federal laws when operating in high RFI/EMI areas.

Protective Equipment

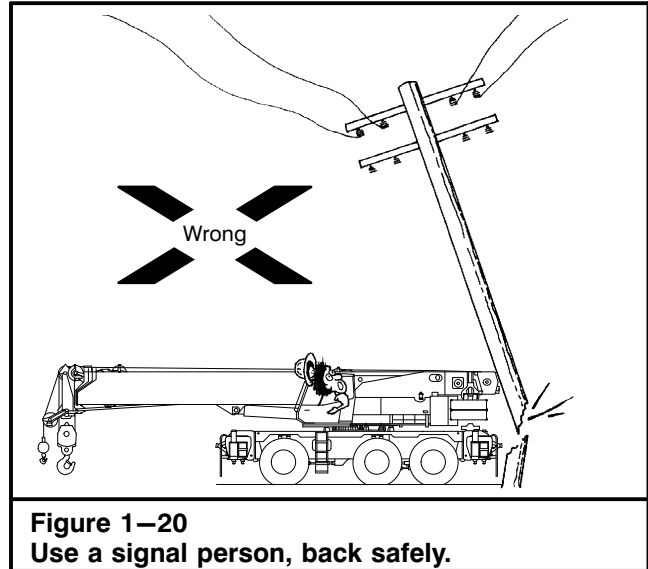
1. Always replace protective guards and panels before operating the crane.
2. Always wear hard hats, safety glasses, steel toe shoes, hearing protection, and any other safety equipment required by local job conditions, OSHA, or any other requirements of applicable codes.
3. Always wear safety glasses when drilling, grinding or hammering. Flying chips could injure the eyes.
4. Always wear a mask to prevent breathing any dust, smoke, fumes, etc. while cleaning, drilling, welding, grinding, sanding, etc. on any part of the crane. Breathing dust, smoke, fumes, etc. can be very hazardous.
5. The crane is equipped with a fire extinguisher in the operator's cab. Ensure all personnel know that one is available and where it is located. It must be kept in the crane at all times (except when needed). Instruct all operating and maintenance personnel in proper use of the extinguisher. Check periodically to ensure it is fully charged and in working order. Replace immediately if required.
6. Do not tamper with safety devices. Keep them in good repair and properly adjusted. They were put on the crane for your protection.
7. When operating a crane equipped with any form of load indicating mechanism, overload warning system, or any automatic safety device, remember that such devices cannot replace the skill and judgment of a good operator. For instance, such devices cannot tell when a crane is located on a supporting surface that will give away, that too few parts of line are being used to lift a load, cannot correct for the effects of wind, warn that the device may be improperly adjusted, correct for side pulls on the boom, or for many conditions which could occur and create hazards. It requires all the skill, experience, judgment, and safety consciousness that a good operator can develop to attain safe operation. Many safety devices can assist the operator in performing his duties, but he should not rely on them to keep him out of trouble.

Operator's Manual



Signal Persons And Bystanders

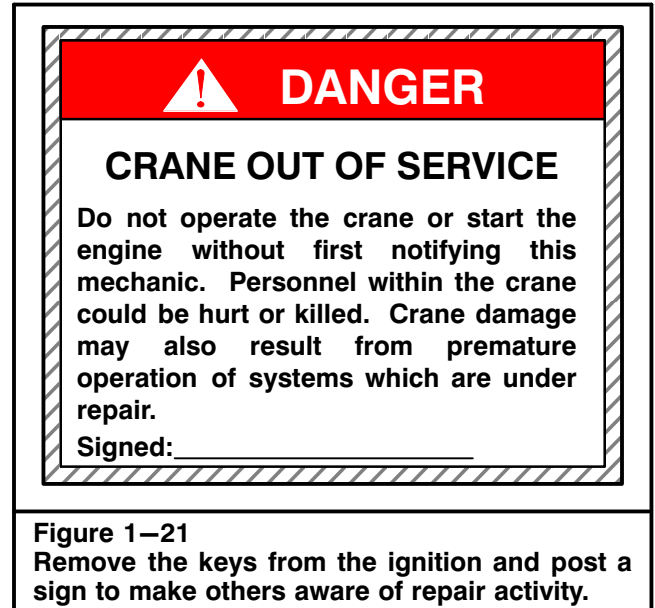
1. Don't allow crane boom or loads to pass over people, or endanger their safety. Remove all loose objects from load. All unnecessary personnel should leave the immediate area when crane is operating.
2. Do not allow anyone to ride on the hook ball, hook block or any part of the load or attachment for construction work or recreational activities. (This applies to recreational activities such as "bungee jumping" or "bungee cord jumping"). Cranes are intended to lift objects, not people. They are not elevators.
3. Do not carry passengers! There is only one seat and it is for the operator. Do not allow personnel to ride on the crane during operation or while traveling the crane. A fall from the crane can cause death or serious injury.



4. Always look before you back up, or better yet, post a signal person to guide you. Ensure the back up alarm is working properly. Use the horn as a signal. Use a code such as one beep – stop, two beeps – forward, and three beeps – backward. Ensure everyone on the job site knows the code.
5. Do not make a lift which is not in plain sight without a signal person. This can lead to an accident or crane damage.

Crane Inspections And Adjustments

1. Inspect crane daily. Do not operate a damaged or poorly maintained crane. Pay particular attention to the clutches, brakes, attachments, and wire rope(s). If a component is worn or damaged, replace it before operating.
2. Labels, decals, plates, etc. should be periodically inspected and cleaned as necessary to maintain good legibility for safe viewing. If any instruction, caution, warning, or danger labels, decals, or plates become lost, damaged, or unreadable, they must be replaced.
3. When performing repetitive lift applications, especially at or near maximum strength limited capacities, an inspection of the major structural areas of the crane, for cracks or other damage, should be conducted on a regular basis. (A non-destructive test such as magnetic particle or dye penetrant may even be considered.) Along with inspection for cracks and damage, frequently check the critically loaded fasteners, such as the turntable bearing mounting capscrews, to ensure they have not been stretched. Not only does frequent inspection promote safety, but it is also much easier and less expensive to perform a repair when a crack is small, before it has a chance to traverse through a structural member. Any sign of cracks or damage must be repaired before continuing operations. Contact a Link-Belt Distributor for repairs.
4. When performing maintenance on the crane, do the following:
 - a. Fully retract the boom. Lower the boom to the limit of the boom hoist cylinder. Ensure the boom or the cylinder does not hit the carrier.
 - b. Shutdown the engine, but leave the key in the "ON" position, disengage the main pump (if equipped), and work all control levers back and forth to relieve pressure and relax the attachment.
 - c. If the above instructions cannot be followed, block securely under the attachment so it cannot move.
 - d. Bleed any precharge off the hydraulic reservoir before opening it or disconnecting a line.
 - e. Hydraulic oil becomes hot during operation. In some cases it becomes hot enough to cause serious burns. Be careful not to let hydraulic oil come in contact with skin.
 - f. Disconnect battery cables and remove ignition key so crane can't be started. Post warning signs in cab so no one will try to start the engine. Do not adjust, maintain, or repair a crane while it is in operation without visual and/or verbal contact with all personnel involved to ensure the safety of service personnel.



5. When making repairs, which require welding, use proper welding procedures. Also the following precautions must be taken:
 - a. All paint and acoustical material in the area should be removed to prevent burning them. The smoke and fumes from the burning paint and/or acoustical material can be very hazardous.
 - b. Turn the battery disconnect switches to the "OFF" position to protect any electronic equipment on the crane which may be affected by electric arc welding.
 - c. The welding ground cable should be attached to the portion of the crane being welded. If welding on the upper, ground on the upper. If welding on the carrier, ground on the carrier. Failure to take this precaution may result in electrical arcs in the turntable bearing.
 - d. The welding ground cable should always be connected as close as possible to the area being welded. This minimizes the distance that electricity must travel.
 - e. Disconnect computers and other electronic equipment (such as rated capacity limiters, Telematics module, and engine computers) to prevent damage. Contact your Link-Belt Distributor for proper procedures.
 - f. Remove all flammables from the proximity of the welding area.

Operator's Manual

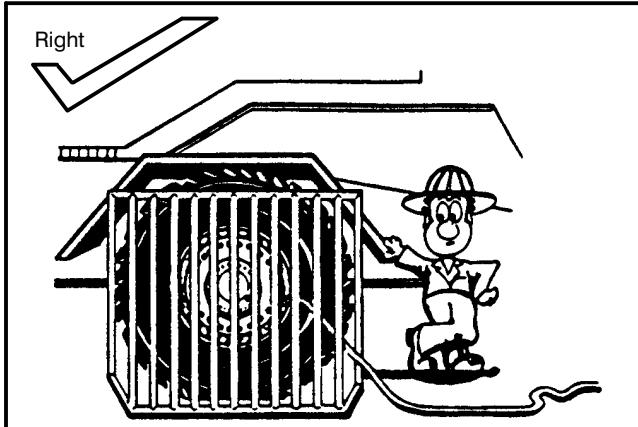


Figure 1-22
Use a guard when inflating tires.

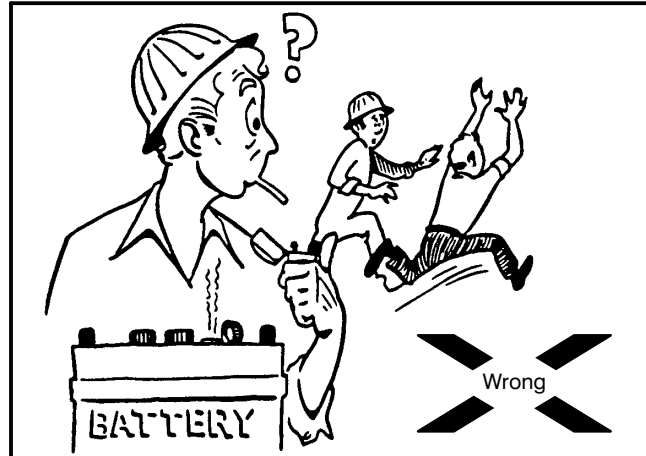


Figure 1-23
Do not use an open flame near the battery.

6. Use extreme caution when removing radiator caps, hydraulic pressure caps, etc. They can fly off and hit you, or you could be burned by hot oil, water, or steam.
7. Keep the crane clean, in good repair, and in proper adjustment. Oil, grease, or tools left on the decks may cause falls. Improper adjustments can lead to crane damage, load dropping, or other malfunctions. After working on the crane, remove all oil, grease, and tools before resuming operation.
8. Keep all walking surfaces (steps, ladders, platforms, etc.) and non-skid materials on the crane clean. Non-skid materials are placed on the crane to assist operators and service personnel with safe access/egress to/from the crane and to/from adjustment and inspection areas. Do not allow non-skid materials to become contaminated with mud, snow, ice, oil, paint, wax, etc. Any contamination can cause the non-skid materials to become slick, reducing their effectiveness for safety while walking on the crane. If any non-skid materials become ineffective due to wear, age, or destroyed in any way, they must be replaced.
9. Use proper fall protection such as a fall arrest system are required by any applicable codes when working at elevated heights. Fall can lead to severe personal injuries and/or death.
10. Check tires daily for correct pressure. Do not stand in front of a tire when inflating it. The lock ring can fly off and injure you. Use a clip-on inflator, and stand aside. Use a guard in front of the tire.

11. When checking battery fluid level, use a flashlight, not an open flame. If the battery explodes, you can get acid in your eyes, which could cause blindness. Don't check battery charge by shorting across posts. The resulting spark could cause the battery to explode. Check with a tester or hydrometer. Don't smoke near batteries.
12. When using jumper cables to start an engine, ensure the negative post is connected to a ground stud, and positive post to positive post. Any spark could cause the battery to explode. Refer to "Jump Starting The Crane" in this Section of this Operator's Manual for the proper procedure.
13. Test the automatic winch brake by raising the load a few inches and holding. It should hold without slipping. It takes more braking power to hold a load in the air when the drum is full of wire rope than when it is a few inches above the ground with only a few wraps on the drum.
14. Always reduce pressure in all hydraulic systems to zero before working on any part of the system. Pin sized and smaller streams of hydraulic oil under pressure can penetrate the skin and result in serious infection. Do not use your hand to check for leaks. If hydraulic oil does penetrate the skin, seek medical treatment immediately.
15. Use extreme care when working with circuits with accumulators. Check that hydraulic pressure is relieved before opening the circuit for repairs.
16. When setting pressures, never exceed the manufacturer's ratings. Always follow instructions exactly. Over pressurization can cause hydraulic component damage or failure of mechanical parts on the crane. Any of the above can lead to an accident.



WARNING

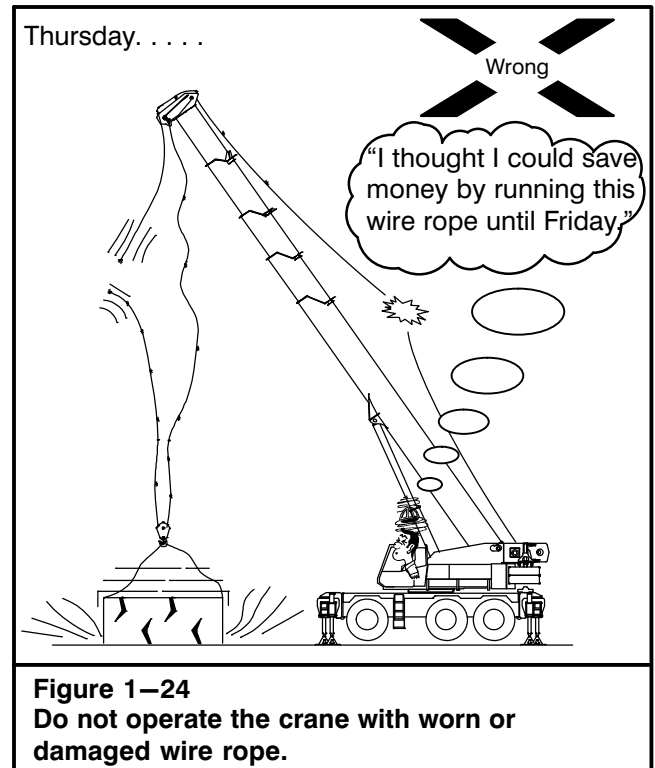
Battery posts, terminals, and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds. Wash hands after handling.

Wire Rope

1. Inspect all wire rope thoroughly. OSHA (Occupational Safety And Health Act) regulations state “a thorough inspection of all wire rope(s) shall be made once a month and a full written, dated, and signed report of the wire rope condition be kept on file where readily available.” A visual inspection must also be performed daily. Replace any worn or damaged wire rope. Pay particular attention to winch wire rope(s). Check end connections (pins, sockets, wedges, etc.) for wear or damage.
2. Use at least the number or parts of winch line specified on the Wire Rope Capacity Chart in the Crane Rating Manual to handle the load. Local codes may require more parts of line than is shown. Check code requirements and use them where applicable.
3. Non-rotating, rotation resistant, or spin resistant wire ropes are recommended for single part of line applications. This is of utmost importance for long fall hoist line applications. Only if certain criteria are met may a swivel hook ball be used with rotation resistant wire rope. Refer to “Single Part Line Hoisting” and “Hook Ball Usage With Rotation Resistant Wire Rope” in Section 5 of this Operator's Manual.
4. Do not handle wire rope with bare hands. Always use gloves to prevent possible injury from frayed or damaged spots in the wire rope.
5. Inspect head machinery and hook block often as damaged or deteriorating sheaves can cause unnecessary wear on the wire rope.
6. A swivel hook ball may be used with rotation resistant wire rope only if certain criteria are met. Refer to “Hook Ball Usage With Rotation Resistant Wire Rope” in Section 5 of this Operator's Manual.
7. When reeving wire rope on the crane, do not stand, walk, or climb on the boom or attachment. Use a ladder or similar device to reach necessary areas.

Crane And Area Clearance

1. Know your job site conditions. Familiarize yourself with work site obstructions and other potential hazards in the area which might lead to mishaps. Make any necessary arrangements to eliminate any potential hazards, if possible.
2. Erect barricades around the immediate work area to prevent unauthorized personnel from wandering onto the job site.



3. Ensure the work area is clear. Make sure to have proper clearance for the crane, boom, and load. Don't swing, travel, lift, or lower loads, raise or lower jacks, without first making sure no one is in the way. If your vision is obscured, locate a signal person so you can see them, and they can see all areas you can't. Follow their signals. Ensure you and the signal person understand each other's signals. See Hand Signals Chart in this Section of this Operator's Manual. Use the horn to signal or warn. Ensure everyone on the job site understands signals before starting operations.
4. When working inside a building, check overhead clearance to avoid a collision. Check load limits on floors or ramps so as not to crash through.
5. Don't operate close to an overhang or deep ditch. Avoid falling rocks, slides, etc. Don't park crane where a bank can fall on it, or it can fall in an excavation. Don't park where rain can wash out footing.
6. Watch the tailswing of the upper revolving frame and counterweight. Even though the original set-up may have been clear, situations change.
7. Do not store material under or near electrical power sources. Make material handlers aware of the dangers involved with storing material under power lines or in the vicinity of any other hazards.

Operator's Manual

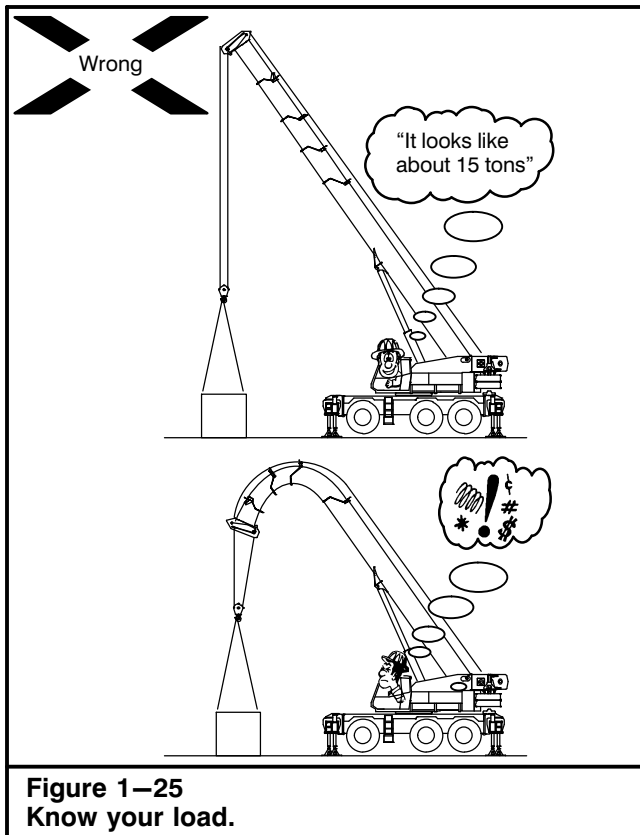


Figure 1-25
Know your load.

Weights, Lengths, And Radii

1. Know your load. Don't try to guess or estimate the load. Use a scale or a load indicating system to determine exact weight. Remember the weight being lifted includes the weight of any lifting slings or gear, the hook block, and any other weight on the hook. If lifting off the boom with the fly erected, the weight of the fly must also be considered as part of the load. (The Rated Capacity Limiter will automatically deduct the weight of the stowed fly to obtain the total allowable load.) The total load weight must never exceed the rated capacity of the crane, as listed in the Crane Rating Manual, for the position, boom length, load radius, and condition of operation being used. Remember – capacities in the Crane Rating Manual are based on ideal conditions:
 - a. Standing on firm, level surface.
 - b. Calm wind.
 - c. No side loads or out swing of load.
 - d. Good visibility.
 - e. Crane in top condition and equipped as when leaving the factory.

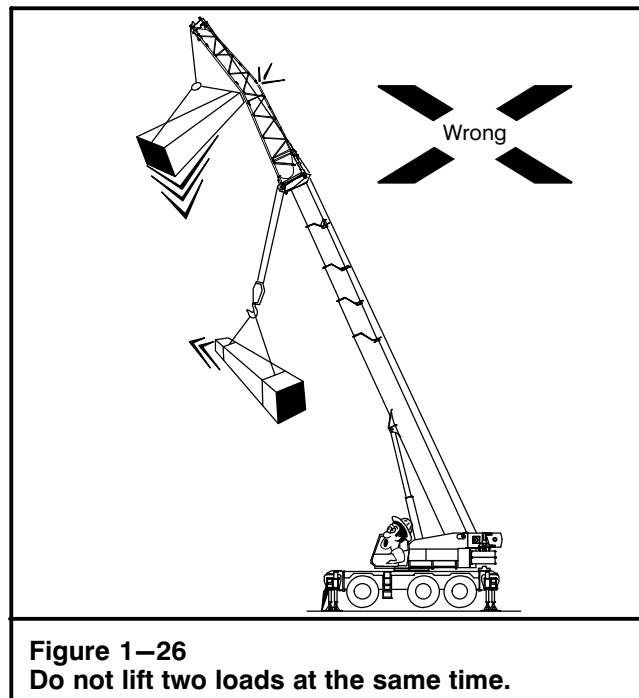
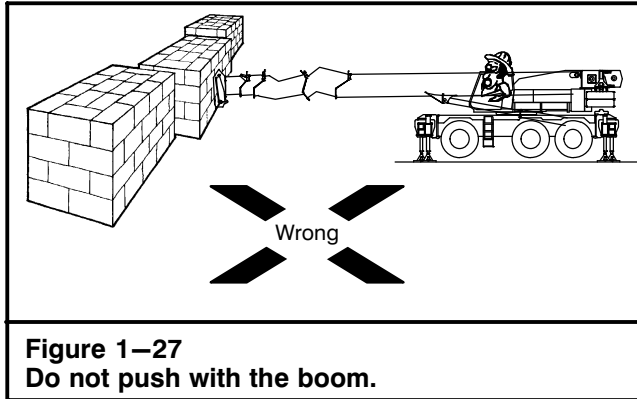


Figure 1-26
Do not lift two loads at the same time.

- When such conditions cannot be attained, loads being handled must be reduced to compensate. The amount loads are reduced depends upon how good or how poor actual operating conditions are. It is a matter of judgment and experience. Some factors which may require reduction of capacities are:
- a. Soft or unpredictable supporting surfaces.
 - b. Wind.
 - c. Hazardous surroundings.
 - d. Inexperienced personnel.
 - e. Poor visibility.
 - f. Fragile loads.
 - g. Crane in poor condition.
 - h. Condition and inflation of tires.

When in doubt, do not take a chance. Reduce ratings more than you think you need. Avoid working a crane in high winds. If you must work in a wind, reduce capacities to those listed in “Wind Speed Restrictions” in the Crane Rating Manual. Wind blowing against the load and the boom produces a side load on the boom and reduces its capacity.

When lifting loads, in a wind, which have large surface areas, such as building panels, the movement of the load may pose a danger to workers or building structures. Out swing of a load will increase the load radius, and may overload the crane. This could lead to boom failure or the crane tipping.



2. Do not lift two loads at the same time, even if the total load weight is within crane capacity. Loads on the boom and fly at the same time, stress the boom and drastically reduce its ability to handle loads. Your full attention cannot be given to both loads, creating a dangerous situation.
3. Lifts where two or more cranes work together can be hazardous and should be avoided. Such lifts should be made only under the direction of a qualified engineer. If a multiple crane lift is unavoidable, observe the following rules:
 - a. The cranes must be level and located on firm surfaces.
 - b. The cranes should be the same size and capacity, use the same boom length and be reeved similarly.
 - c. Cranes must be positioned so that each boom point is directly over its load attaching point. The winch lines must be vertical during all phases of the lift.
 - d. The rigging must be placed so each crane lifts a share of the load well within the crane's capacity.
 - e. Ensure that during handling more load is not transferred to any crane than it can handle.
 - f. Don't attempt to travel when making multiple crane lifts.
 - g. Coordinate plans with the other operator before beginning to lift.
 - h. Use only one signal person.
 - i. Use of an operable load and angle indicating system is desirable.
4. When operating off the main boom with the fly erected, deductions must be made for the fly weight. (The Rated Capacity Limiter will automatically deduct the weight of the stowed fly to obtain the total allowable load.) The weight of the fly, etc., must be subtracted to obtain a "NET" capacity. Failure to do so could result in an overloading condition and cause boom failure. Refer to the Crane Rating Manual for amounts to be deducted.

SAFETY INSTRUCTIONS

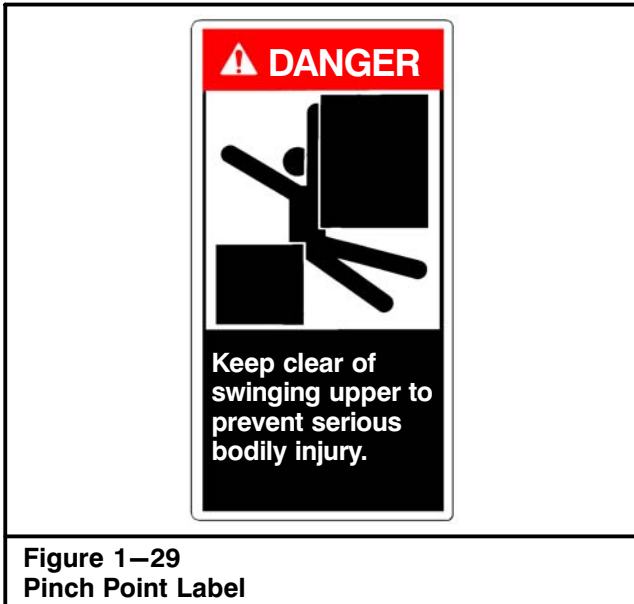
Operation under conditions which exceed listed capacities may result in overturning.

Swinging, extending, or lowering boom to radii where no capacities are listed may result in overturning even without a load.

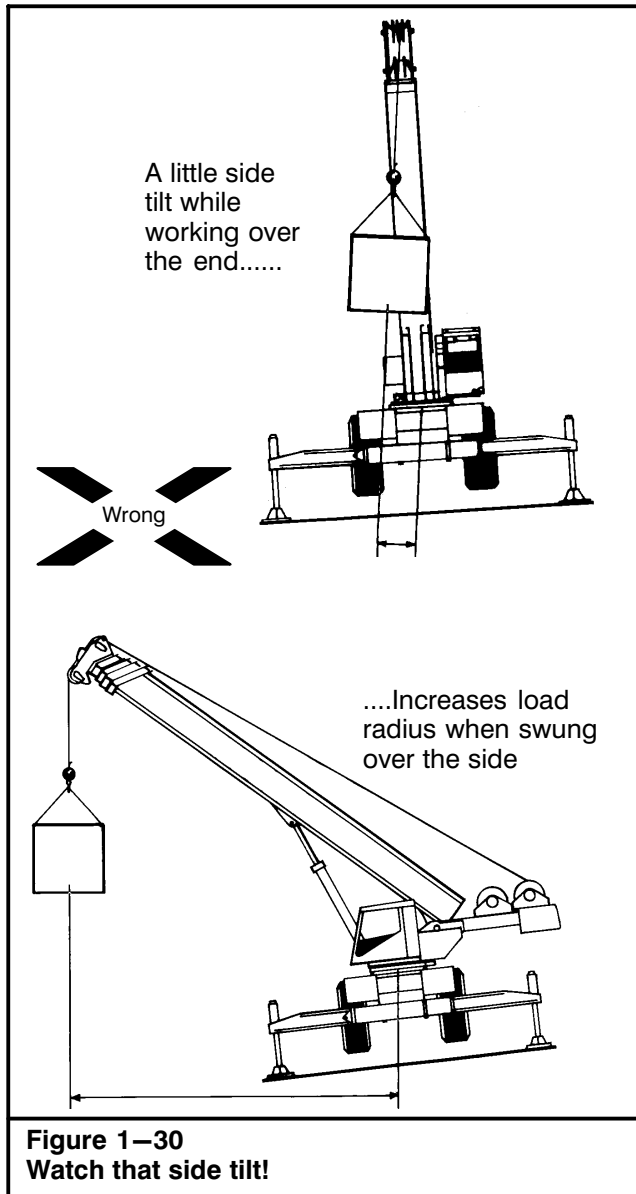
Figure 1–28
Safety Instruction Label

5. When operating off the main boom with the auxiliary lifting sheave installed, the weight of the auxiliary lifting sheave must be deducted. Refer to the Crane Rating Manual for amount to be deducted.
6. Some capacities on hydraulic cranes are based on strength of materials. In these cases, overloads will cause something on the crane to break, before it will tip. Do not use signs of tipping as a warning of overload.
7. Don't tie a crane down. Tying a crane down encourages overloading. Crane damage or injury could result.
8. Do not shock load and/or overload the crane at anytime. Shock loading or overloading the crane will reduce the fatigue life of crane components and could result in component failure.
9. When performing repetitive lift applications, especially at or near maximum strength limited capacities, be aware that these applications may reduce component life. These applications include repeated lifting (or lifting and swinging) of near 100% strength limited capacities and repeated lifting maximum moment loads. These applications may fatigue the major structural portions of the crane. Although the crane may not break during these applications, they can reduce the fatigue life and shorten the service life of the crane. To improve the service life, while performing repetitive lift applications, consider reducing the capacities to 70% of maximum strength limited capacities to reduce fatigue cracking. Frequently perform a thorough inspection of all the structural areas of the crane. Any sign of cracks or damage must be repaired before continuing operations. Contact a Link-Belt Distributor for repairs.
10. Always refer to the Crane Rating Manual after changing the arrangement of the attachments for the correct lifting capacities.

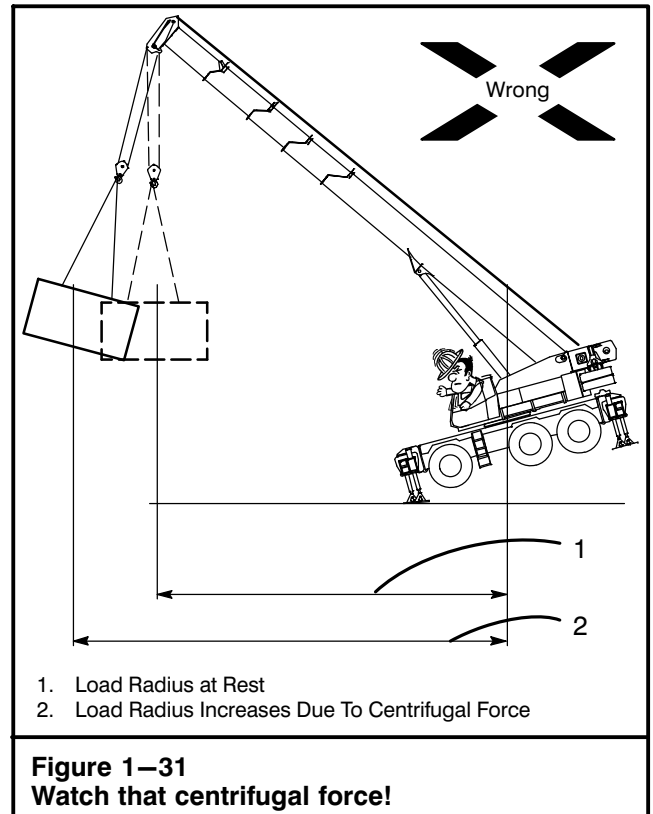
Operator's Manual



11. The boom must be extended in the correct manner before making a lift. The capacities listed in the Crane Rating Manual for this crane are based on the boom sections being extended in accordance with boom modes as selected through the RCL System.
12. Do not use the boom to push or pull. It is not designed for this purpose. Such action can damage the boom and lead to an accident.
13. Know the load radius. Don't guess at it. Determine the load radius by using the boom angle indicator, the boom length indicator, and the Crane Rating Manual, or measure it with a steel tape. Remember – Radius is the horizontal distance from the centerline of rotation of the upper to the center of gravity of the load, when the load is hanging free.
14. Do not operate a hydraulic crane at radii or boom lengths where the capacity charts in the Crane Rating Manual show no capacity. Don't use a fly not designed with or for the crane. Either of the above can tip the crane over or cause attachment failure. In some cases, the crane can tip over with no load on the hook, forward or backward! Also, if the boom is fully extended at a low angle, the crane may tip until the boom touches the ground. In any of these cases, injury or crane damage could result.
15. When lifting a load with any crane, the load may swing out, or sideways. The load radius will increase. Due to the design of hydraulic crane booms, (cantilever boom, supported by cylinders and overlapping sections) this increase is much more pronounced. The increase or out swing of the load can overload the boom, and lead to boom failure or tipping. Also, movement of the load can cause it to hit something. Ensure the load being lifted will remain within capacity as it is lifted and the boom deflects.
16. When extending or lowering a boom with a load, the load radius increases. As the load radius increases, capacity decreases. If capacity is exceeded, the boom may bend or the crane may tip over. Sometimes at low angles, a hydraulic crane boom can be extended with a load, but cannot be retracted. This is because more power is available in the boom telescoping cylinders to extend than to retract. If an operator extends the boom under load, he may not be able to retract the boom and may get into a dangerous situation.
17. Know the boom length. Don't guess. Use of an incorrect boom length can cause an accident.
18. When lowering or retracting the boom, the load will lower. To compensate for this, the operator must hoist up on the winch wire rope. Otherwise, movement of the load may cause an accident. When extending the boom, the load will raise. The operator must hoist down the winch wire rope to keep the load in place. Extending the boom without winching down, can lead to "two blocking". This is when the hook block or the hook ball contacts the head machinery. Two blocking can lead to sheave or wire wire rope damage.
19. Pinch points, which result from relative motion between mechanical parts, can cause injury. Keep clear of the rotating upper or moving parts.
20. Lifting heavy loads can cause the crane to tilt or lean toward the load. When swinging a load from over the end to over the side, the tilt of the crane will increase. Since tilt acts to increase load radius, it must be compensated for when swinging the load. Swing slowly. Change boom angle (raise the boom) while swinging, to maintain a constant radius, and prevent in swing or out swing of load. If not, a dangerous condition could result.



21. The winch wire rope must be vertical when starting to lift. If not, the load will swing in, out, or sideways when lifted from the ground. The crane will lean toward the load when lifting heavy loads. This is caused by elasticity of the crane and the boom. This lean will increase operating radius so the load will swing outward when it clears the ground. This out swing is dangerous to anything in the path of the load, and because of the increase in load radius may overload the crane. To overcome this out swing, boom up as the load is lifted so winch wire rope(s) remain vertical. When setting the load on the ground, lower boom after the load touches down to avoid hook block swing when it is unhooked from load.



22. Watch out for centrifugal force when swinging a load. Swing gently. Centrifugal force tends to increase load radius. This increase in radius could overload the crane and cause crane damage or tipping. When stopping the swing, over swing of the load can side load the boom.
23. Keep the winch wire rope(s) as short as possible to prevent excessive swinging. Always use the shortest boom length which will do the job. Remember – the shorter the boom, the better the capacity.
24. Do not move a crane away from the load while handling near capacity loads. Due to load inertia (weight) the load will tend to stay in position when the crane starts to move, and then will swing in towards the crane. The inertia effect will tend to increase load radius and decrease stability. This could lead to boom failure or crane tipping.
25. Don't increase the counterweight. Don't add anything to the crane that will act as additional counterweight. Remember that anything which has weight, if carried behind the crane's center of gravity, acts as counterweight. Adding counterweight affects backward stability of the crane, particularly when working over the side. It also encourages overloading of the crane.

Operator's Manual

26. Working areas for cranes are defined per the Working Areas chart in the Crane Rating Manual. Permissible loads, per the Crane Rating Manual, will vary from lifting quadrant to lifting quadrant. The operator must ensure capacity ratings are not exceeded regardless of which quadrant he is operating in, or when swinging from one quadrant to another.
 27. When working on tires, the tires must be inflated to pressures shown on the Tire Inflation label located on the left side of the hydraulic reservoir.
 28. Prior to lifting any loads, inspect the boom or boom and fly combination to ensure they are straight. The heat from the sun may distort the boom due to temperature differential on the sides of the boom. Reposition the boom to allow the thermal effects from the sun to equalize the temperatures of the side walls of the boom to eliminate the distortion before lifting a load. Refer to "Boom Distortion Due To Thermal Effects Of The Sun" in Section 1 of this Operator's Manual for additional information.
- g. Keep all personnel clear of crane and load. Be prepared to set load down quickly at any time.
 - h. Fully extend outrigger beams. Extend or retract jacks until pontoons just clear the ground.
 - i. Check clearance for the extra width of the crane with the outriggers extended. Outrigger beams or pontoons must not hang on any obstruction.
 - j. When making lifts on tires, inflate tires as shown on the Tire Inflation label located on the left side of the hydraulic reservoir.
 - k. See "Pick And Carry Operation" in this Section of this Operator's Manual for more details.
2. When traveling on the highway, road the crane safely. Watch for narrow bridges and low clearances. Check load limits, heights, width and length restrictions in the area you are traveling. Make sure the crane complies with all regulations.
 3. When roading the crane, note the following:
 - a. Operate with lights on. Use proper warning signs, flags and other devices. Use an escort service if required.
 - b. Engage travel swing lock. Release the swing park brake and 360° swing lock (if equipped).
 - c. Tie down or otherwise restrain the hook block and/or hook ball.
 - d. Check for maximum allowable travel speed and any other travel limitations. Don't exceed these maximums. Crane damage or an accident could result.
 - e. Inflate tires as listed in Tire Inflation in the Crane Rating Manual or on the tire inflation label.
 - f. Fully retract all outriggers.
 - g. Remove all pontoons from the outrigger jacks and store them properly.
 - h. See "Traveling The Crane" in this Section of this Operator's Manual for more details.
 4. If the crane must be towed, position the transmission to neutral and move slowly. Slowly take up slack in the wire rope or chain. Don't jerk, the chain or wire rope may break. Keep the chain or wire rope tight while towing. See "Towing The Crane" in this Section of this Operator's Manual for more details.

Traveling

1. Traveling with a suspended load should be avoided if possible. It is especially hazardous when terrain is rough or irregular, on a side slope, or in a hilly area. When traveling with a load, observe the following rules:
 - a. Use a hand line to control the load and reduce load swing.
 - b. Travel by the smoothest, most level route. If a smooth, level route is not available, don't travel with a suspended load. Grade the route to provide a smooth, level path. If it is not possible to grade the route, move the load by stepping. Level the crane on outriggers, lift the load and set it down ahead of the crane. Travel the unloaded crane beyond the load, level the crane on outriggers, lift the load, swing and set it down farther along the route. Continue this procedure until the load is at its destination.
 - c. Carry loads as close to the ground as possible.
 - d. Do not allow side swing of the load.
 - e. Don't attempt to carry loads which exceed the crane's rating. Refer to On Tires and Pick And Carry capacities shown in the Crane Rating Manual.
 - f. Don't travel with a load on soft ground. If the crane sinks into ground, stability can be affected to the point of tipping the crane.

Leaving The Station

1. Do not get on or off a crane in motion. Use the grab handles and ladders when climbing on or off the crane. Remain in three point contact with the crane at all times (two hands and one foot or two feet and one hand).
2. Whenever an operator leaves the control station for any reason, the following must be done:
 - a. Lower the load to the ground.

- b. Tie down the hook block and/or hook ball. Do not leave them where the wind could swing them to cause damage to the attachment and/or nearby objects.
 - c. Engage swing lock. Engage the park brake. Shutdown the engine and remove the keys.
 - d. Do not depend on a brake to suspend a load unless the operator is at the controls, alert and ready to handle the load. Brake slippage, vandalism, or mechanical malfunctions could cause the load to drop.
3. Do not leave crane unattended with engine running.
 4. When changing work shifts notify the next operator of any changes or problems with the crane.
 5. Hydraulic cylinders, left extended under load, often-times have a tendency to drift in (retract) due to internal fluid passage in the cylinders and/or control valves. Do not shutdown the crane and leave it unattended for extended periods of time, i.e. overnight, with the boom positioned over anything or the crane itself that the boom could damage if it should lower. For instance the boom hoist cylinder may drift allowing the boom to lower and damage the engine hood. Position the boom over the front to avoid the engine hood on the rear of the crane.

Personnel Handling Guidelines

Introduction

The following information is intended to provide Link-Belt's recommended minimum requirements that must be followed when handling personnel with a personnel basket or work platform (hereafter referred to as a work platform) suspended by wire rope from the boom of Link-Belt cranes. These requirements are based upon several sources and are put forth in recognition of current industry practices. However, safety, when handling personnel, remains the full responsibility of job site management and is dependent upon the responsible action of every person on the job involved in the related work.

This information is intended to supplement and not to supersede or replace any more restrictive federal, state, or local regulations, safety codes, or insurance requirements. It is intended to serve users of personnel work platforms in achieving the following objectives.

1. Reduce risk of personal injuries to users and the public.
2. Inform users of their respective responsibilities.
3. Provide standards of equipment requirements.
4. Provide standards for tests and inspections.
5. Provide standards of operation to promote safety.

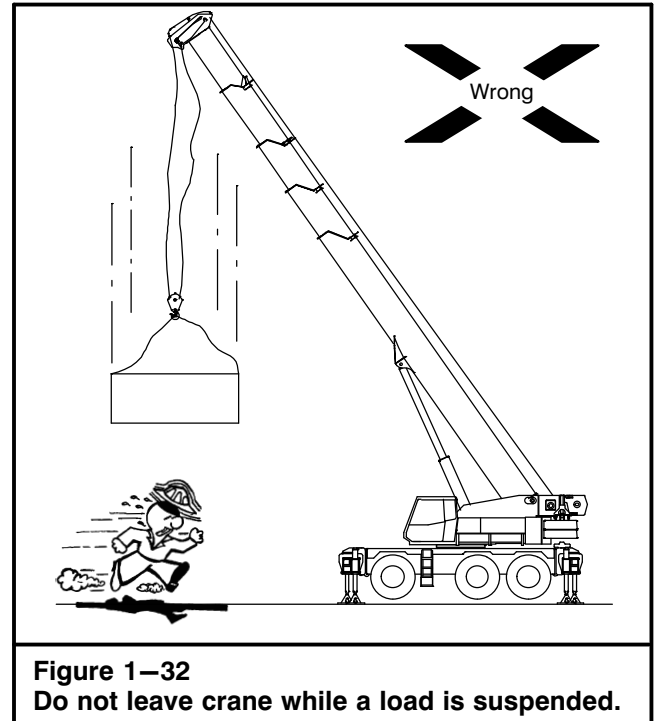


Figure 1-32
Do not leave crane while a load is suspended.

Link-Belt cranes are designed and intended for handling material. They are not normally equipped with secondary systems or other devices required by personnel lift or elevator standards and are not intended for handling personnel for construction or amusement purposes. Use of cranes for these purposes is hazardous and is not recommended by Link-Belt. However, Link-Belt understands that circumstances may occur (in construction work) when lifting or lowering personnel on a materials handling crane load line is the only or the least hazardous method available to position personnel. In fact, Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA) Part 29, CFR 1926.1431 states "The use of equipment to hoist employees is prohibited except where the employer demonstrates that the erection, use, and dismantling of conventional means of reaching the work area, such as personnel hoist, ladder, stairway, aerial lift, elevating work platform, or scaffold, would be more hazardous, or is not possible because of the project's structural design or worksite conditions."

Much corollary and supplementary information is contained within the following resource documents pertaining to both cranes and personnel work platforms. Job site management must ensure all requirements listed in these resource documents are followed for all personnel handling operations.

- American National Standards Institute Reference – ANSI Standards A10.28, A92.2, A92.3, B30.5, and B30.23.

Operator's Manual

- Power Crane and Shovel Association (PCSA) Bureau of the Association of Equipment Manufacturers (AEM) Reference – PCSA Standard No. 4.
- American Petroleum Institute (A.P.I.) Specification 2C.
- OSHA Part 29, CFR 1926.1431 Cranes and Derricks.

Authorization

Authorized use of a work platform may be permitted only after the following on-site procedures have been performed:

1. A competent person on the job site (job site manager) specifically responsible for the overall work function to be performed has determined that there is no practical alternative means to perform the needed work and has authorized a personnel lifting operation.
2. For each instance of such lifting, a competent person responsible for the task has attested to the need for the operation by issuing a written statement describing the operation and its time frame and itemizing that each of the on-site authorization requirements has been met. The written statement, after being approved by a qualified person, shall be retained at the job site. (Refer to “Personnel Handling Pre-Lift Check List For Link-Belt Cranes” in this Section of this Operator's Manual for a sample check list.)
3. Review of crane inspection records has been conducted to ensure the crane being used meets applicable provisions in ANSI B30.5 and B30.23.
4. Review of the work platform inspection records and specifications has been conducted to ensure it meets applicable design standards (refer to ANSI A10–28).
5. Review of the personnel lifting operation practices specified in these instructions have been conducted with job site managers and crane operator(s), foreman, designated signal person, personnel to be lifted, safety supervisor, and any other person(s) who has jurisdiction over the operation to ensure that they are aware of the hazards of the operation and they are aware of provisions of these instructions that must be adhered to before and during the personnel lifting operation.

Equipment

1. The crane system shall be equipped with the following:

- a. A fully functional working operational aid such as a Rated Capacity Limiter (RCL) system – A system consisting of devices that sense crane loading, boom length (extendable booms only), boom angle, and also automatically provide an audible/visual signal when the loading conditions approach, reach, and/or exceed the rated capacity values. When the Actual Load exceeds the Rated Capacity, the system supplies a signal to a function cutout system. The operational aid shall be equipped with these additional devices:
 1. Anti-two block device to prevent damage to the hoist wire rope, other crane components, or attachments, and subsequent endangerment of personnel.
 - It is required that the anti-two block device warn both audibly and visually as well as have the capability to cutout the controls/functions that may cause a two block condition.
 2. Boom angle indicator.
 - Cranes with extendable booms must utilize a boom angle indicator having “high and low” set points and audible/visual alarm(s) capable of activating function cutouts.
- b. Boom hoist and load line shall have power lowering and raising and shall have an automatic brake which is applied when the applicable control is in neutral, or when the anti-two block device is actuated.
- c. If the crane is equipped with a “free-fall” hoist, steps shall be taken to ensure its use is not possible during the use of the work platform. (Note: A.P.I. applications do not permit the crane to be equipped with free-fall.)
- d. Each crane shall have a mechanical swing park brake or swing lock capable of being set at any swing position, and shall have a variable swing brake or swing controls capable of stopping the upper swing motion smoothly. The swing brake must be properly maintained at all times to ensure its holding capability.

Note: All operational aids and equipment must be maintained in operable condition. Alternative measures are not permitted.

Operator's Manual

Telescopic Booms	Main Boom Head Sheaves	Auxiliary Head Sheaves	Fixed Fly Sheave	
	Allowed	Allowed	Allowed	
	Offset Fly Sheave	Offset Fly With Extension(s) Sheave	A-Frame Jib Sheave	
	Allowed	Allowed	Not Recommended	
Conventional Lattice Tubular or Angle Booms	Main Boom Head Sheaves	Tip Extension Sheaves	Jib Head Sheave	
	Allowed	Allowed	Allowed	
Luffing Attachments	Luffing Boom Auxiliary Head Sheaves	Midfall Sheaves	Luffing Jib Head Sheaves	Fixed Jib Head Sheave
	Not Recommended	Allowed	Allowed	Not Recommended
Lifting Sheaves For Personnel Handling With Suspended Work Platforms				

2. The work platform shall be designed by a qualified engineer competent in structural design. Its maintenance, and its attachment to the crane load line, is the responsibility of the job site management. Their arrangement shall comply with the following as a minimum:
 - a. The work platform harness must be of sufficient length to prevent any portion of the work platform or the harness from coming in contact with the boom at any working boom angle.
 - b. Audible and visual alert systems shall be provided to the personnel in the work platform to signal for assistance in the event of an emergency.
 - c. Hooks on hook block assemblies, hook ball assemblies, or other assemblies, shall be of a type that can be closed and locked, (with a working safety latch) eliminating the hook throat opening, and shall be full load-bearing, and contain a manual trigger release.
3. No unauthorized alterations or modifications are allowed to be made to the basic crane.

Maintenance, Lubrication, And Adjustments

1. The crane operator must have a complete understanding of the crane's maintenance, lubrication, and adjustment instructions as outlined in this Operator's Manual.
2. The crane shall be maintained, lubricated, and adjusted, by a designated person, as specified in this Operator's Manual.
3. The crane and work platform decals must be understood and maintained.
4. All decal precautions and instructions shall be strictly observed.

Inspection And Rigging

1. The lift crane and work platform shall be inspected immediately prior to commencement of operation. (Refer to the Crane Operator's Manual and ANSI B30.5, Section 5, Section 5–2.1.2 and 5.2.4, and ANSI B30.23 for the required inspection procedures for the crane. Refer to ANSI A10–28 for inspection procedures required for the work platform.)
2. The inspection shall be performed once daily when the crane is being used in work platform service or each time the crane is converted from material lifting to personnel handling operation. In the event the operator is replaced, a new inspection is required. Written documentation of all inspections must be kept on the job site during personnel handling operations.
3. Inspect the crane and work platform for any loose, damaged, or missing components.
4. Any structural or functional defect which adversely affects the safe operation of the lift crane shall be corrected before any operation utilizing a work platform begins or continues.
5. The hoist drum shall have at least three full wraps of wire rope remaining on the drum at all times when using a work platform.
6. Minimum load hoist and boom hoist wire rope design factors for the combined weight of the lift attachments, work platform personnel, and tools shall be 10:1 for "Non-Rotating" and "Rotation Resistant" wire rope(s). All other wire rope types require a 7:1 design factor. (Note: A.P.I. applications require 10:1 design factor for all wire rope construction.)
7. The work platform shall be suspended from a wire rope that is reeved from an allowed lifting sheave. Refer to "Lifting Sheaves For Personnel Handling With Suspended Work Platforms" chart to determine the allowed sheave(s).

Operator's Manual

8. Inspect the wire rope(s), sheaves, hoist drum brakes, and other mechanical and rigging equipment vital to the safe operation of the crane.
9. Ensure that all wire rope sockets and dead end lugs are properly installed and are in good working condition.
10. Ensure that all wire rope guards are in good working order and that they are properly installed and adjusted to prevent wire rope from jumping off sheaves.
11. Inspect all structural members of all boom sections, fly sections, luffing jib sections, and live mast, as equipped.
12. In addition to other regular inspections, visual inspection of the crane and work platform shall be conducted immediately after testing and prior to lifting personnel. The following inspections shall be conducted on extendable booms prior to lifting personnel:
 - a. Full power style booms:
 1. Inspection of all extension wire rope(s) at the access points in the boom where the end connections are visible – Refer to this Operator's Manual for inspection and adjustment procedures.
 - b. Pinning and latching style booms:
 1. Inspection of the latching mechanism, sensors, and hydraulic/electrical circuit at the access points.
 2. Inspection of all pins and pinning locations in the individual boom sections and at the fully retracted position.
 3. Verification of the accuracy of the boom length indicator. Refer to this Operator's Manual for the procedures.
13. The following inspections shall be conducted on fixed length style booms prior to lifting personnel:
 - a. Inspection of all pendants, pendant links, pendant spreader bars, links, etc.
 - b. Inspection of all mechanical linkages, shafts, drums, etc.
14. A written record of all the above inspections must be maintained on the job site.

Crane Test Procedures

The test procedures listed below shall be conducted at the following intervals:

- Daily,
- At each job site before hoisting employees,
- After any repairs or modifications to the equipment,
- When an operator is replaced, and
- When, in the judgement of responsible job site management, or controlling entity, there has been a significant change in the conditions of the personnel lifting operation.

Note: No personnel are allowed to ride the work platform during any of the tests recommended in this Section of this Operator's Manual.

1. The work platform and rigging shall be proof tested to 125 percent of the work platform's rated capacity. (The proof test may be done concurrently with the trial lift by completing the following test procedures.) Do not exceed the rated lifting capacity of the applicable lift crane as listed on the crane capacity charts. (Refer to ANSI A10.28 for suspended work platform testing and inspection.)
 - a. This test load shall be tested for stability.
 - The operator and signal person shall conduct this test.
 - This test shall include movement of the work platform through its entire intended range of motion, simulating the specific operation to be undertaken.
 - A successful stability test must not produce instability of the crane or cause permanent deformation of any component.
 - b. This test load shall be raised and lowered at maximum power controlled line speed (NOT FREE-FALL). The acceleration must be smooth and the deceleration capability of the control/braking system shall be confirmed by bringing the work platform to a smooth stop. The work platform shall be held in a suspended position for a minimum of five minutes with the test load evenly distributed on the work platform. (This experience is intended to sharpen the skill of the operator in handling the work platform and to give the operator an opportunity to evaluate the crane's performance.) The work platform shall then be inspected for any evident sign of damage or defect.
2. All limiting and warning devices shall be tested by activation of each appropriate control function.
3. With pinning and latching style extendable booms, a visual inspection shall be conducted to verify that the boom extend pins are properly set in the extended boom sections.

Operator's Manual

4. At the beginning of each lift, the work platform must be hoisted a few inches (*mm*) with the personnel and materials/tools on board and inspected by a competent person to ensure;
 - The work platform is secure and properly balanced,
 - All wire ropes are free of deficiencies such as kinking, crushing, corrosion, etc.,
 - Any multiple part lines are not twisted,
 - The primary attachment is centered over the work platform, and
 - If any load wire rope is slack, it must be inspected to ensure that all wire ropes are properly seated on the drum and in the sheaves.
5. Any condition discovered during any of these tests/inspections that fails to meet requirements or may create a safety hazard, must be corrected before hoisting personnel.

Operation And Safety

1. This Operator's Manual for the crane shall be read and fully understood by operating personnel. The Crane Operator's Manual shall be available to them at all times.
2. Safety when handling personnel remains the full responsibility of job site management and is dependent upon the responsible action of every person on the job involved in the related work.
3. Mobile lift cranes shall be erected to obtain maximum crane stability. The crane must be level and on firm ground. It is recommended that the outriggers be fully extended and the tires must be clear of the ground before beginning any operation.
4. The operator shall not leave the operator's station when the work platform is occupied. The operator shall remain alert in a position of readiness at the work station with the engine running and the master clutch engaged, if crane is so equipped.
5. Unauthorized personnel shall not be in the operator's cab on the lift crane, or near the lift crane while a work platform is suspended from the load line.
6. Any operation in which a work platform is to be suspended from the load line shall be carefully planned by the operator, supervisory personnel, designated signal person, and personnel to be lifted prior to commencement of such operation. They are to be advised:
 - a. That the crane does not have safety devices normally used on personnel handling equipment.
 - b. That the safety of the operation depends on the skill and judgment of the crane operator and others present.
 - c. Of procedures to enter and leave the work platform and other safety procedures.
7. After positioning of the work platform:
 - a. All brakes and locks on the lift crane shall be set before personnel perform any work.
 - b. With pinning and latching style extendable booms, a visual inspection shall be conducted to verify that the boom extend pins are properly set in the extended boom sections.
8. Telescope operation is not recommended with any extendable boom with personnel in a suspended work platform.
9. A work platform attached to load line of lift cranes shall not be used for working on any energized electric power line, or any energized device or facility used for electric power generation or transmission. Minimum working clearance shall be at least twice that recommended for material handling operations in ANSI B30.5b Section 503.4.5 and ANSI B30.23.
10. The combined weight of the work platform, any attachment device, personnel, tools, and other equipment shall not exceed 50% of the lifting capacity of the applicable lift crane as listed on the crane capacity chart. (Note: A.P.I. applications require 25% of lifting capacity as the limit.)
11. Use caution when utilizing pendant supported lattice jibs on tubular or angle booms as the jib can drift backwards into the jib backstops under certain conditions. This is most likely with short jib lengths with minimum jib offset and maximum boom angle. Pay special attention to detect the possibility of jib drift during the work platform test lift. An additional test lift is recommended with an empty work platform when operation at or near these conditions.
12. The following actions and operations are strictly prohibited when working with personnel suspended in a work platform:
 - a. Cranes shall not travel while personnel are in the work platform.
 - b. No lifts shall be made on another of the crane's load lines with personnel suspended in a work platform.
 - c. No external load is allowed to be lifted by attaching it to the work platform.
 - d. Work platform lifts shall be a single crane operation. A work platform shall not be lifted using two cranes.
 - e. Hoisting of personnel shall be discontinued upon indication of any dangerous weather conditions, wind, or other impending danger.
 - f. The emergency manual mode operation of pinning and latching style extendable booms shall not be utilized.
 - g. Free-fall (if equipped) shall not be used.

Operator's Manual

13. Movement of the work platform with personnel shall be done in a slow, controlled, cautious manner with no sudden movements of the crane or work platform. Do not use high speed functions, if equipped.
14. Do not use multi-function crane operation. If load hoist, boom hoist, and swing functions must be used to position the work platform, perform each function individually.
15. Clear, unobstructed visibility between personnel on the work platform and the crane operator shall be maintained at all times except where a designated signal person has been assigned and positioned such that he is visible to both. Such designated signal person shall have no other duties to perform when personnel are in the work platform.
16. Voice communication between work platform personnel, the crane operator, and designated signal person, if assigned, shall be maintained.
17. If other cranes or equipment may interfere with the lifting of personnel, signals or other means of communication between all crane or equipment operators shall be maintained to avoid interference with individual operations.
18. If the work platform is not landed, it shall be tied to a structure before personnel mount or dismount the work platform.
19. Personnel in the work platform shall wear personal fall arrest systems. Anchors used for attachment of personal fall arrest equipment shall be independent of any anchors being used to support or suspend work platforms. Personnel shall keep all parts of body, tools, and equipment inside work platform during raising, lowering, and positioning.
20. Personnel shall always stand firmly on the floor of the work platform and shall not sit or climb on the edge of the work platform or use planks, ladders, or other devices for attaining a work position. (This does not apply to offshore personnel transfer baskets. Personnel must ride on the exterior of this type of personnel handling device to assure greater safety of the operation.)
21. When welding is done by personnel in the work platform, the electrode holders shall be protected from contact with metal components of the work platform. If electrically connected electrode holders contact work platform, work platform could be dropped due to burning/melting of wire rope(s) suspending the work platform.
22. A pre-lift meeting must be conducted with the crane operator, signal person, employee(s) to be hoisted, person responsible for the task to be performed, and anyone else that is directly involved with the lift (as applicable) to review all the requirements and procedures that must be followed to complete the lift.
23. Follow all procedures for determining the rated capacity and perform all testing as outlined in the Crane Operator's Manual, the Crane Rating Manual, and this Safety Manual.

Additional Requirements For Offshore Cranes

1. Link-Belt offshore cranes are designed to handle materials. However, due to the special conditions commonly existing offshore, the use of cranes to transfer personnel between vessels or from a vessel to a work platform is an established practice. The safety of the personnel, if a materials handling crane is used in transferring personnel, depends upon the skill and judgment of the crane operator and alertness of the personnel being transferred. Sea and weather conditions may create additional hazards beyond the skill of persons involved.

This operation is approved by the American Petroleum Institute (A.P.I.). By adopting procedures for this operation, the institute has determined that the transfer of personnel may be performed safely under certain offshore conditions. Therefore, whenever an offshore crane is used to transfer personnel, all persons involved in the operation must know and implement the A.P.I. procedures and verify that sea and weather conditions are within safe limits for the transfer.

In addition to all previous requirements in these Instructions, A.P.I. 2C requires the following:

- Boom and load hoists used shall be approved by the hoist manufacturer for personnel handling and shall be so indicated on their name plate.
- Refer to A.P.I. 2C Section 6 for further details and procedures.

Operator's Manual

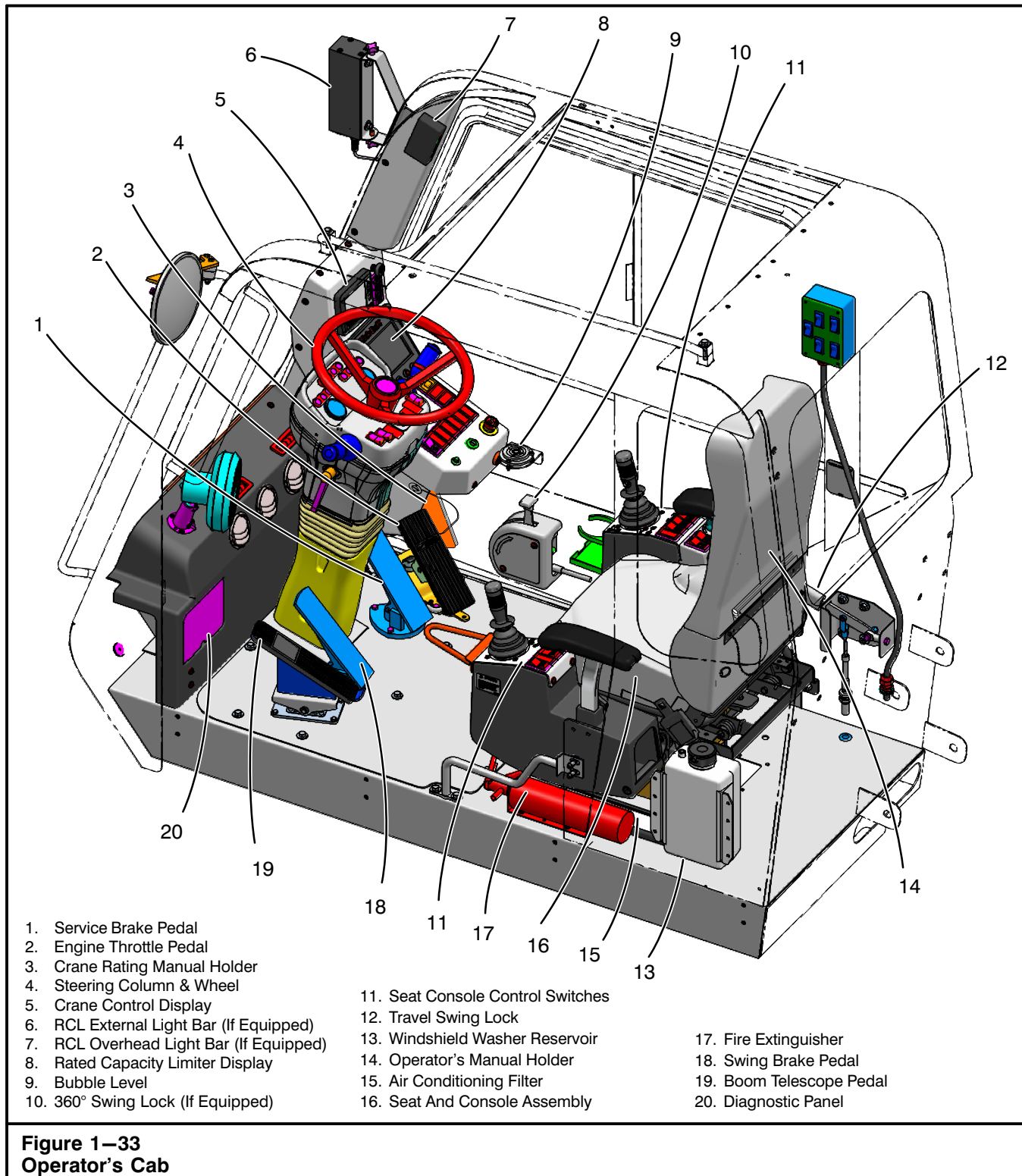
Personnel Handling Pre-Lift Check List for Link-Belt Cranes



1	<p>I am the designated person responsible for verifying that all safety requirements are met for this personnel handling operation;</p> <p>Name: _____ Title: _____</p> <p>Signature: _____ Date: ____/____/____ Initials</p>
2	I have verified that there are no conventional means to handle personnel for this operation.
3	I have a written statement authorizing personnel handling from a competent person on the job who accepts full responsibility, or I accept full responsibility for the operation.
4	The Crane Operator acknowledges that he has read and fully understands the Crane Operator's Manual and Crane Rating Manual. All personnel involved have been informed and understand the tasks required to complete the personnel lifting operation.
5	The crane has been maintained, lubricated, and adjusted by a designated person, as specified in the Crane Operator's Manual.
6	<p>The lift crane is equipped, and all devices operate properly as follows:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Anti-two block device with hydraulic cutouts • Power load raising and lowering with automatic brakes and function cutouts – Free-Fall (if equipped) shall not be used • Boom angle indicator with high and low set points and function cutouts • Boom length indicator (telescopic booms only) and function cutouts • Load Indicating System or Rated Capacity Limiter System • A variable swing brake or swing controls capable of stopping upper swing motion smoothly • A mechanical swing park brake or swing lock to hold the upper in position while personnel are working from the work platform • Hook block or hook ball being used can be closed and locked with a safety latch
7	A working audible and visual alert system is provided to the personnel in the work platform.
8	A mechanical and structural crane inspection has been completed by a designated person.
9	The wire rope used to lift the work platform is reeved from an allowed lifting sheave
10	Crane travel is not allowed with personnel in the work platform.
11	Telescoping the boom is not recommended with personnel in the work platform.
12	When handling personnel with pinning and latching style booms, it is recommended boom be kept in a pinned position. Inspections must be made to ensure boom extend pins are set.
13	All wire rope sockets and dead end lugs are properly installed and are in good working condition. All Wire rope guards are properly installed and adjusted to hold all wire rope(s) on the appropriate sheaves.
14	Voice communications between the Crane Operator and the personnel in the work platform are present and operational.
15	Fall arrest systems are present and in use by personnel in the work platform.
16	Weather and wind conditions are acceptable to safely perform the lift.
17	A Proof-Test/Trial Lift was completed with 125% of the work platform's rated capacity.
18	The total load being lifted will not exceed 50% of the standard lift crane capacity charts.
19	Cranes with outriggers have them equally extended with tires clear of the ground.
20	A Pre-Lift meeting was held with all appropriate personnel to review all aspects of the lift.

Note: This checklist is to be used as a supplement to (not a substitute for) the information and procedures supplied for personnel handling operations.

Operator's Manual



Operator's Cab

Several panels which contain the controls, switches, and gauges to operate and monitor crane operations

are mounted throughout the operator's cab. Refer to Figure 1–33. The following is a description of each control, switch, or gauge in each panel, along with an explanation of their function and/or operation.



WARNING

Read and understand all "Operating Safety" procedures as well as all other operating instructions in this Operator's Manual and the engine manufacturer's manual before attempting to operate the crane. This crane should only be operated by a qualified operator who has read and understood this entire Operator's Manual.

Fire Extinguisher

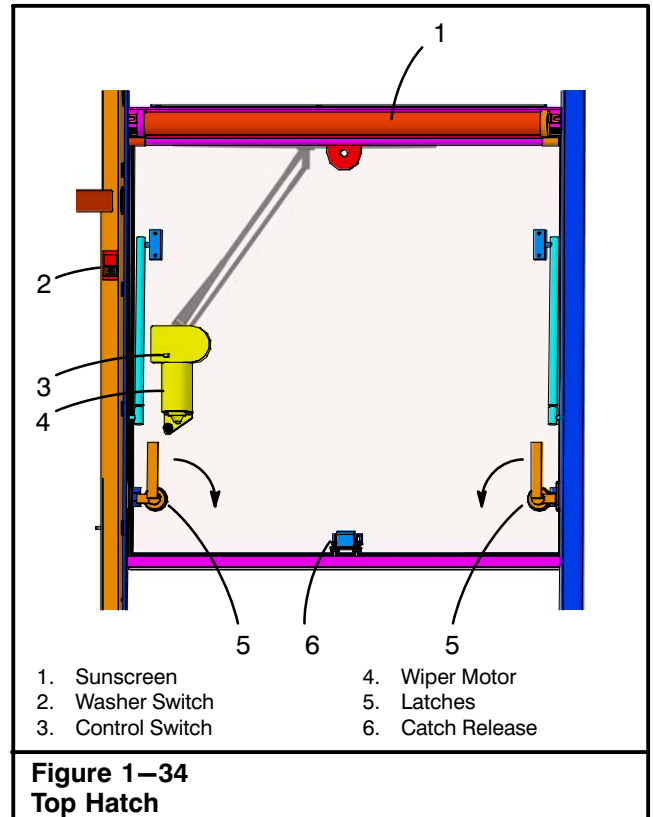
A fire extinguisher is mounted in the operator's cab below the left console. Refer to Figure 1–33. Raise the left console to gain access to the fire extinguisher. It is an A B C type fire extinguisher, meaning it is capable of extinguishing most types of fires. The operator should be familiar with its location, the clamp mechanism used to secure it in place, and foremost the operation of the device. Specific instructions, regarding operation, are given on the label attached on the fire extinguisher. A charge indicator on the fire extinguisher monitors the pressure within the tank. Check the indicator daily to ensure the fire extinguisher is adequately charged and ready for use.

Windshield Washer Reservoir

The reservoir for windshield washer fluid is mounted on the lower left rear of the operator's cab. Refer to Figure 1–33. Check the windshield washer reservoir daily. Visual inspection can determine if the washer fluid is adequate. Do not operate the washer when the reservoir is empty. Use specially formulated windshield washer fluid rather than water because specialty washer fluids contain additives that prevent freezing and dissolve road grime.

RCL Light Bar (If Equipped)

The operator's cab may be equipped with a light bar which gives a visual indication of how much of the crane's capacity is being used and the rate at which an overload is being approached. This light bar operates similar to the bar-graph on the RCL Display. Refer to "Rated Capacity Limiter" in this Section of this Operator's Manual for additional information.



Top Hatch

Top Hatch Wiper And Washer

The top hatch wiper is mounted in the top left side of the operator's cab roof. Refer to Figure 1–34. The switch for the top hatch wiper is on the wiper motor. Move the switch to the "ON" or "OFF" position as desired. To wash the window, push the washer switch to spray washer fluid on the top hatch window.

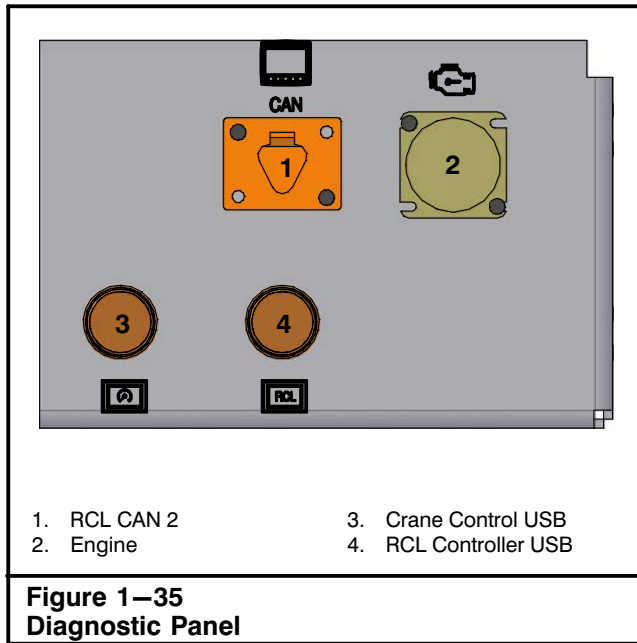
Top Hatch Window

The top hatch window can be opened to improve operator's cab ventilation. To open the top hatch window, rotate the latches, press the catch release, and push up on the hatch window.

Top Hatch Sunscreen

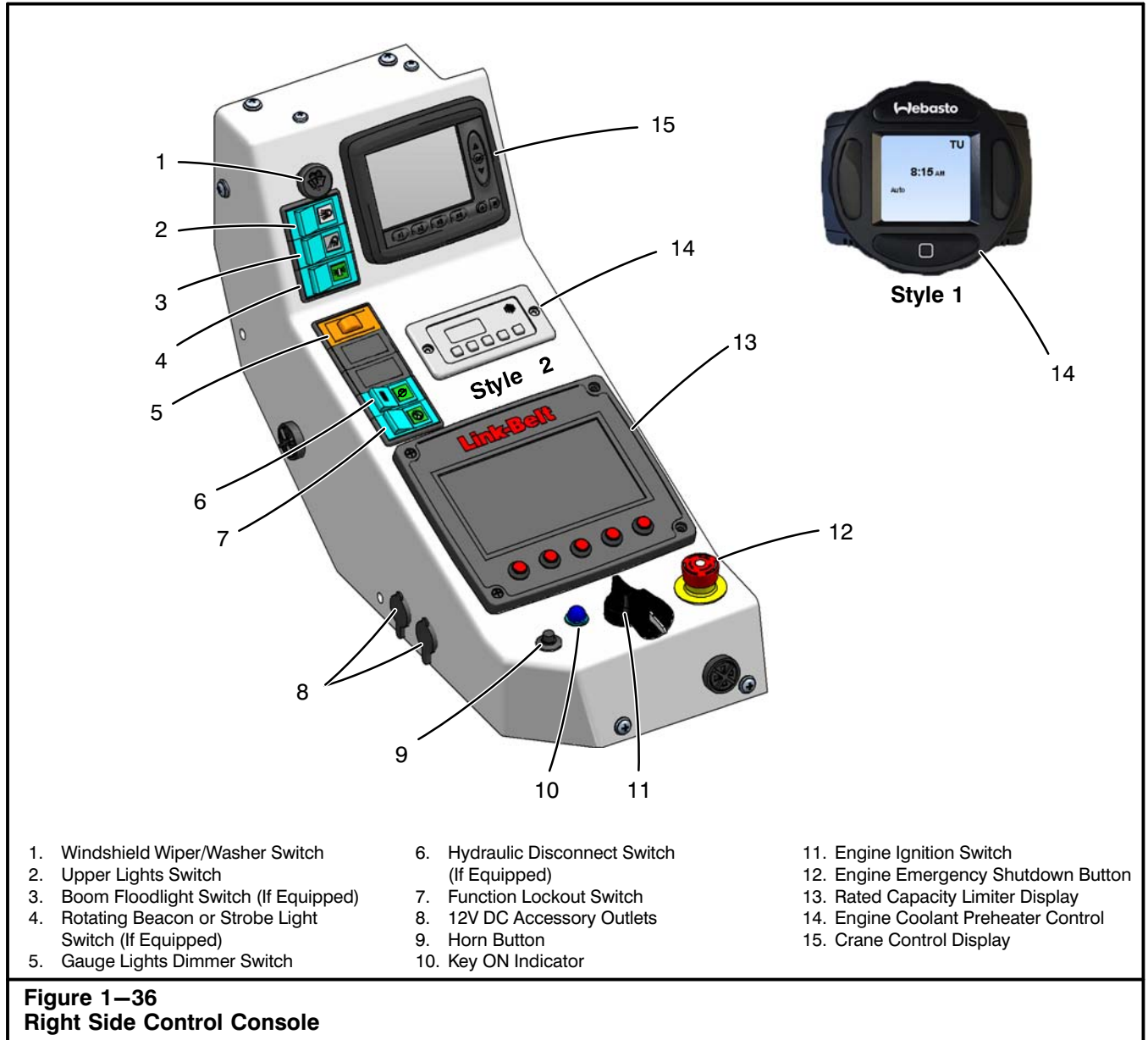
The top hatch is equipped with a roller type sunscreen to assist operator vision when looking up through the top hatch.

Operator's Manual



Diagnostic Panel

The Diagnostic Panel is in the lower left front of the operator's cab. Refer to Figure 1–33 and Figure 1–35. The central location allows easy access for technicians to retrieve fault codes and conduct systematic troubleshooting of various upper control systems. Remove the cover to gain access to the diagnostic connectors. A label which identifies each connector is on the back of the cover.



Right Side Control Console

A control panel is in the right front corner of the operator's cab that contains the following controls, gauges, and indicators. Refer to Figure 1–36.

1. Windshield Wiper/Washer Switch



Rotate the wiper/washer knob clockwise to activate the windshield wiper. Rotate the knob to the first detent for low speed wiper or to the second detent for high speed wiper. Rotate the knob counterclockwise to turn the wiper off. Pushing the knob sprays washer fluid on the windshield to clean the window.

2. Upper Lights Switch



This switch operates upper floodlights. Push the right side of the switch to turn floodlights on, left side to turn them off.

Operator's Manual

3. Boom Floodlight Switch (If Equipped)



This switch operates the boom floodlight. Push the right side of the switch to turn floodlight on, left side to turn it off.

4. Rotating Beacon or Strobe Light Switch (If Equipped)



This switch controls the operator's cab rotating beacon or strobe light. Push the right side of the switch to turn it on, left side to turn it off.

5. Gauge Lights Dimmer Switch

This switch is used to control the dash lights. Rotate the switch right to dim the dash lights or rotate left to brighten dash lights.

6. Hydraulic Pump Disconnect Switch (If Equipped)



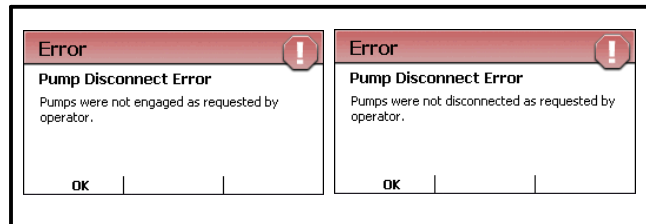
This switch is used to disconnect the hydraulic pump to aid in cold engine start-up. If desired press the right side of the switch to disconnect the pumps before starting the engine. The right side of the switch will illuminate to indicate the switch is in the ON position (pump disconnected). Once the engine is started and the crane is stationary, press the left side of the switch to the OFF position to engage the pumps.



WARNING

Do not operate the pump disconnect switch ON or OFF with the crane in motion. Loss of crane control can occur. Operate the switch only when the crane is stationary.

Note: If the pump disconnect switch is pressed to the ON or OFF position to engage or disengage the pumps, an error message may appear in the crane control display. If one of the following error messages appear, check the pump disconnect hydraulic control pressure.



Operator's Manual

7. Function Lockout Switch



This switch is used to disable hydraulic functions which are operated by the control levers and boom telescope foot pedal. Press the right side of the switch to disable hydraulic functions and to prevent inadvertent operation of these controls. To allow normal operation of the control levers and boom telescope foot pedal, press the left side of the switch. The right side of the switch will illuminate to indicate the switch is in the ON position.

8. 12V DC Accessory Outlet

Use this outlet for electrical accessories.

CAUTION

Do not connect an accessory to any part of the crane other than the accessory outlets or cigarette lighter. Major damage to the crane's electrical system may result. If it is necessary to do so, contact your Link-Belt Distributor.

9. Horn Button



Press this button to sound the horn. Before starting the engine, it is recommended to sound the horn twice in succession and wait 10–15 seconds while making a visual check to verify that there are no persons under or in close proximity to the crane. There also is a horn button on the right control lever.

10. Key On Indicator

This indicator will illuminate to alert the operator that the ignition key is in the ON position.

11. Engine Ignition Switch

The engine ignition switch is the conventional, key operated, automotive type. It controls engine off/on/start, accessories, and energizes the instrument panel in the operator's cab.

12. Engine Emergency Shutdown Button



The engine emergency shutdown button is used to shutdown the engine in emergency situations. Press the button to shutdown the engine. Reset the button by turning it counterclockwise.

13. Rated Capacity Limiter (RCL) Display

This displays the boom length, boom angle, load weight, etc. Refer to "Crane Monitoring System" in this Section of this Operator's Manual for complete operating instructions.

14. Engine Coolant Preheater Control

These controls are used to operate the engine coolant preheater if equipped. Refer to "Diesel Fired Engine Block Preheater" in this Section of this Operator's Manual.

15. Crane Control Display

The Crane Control Display will display various carrier engine data such as rpm's, coolant temperature, fuel level, etc. Refer to "Crane Control Display" in this Section of this Operator's Manual for operating instructions.

Operator's Manual

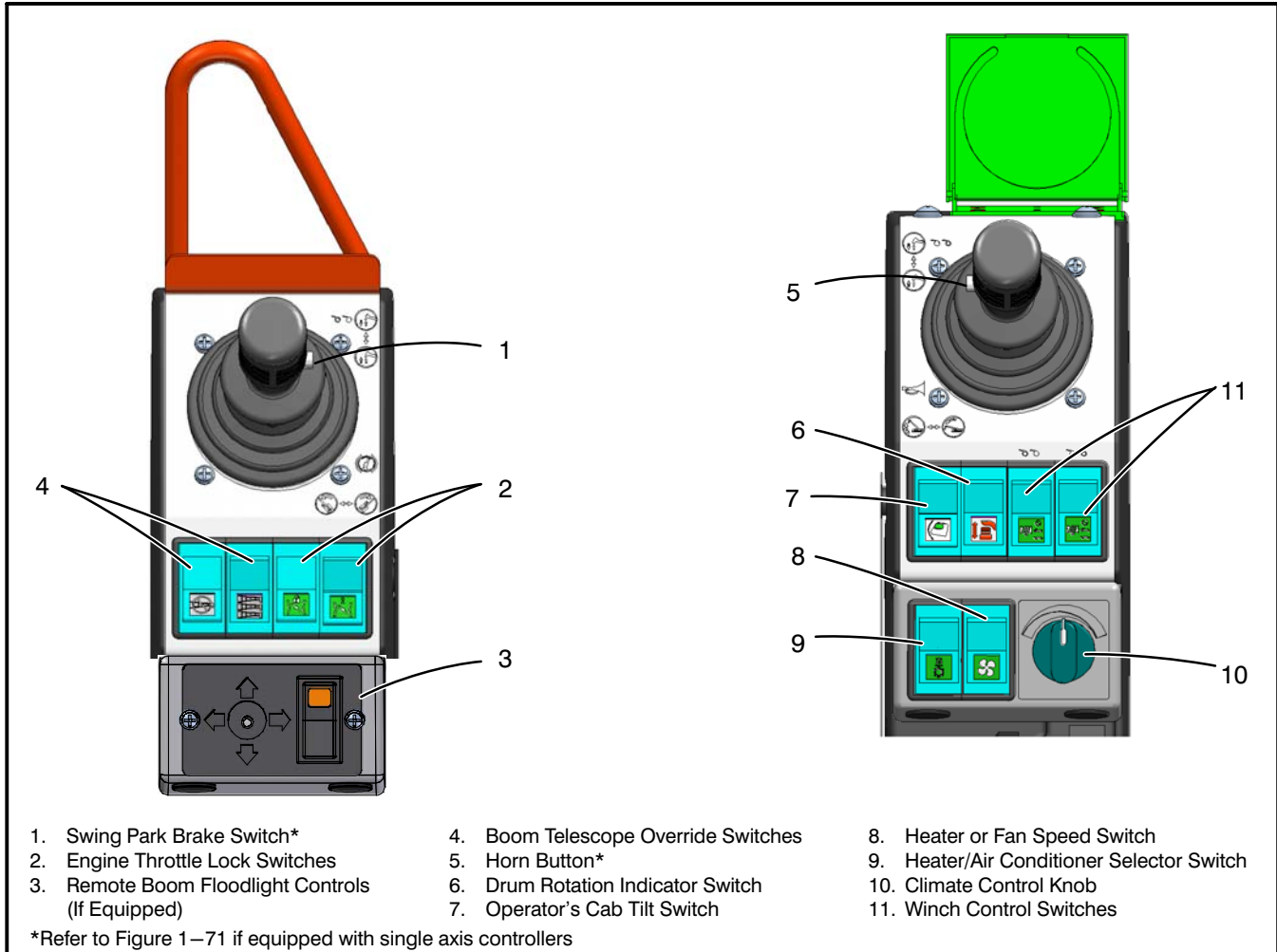


Figure 1-37
Operator's Cab Seat Console Control Switches And Levers

Operator's Cab Seat Console Control Switches And Levers

Control switches and levers are mounted on the left and right consoles of the operator's cab operator's seat. Refer to Figure 1-33 and Figure 1-37.

1. Swing Park Brake Switch



This switch is used to operate the swing park brake to hold the upper in any position over the carrier. An indicator light on the crane control display will illuminate to indicate the switch is in the ON position. Refer to "Swing System" in this Section of this Operator's Manual for complete operating procedures.

2. Engine Throttle Lock Switches



These switches are used to hold the engine at a constant speed. This provides the operator with more flexibility for certain job requirements. Refer to "Throttle Lock System" in this Section of this Operator's Manual for operating procedures.



3. Remote Boom Floodlight Controls (If Equipped)






Use the rocker switch to operate the boom floodlight. Push the top part of the switch to turn floodlight on, bottom part to turn it off. Use the directional control to move the floodlight up, down, left, or right.


Operator's Manual


4. Boom Telescope Override Switches



These switches are provided to manually override the telescope system when the boom is not extending/retracting proportionally in all boom modes. Use these switches for that purpose only. Press the  switch to enter telescope override mode. Use the  switch to select the boom sections to override as follows:

 Top position of the switch will override the inner and center sections allowing only the tip and outer sections to extend and retract.

 Center position of the switch will override the inner, outer, and tip sections allowing only the center section to extend and retract.

 The bottom position of the switch will override the center, outer, and tip sections allowing only the inner section to extend and retract.

5. Horn Button



Press this button to sound the horn. Before starting the engine, it is recommended to sound the horn twice in succession and wait 10–15 seconds while making a visual check to verify that there are no persons under or in close proximity to the crane. There also is a horn button on the right side control console.

6. Drum Rotation Indicator Switch



This switch is used to activate the drum rotation indicator system. To activate the system, press the bottom part of the switch. Press the top part of the switch to deactivate the system. The bottom part of the switch will illuminate to indicate switch is in the ON position. Refer to “Drum Rotation Indicators” in this Section of this Operator's Manual for complete operating procedures.

7. Operator's Cab Tilt Switch



This switch is used to tilt the operator's cab from 0 to 20 degrees above horizontal. Use this switch to improve vertical visibility and help to reduce operator fatigue due to neck strain when the load is high overhead.

8. Fan Speed Switch



This switch controls the the fan speed in the operator's cab.

9. Heater/Air Conditioner Selector Switch



This switch selects which system to operate. Press the top part of the switch to turn the heater on, bottom part to turn the air conditioning on. For windshield defogging, select air conditioning and adjust as necessary.

10. Climate Control Knob

Turn the climate control knob to adjust the temperature in the operator's cab.

11. Winch Control Switches



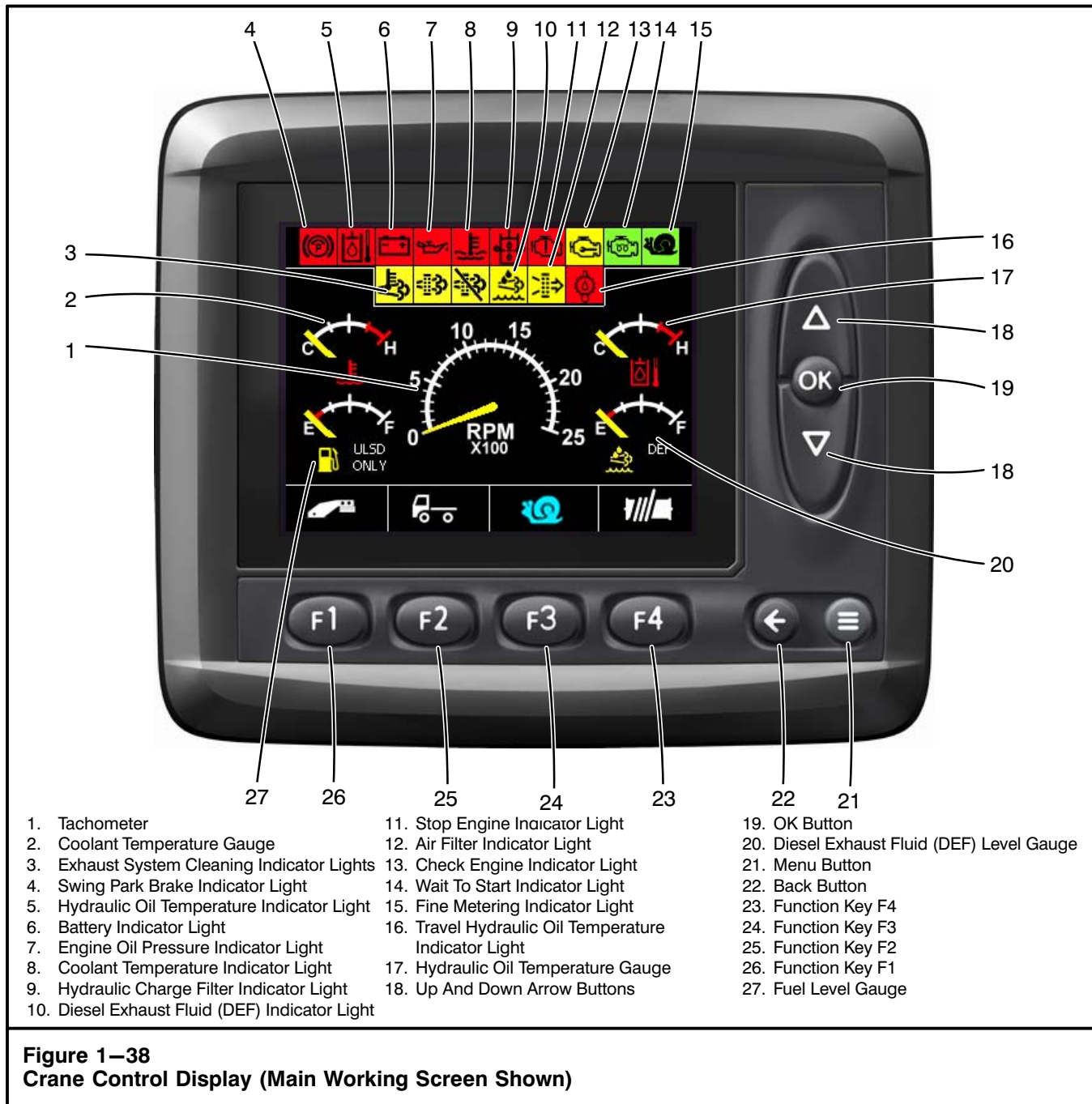
These switches are used to control engaging/disengaging the high speed hoist and disabling the front and/or rear winch. Refer to “Wire Rope Winch System” in this Section of this Operator's Manual for complete operating procedures.



WARNING

Do not activate the high speed hoist if the line pull exceeds the available high speed winch line pull. Crane damage can occur. Always refer to the Crane Rating Manual for the winch available line pulls before lifting or lowering any load.

Operator's Manual



- | | | |
|--|--|--|
| 1. Tachometer | 11. Stop Engine Indicator Light | 19. OK Button |
| 2. Coolant Temperature Gauge | 12. Air Filter Indicator Light | 20. Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF) Level Gauge |
| 3. Exhaust System Cleaning Indicator Lights | 13. Check Engine Indicator Light | 21. Menu Button |
| 4. Swing Park Brake Indicator Light | 14. Wait To Start Indicator Light | 22. Back Button |
| 5. Hydraulic Oil Temperature Indicator Light | 15. Fine Metering Indicator Light | 23. Function Key F4 |
| 6. Battery Indicator Light | 16. Travel Hydraulic Oil Temperature Indicator Light | 24. Function Key F3 |
| 7. Engine Oil Pressure Indicator Light | 17. Hydraulic Oil Temperature Gauge | 25. Function Key F2 |
| 8. Coolant Temperature Indicator Light | 18. Up And Down Arrow Buttons | 26. Function Key F1 |
| 9. Hydraulic Charge Filter Indicator Light | | 27. Fuel Level Gauge |
| 10. Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF) Indicator Light | | |

Figure 1–38
Crane Control Display (Main Working Screen Shown)

Crane Control Display

The Crane Control Module And Display contains the following controls, gauges, and indicators and is on the Crane Control Console. Refer to Figure 1–36 and Figure 1–38.

1. Tachometer



The tachometer registers engine speed in revolutions per minute (rpm). Refer to the engine manufacturer's manual for suggested operating speeds.

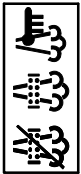
Operator's Manual

2. Coolant Temperature Gauge



This gauge registers the engine cooling system temperature. For proper cooling system operating temperature range, refer to the engine manufacturer's manual. If the cooling system overheats, reduce engine speed until the temperature returns to normal operating range. If engine temperature does not return to normal temperature, refer to engine manufacturer's manual. When the coolant temperature exceeds normal operating range an indicator light will illuminate, an alarm buzzer will sound, and the stop engine indicator light will illuminate. Also the indicator light within the gauge will change from white to red.

3. Exhaust System Cleaning Indicator Lights



These indicator lights will illuminate during various Exhaust System Cleaning operations. Refer to "Exhaust System Cleaning" in this Section of this Operator's Manual.

4. Swing Park Brake Indicator Light



This light will illuminate anytime the swing park brake is applied and the ignition is on.

5. Hydraulic Oil Temperature Indicator Light



This red indicator light will illuminate along with an alarm buzzer to alert the operator that the hydraulic oil exceeds the maximum operating temperature. If the system overheats, shutdown the crane immediately and correct the problem.

6. Battery Indicator Light



This red indicator light will illuminate along with an alarm buzzer to alert the operator that the charge or the voltage in the battery is not within normal operating range.

7. Engine Oil Pressure Indicator Light



This red indicator light will illuminate along with an alarm buzzer to alert the operator that the engine oil pressure is not within normal operating range. For proper oil pressure operating range, refer to the engine manufacturer's manual. If there is no engine oil pressure after 10–15 seconds of running time, shutdown the engine immediately and repair the problem to avoid engine damage.

8. Coolant Temperature Indicator Light



This red indicator light will illuminate along with an alarm buzzer to alert the operator that the engine cooling system temperature exceeds the maximum operating temperature. For proper cooling system operating temperature range, refer to the engine manufacturer's manual. If the cooling system overheats, reduce engine speed until the temperature returns to normal operating range. If engine temperature does not return to normal temperature, refer to engine manufacturer's manual. When the coolant temperature exceeds normal operating range, the stop engine indicator light will also illuminate.

9. Hydraulic Charge Filter Indicator Light



This red indicator light will illuminate indicating that the charge filter must be changed. Refer to Section 2 of this Operator's Manual

10. Diesel Exhaust Fluid Indicator Light



This yellow indicator light will illuminate when DEF level is low and flashes when the DEF level falls below a very low level.

11. Stop Engine Indicator Light



This red indicator light will illuminate along with an alarm buzzer and an error message pop-up screen to alert the operator of major engine problems. When this light illuminates stop operations immediately and shutdown the engine. Refer to the engine manufacturer's manual and determine the problem before any further operation of the engine.

Operator's Manual

12. Air Filter Indicator Light



This indicator light alerts the operator that the engine air filter is dirty and needs to be replaced.

13. Check Engine Indicator Light



This yellow indicator light will illuminate along with an error message pop-up screen to make the operator aware of minor engine problems. When this light illuminates engine operation may continue. However, refer to the engine manufacturer's manual and determine the problem as soon as possible to avoid prolonged operation of the malfunctioning engine which could develop into a major problem.

14. Wait To Start Indicator Light



This green indicator light will illuminate in cold weather when the ignition switch is in the "ON" position to alert the operator not to crank the engine. During cold weather conditions the light illuminates and an engine air intake heater will activate to heat the air before entering the engine air intake. When the air intake is warm enough the indicator light will go out and then the engine can be started. This aids in engine start-up in cold weather conditions and reduces white smoke after starting. For additional information refer to "Cold Engine Starting" in this Section of this Operator's Manual.

15. Fine Metering Indicator Light



This indicator alerts the operator that the fine metering system has been enabled. Refer to "Fine Metering Control" in this Section of this Operator's Manual.

16. Travel Hydraulic Oil Temperature Indicator Light



This red indicator light will illuminate when the hydraulic oil in the travel hydraulics has exceeded normal operating temperature. If this light illuminates, shutdown the crane immediately and correct the problem.

17. Hydraulic Oil Temperature Gauge



This gauge registers the hydraulic oil temperature in the main return line. Normal operating ranges vary with the oils used in different climates. Refer to Section 2 of this Operator's Manual for proper oil viscosities and operating temperature ranges. If the hydraulic oil exceeds the maximum operating temperature, the hydraulic oil temperature indicator light will illuminate and an alarm buzzer will sound. Also the indicator light within the gauge will change from white to red. If the system overheats, shutdown the crane immediately and correct the problem.

18. Up And Down Arrow Buttons



These are navigation buttons that are used to scroll through selections on a menu page.

19. OK Button



Pushing this button equals "enter". Saves the value or confirms the selection.

20. DEF Level Gauge



This gauge registers the level of Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF) in the DEF tank. The DEF tank capacity is 10 gal (37.9L). Refer to the engine manufacturer's manual for the correct grade of DEF. Also refer to "Diesel Exhaust Fluid" in this Operator's Manual for additional information.

21. Menu Button



Push this button to bring up a menu page.

22. Back Button



Push this button to return to the previous display page.

Operator's Manual

23. Function Key F4

F4 This function key will bring up the first layer/third wrap calibration screen (if equipped). Refer to "First Layer/Third Wrap Calibration" in Section 3 of this Operator's Manual.

24. Function Key F3

F3 This function key will bring up the fine metering screen. Refer to "Fine Metering Control" in this Section of this Operator's Manual.

25. Function Key F2

F2 This function key will bring up the travel display screen. Refer to "Travel Display Screen" in this Section of this Operator's Manual.

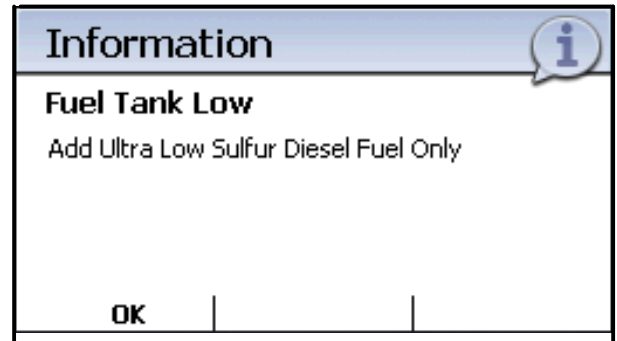
26. Function Key F1

F1 This function key will bring up the upper control screen. Refer to "Upper Control Screen" in this Section of this Operator's Manual.

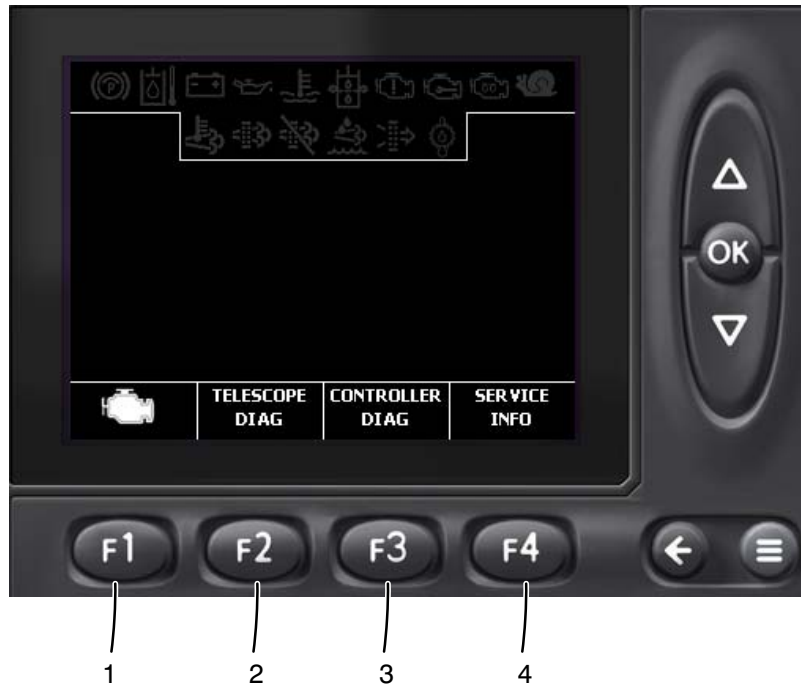
27. Fuel Level Gauge



This gauge registers the level of fuel in the fuel tank. The fuel tank capacity is 90 gal (341L). Refer to the engine manufacturer's manual for the correct grade of diesel fuel. When the fuel level reaches an eighth of a tank, the indicator light within the gauge will change from white to yellow and the pop up below will be displayed. Press the function key F1 (OK) to acknowledge pop-up and return to previous screen. Refer to "Lubrication Chart" in Section 2 of this Operator's Manual.





Operator's Manual



1. Function Key F1 – Engine Data And Exhaust System Cleaning Control
2. Function Key F2 – Boom Telescope Diagnostics
3. Function Key F3 – Controller Diagnostics
4. Function Key F4 – Service Info

Figure 1–39
Upper Control Screen

Upper Control Screen

The upper control screen can be displayed by pressing the function key F1 () from the main working screen. Press the back button () to return to main working screen. The following describes the function keys on the upper screen.

1. Function Key F1 – Engine Data And Exhaust System Cleaning Control Screen

F1 This function key will bring up the Upper Engine Data And Exhaust System Cleaning Control screen. Refer to “Engine Data And Exhaust System Cleaning Control Screen” in this Section of this Operator’s Manual.

2. Function Key F2 – Boom Telescope Diagnostic

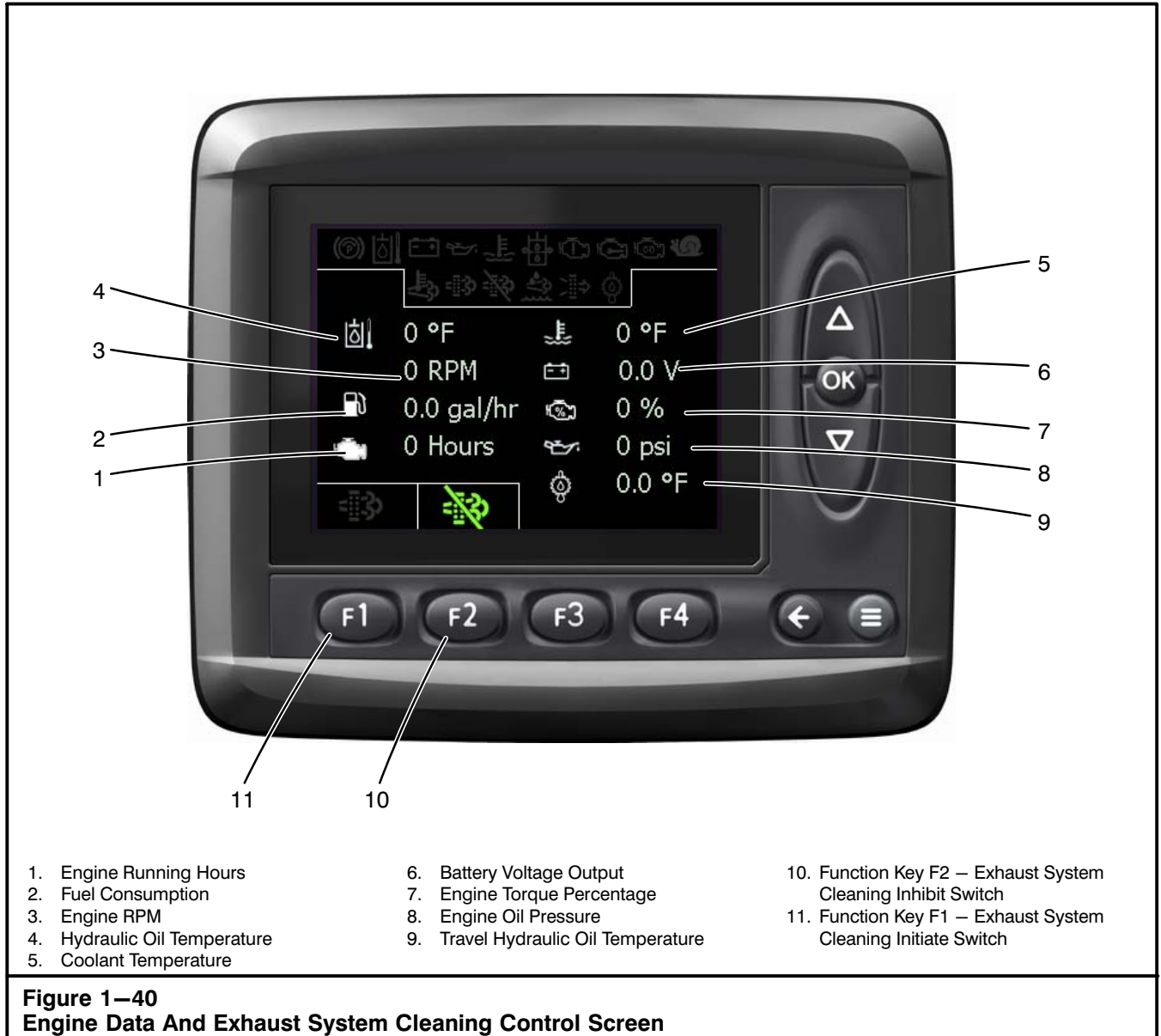
F2 This function key will bring up the boom telescope diagnostic screen. Refer to “Boom Telescope Diagnostic Screen” in this Section of this Operator’s Manual.

3. Function Key F3 – Controller Diagnostics

F3 This function key will bring up the Controller Diagnostic screen. Refer to “Controller Diagnostic Screen” in this Section of this Operator’s Manual.




4. Function Key F4 – Service info

F4 This function key will display information related to engine oil life, hydraulic oil life, and a “general” service hour meter.




- | | | |
|------------------------------|-------------------------------------|---|
| 1. Engine Running Hours | 6. Battery Voltage Output | 10. Function Key F2 – Exhaust System Cleaning Inhibit Switch |
| 2. Fuel Consumption | 7. Engine Torque Percentage | 11. Function Key F1 – Exhaust System Cleaning Initiate Switch |
| 3. Engine RPM | 8. Engine Oil Pressure | |
| 4. Hydraulic Oil Temperature | 9. Travel Hydraulic Oil Temperature | |


Engine Data And Exhaust System Cleaning Control Screen

The engine data and exhaust system cleaning control screen can be displayed by pressing the function key F1 () from the main working screen. The Display will now show the upper control screen. From the upper control screen, press the function key F1 (). Press the back button () to return to the previous screen. The following describes the data displayed on the upper engine data and exhaust system cleaning control screen.


1. Engine Running Hours

 This displays the total running hours on the engine.

2. Fuel Consumption

 This displays the actual fuel consumption in gallons per hour (gal/hr).

3. Engine RPM

 This displays the actual engine speed in revolutions per minute (rpm). Refer to the engine manufacturer's manual for suggested operating speeds.

Operator's Manual

4. Hydraulic Oil Temperature



This displays the actual Hydraulic oil temperature in degrees Fahrenheit (°F). Normal operating ranges vary with the oils used in different climates. Refer to Section 2 of this Operator's Manual for proper oil viscosities and operating temperature ranges.

5. Coolant Temperature



This displays the actual engine cooling system temperature in degrees Fahrenheit (°F). For proper cooling system operating temperature range, refer to the engine manufacturer's manual.

6. Battery Voltage Output



This displays the actual voltage output from the battery in volts (V).

7. Engine Torque Percentage



This displays the actual engine torque load as a percentage (%).

8. Engine Oil Pressure



This displays the actual engine oil pressure in pounds per square inch (psi). For proper oil pressure operating range, refer to the engine manufacturer's manual.

9. Travel Hydraulic Pump Oil Temperature



This displays the actual travel hydraulic oil temperature in degrees Fahrenheit (°F). If the hydraulic oil exceeds the maximum operating temperature, the indicator light will illuminate.

10. Function Key F2 – Exhaust System Cleaning Inhibit Switch



The Exhaust System Cleaning Inhibit switch declines an Active and a Stationary Exhaust System Cleaning until turned off. Refer to this Section of this Operator's Manual.

11. Function Key F1 – Exhaust System Cleaning Initiate Switch



This switch initiates a forced Exhaust System Cleaning. This switch will be active only when the Exhaust System Cleaning Indicator Light illuminates. Refer to this Section of this Operator's Manual.



Figure 1–41
Controller Diagnostic Screen

Controller Diagnostic Screen

The Controller Diagnostic Screen can be displayed by pressing the function key F1 (🖱️) from the main working screen.

The Display will now show the upper control screen. From the upper control screen, press the function key F3 (CONTROLLER DIAG). Press the back button (⬅️) to return to the previous screen.

Operator's Manual

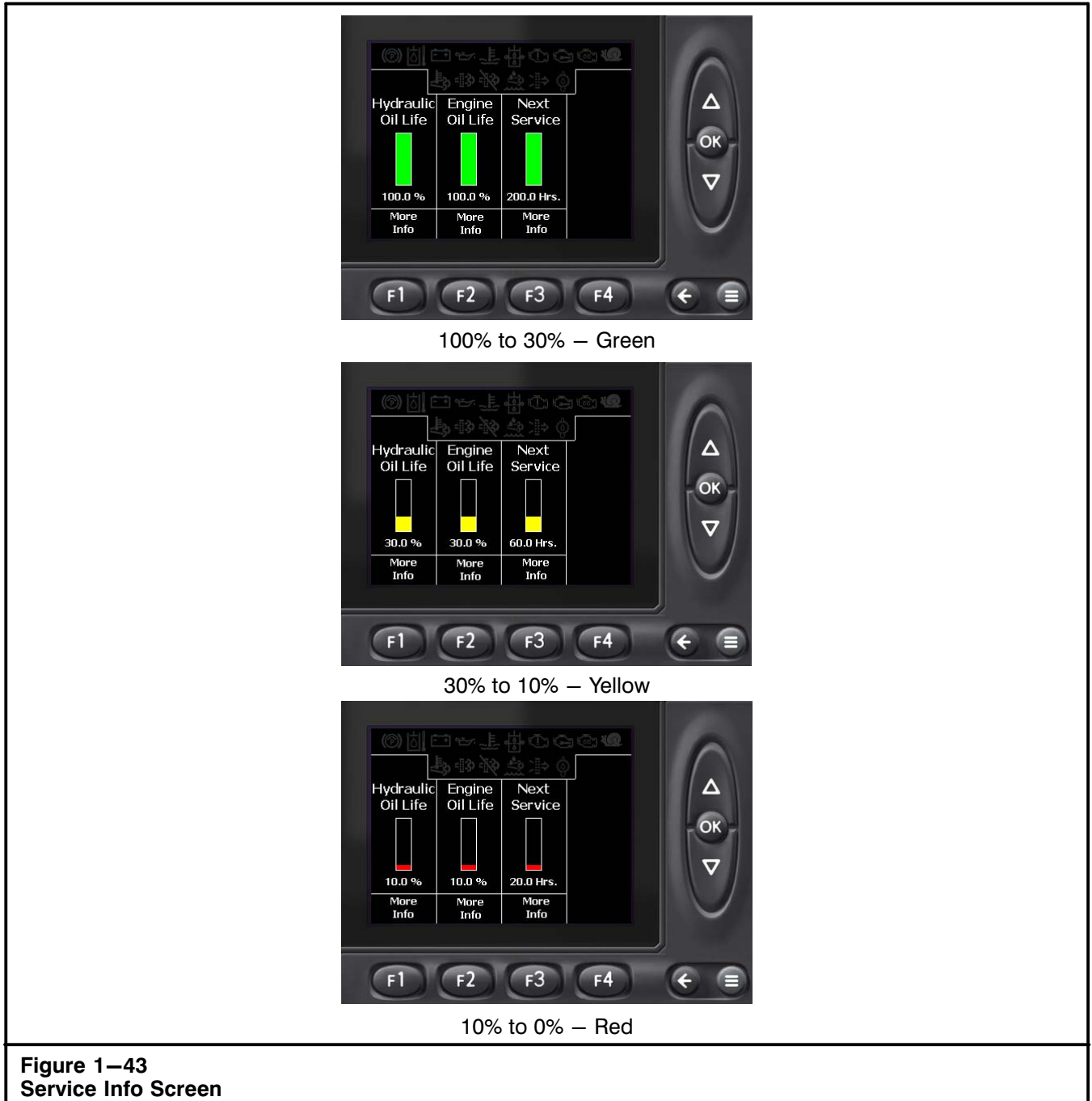


Figure 1–42
Telescope Diagnostic Screen



Telescope Diagnostic Screen

The Telescope Diagnostic Screen can be displayed by pressing the function key F1 (🖱️) from the main working screen. The display will now show the upper

control screen. From the upper control screen, press the function key F4 (TELESCOPE DIAG). Press the back button (⬅️) to return to the previous screen.



Service Info Screen

The Service Info Screen can be displayed by pressing the function key F1 () from the main working screen. The Display will now show the upper control screen. From the upper control screen, press the function key F4 (SERVICE INFO). Press the back button () to return to the previous screen.

The Service Info Screen displays information through bar graphs. The bar graphs are for the hydraulic oil life, engine oil life, and next service. The hydraulic oil life and engine oil life bars are measured in a percentage of oil life remaining before the next servicing. The next service bar is the total amount of hours remaining before the next servicing. Each hour meter must be reset after service is completed.

Operator's Manual

Service Indicators



1. When the oil life reaches 10% an alert will pop-up to inform the Operator the oil life has reached 10%. This alert will only be shown once per reset. If additional information is required, press the Function Key F4 Help to access a help pop-up menu. Press Function Key F2 OK to return to previous screen.



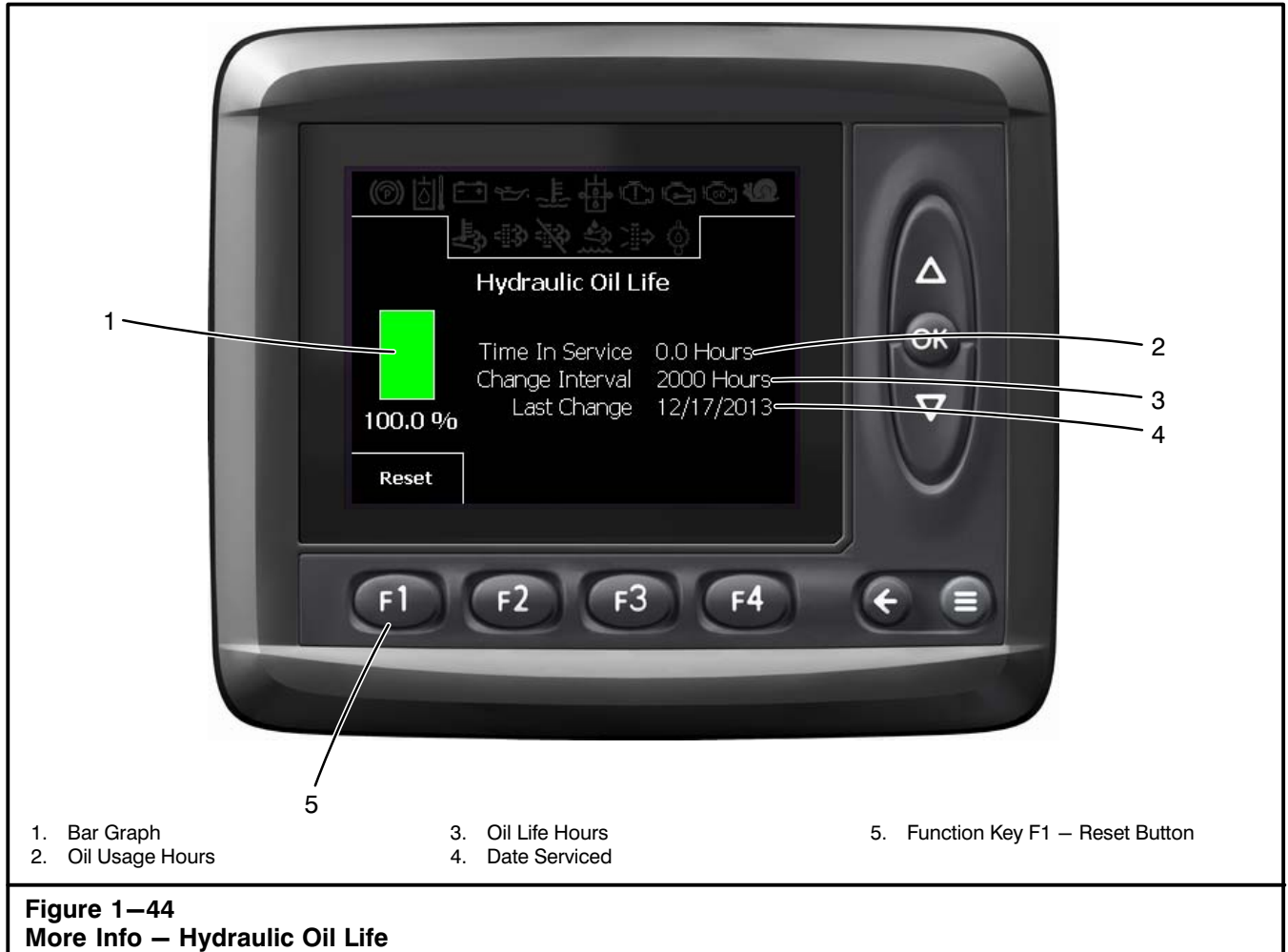
2. If help pop-up menu was accessed, press Function Key F2 OK to exit help pop-up and return to previous screen.




3. When the oil life reaches 0% an alert will pop-up to inform the Operator the oil life has reached 0% and a oil change/service is due. This pop-up will show at every crane start up to remind the Operator to service the crane, unless it is disabled. If disabled, the message will only be shown once. Each hour meter can be disabled individually. To disable a reminder see "Adjusting Engine Oil, Hydraulic Oil, Service Intervals And Disabling/Enabling Change Reminders" in this section of the Operator's Manual. If additional information is required, press the Function Key F4 Help to access a help pop-up menu. Press Function Key F2 OK to return to previous screen.



4. If help pop-up menu was accessed, press Function Key F2 OK to exit help pop-up and return to previous screen.



More Info – Hydraulic Oil Life

The More Info – Hydraulic Oil Life Screen can be displayed by pressing the function key F1 () from the main working screen. The Display will now show the upper control screen. From the upper control screen, press the function key F4 (SERVICE INFO). From the service info screen, press the function key F1 (MORE INFO) from the service info screen.


This screen displays the same bar graph that is on the service info screen along with oil usage hours, oil life hours, and date serviced. From here the operator can reset the hour meter. Refer to “Hour Meter Reset” in this section of Operator’s Manual. Other oil life info screens work in the same manner.

Operator's Manual

Hour Meter Reset

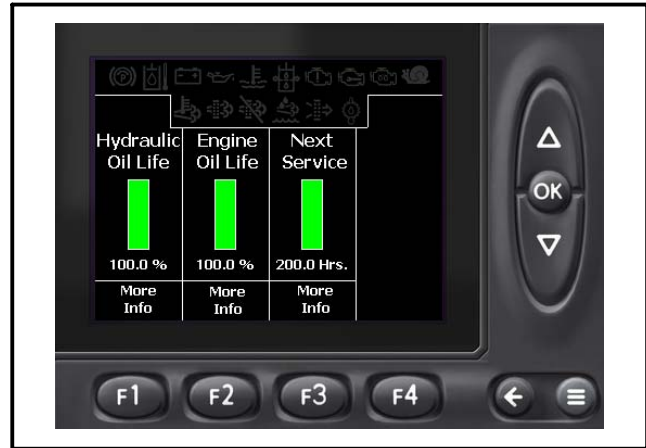
The hour meters must be reset after service is completed to assist that the next scheduled service interval is met.



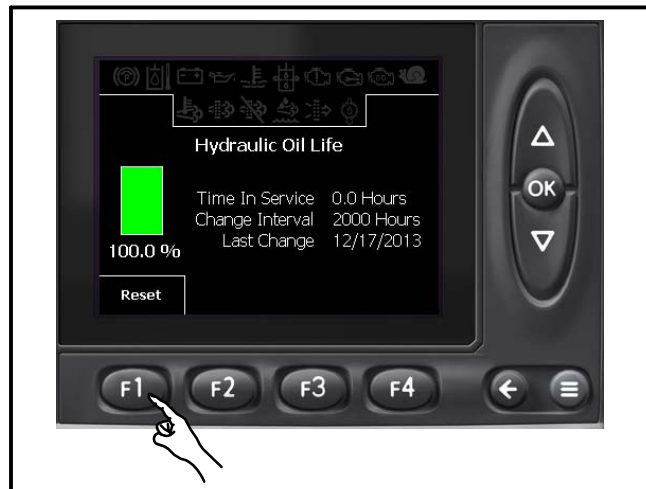
5. Press the function key F1 () from the main working screen. The Display will now show the upper control screen.



6. From the upper control screen, press the function key F4 (SERVICE INFO). The Display will now show the service info screen.



7. From the service info screen, press the function key (F1, F2, or F3) for the desired hour meter to reset. The Display will now show the specific hour meter screen selected.



8. Press the function key F1 (Reset) to reset the hour meter.



9. Press the function key F2 (Yes) to confirm or F3 (No) to cancel.

Operator's Manual

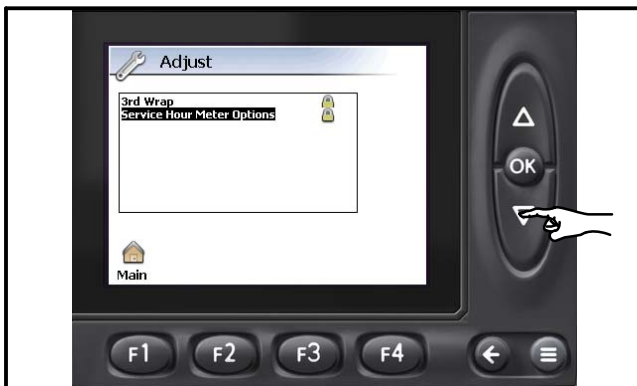
Adjusting Engine Oil, Hydraulic Oil, Service Intervals And Disabling/Enabling Change Reminders



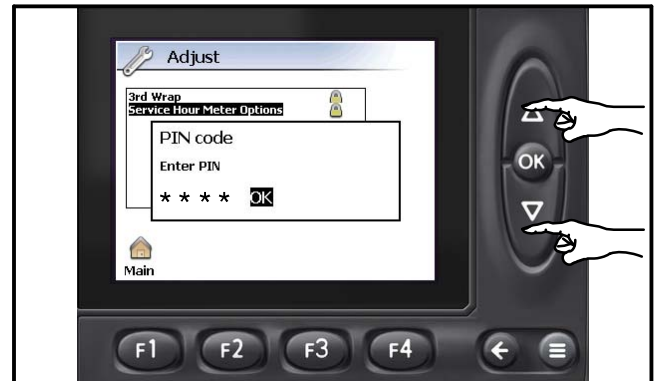
1. Click menu button.



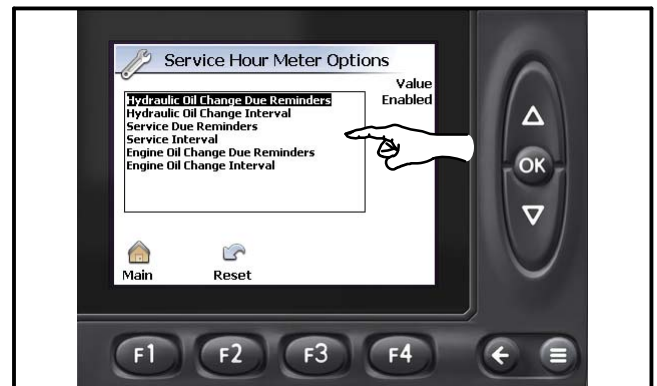
2. Click F1 to enter "Adjust" screen



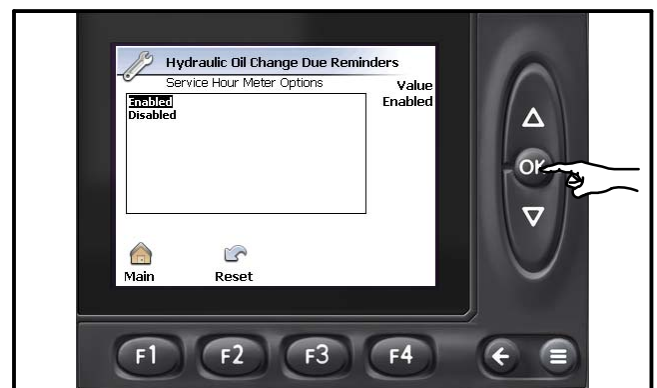
3. Navigate to "Service Hour Meter Options"



4. Enter PIN, press OK to enter. Contact your Link-Belt Distributor for PIN information.



5. Change interval/Service Interval items allow service personnel to adjust how many hours of running an hour meter gets.



6. Navigate to choice of Enable/Disable and select OK.

Operator's Manual



7. Use the arrows to adjust the interval to the desired value and select OK.





8. To reset interval to default select F2. Select OK to confirm choice. Repeat process as necessary to adjust reminders and intervals for Service and Engine Oil (See step 5 and navigate as necessary to make adjustments).



Figure 1–45
Travel Display Screen

Travel Display Screen

The Travel Display Screen can be displayed by pressing the function key F2 () from the main working screen. The Travel Display will now show the travel diagnostic screen. Press the back button () to return to the previous screen.


The Travel Display Screen will automatically pop up when the crane is put in forward or reverse gear and will automatically close and go back to the previous screen when the crane is put back into neutral gear. The gauges on the Travel Display Screen are rearranged to indicate to the Operator this is a different screen and not the main screen.


Operator's Manual



Figure 1–46
Travel Diagnostic Screen

Travel Diagnostic Screen

The Travel Diagnostic Screen can be displayed by pressing the function key F1 () from the travel display screen.

The Display will now show the travel diagnostic screen. Press the back button () to return to the previous screen.

Operator's Manual

Crane Control Display Brightness Adjustment



1. From the main working screen, press the menu button.



4. Press the Function Key F2 to select Backlight.



2. Press the Function Key F3 to bring up the Preferences screen.

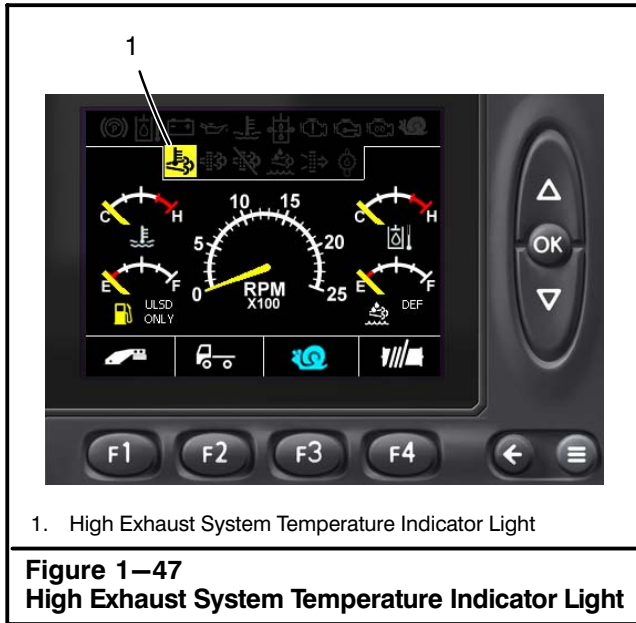


5. Press the Up/Down Arrow buttons to adjust the display brightness.
6. Press the Function Key F1 to return to the main working screen.



3. Press the Function Key F1 to bring up the Display screen.

Operator's Manual



Exhaust System Cleaning

The Exhaust System Cleaning is designed to remove DEF deposits and condition the exhaust cleaning system. The exhaust system cleaning must be periodically done to remove the DEF deposits from the system. During normal operation, the accumulated deposits in the system will be purged by an automatic cleaning cycle. In some cases an automatic cleaning may not occur and the cleaning cycle must be initiated manually.

Refer to engine manufacturer's manual for additional information on the exhaust system cleaning process and procedures.

Exhaust System Cleaning Indicators




1. The exhaust system cleaning indicator light will illuminate to alert the operator that an active cleaning of the exhaust system is required but cannot occur. When this light illuminates, ensure the exhaust system cleaning inhibit switch is off (exhaust system cleaning inhibit indicator light is off), increase upper engine load/speed to allow the engine to run until exhaust system cleaning is complete, or use the exhaust system initiate switch to initiate a stationary exhaust system cleaning as soon as safely possible. If additional information is required, press the Function Key F4 Help to access a help pop-up menu or press Function Key F2 OK button to acknowledge return to previous screen.



2. Press the Function Key F2 OK button to return to previous screen.

High Exhaust System Temperature Indicator Light

This indicator light will illuminate to alert the operator that the outlet temperature in the engine exhaust system is above normal. This condition can occur under normal operation or during an automatic or stationary exhaust system cleaning. No action is required.


 **DANGER**

The exhaust gas temperature can reach 1500°F (800°C) and the exhaust system surface temperature can exceed 1300°F (700°C) during a cleaning. This may result in fire, burn, or explosion hazards, which may result in serious personal injury or death. Do not expose flammable material or explosive atmospheres to exhaust gas or to exhaust system components during cleaning.


Exhaust System Cleaning Inhibit Switch

The exhaust system cleaning inhibit switch disables any automatic or manual cleaning of the exhaust system. It may be used to prevent any cleaning when the crane is operating in a hazardous environment and there is a concern about high temperatures from the exhaust system.




1. Press the Function Key F1 () from the main working screen.



2. To access the Exhaust System Cleaning Inhibit Switch, press the Function Key F1 () .

To Turn The Exhaust System Cleaning Inhibit Switch ON



3. The screen will change to the engine data and exhaust system cleaning control screen. From this screen, press the Function Key F2 Exhaust System Cleaning Inhibit Switch () .

Operator's Manual



4. Press the Function Key F2 Yes to turn the Exhaust System Cleaning Inhibit Switch ON.




7. If help pop-up menu was accessed, press Function Key F2 OK to exit help pop-up and return to previous screen.

To Turn The Exhaust System Cleaning Inhibit Switch OFF



5. An indicator light will illuminate to alert the operator that the system is inhibited.



8. To turn off the Exhaust System Cleaning Inhibit Switch, from the engine data and exhaust system cleaning control screen, press the Function Key F2 Exhaust System Cleaning Inhibit Switch ().



6. If additional information is required, press the Function Key F4 Help to access a help pop-up menu.



9. Press the Function Key F2 Yes to turn the Exhaust System Cleaning Inhibit Switch OFF.

Operator's Manual

Stationary Exhaust System Cleaning

The exhaust system initiate switch is used to start a stationary exhaust system cleaning only when the exhaust system cleaning light is illuminated.

Note: The crane must remain stationary for approximately 45 minutes to complete a stationary exhaust system cleaning.

1. Park the crane in a safe location, shift transmission to neutral, apply the swing park brake and travel park brake.

Note: A stationary exhaust system cleaning will not occur if the travel park brake is not applied.

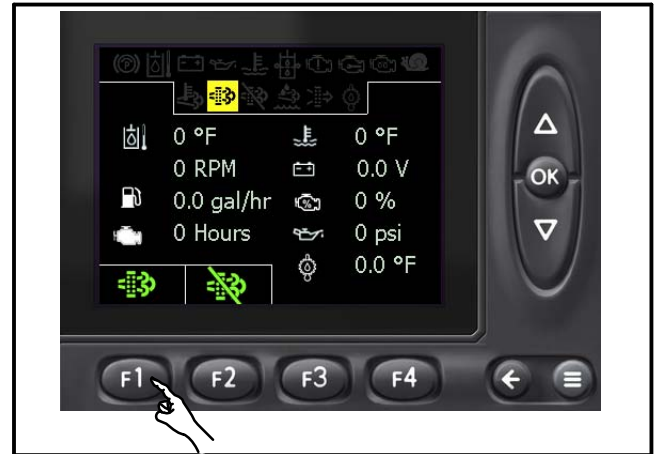
2. Ensure that the Exhaust System Cleaning Inhibit indicator light is off.
3. Engine must be at minimum operating temperature of 140°F (60°C).



4. Press the Function Key F1 from the main working screen to enter the upper control screen.



5. To access the Exhaust System Initiate Switch, press the Function Key F1 to enter the engine data and exhaust system cleaning control screen.



6. The screen will change to the engine data and exhaust system cleaning control screen. From this screen, press the Function Key F1 Exhaust System Initiate Switch to access the Stationary Exhaust System Cleaning Confirmation pop-up menu.

Note: Do not press the engine throttle pedal during a stationary exhaust system cleaning. Pressing the engine throttle pedal will deactivate the stationary exhaust system cleaning and the engine will return to idle. The stationary exhaust system cleaning must be restarted.



7. If additional information is required, press the Function Key F4 Help to access a help pop-up menu.

Operator's Manual



8. If help pop-up menu was accessed, press Function Key F2 OK to exit help pop-up and return to previous screen.



9. If a stationary exhaust system cleaning is not desired at this time, press Function Key F3 No to exit the Stationary Exhaust System Cleaning Confirmation pop-up menu and return to previous screen.




10. Press the Function Key F2 Yes to confirm and initiate a stationary exhaust system cleaning.



The engine ECM will perform a system check for approximately 30 seconds before starting the stationary exhaust system cleaning; also, the engine speed will increase to 1,000–1,400 rpm. When the cleaning begins, the exhaust system cleaning indicator flashes and the high exhaust temperature indicator light illuminates.

When stationary exhaust system cleaning is complete, the upper engine will return to idle and the high exhaust temperature indicator and exhaust system cleaning indicator lights go out.

 **DANGER**

The exhaust gas temperature can reach 1500°F (800°C) and the exhaust system surface temperature can exceed 1300°F (700°C) during a cleaning. This may result in fire, burn, or explosion hazards, which may result in serious personal injury or death. Do not expose flammable material or explosive atmospheres to exhaust gas or to exhaust system components during cleaning.

Diesel Exhaust Fluid

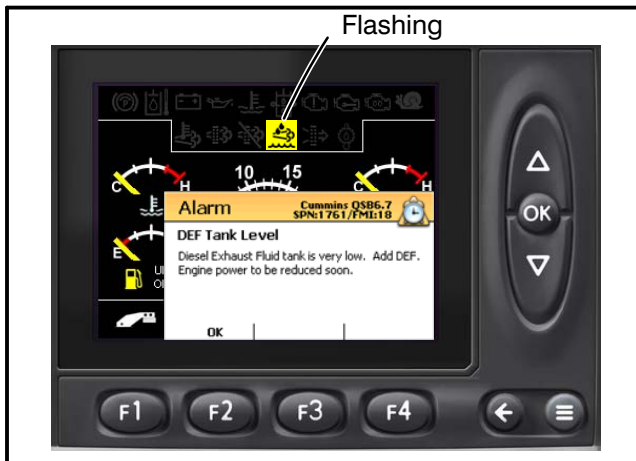
Diesel exhaust fluid (DEF) level must be maintained in the tank for the SCR system to control nitrogen oxide emissions. The gauge registers the level of DEF in the DEF tank. The DEF tank is located behind the left side panel. The DEF tank capacity is 10 gal (37.9L). Additionally, the crane has a DEF low level indicator light on the Crane Control Display ensuring the operator has ample notices to replenish the DEF.

Refer to engine manufacturer's manual for additional information on the DEF process and procedures.

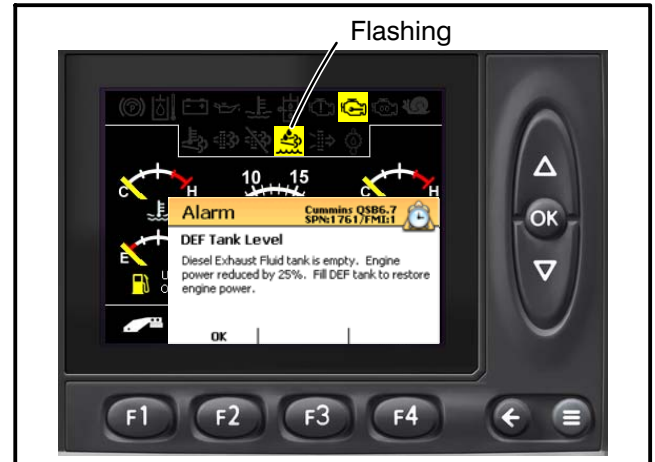
Diesel Exhaust Fluid Indicators



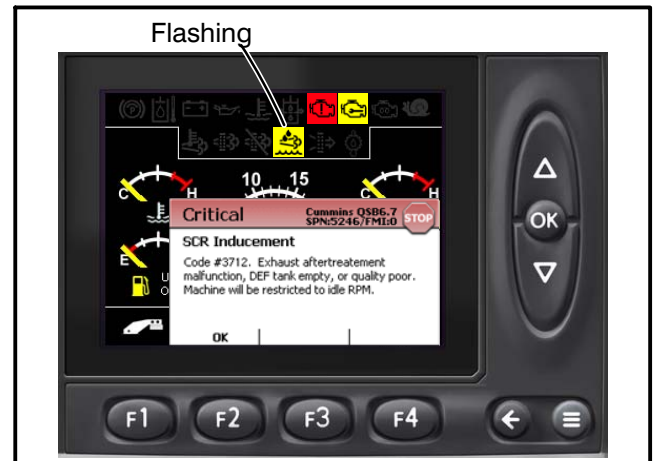
The diesel exhaust fluid indicator will illuminate to alert the operator that the diesel exhaust fluid level is low. This can be corrected by filling the diesel exhaust fluid tank. It is recommended that the tank be filled completely in order to correct any fault conditions. Press Function Key F2 OK to acknowledge pop-up and return to previous screen.



The diesel exhaust fluid indicator will flash to alert the operator that the diesel exhaust fluid level is critically low. This can be corrected by filling the diesel exhaust fluid tank. Press Function Key F2 OK to acknowledge pop-up and return to previous screen.

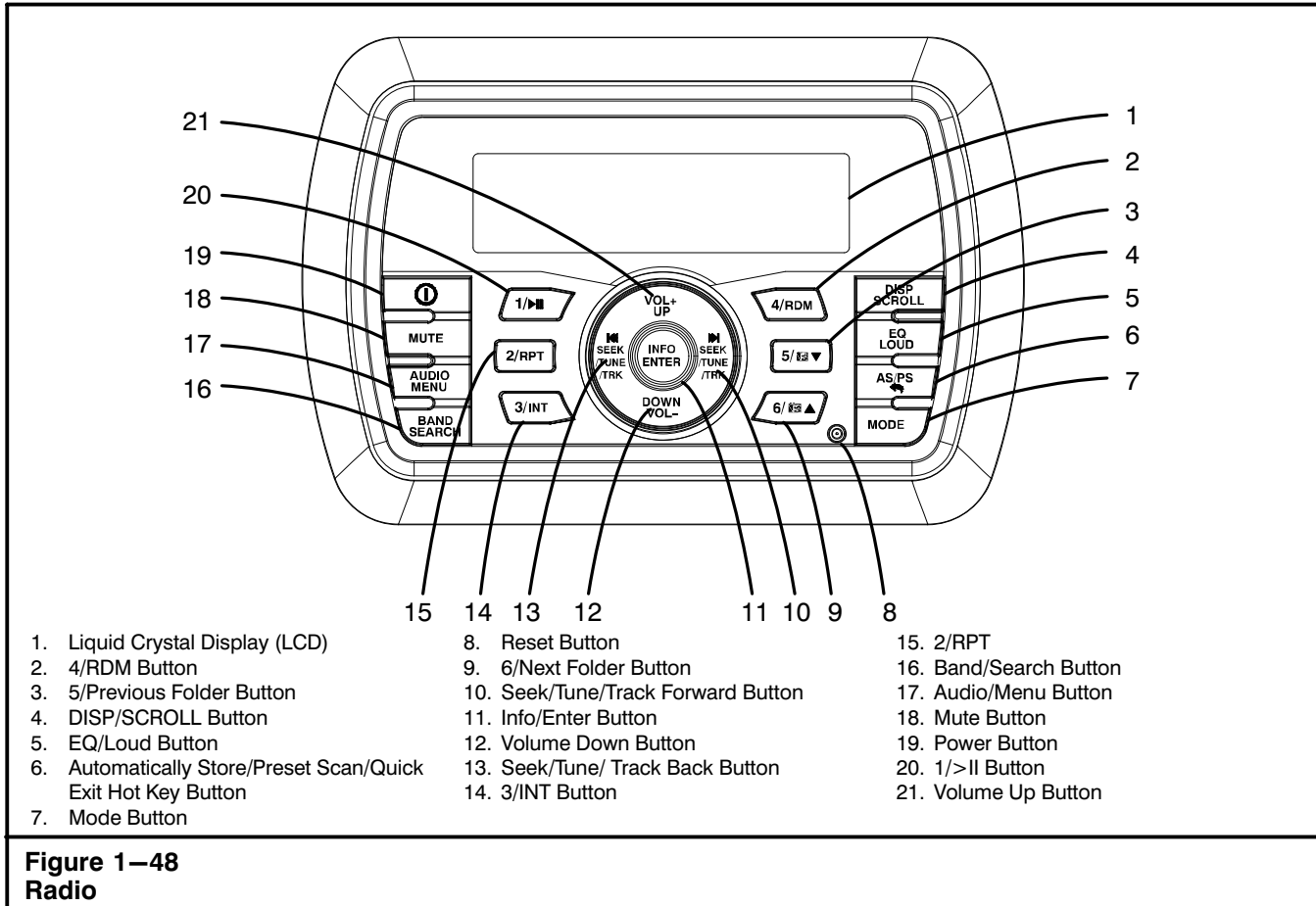


The diesel exhaust fluid indicator will flash combined with an illuminated check engine light to alert the operator that the diesel exhaust fluid has fallen below the initial derate level. Engine power will be limited automatically. This can be corrected by filling the diesel exhaust fluid tank. Press Function Key F2 OK to acknowledge pop-up and return to previous screen.



The diesel exhaust fluid indicator will flash combined with an illuminated check engine and stop engine light if the engine has been shutdown or has idled for an extended period of time after the diesel exhaust fluid tank has been emptied. Engine power will continue to be limited automatically and crane speed will be limited to 5 mph. This can be corrected by filling the diesel exhaust fluid tank to at least 10 percent volume of the tank. However, it is recommended that the tank be filled completely in order to correct any fault conditions. Press Function Key F2 OK to acknowledge pop-up and return to previous screen.

Operator's Manual



Radio Operation

Note: Keep the volume level low enough to be aware of your surroundings while operating the crane.

The crane may be equipped with an AM/FM radio/audio system. It includes the following features: an AM/FM/EURO tuner with 30 Presets (12 AM and 18 FM), Weather Band with Weather Alert, Bluetooth (Supports A2DP and AVRCP), USB playback of MP3/WMA files, iPod/iPhone USB input, Mute, Preset Equalizer (User, Flat, Pop, Classical, Rock), Electronic Bass, Treble, Balance, and Fade Controls, Output Power (40W x 4), Wired Remote Control Ready, 2 Channel Pre-amp Line Level Outputs, and a Auxiliary Audio Input.

This radio generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications.

If this radio does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the radio OFF and ON, the Operator is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the distance between the radio and receiver.
- Connect the radio into an outlet on a different circuit that to which the receiver is connected.
- Contact your Link-Belt Distributor for the service.

Operator's Manual

1. Liquid Crystal Display (LCD)

The LCD shows the reception frequency and activated functions of the system.

Note: LCD panels may take longer to respond when subjected to cold temperatures for an extended period of time. In addition, the visibility of the numbers on the LCD may decrease slightly. The LCD display will return to normal when the temperature increases to a normal range.

2. 4/RDM Button

Press the 4/RDM Button to go to preset 4. During playback mode, press the 4/RDM Button to play all songs in the current category in random order. Random order will occur once the current song has finished playing. "Random On" will appear on the LCD. Press the 4/RDM Button again to stop random playback.

3. 5/Previous Folder Button

Press the 5/Previous Folder Button to go to preset 5. When navigating folders, press the 5/Previous Folder Button to go to the previous folder and begin playback of the first song in that folder.

4. DISP/SCROLL Button

Press the DISP/SCROLL Button to change the display information from single line default display to Artist/Song Title double line display mode.

5. EQ/Loud Button

Press the EQ/Loud Button to turn on the equalization function and select between five pre-defined bass and treble curves: User, Flat, Pop, Classical, Rock. Press and hold the EQ/Loud Button to toggle true loudness ON/OFF. When listening to music at low volumes, this feature will boost the bass ranges to compensate for the characteristics of human hearing.

6. Automatically Store/Preset Scan/Quick Exit Hot Key Button

Automatically Store

Select an AM or FM band. Press and hold the Automatically Store/Preset Scan/Quick Exit Hot Key Button for more than 2 seconds to automatically select strong stations and store them in all bands. The new stations replace any previous stored stations within the band.

Preset Scan

Select a band if needed. Press the Automatically Store/Preset Scan/Quick Exit Hot Key Button to scan all stations stored in all bands. The system will pause for 10 seconds at each preset station. Press the Automatically Store/Preset Scan/Quick Exit Hot Key Button to stop scanning when the desired station is reached.

Quick Exit Hot Key

While in system menu operation, searching mode, or audio menu operation press and hold the Automatically Store/Preset Scan/Quick Exit Hot Key Button for 3 seconds to quickly exit the operation without waiting for the system default time out.

7. Mode Button

Press this button to toggle between modes. Modes include AM/FM Tuner, Weather Band, iPod, USB, AUX In (optional Auxiliary Input), and Bluetooth Audio.

8. Reset Button

Press the reset button:

- After initial installation of the radio; after all wiring is complete.
- If function buttons do not operate.
- If an error pops up on the display.

Use a ball point pen or similar sized object to press the reset button.

Operator's Manual

9. 6/Next Folder Button

Press the 6/Next Folder Button to go to preset 6. When navigating folders, press the 6/Next Folder Button to go to the next folder and begin playback of the first song in that folder.

10. Seek/Tune/Track Forward Button

Press the Seek/Tune/Track Forward Button to adjust menu items, seek stations (press to manually seek or press and hold to automatically seek stations in radio mode), and to go to next track in Playback Mode (press and hold to fast forward).

11. Info/Enter Button

Press the Info/Enter Button to select or enter a function and to get information.

12. Volume Down Button

Press the Volume Down Button to turn the volume down and to navigate down.

13. Seek/Tune/Track Back Button

Press the Seek/Tune/Track Back Button to adjust menu items, seek stations (press to manually seek or press and hold to automatically seek stations in radio mode), and to go to previous track in Playback Mode (press and hold to fast reverse).

14. 3/INT Button

Press the 3/INT Button to go to preset 3. When in playback mode, press the 3/INT Button to play the first ten seconds of each file on the current device. When the desired file is reached, press the 3/INT Button to end the scan and play the selected file.

15. 2/RPT Button

Press the 2/RPT Button to go to preset 2. When in playback mode, press the 2/RPT Button to repeatedly play the current file. Press the 2/RPT Button again to repeat all songs in the current folder. Press the 2/RPT Button once more to resume normal playback.

16. Band/Search Button

Press the Band/Search Button to navigate between the three FM bands and the two AM (MV) bands. In playback mode, press the Band/Search Button to enter search mode.

17. Audio/Menu Button

Press the audio menu button to access the system menu. Continue to press the system menu button to navigate through the system menu. When the proper menu is displayed, press the volume buttons within 5 seconds to adjust that option.

Bass

Adjusts from “-6” to “+6”.

Treble

Adjusts from “-6” to “+6”.

Balance

Adjusts from “L12” (Full Left) to “R12” (Full Right).

Fade

Adjusts from “R12” (Full Rear) to “F12” (Full Front).

18. Mute Button

Press this button to mute audio output. Press again to enable audio output.

19. Power Button

Press the power button to turn the system ON; press it again to turn the system OFF.

20. 1/>II Button

Press the 1/>II Button to go to preset 1. When in playback mode, press the 1/>II Button to pause playback. Press the 1/>II Button once more to resume playback.

21. Volume Up Button

Press the Volume Up Button to turn the volume up and to navigate up.

Operator's Manual

System Menu

1. Press and hold the Audio/Menu Button for more than 2 seconds to enter the system menu.
2. Press the Volume Up Button repeatedly to navigate the system menu and select the desired item.
3. Press the Info/Enter Button or Seek/Tune/Track Forward Button to adjust the selected menu item.
4. Press the Automatically Store/Presets Scan/Quick Exit Hot Key Button to go back to the previous operation.

The following items can be adjusted within the System Menu:

- Key Beep (ON/OFF): Turn the audible beep ON/OFF (heard when functions/buttons are selected).

Note: Beep tone OFF will not affect Battery Alarm audible tone.

- LCD Backlight (1/10–10/10): Adjust LCD brightness.
- LCD Contrast (1/10–10/10): Set LCD contrast.
- Tuning Region (USA/Europe): Set frequency spacing for various regions.
- Weather Alert Configure: Press the Info/Enter Button to see weather alert options:
 - Weather Alert (ON/OFF): Determines if the weather band alert feature is activated.
 - Alert Volume (1/40–40/40): Set default volume for weather alert broadcasts.
- Battery Alarm (ON/OFF): Monitor voltage on ACC line and send alert when voltage is low.
- Battery Auto–OFF (ON/OFF): Automatically turn OFF power to system when battery voltage is low.

Note: Bluetooth Device and Bluetooth Pair menu options are only available while the Bluetooth feature is ON and the system is in Bluetooth Audio mode.

Note: A locked Bluetooth device will be overwritten from the list.

- Bluetooth Device (Lock/Unlock, Disconnect/Connect, Delete): View, lock, and delete from a list of previously paired mobile phone device models.
- Bluetooth Pair <ENTER>: Press Info/Enter Button to automatically pair a device.
- Bluetooth (ON/OFF): Choose “Bluetooth ON” or “Bluetooth OFF”.
- Volume Preset (1/40–40/40): Select an automatic turn-ON volume.
- Reset to Defaults <ENTER>: Return the EEPROM to factory default set up values. Press the Info/Enter Button to select.

Battery Alarm Operation

If Battery Alarm is set to “ON”, an alarm will sound (8 beeps every 30 sec) when the voltage drops to 10.5V (+/- 0.3V). The LCD will display the “low battery” and the current mode alternatively.

Note: “OFF” is the default setting for Battery Alarm. If the audio is muted or the volume is set to 0, the audible beep will not be heard.

Auxiliary Input

To access an auxiliary device:

1. Connect the portable audio player to the AUX IN cables routed from the rear of the system.
2. Press the Mode Button to select Aux In mode.
3. Press the Mode Button again to cancel Aux In mode and switch to the next mode.

Operator's Manual

Preset Stations

Six numbered preset buttons store and recall stations for each band.

To store a station:

Select a band (if needed), then select a station. Press and hold a preset button for two seconds. The preset number will appear in the display.

To recall a station:

Select a band (if needed). Press a preset button to select the corresponding stored station.

Weather Band Operation

Note: If the system is programmed for European operation, the Weather Band function will be disabled.

Press the Mode Button to access weather band mode.

What is the NOAA Weather Radio?

NOAA is a nationwide system that broadcasts local weather emergency information 24 hours a day. The U.S. network has more than 530 stations covering the 50 states, as well as the adjacent coastal waters, Puerto Rico, the U.S. Virgin Islands and the U.S. Pacific Territories. Each local area has its own transmitting station and there are a total of seven broadcasting frequencies used: 162.400MHz (CH2), 162.425MHz (CH4), 162.450MHz (CH5), 162.475MHz (CH3), 162.500MHz (CH6), 162.525MHz (CH7) and 162.550MHz (CH1).

How many stations can I expect to receive?

Since the broadcasts pertain to local weather and information, the transmission power is usually very low (much less than AM or FM stations) which means you will usually receive only one station unless you are on the edge of two or more broadcast signals. The most you will receive is two or three.

Is it possible I won't receive any stations?

Depending on location, it's possible to receive a very weak signal or none at all. Also, similar to AM and FM signals, weather band signals are subject to surrounding conditions, weather, obstructions of the signal by hills or mountains, etc. If no NOAA signals are found/received, the tuner will scan all seven NOAA frequencies every 30 seconds.

How will I know I am tuned to the weather band?

When you select the weather band, the "WB" icon will appear on the LCD, along with the current channel indication. Press the Seek/Tune/Track Forward or Back Buttons to tune to each of the seven channels until you find the weather band station broadcasting in your area.

NOAA Weather Alert

The Weather Alert function adds an additional level of user safety by automatically switching from the current function mode to weather band mode for a minimum of 120 seconds if a NOAA warning tone (1050 Hz) is received/detected. If no additional warning tone is received for 60 seconds, the system will switch back to the last known function mode.

The Weather Alert function can be turned ON or OFF by the Audio/Menu Button. When ON, the weather tuner remains active, even when the system is turned OFF (as long as the power is still applied to the system). If a weather alert is issued, the system will turn ON and play the announcement for 60 seconds, then turn back OFF and revert to weather alert monitor mode.

The system will not respond to any weather alerts when it is OFF and will not automatically switch to the weather band if an alert is issued.

Operator's Manual

MP3/WMA Operation

MP3/WMA File Requirements:

This system can play MP3 (MPEG1, 2, 2.5 Audio Layer 2/3) and WMA (version 7/8/9).

Media Requirements

The following formats are available for the media used in this system. The maximum number of characters used for file name, including the delimiter (".") and three-character extension, are indicated in parentheses:

- ISO 9660 Level 1 (11 characters)
- ISO 9660 Level 2 (31 characters)
- Joliet (31 characters)
- Romeo (31 characters)

The media reproducible on this system has the following limitations:

- Maximum number of nested folders: 8
- Maximum number of files per device: 999
- Maximum number of folders per device: 99

Use the following settings when compressing audio data in MP3 data with the MP3 encoder:

- Transfer bit rate: 32 – 320 kbps
- Sampling frequency
 - MPEG1: 32/44.1/48 KHz
 - MPEG2: 16/22.05/24 KHz
 - MPEG2.5: 8/11.025/12KHz
 - WMA: 22/32/44/48KHz
- Maximum file/directory name: 64 bytes

ID3 Support

This system supports ID3 tag versions 1.0, 1.1, 2.0, and 2.3 (Max 32 bytes).

Installing a USB Device

Insert your USB thumb drive into the USB connector routed from the rear of the radio. The system will automatically search for MP3 and WMA files on the device and begin playback. You can access USB mode from any other mode by pressing the Mode Button.

Note: Do not remove the device when USB PLAY mode is active. Press the Mode Button to change to another mode before removing the device.

MP3/WMA Directory Search

1. Press the Band/Search Button to enter directory search mode.
2. The LCD will display the folder list for the current directory. Press the Band/Search Button to view the folder directory list.
3. Navigate the folder list by pressing the Volume Up and Down Buttons.
4. Press the Info/Enter Button to select a folder. The LCD will display the list of files within that folder.
5. Navigate the file list by pressing the Volume Up and Down Buttons.
6. Press the Info/Enter Button to select a file.
7. Use the Automatically Store/Preset Scan/Quick Exit Hot Key Button to reverse navigate the list.

Operator's Manual

iPod Operation

This system is equipped with an iPod ready function that will allow the Operator to control their iPod (if compatible) using the control panel buttons. The following iPod versions are supported:

- iPod Nano 5G, iPod Nano 6G
- iPod 5G
- iPod Classic
- iPhone 4, iPhone 4S
- iPod Touch 3G, iPod Touch 4G

Note: Earlier model iPods may not be supported because they do not implement the USB control protocol. Also, the iPod Shuffle is not supported because it does not utilize the 30-pin Apple iPod Connector. These unsupported iPod models may be connected to the radio using one of the Auxiliary Inputs.

Accessing iPod Mode

Connect a supported iPod or iPhone to the USB connector. The iPod icon illuminates in the bottom left corner of the LCD whenever an iPod or iPhone is attached to the USB connector. Music playback begins automatically.

To enter iPod mode from any other source, press the Mode Button until "LOADING" appears on the display. If the user connects an iPod containing no songs, the radio will display a message stating "Device No File" when it enters iPod mode.

Turning The iPod ON/OFF

The iPod power turns on automatically when an iPod is connected to the USB connector, as long as the crane ignition is turned ON. You can turn the iPod OFF by disconnecting it or by turning the ignition OFF. When the ignition is turned OFF, the iPod will pause and then enter sleep mode after 2 minutes. While the iPod is connected, the power cannot be turned ON or OFF from the iPod itself.

Note: The iPod will continuously recharge while in iPod playback mode.

iPod Search Mode

1. Press the Band/Search Button to enter iPod search mode and choose from the following search criteria: Playlist, Artist, Album, Song, Genre, Composer, Audiobooks, and Podcasts (consecutively).
2. When search mode is selected, press the Info/Enter Button to confirm selection.
3. Use the Volume Up and Down Buttons to navigate through various list selections.
4. Press Info/Enter Button to make your final selection.
5. Use the Automatically Store/Preset Scan/Quick Exit Hot Key Button to reverse navigate the list.

Bluetooth® Operation

This system includes built-in Bluetooth technology that allows you to connect this system to Bluetooth devices for streaming audio playback.

Bluetooth is a short-range wireless radio connectivity technology developed as a cable replacement for various electronic devices. Bluetooth operates in 2.4 GHz frequency range and transmits voice and data at speeds up to 1 megabit per second. Bluetooth was launched by a special interest group (SIG) comprised of Ericsson Inc., Intel Corp., Nokia Corp., Toshiba and IBM in 1998, and it is currently developed by nearly 2,000 companies worldwide. The Bluetooth word mark and logos are owned by the Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

Note: Some Bluetooth menu options are only available while the system is in Bluetooth Audio mode.

Operator's Manual

Bluetooth Menu Options

Press and hold the Audio/Menu Button to enter menu adjustment mode. Repeatedly press the Volume Up and Down Buttons to access the "Bluetooth ON/OFF" menu function. Press the Info/Enter Button to turn the Bluetooth function ON or OFF. The following menu options are available when the system is in Bluetooth mode:

- **Bluetooth Pair <ENTER>**: Press the Info/Enter Button to begin pairing with a Bluetooth enabled device in pairing mode.
- **Bluetooth Device**: Press the Info/Enter Button to view a list of previously paired mobile phone device models. Press the Seek/Tune/Track Forward and Press the Seek/Tune/Track Back Buttons to view devices from the list. A device that is actively connected cannot be deleted. Press the Info/Enter Button to select the device. Press the Seek/Tune/Track Forward and Press the Seek/Tune/Track Back Buttons to choose Lock/Unlock, Disconnect, or Delete for this device.
- **Lock/Unlock**: The system can store up to 5 devices for Bluetooth connection. The devices are stored in FIFO (First In First Out) order. To prevent a device from being bumped from the list when more than 5 devices are used, the device must be locked. To Lock/Unlock a device, press the Info/Enter Button to display/change the Locked or Unlocked icon.
- **Disconnect**: To disconnect a paired device, press the Info/Enter Button to temporarily remove the Bluetooth link. The link can be re-established through the phone menu by selecting the system for connection.
- **Delete**: To delete a device from the list, press the Info/Enter Button.

Pairing A Bluetooth Device

Before you begin, consult the owner's manual for the Bluetooth device you want to pair with this system.

1. Power ON radio.
2. Press and hold the Audio Menu button until System Menu appears.
3. Use the Up/Down arrow buttons to scroll to Bluetooth. Ensure Bluetooth is ON. If Bluetooth is OFF, press the Info/Enter button to turn Bluetooth ON.
4. Press the Mode button to cycle through the menu until BT Audio appears on the display.
5. Press and hold the Audio Menu button until the System Menu appears on the display.
6. Use the Up/Down arrow buttons to scroll to Bluetooth Pairing.
7. Press the Info/Enter button to initiate the pairing sequence.
8. On the mobile device to pair, toggle the Bluetooth OFF then back ON to begin the search.
9. When JHD40BT appears, select it to pair. The Bluetooth Audio symbol (🎵) will now appear on the display.
10. Enter pairing code 0000.
11. If the system does not pair, press the Reset button on the front of the radio and repeat this procedure.

After connecting successfully, the Operator can listen to music stored on their Bluetooth enabled device through the system. If mobile device still will not pair, contact ASA Electronics Support at customerservice@asaelectronics.com.

Answering A Call

When answering a call using the connected phone, Bluetooth Audio will pause. After hanging up from the call, Bluetooth Audio will continue on some phones. It may be necessary to press the play button to resume Bluetooth Audio.

Operator's Manual

BT Audio (A2DP)

The A2DP music is available for Bluetooth enabled phones when the phone is connected. To access Bluetooth mode and play songs stored on your phone.

1. Press the Mode Button.
2. While in Bluetooth mode, the Bluetooth Audio icon (🎵) illuminates on the LCD.
3. If the system is changed to another mode, the mobile phone audio will pause. Press the Mode Button to return to Bluetooth mode and resume mobile phone audio playback.

Note: If a Bluetooth device is disconnected due to the power being turned OFF or if the device is disconnected inadvertently, the system will automatically search for the matching Bluetooth mobile phone when the power is restored.

Care And Maintenance

- Keep the system dry. If it does get wet, wipe it dry immediately. Liquids might contain minerals that can corrode the electronic circuits.
- Keep the product away from dust and dirt, which can cause premature wear of parts.
- Handle the system gently and carefully. Dropping it can damage circuit boards and cases, and can cause the system to work improperly.
- Wipe the system with a dampened cloth occasionally to keep it looking new. Do not use harsh chemicals, cleaning solvents, or strong detergents to clean the system.
- Use and store the system only in normal temperature environments. High temperature can shorten the life of electronic devices, damage batteries, and distort or melt plastic parts.

Ignition

- The most common source of noise in reception is the ignition system. This is a result of the radio being placed close to the ignition system (engine). This type of noise can be easily detected because it will vary in intensity of pitch with the speed of the engine.
- Usually, the ignition noise can be suppressed considerably by using a radio suppression type high voltage ignition wire and suppressor resistor in the ignition system. Another method of suppression is the use of additional noise suppressors.

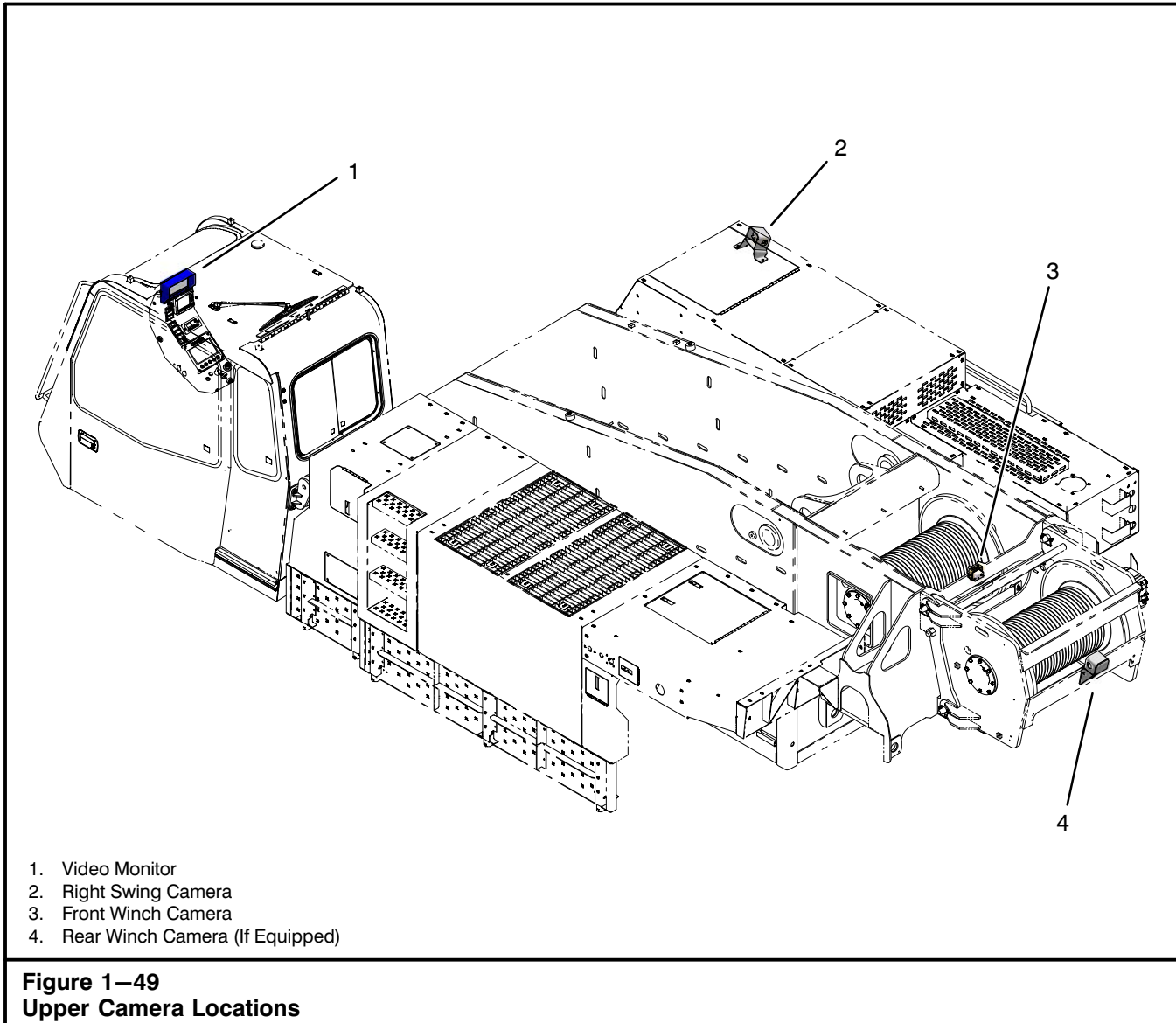
Interference

- Radio reception in a moving environment is very different from reception in a stationary environment (home). It is very important to understand the difference.
- AM reception will deteriorate when passing under a bridge or when passing under high voltage lines. Although AM is subject to environmental noise, it has the ability to be received at great distance. This is because broadcasting signals follow the curvature of the earth and are reflected back by the upper atmosphere.

Operator's Manual

Radio Troubleshooting		
Symptom	Cause	Solution
No power	The accessory switch is not ON	If the power supply is properly connected to the cranes accessory terminal, switch the ignition key to "ACC".
	Fuse is blown	Replace the fuse.
No sound	Volume is too low	Adjust volume to audible level.
	Wiring is not properly connected	Check wiring connections.
The operation keys do not work	Built-in microcomputer is not operating properly due to noise	Press the Reset Button.
Cannot tune to radio station, auto-seek does not work	Antenna cable is not connected	Insert the antenna cable firmly.
	Signals are too weak	Select a station manually.

Operator's Manual



Winch And Right Swing View Cameras

The upper is equipped with two cameras. One camera gives the operator a view of the winches to monitor wire rope spooling on the winch drum(s). The other camera gives a view of the area to the right side the crane to be used before swinging the upper to the right.

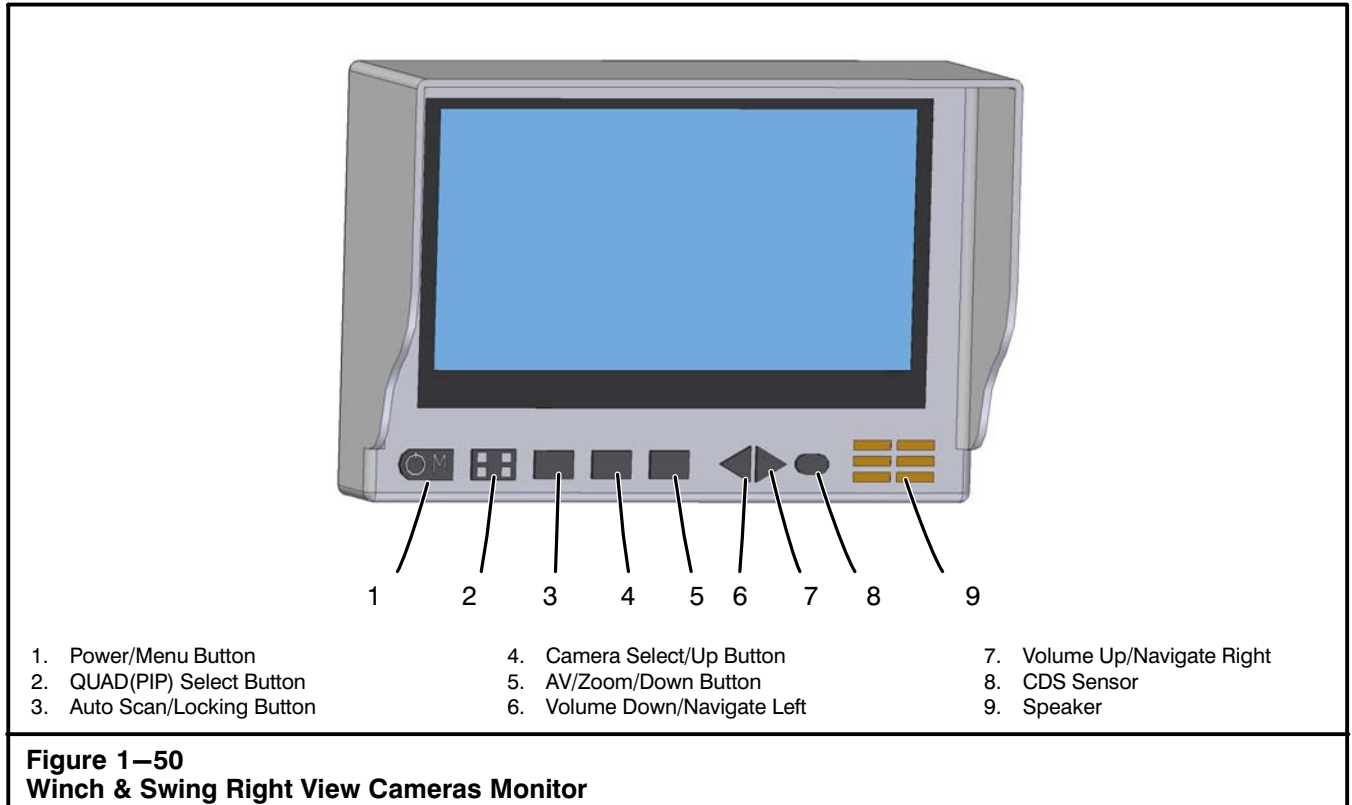
During initial crane start up and inspection each day, verify the proper operation of all cameras. If the cameras are found to be damaged or missing, order replacement parts as required to repair or replace the damaged or missing component. Continue operation with caution as you should normally do with all crane operations.



WARNING

Cameras are being supplied as an operator's aid. They do not relieve the crane operator of any responsibilities during crane operation. Always look directly in the direction of crane travel or at the load during crane lifting operations. Do not rely solely on the camera to determine if an obstruction is present.

When the swing brake is released the monitor will automatically display the right swing view.



Camera Monitor

A video monitor in the Operator's Cab is supplied to help the Operator see areas that can be obstructed from their view. This monitor can distract the Operator from their normal duties if not used properly. Use these monitors as an Operator's aid and not as the sole method of seeing where the crane is going. Primary attention is to be on where the crane is going or the lifted load, not the monitor.

Cameras do not eliminate the requirement for a signal person during crane travel. Do not attempt to move the crane without a signal person. A trained signal person working in conjunction with a trained Operator is required to move the crane.



WARNING

Do not rely solely on the cameras and monitors.

- The field of vision of the camera may be limited.
- Just because the monitor looks clear does not mean that an obstruction does not exist.
- Images in the monitor may be farther than they appear.
- Images in the monitor may be distorted.
- Weather conditions (ice, snow, rain, etc) may distort or block the camera lens and inhibit visibility.
- Do not operate the crane using the camera's alone.
- Always look before moving the crane.
- Always employ a signal person to move the crane.

Operator's Manual

1. Power/Menu Button

Power

Press the top left corner of the Power/Menu Button to turn the monitor ON.

Press and hold the top left corner of the Power/Menu Button to turn the monitor OFF.

Menu (While Monitor Is Powered ON)

Press the bottom right corner of the Power/Menu Button to enter MENU MODE.

Press the AV/Zoom/Down Button or Camera Select/Up Button to scroll through the MENUS.

2. QUAD(PIP) Select Button

The QUAD(PIP) Select Button allows the Operator to change the monitor to a split screen display. Refer to "Split Screen Displays" in this section of the Operator's Manual for additional information.

3. Auto Scan/Locking Button

Auto Scan

Press the Auto Scan/Locking button one time to initiate auto scan mode. Auto scan mode will scroll through the camera views for a set period of time as follows: CA1->CA2->CA3->CA4. After the last camera (CA4) is shown in scan mode the screen will automatically go back to the first camera (CA1). Refer to "SCAN Function" in this section of the Operator's Manual for additional information.

Button Lock

Hold the Auto Scan/Locking Button for 3 seconds to lock all of the buttons. At this time all functions of the buttons are disabled. While the buttons are locked, press and hold the Auto Scan/Locking Button for 3 more seconds to unlock the buttons.

4. Camera Select/Up Button

Press the Camera Select/Up Button to scroll through the camera views one by one and to get out of a split screen view. Press the Camera Select/Up Button while in MENU MODE to scroll UP.

5. AV/Zoom/Down Button

Press the AV/Zoom/Down Button to zoom in on a specific camera view. Press the AV/Zoom/Down Button while in MENU MODE to scroll DOWN.

6. Left Arrow Button

The left arrow button turns the volume down and changes functions within the MENUS.

7. Right Arrow Button

The right arrow button turns the volume up and changes functions within the MENUS.

8. CDS Sensor

The CDS Sensor has an auto dimming feature making the monitor available for night viewing.

9. Speaker

The speakers allows the Operator to hear sounds within the camera view.

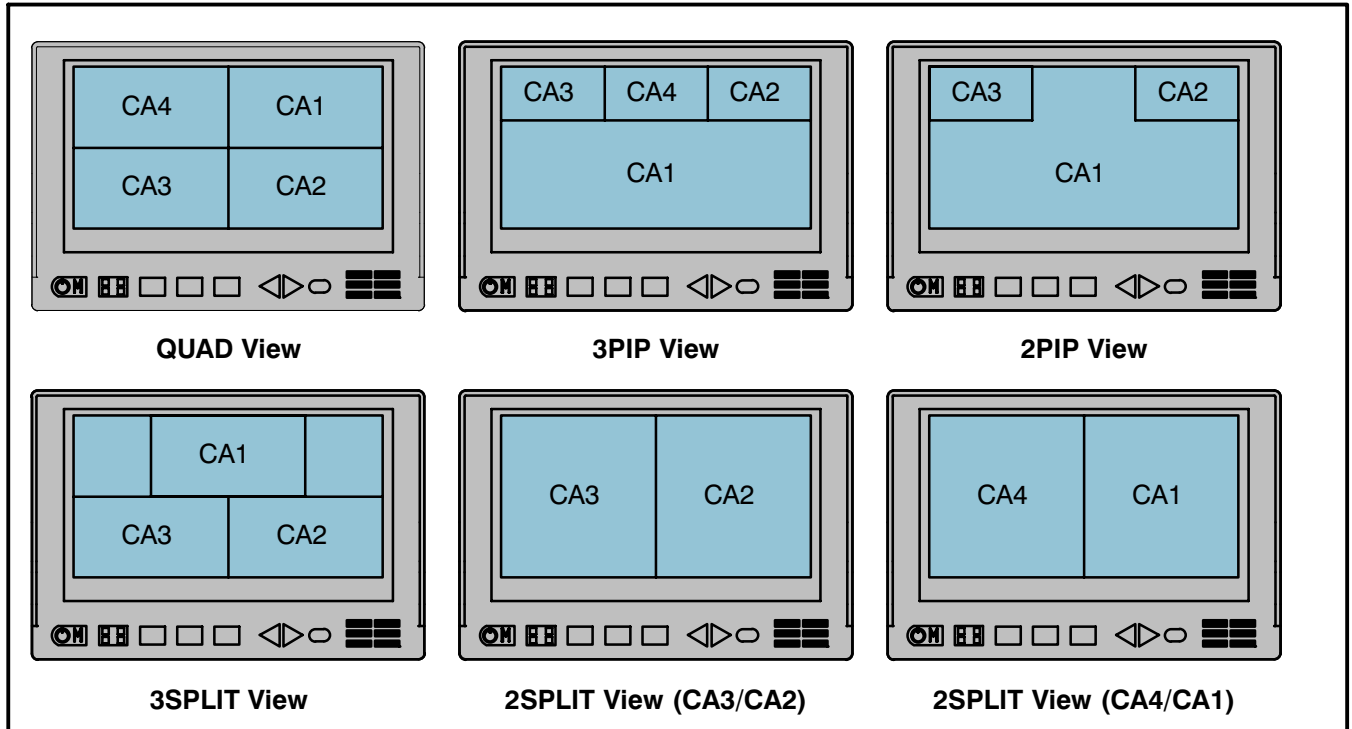


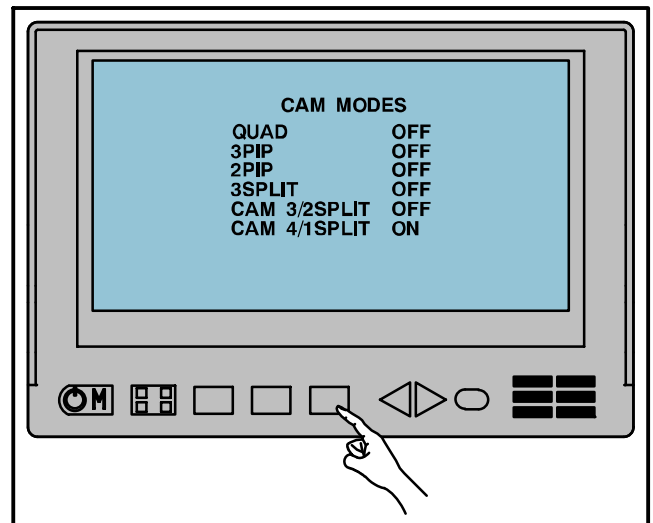
Figure 1-51
Split Screen Function

Split Screen Function

The upper camera has split screen capabilities allowing the Operator to view up to four cameras on one screen. Refer to Figure 1-51. Depending upon which split screen views are turned on, press the QUAD(PIP) Select Button to scroll through the different split screen views. To turn ON/OFF a split screen view:

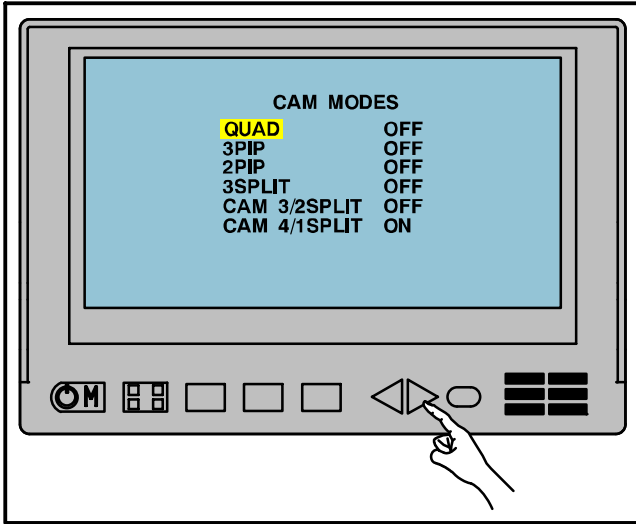
Refer to Figure 1-50.

1. Press the Power/Menu Button to enter MENU MODE.

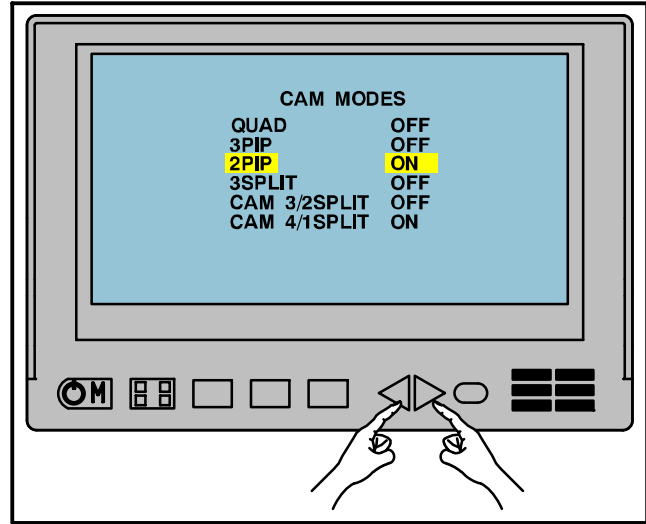


2. Press the AV/Zoom/Down Button until CAM MODES is displayed on the screen.

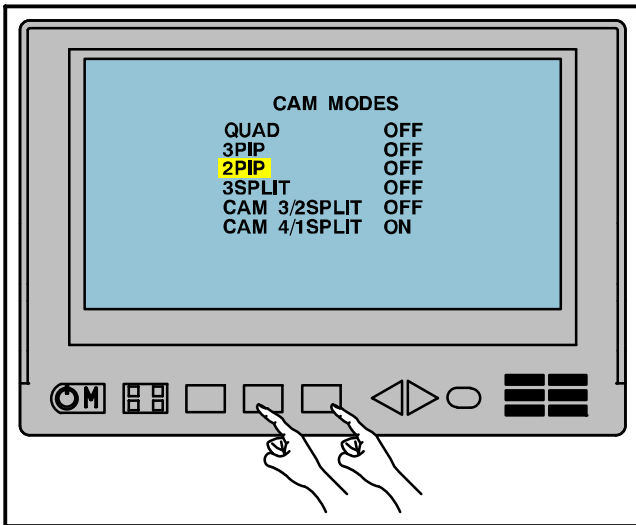
Operator's Manual



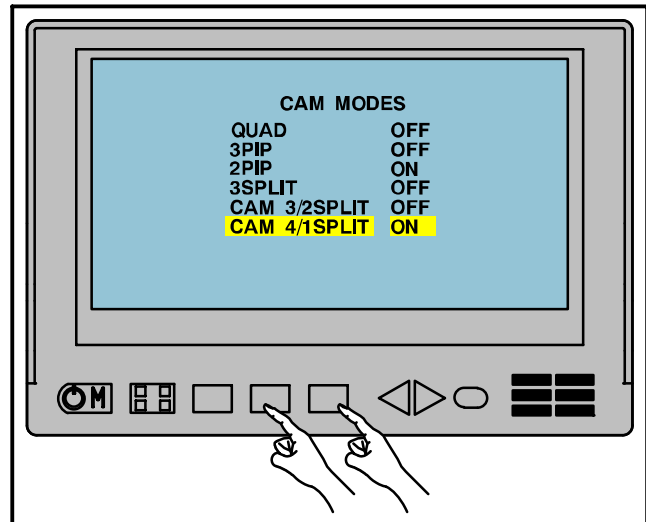
3. Press the Right Arrow Button to enter into CAM MODES.



5. When the proper split screen mode is selected press the Left Arrow or Right Arrow Button to turn it ON or OFF.



4. Press the Camera Select/Up or AV/Zoom/Down Button to scroll UP and DOWN within CAM MODES.

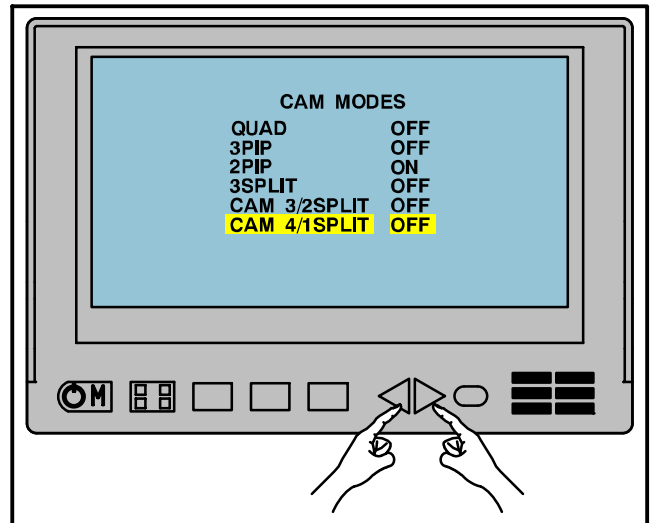


6. To turn ON or OFF another split screen mode press the Camera Select/Up or AV/Zoom/Down Button to scroll UP and DOWN.

Operator's Manual

7. Then press the Left Arrow or Right Arrow Button to turn it ON or OFF.
8. To go back to MENU MODE press the Power/Menu Button.

Note: If the crane is equipped with two cameras, only CAM4/1SPLIT MODE needs to be on.



Operator's Manual

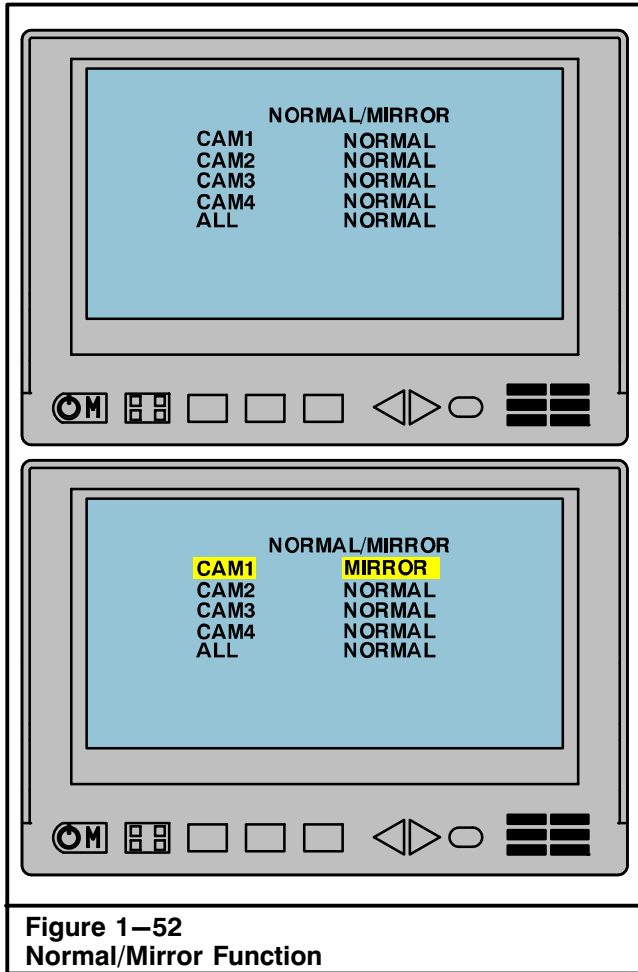


Figure 1-52
Normal/Mirror Function

Normal/Mirror Function

The upper monitor has a NORMAL/MIRROR Function that allows the Operator to mirror the monitor image vertically. Refer to Figure 1-52. To change the monitor image from NORMAL to MIRROR:

Refer to Figure 1-50.

1. Press the Power/Menu Button to enter MENU MODE.
2. Press the AV/Zoom/Down Button until NORMAL/MIRROR is displayed on the screen.
3. Press the Right Arrow Button to enter into NORMAL/MIRROR.
4. Press the Camera Select/Up or AV/Zoom/Down Button to scroll UP and DOWN.
5. Press the Left Arrow or Right Arrow Button to change the camera view from NORMAL to MIRROR.
6. To go back to MENU MODE press the Power/Menu Button.

Up/Down Function

The upper monitor has a UP/DOWN Function that allows the Operator to mirror the image horizontally. Refer to Figure 1–53. To change the monitor image from UP to DOWN:

Refer to Figure 1–50.

1. Press the Power/Menu Button to enter MENU MODE.
2. Press the AV/Zoom/Down Button until UP/DOWN is displayed on the screen.
3. Press the Right Arrow Button to enter into UP/DOWN.
4. Press the Camera Select/Up or AV/Zoom/Down Button to scroll UP and DOWN.
5. Press the Left Arrow or Right Arrow Button to change the camera view from UP to DOWN.
6. To go back to MENU MODE press the Power/Menu Button.

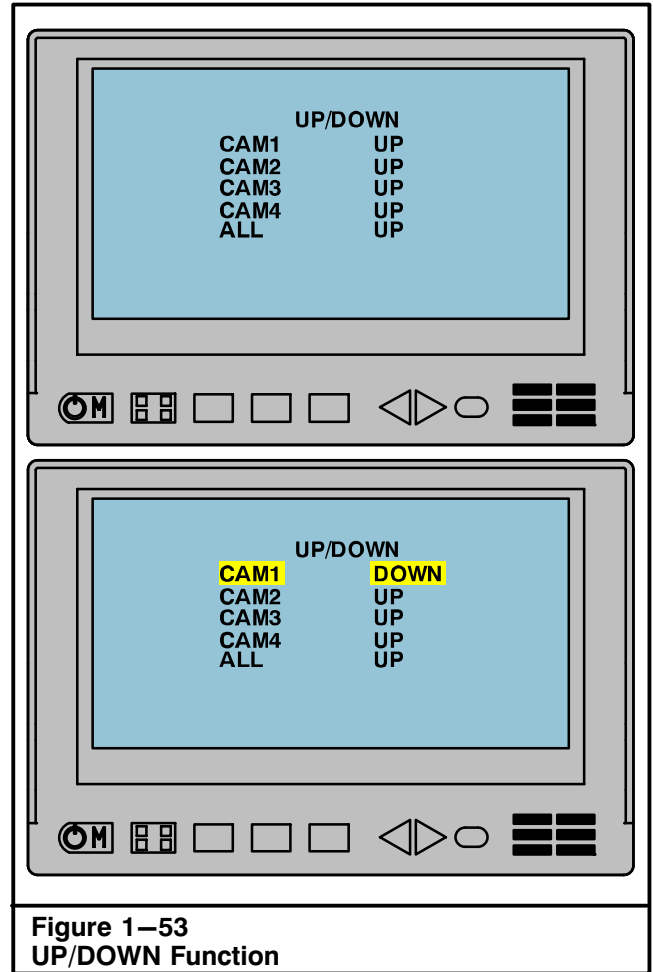


Figure 1–53
UP/DOWN Function

Operator's Manual

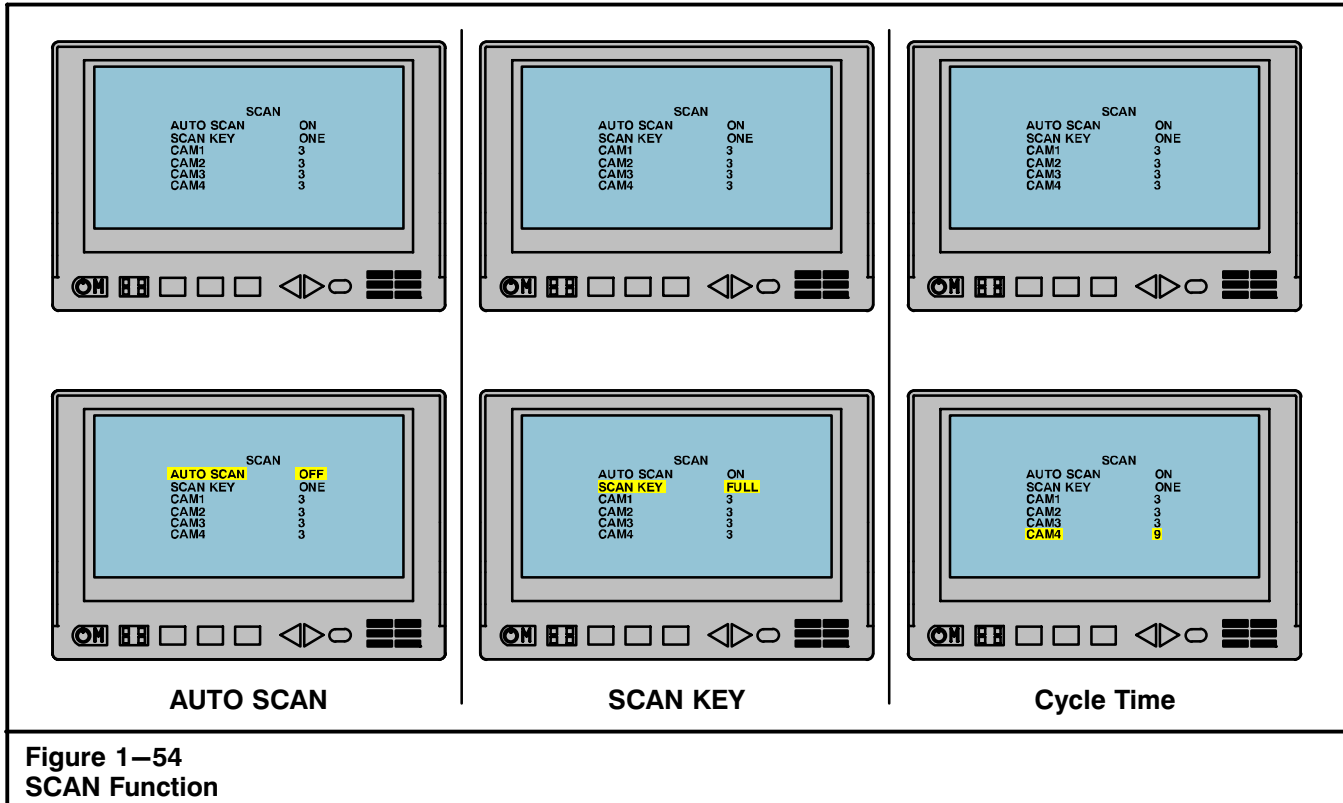


Figure 1-54
SCAN Function

SCAN Function

The upper camera has a SCAN Function that allows the monitor to automatically scan through the different camera views at the press of a button. The SCAN KEY function can be set to cycle through the camera views only one time or continuously scroll through the camera views. Refer to Figure 1-54. To start an AUTO Scan:

Refer to Figure 1-50.

1. Press the Auto Scan/Locking Button.

To turn AUTO SCAN OFF:

1. Press the Power/Menu Button to enter MENU MODE.
2. Press the AV/Zoom/Down Button until SCAN is displayed on the screen.
3. Press the Right Arrow Button to enter into SCAN.
4. Press the Camera Select/Up or AV/Zoom/Down Button to scroll UP and DOWN to AUTO SCAN.
5. Press the Left Arrow or Right Arrow Button to change AUTO SCAN from ON to OFF..
6. To go back to MENU MODE press the Power/Menu Button.

To change the SCAN KEY cycle from ONE to FULL :

1. Press the Power/Menu Button to enter MENU MODE.
2. Press the AV/Zoom/Down Button until SCAN is displayed on the screen.
3. Press the Right Arrow Button to enter into SCAN.
4. Press the Camera Select/Up or AV/Zoom/Down Button to scroll UP and DOWN to SCAN KEY.
5. Press the Left Arrow or Right Arrow Button to change SCAN KEY from ONE to FULL.
6. To go back to MENU MODE press the Power/Menu Button.

To change the SCAN cycle time:

1. Press the Power/Menu Button to enter MENU MODE.
2. Press the AV/Zoom/Down Button until SCAN is displayed on the screen.
3. Press the Right Arrow Button to enter into SCAN.
4. Press the Camera Select/Up or AV/Zoom/Down Button to scroll UP and DOWN to specific camera.
5. Press the Left Arrow or Right Arrow Button to change the time interval (1-9 seconds).
6. To go back to MENU MODE press the Power/Menu Button.

PREFERRED SETTINGS

FUNCTION	
LANGUAGE	ENGLISH
SYSTEM	NTSC/PAL
DIRECTION	0°
DIMMER	1
AUTO POWER	ON
LOGO SET	>
AV OUTPUT	LIVE
SHUTTER	ON
RESET	>

TRIGGER	
REAR SCALE	OFF
BLINK MARK	OFF
TRIG 1	CAM1
TRIG 2	CAM2
TRIG 3	CAM3
TRIG 4	CAM4
HAZARD	QUAD

CAMERA NAME	
CAM1	RIGHT
CAM2*	NO CAMERA
CAM3*	NO CAMERA
CAM4*	WINCH

CAM MODES	
QUAD*	OFF
3PIP*	OFF
2PIP*	OFF
3SPLIT*	OFF
CAM3/2 SPLIT*	OFF
CAM4/1 SPLIT	ON

NOR/MIR	
CAM1	NORMAL
CAM2	NORMAL
CAM3	NORMAL
CAM4	NORMAL
ALL	NORMAL

SCAN	
AUTO SCAN	OFF
SCAN KEY	ONE
CAM1	3
CAM2	3
CAM3	3
CAM4	3

PICTURE	
CONTRAST	15
BRIGHTNESS	15
COLOR	15
TINT	15

UP/DOWN	
CAM1	UP
CAM2	UP
CAM3	UP
CAM4	UP
ALL	UP

*Setting may be different if equipped with a third camera.

Figure 1–55
Monitor Preferred Settings

Reset

Note: Resetting the monitor will reset it to the monitor factory settings. The monitor will then need to be set to the Link-Belt preferred settings. Refer to Figure 1–55.

To reset the monitor settings:

1. Press the Power/Menu Button to enter MENU MODE.
2. Press the AV/Zoom/Down Button until FUNCTION is displayed on the screen.
3. Press the Right Arrow Button to enter into FUNCTION.
4. Press the Camera Select/Up or AV/Zoom/Down Button to scroll UP and DOWN to RESET.
5. Press the Left Arrow or Right Arrow Button to reset the monitor.
6. The monitor will power off during reset.

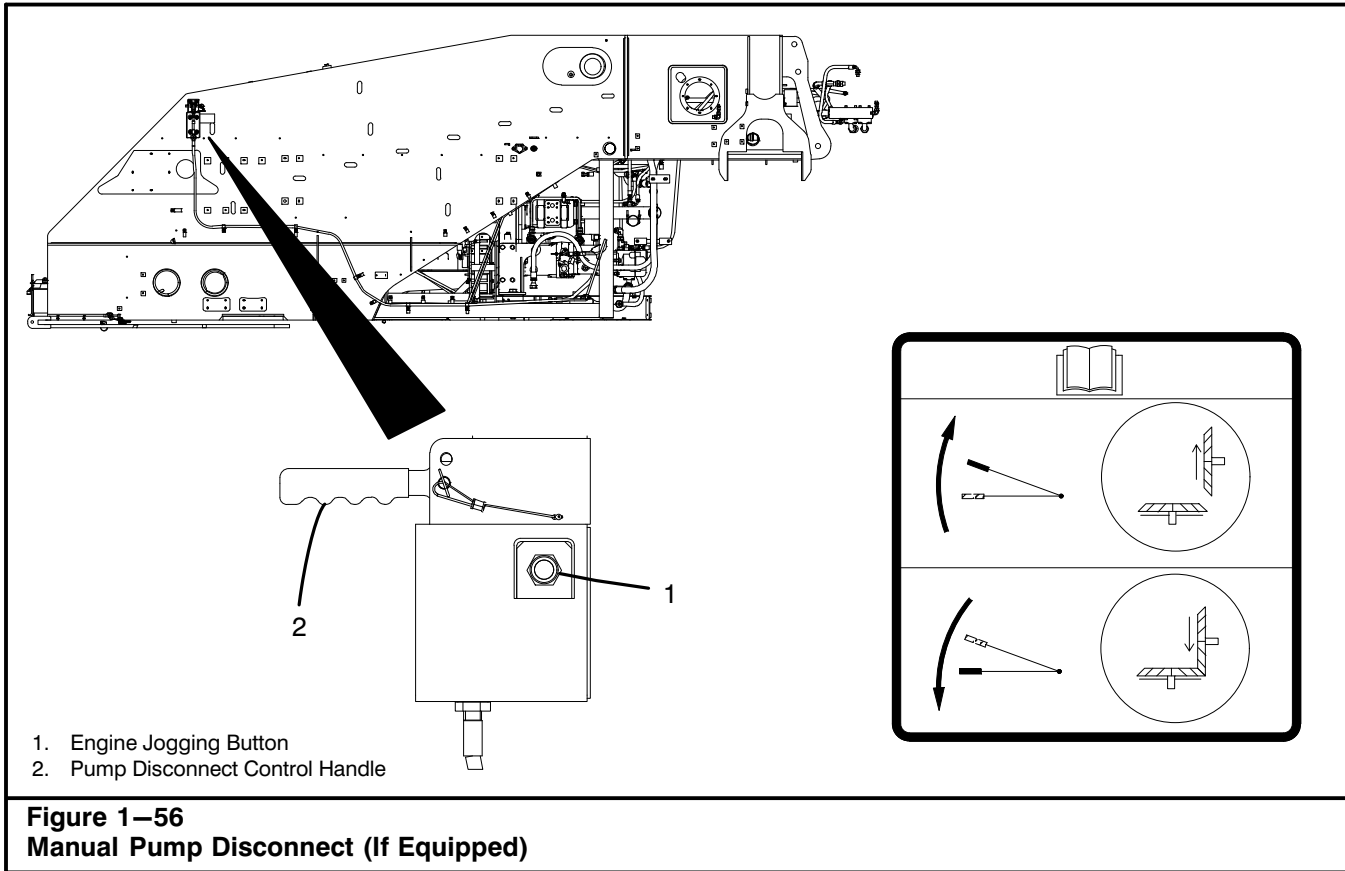
Care and Maintenance

If crane has been parked in direct sunlight, allow time for the monitor to cool down.

Clean the monitor with a slightly damp cloth. Use a mild household detergent. Do not use strong solvents such as thinner or benzene as they can damage the finish of the monitor.

Contact your Link-Belt Distributor for the proper service.

Operator's Manual



Manual Pump Disconnect (If Equipped)

The pump disconnect is used to engage and disengage the main hydraulic pump if equipped. Disengaging the main pump aids in engine start-up by reducing cranking resistance. Refer to Figure 1-56.

The crane may be equipped with an engine jogging button, near the disconnect control handle, to aid in engaging the hydraulic pump.

Note: In extremely cold weather, it is recommended that the pump be allowed to cycle without a load for 3-5 minutes at low engine speed. Throttle engine to half throttle and cycle the boom telescope for another 3-5 minutes. This will help prevent cold oil from damaging the main pump.

To Engage The Main Pump

1. Warm up the engine using the normal start-up and warm-up procedure.
2. Park the crane and engage the travel park brake.
3. Shift the transmission to neutral and shutdown the engine.

CAUTION

Do not attempt to engage or disengage the pump with the engine running. Damage could occur to the pump and/or pump drive.

4. Push the pump disconnect control handle down to the limit of its travel. If control handle cannot be pushed to the limit, push and release the engine jogging button and push the handle in to the limit again.

To Disengage The Main Pump

1. Park the crane and engage the travel park brake.
2. Shift the transmission to neutral and shutdown the engine.

CAUTION

Do not attempt to engage or disengage the pump with the engine running. Damage could occur to the pump and/or pump drive.

3. Pull the handle up, to the limit of its travel.

Steering Column And Wheel

The following is a description of the controls on the steering column along with an explanation of their function and/or operation. Refer to Figure 1–57.

1. Steering Wheel

Turn the steering wheel clockwise for right turns and counterclockwise for left turns.

Note: Relative direction of the steering wheel is based on the position of the upper over the carrier.

2. Indicator Light Bars

Three indicator light bars are located on the steering column and contain the following indicator lights:



Left Turn Signal – This light will blink to indicate that the left turn signal is on or the hazard lights are flashing.



Rear Wheel Offset – This indicator light will illuminate to alert the operator that the rear wheels are out of line with the carrier. Refer to “Combination Steering” found later in this Section of the Operator’s Manual for complete operating procedures.



Emergency Steer – On cranes equipped with emergency steer, this light alerts the operator that power steering pump pressure is low. When the emergency steering indicator light illuminates, there is enough oil in storage to negotiate approximately eight 90° turns. Park the crane and shutdown the engine if this indicator light illuminates. Discontinue further operations until the problem is resolved.



Travel Park Brake Engaged – This light will illuminate anytime the park brake is engaged and the ignition is on.



Service Brake Warning – This light will illuminate to warn the operator of an imminent brake failure. When this light illuminates, approximately twelve brake applications can be obtained prior to complete brake system failure. When this light illuminates discontinue operations immediately, park the crane, and correct the problem before placing the crane back into service.



Right Turn Signal – This light will blink to indicate that the right turn signal is on or the hazard lights are flashing.



Case Drain Filter Change – This indicator light will illuminate to alert the operator that the case filter is being by-passed. If this light illuminates, change the filter immediately. Refer to “Hydraulic Case Drain Filter Change” found in Section 2 of this Operator’s Manual.



Hydraulic Charge Filter – This indicator light will illuminate to alert the operator that the hydraulic charge filter is being by-passed. If this light illuminates, change the filter immediately. Refer to “Hydraulic Charge Flow Filter Change” found in Section 2 of this Operator’s Manual.



Engine Speed Warning – This light will illuminate along with an alarm buzzer to alert the operator that the engine speed is too high. When this light illuminates, decrease engine speed until light extinguishes.

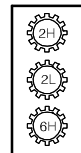
3. Transmission Shift Lever

The transmission shift lever is used to select the forward or reverse gear in the transmission. To put the transmission in forward or reverse gear, push the lever up and then push forward to engage the forward gear, or backward to engage the reverse gear.

4. Emergency Hazard Switch

This switch controls the emergency hazard flashers. Push the switch to turn flashers on, push the switch again to turn them off.

5. Transmission Range Select Switch

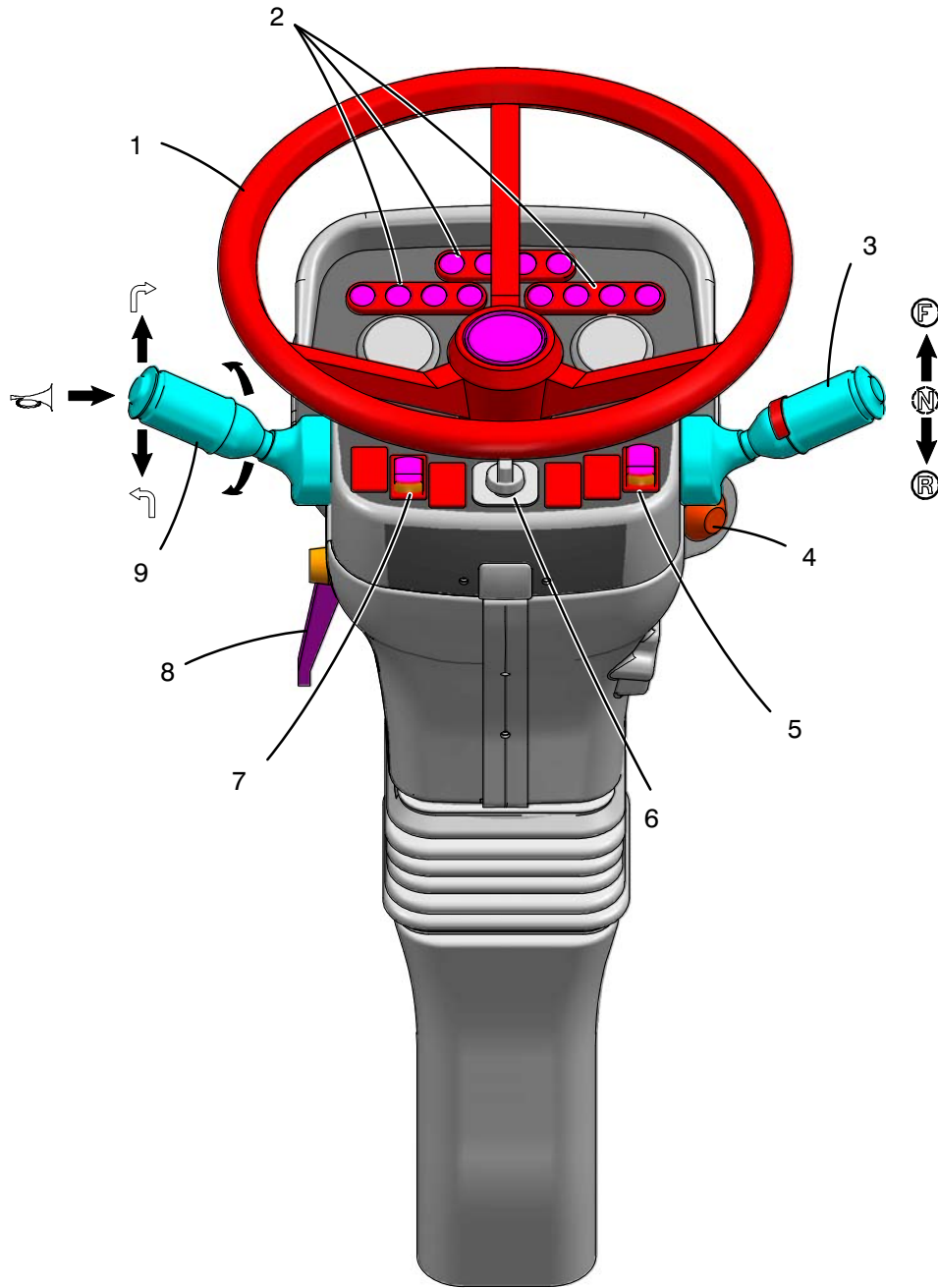


This switch is used to select either the 2-Wheel High drive mode, 2-Wheel Low drive mode, or 6-Wheel Low drive mode. Bring the crane to a complete stop and position the transmission shifter to neutral before changing the position of the range select switch.

6. Combination Steering Switch

The crane is equipped with four different modes of steering in order to provide maximum maneuverability on the job site. Refer to “Combination Steering” found later in this Section of the Operator’s Manual for complete operating procedures.

Operator's Manual



- | | | |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------------------|--|
| 1. Steering Wheel | 4. Emergency Hazard Switch | 7. Travel Park Brake Switch |
| 2. Indicator Light Bars | 5. Transmission Range Select Switch | 8. Tilt/Telescoping Column Lever |
| 3. Transmission Shift Lever | 6. Combination Steering Switch | 9. Turn Signal/Horn/Driving Lights Lever |

Figure 1–57
Steering Column And Wheel

Operator's Manual

7. Travel Park Brake Switch



This switch controls engaging and releasing the park brake.



WARNING

Do not use the park brake to stop the crane in motion (as a service brake) except in cases of extreme emergency. Application cannot be controlled.

To Engage Park Brake

- Bring the crane to a complete stop by applying the carrier service brake.
- Shift the transmission to neutral.
- Move park brake switch to "ON" position.
- Park brake indicator light should illuminate.

To Release Park Brake

- Apply the carrier service brake.
- Move park brake switch to the "OFF" position.
- The park brake indicator light should go out.

8. Tilt/Telescope Column Lever

This lever controls the tilt (angle) and telescoping function of the steering column.




To change steering column height and angle:

- Bring the crane to a complete stop.
- Shift the transmission to neutral and engage the park brake.
- Rotate the tilt/telescoping column lever.
- Position the steering wheel at the desired height and angle and rotate lever to lock it in place.
- Check all steering wheel functions before continuing operation.

9. Turn Signal/Horn/Driving Lights Lever

Turn Signal – Pull the lever down for left turn signal, push up on lever for right turn signal.

Horn – Push the end of the lever to sound the horn.

Driving Lights – Rotate the lever to the first detent  to illuminate the parking lights, the second detent  for headlights. Rotate the lever to the off  position to turn all lights off.

Transmission Controls

The transmission is a continuously variable hydrostatic drive. The transmission shifter is located on the steering column. Refer to Figure 1–57. The transmission shifter has three-positions (with lock in neutral feature) for forward, neutral, and reverse. When using the range select switch on the steering column, the crane has 3 ranges. See "Traveling The Crane" in this Section of the Operator's Manual for necessary preparations before traveling the crane.

Range Select	Max Speed	
	mph	km/hr
6 WD Low	3	5
2 WD Low	9	14.5
2 WD High	18.5	29.8

Values based on theoretical tractive effort.

CAUTION

Extended driving in 6 WD Low may damage the hydraulic system. Limit travel in this mode to 1/2 hour maximum time period. Select appropriate travel range based on the grade of slope.



WARNING

Do not attempt to travel crane up or down a grade larger than the crane capability in a particular Range Select. Failure to do this could result in loss of control and/or crane damage. Also some crane capabilities such as 6 WD Low maximum gradeability may not be usable due to such factors as maximum engine oil pan angle and crane stability.

Note: Relative direction of the crane is based on the carrier.

Operator's Manual

Transmission Travel Limits		
Hydraulic Oil Grade	Max Travel System Temperature	
	°F	°C
Standard Temperature	170	77
Extended Temperature	160	71
Arctic Temperature	125	52

Operating The Transmission Shifter

CAUTION

Extended travel may cause the hydraulic oil in the travel circuit to overheat. Crane damage may occur if hydraulic oil temperatures are exceeded. Monitor the hydraulic oil pump temperature gauge to ensure hydraulic oil temperature within the travel circuit is not exceeded. Refer to the Transmission Travel Limits chart for maximum travel system temperatures.

1. Engage the park brake and place transmission shifter in neutral position. Start the engine. (Engine will start only when transmission shifter is in neutral.) Allow the hydraulic oil to circulate for a few moments.
2. Engage travel swing lock and release the 360° swing lock, if equipped.

CAUTION

Do not leave the swing park brake or 360° swing lock engaged during pick and carry operations or when traveling or transporting the crane. Use the travel swing lock. Failure to release the swing park brake and 360° swing lock during these operations may result in damage to the swing gear.

3. Forward Travel
 - a. With the crane at a complete stop, fully apply the carrier service brakes and release the park brake.
 - b. Move transmission shifter to the “F” position.

Note: When transmission is shifted to “F”, the engine speed will increase to a fixed rpm and remain fixed even as travel speed increases.

- c. Slowly release the service brake and gently push the throttle pedal to increase travel speed, allowing the crane to accelerate.

Gently push the throttle pedal to slowly increase to the desired travel speed. Do not “mash” the throttle pedal as this may stall the engine.

4. Reverse Travel
 - a. With the crane at a complete stop, fully apply the carrier service brakes, shift the transmission to neutral, and release the park brake.
 - b. Move transmission shift lever to the “R” position.

Note: When transmission is shifted to “R”, the engine speed will increase to a fixed rpm and remain fixed even as travel speed increases.

Note: The travel/back-up alarm will sound anytime the transmission shifter is in reverse. It will also sound anytime the transmission shifter is moved out of neutral and the upper is not positioned directly over the front of the carrier.

- c. Slowly release the service brake and gently push the throttle pedal to increase travel speed, allowing the crane to accelerate.

Gently push the throttle pedal to slowly increase to the desired travel speed. Do not “mash” the throttle pedal as this may stall the engine.

Operator's Manual

Operator's Cab Heater

A cab heater is used to heat the operator's cab. The operator's cab heater uses engine coolant circulating through the unit to provide heat. The engine coolant circulates through the heater in the operator's cab when the heater switch is turned on. Refer to Figure 1–37 for heater controls. Use the following instructions to operate the operator's cab heater.

1. With the engine running, press the top part of the heater/air conditioner selector switch to turn the heater on.
2. Turn the climate control knob to the desired setting.
3. Press the fan speed switch to control the amount of air blown into the operator's cab.
4. To turn the heater off, press the heater/air conditioner speed switch to the off (middle) position.
5. During warm weather conditions or if the heater is not going to be used for an extended period of time, rotate the temperature control knob to the coolest setting.

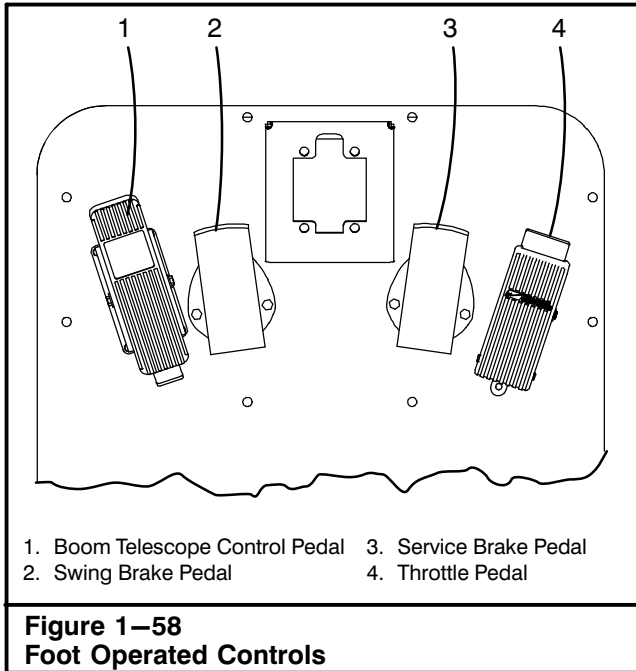
Air Conditioning (If Equipped)

The operator's cab is equipped with an air conditioning unit. Use the following instructions to operate the air conditioner. Refer to Figure 1–37 for air conditioning controls.

Note: Using the air conditioner will help dehumidify the operator's cab and assist in defogging the windshield.

1. Start the engine and allow all operating temperatures and pressures to reach their normal range.
2. Press the bottom part of the heater/air conditioner selector switch to activate the air conditioning unit.
3. Press the fan speed switch to control the amount of air blown into the operator's cab.
4. Turn the climate control knob to the desired setting.
5. To turn the air conditioner off, press the heater/air conditioner selector switch to the off (middle) position.

Operator's Manual



Foot Operated Controls

The following is a description of the foot controls in the operator's cab along with an explanation of their function and/or operation. Refer to Figure 1–58.

1. Boom Telescope Control Pedal

Depress the toe of the pedal to extend the boom. Depress the heel to retract the boom. Refer to "Boom Telescope System" found later in this Section of the Operator's Manual for complete operating instructions.

2. Swing Brake Pedal

The swing brake pedal is used to stop rotation of the upper over the carrier. Refer to "Swing System" found later in this Section of the Operator's Manual for complete operating instructions.

3. Service Brake Pedal

The carrier service brakes are controlled by the brake pedal. Press the pedal down to apply the service brakes. Release the pedal to release the service brakes.

The distance the service brake pedal is moved determines the braking force. Depress the pedal fully only in cases of emergency as this makes control of the crane difficult.

4. Throttle Pedal

Engine speed is controlled by the throttle pedal. Press the throttle pedal down to increase engine speed. Release the throttle pedal to decrease engine speed. The throttle pedal is also used to reduce speed and to descend down a grade. Refer to "Reducing Speed" and "Descending Down a Grade" in this section of the Operator's Manual for more information.



WARNING

Rapidly lifting off of the accelerator pedal will cause a sharp sudden decrease in speed. This may cause major crane damage. Slowly lift foot at a rate equivalent to the reduced rate of speed of the machine.

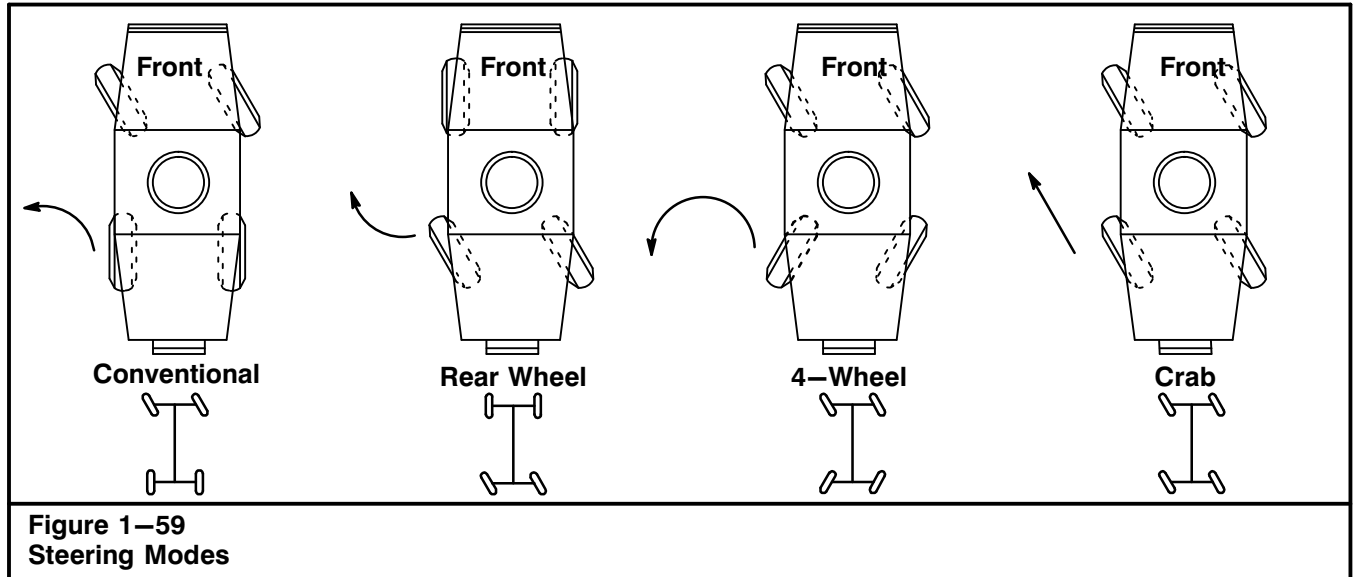


Figure 1-59
Steering Modes

Combination Steering

The crane is equipped with four different modes of steering in order to provide maximum maneuverability on the job site: conventional, rear wheel, 4-wheel, and crab steer. Each steer mode provides slightly different maneuverability to meet job site requirements. Refer to Figure 1-59 for illustration of the different steer modes.

Conventional Steer Mode

This steer mode is similar to that of an automobile. In this steer mode, the front wheels may be turned in either direction and the rear wheels remain stationary. Use this steer mode for all extended or high speed travel.

WARNING

Do not use rear wheel, 4-wheel, or crab steer mode for extended or high speed travel as steering behavior may be unfamiliar and a loss of crane control could occur.

Rear Wheel Steer Mode

This steer mode is similar to that of a fork truck. In this steer mode, the rear wheels may be turned in either direction and the front wheels remain stationary. Use this steer mode for job site travel only; not for extended or highway travel.

4-Wheel Steer Mode

This steer mode allows steering with all six wheels. The front wheels turn in one direction and the rear wheels turn in the opposite direction. This results in a greatly reduced turning radius that allows extra maneuverability in certain job site conditions. Use this steer mode for job site travel only; not for extended or highway travel.

Crab Steer Mode

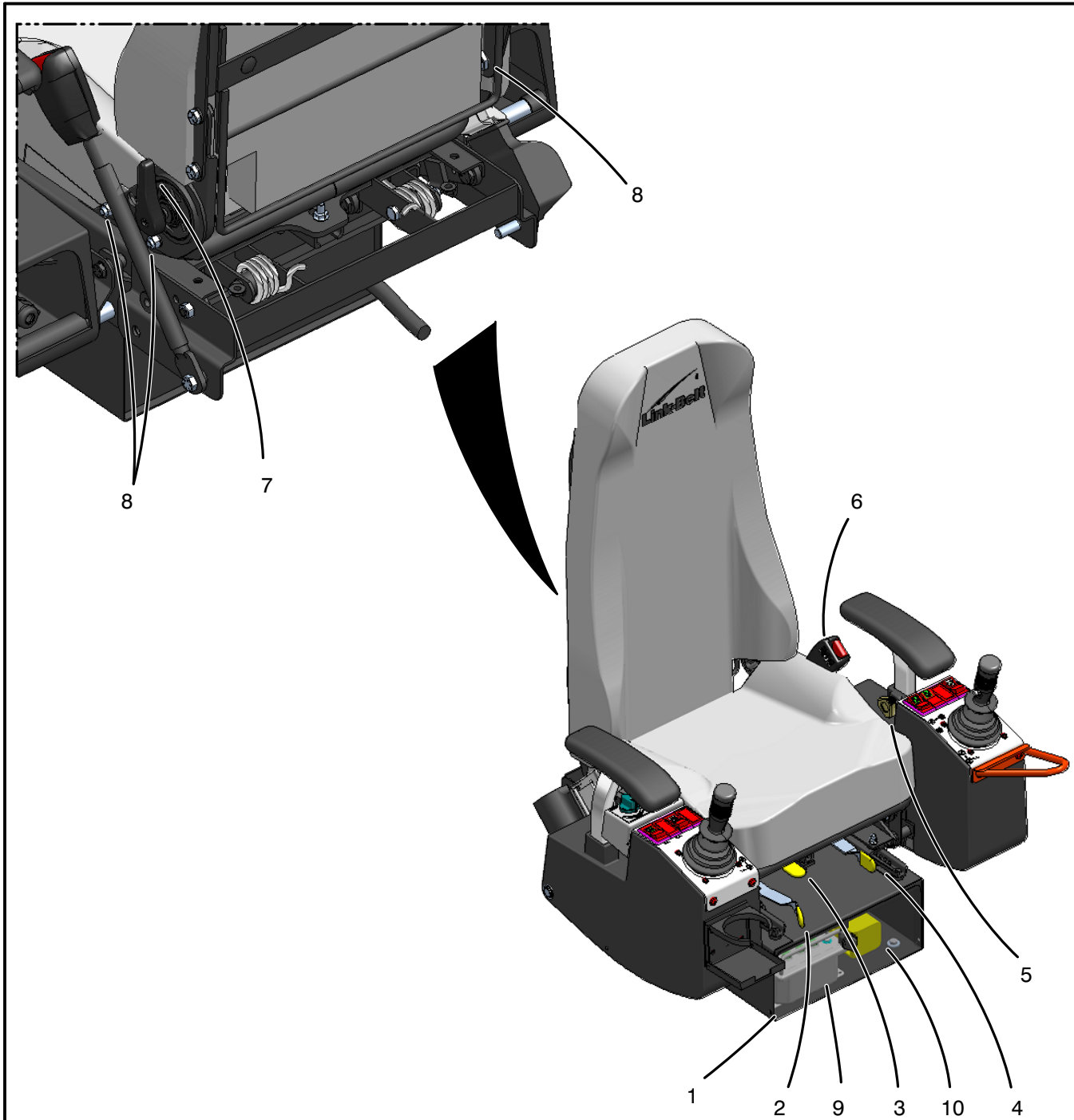
This steer mode allows steering with all six wheels. The front and rear wheels turn simultaneously in the same direction which moves the crane in the diagonal path of travel. This gives the operator another method of maneuvering the crane where job site conditions require it. Use this steer mode for job site travel only; not for extended or highway travel.

Changing Steering Modes

The rear wheel offset light, located on the steering column in the indicator light bars (Figure 1-57), is designed to assist the operator in changing steering modes by determining when the rear wheels are straight. This light will come on anytime the rear wheels are not in-line with the carrier. Use the following procedure when changing steering modes:

1. Bring the crane to a complete stop.
2. Turn the steering wheel until the rear wheel offset light goes off.
3. Move the steer switch to the conventional steering mode.
4. Check all wheels for proper alignment by traveling the crane a short distance, straight ahead, to ensure it tracks straight.
5. Bring the crane to a complete stop and move the steer mode switch to the desired position.

Operator's Manual



- 1. Tool Box
- 2. Seat and Console Release Lever
- 3. Seat Release Lever
- 4. Seat Height Adjustment Lever

- 5. Arm Rest Height Adjustment Knob
- 6. Seat Belt
- 7. Seat Back Adjustment Lever

- 8. Seat Back Connecting Capscrews
- 9. Boom Telescope Remote Control Box
- 10. Manual Control Box

Figure 1-60
Operator's Seat

Operator's Seat

This 6-way adjustable seat is controlled by manual controls. Refer to Figure 1–60.



WARNING

Do not make seat or console adjustments while operating the crane or while crane is in motion. Discontinue operations and properly park crane before making adjustments.

1. Tool Box

A tool box is provided under the operator's seat to store the manual control box, the manual boom control box, tools, and other crane accessories.

2. Seat And Console Release Lever

Move the seat and console release lever to the left and hold. Position the seat as desired and release the lever to lock the seat in place.

3. Seat Release Lever

Move the seat release lever to the left and hold. Position the seat as desired and release the lever to lock the seat in place.

4. Seat Height Adjustment Lever

Move the height adjustment lever to the left and hold. Position the seat as desired and release the lever to lock the seat in place.

5. Arm Rest Height Adjustment Knob

Loosen the knob on the inside of the arm rest. Position the arm rest as desired and tighten knob to lock the arm rest in place.

6. Seat Belt

A seat belt is provided and must be worn during all operations. To fasten the seat belt pull the belt out of the retractor and insert the tongue into the buckle until you hear a snap and feel the latch engage. Ensure the belt is not twisted and is fitting snugly around the hips, not around the waist.



WARNING

Always wear the seat belt while operating the crane. The seat belt must be snug and low across the hips.

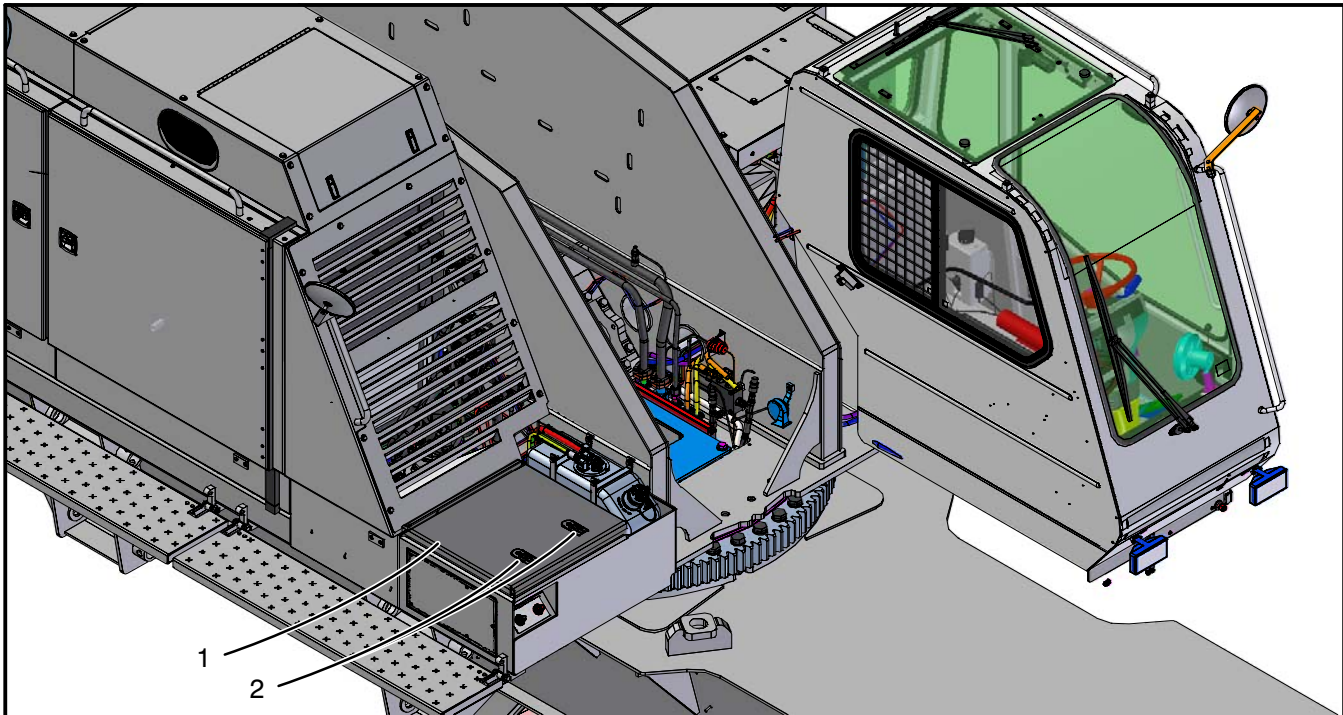
7. Seat Back Adjustment Lever

Raise the lever and adjust the seat back to the desired position. Release the lever to lock the seat back in place.

8. Seat Back Connecting Capscrews

The seat back can be removed for easy access to the electrical panel. Remove, seat back connecting capscrews on the back of seat (two on one side and one on the other side). Slide the seat to the right towards the cab door and lift the seat back.

Operator's Manual



1. Electrical Center And Battery Box
2. Access Handles

Figure 1–61
Upper Electrical Center And Battery Box

Electrical Center And Battery Box

The electrical center and battery box are located on the right front of the upper. Refer to Figure 1–61. Pull up both latches on the cover to access electrical components and batteries.

Battery Box

The battery box is located the right front of the upper. Refer to Figure 1–62. Raise the cover to access the batteries. The battery box houses three 12 volt heavy duty maintenance free batteries. Inspect the batteries, battery cables, and connections every 50 hours of operation. Check that the battery connections are secure and corrosion free. If corrosion exists, remove the bat-

tery cables from the terminals and clean them with a wire brush. Install the cables and apply a small amount of grease to each terminal to prevent corrosion.



WARNING

Battery posts, terminals, and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds. Wash hands after handling.

Battery Warmer

The battery box is equipped with battery warmers located under batteries. In cold climates plug the battery warmers into a 110V outlet to keep the batteries warm and provide better starting.

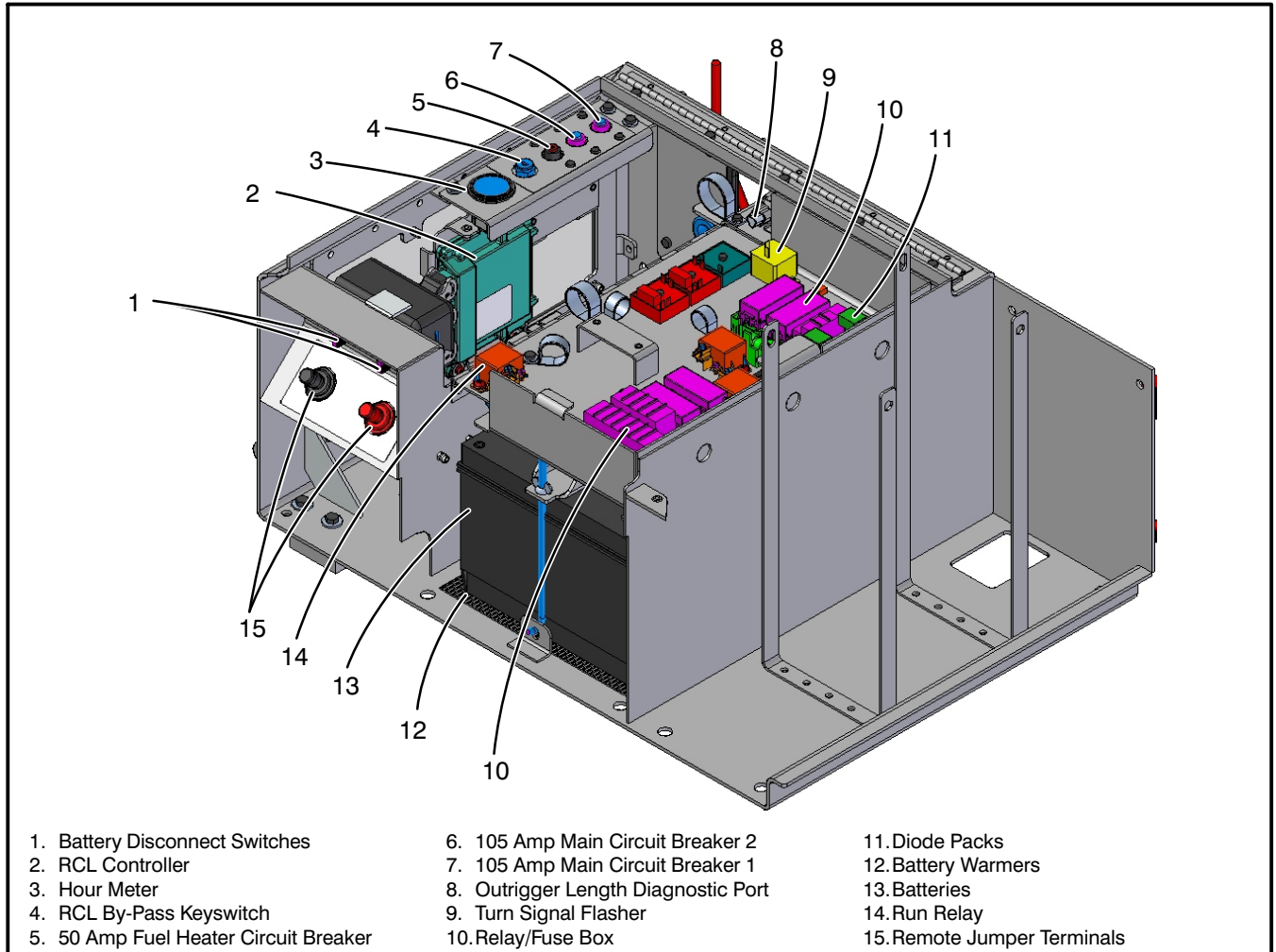


Figure 1-62
Upper Electrical Center And Upper Battery Box

Battery Disconnect Switches

The battery disconnect switches are located in the electrical center on the right front of the upper. Refer to Figure 1-63.

CAUTION

Ignition switch should be shut off at least 70 seconds prior to turning disconnect switches to the "OFF" position.

Major damage may occur to the electronic equipment from welding on the crane prior to turning disconnect switches to the "OFF" position.

Ignition switch should be shut off at least 70 seconds prior to turning disconnect switches to the "OFF" position.

tion. Move the disconnect switches to the "Off" position before welding on the crane to protect the crane's electronic components from damage due to an electric arc type welder.

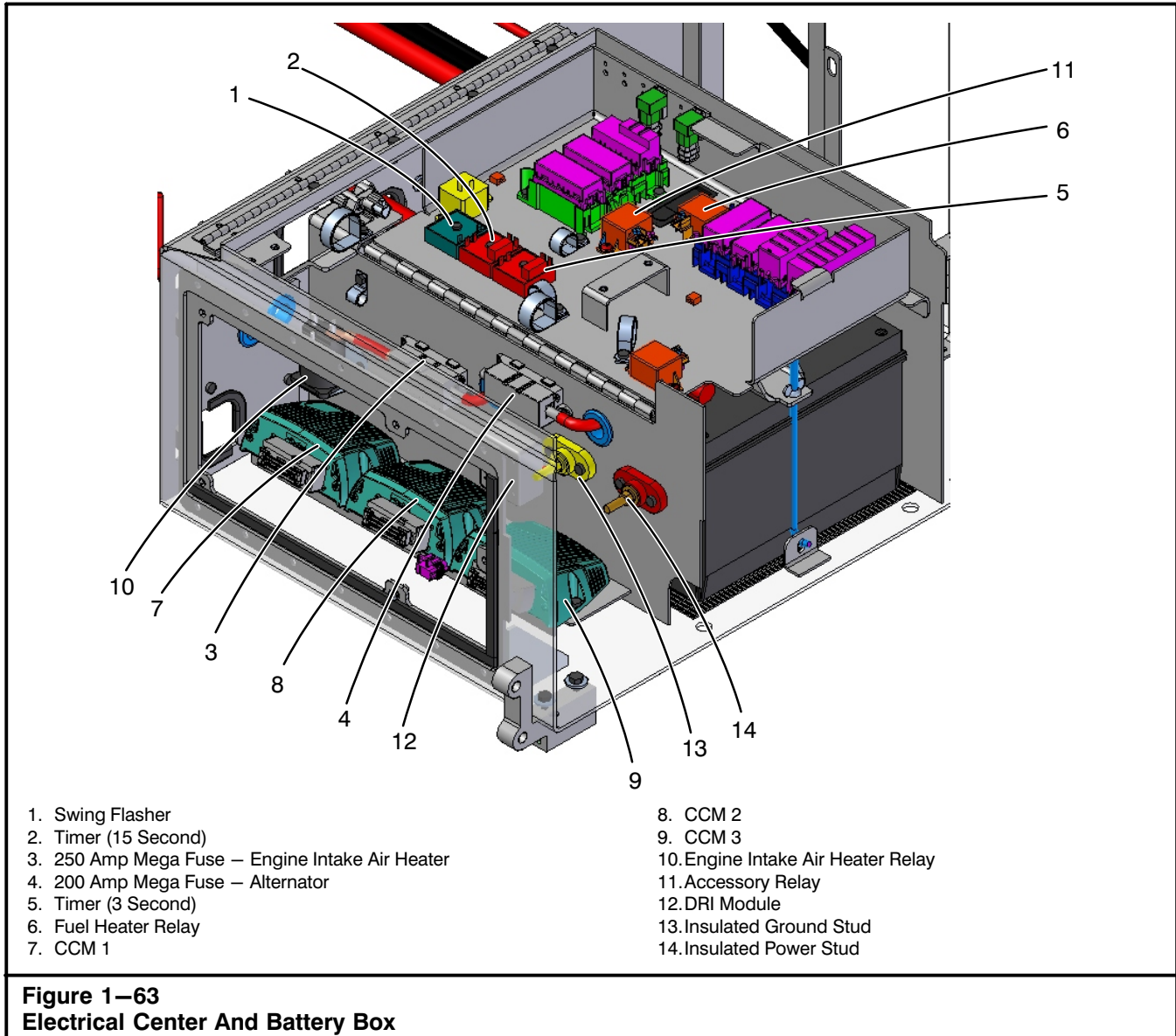
Hour Meter

The hour meter is located in the electrical center on the right front of the upper. Refer to Figure 1-63. The hour meter registers engine operating hours. It is useful in determining lubrication and maintenance schedules.

RCL By-Pass Keyswitch

The RCL By-Pass Keyswitch is located in the electrical center on the right front of the upper. Refer to Figure 1-62. The RCL by-pass keyswitch is used to by-pass the Rated Capacity Limiter computer in emergency situations. Refer to "Crane Monitoring System" in this Section of this Operator's Manual.

Operator's Manual



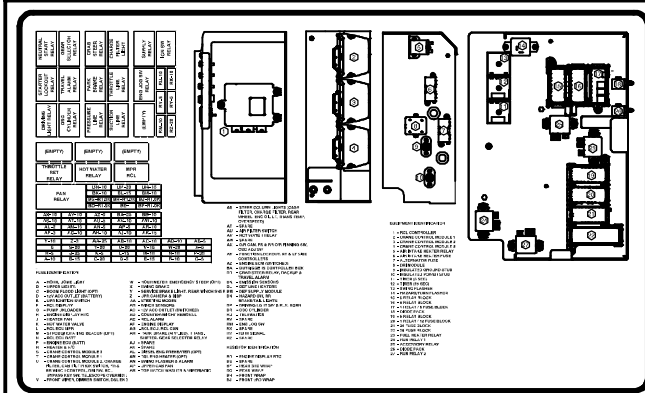
Upper Circuit Breakers

The upper circuit breakers are located in the battery box on the right front of the upper. Refer to Figure 1–62. There are three manual reset type circuit breakers which service the crane's electrical system. If a breaker has been tripped, push and release the breaker to reset.

Mega Fuses

There are two mega fuses located in the electrical control center. Refer to Figure 1–63. These fuses protect the alternator and engine intake air heater electrical circuits. If these systems are not functioning, check and replace these fuses as required.

Operator's Manual

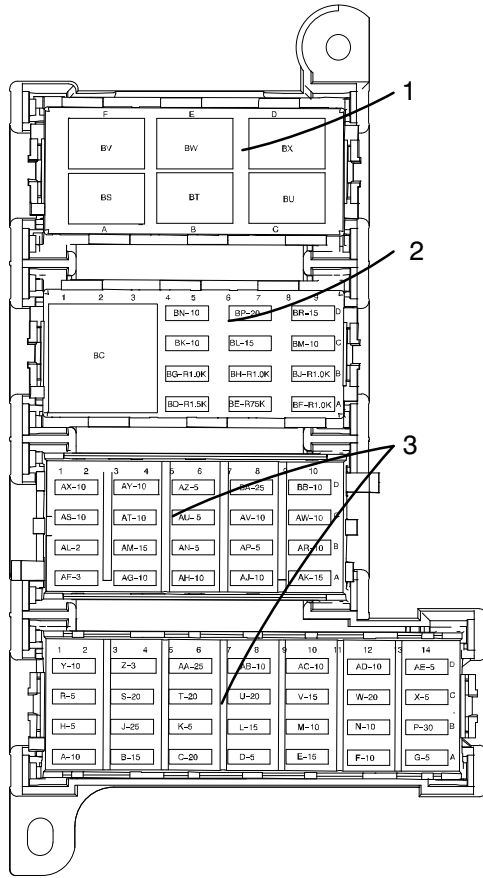


FUSE IDENTIFICATION

- A - HORN, DOME LIGHT
- B - UPPER LIGHTS
- C - BOOM FLOOD LIGHT (OPT)
- D - 12V ACC OUTLET (BATTERY)
- E - UPR IGNITION SWITCH
- F - RCL DISPLAY
- G - PUMP UNLOADER
- H - ENGINE DISPLAY RTC
- J - HEATER FAN
- K - HOT WATER VALVE
- L - RCL ECU MPR
- M - STROBE/ROTATING BEACON (OPT)
- N - RCL ECU BATT
- P - ENGINE ECU (BATT)
- R - HEATER & A/C
- S - CRANE CONTROL MODULE 3
- T - CRANE CONTROL MODULE 1
- U - CRANE CONTROL MODULE 2, CHARGE FILTER, CAB TILT PROX SWITCH, FR & RR WINCH CONTROL, DRI SW, RCL BYPASS KEY SW, TELESCOPE OVERRIDE
- V - FRONT WIPER, DIMMER SWITCH, DSL ENG
- W - HOUR METER, EMERGENCY STEER (OPT)
- X - SWING BRAKE
- Y - SERVICE BRAKE LIGHT, REAR WINCH SNSR
- Z - UPR CAMERA & DISP
- AA - STEERING MODES
- AB - WINCH SENSORS
- AC - 12V ACC OUTLET (SWITCHED)
- AD - COUNTERWEIGHT REMOVAL
- AE - RCL ALARM
- AF - ENGINE DISPLAY
- AG - RCL ECU, RCL CAN
- AH - PARK BRAKE (APPLIED), TRANS. SHIFTER, GEAR SELECTOR RELAY
- AJ - SPARE
- AK - SPARE
- AL - DIESEL ENG PREHEATER (OPT)
- AM - DSL ENG HEATER (OPT)
- AN - SWING FLASHER & ALARM
- AP - UPPER CAB FAN
- AR - TOP HATCH WASHER & WIPER
- AS - STEER COLUMN LIGHTS (CASE FILTER, CHARGE FILTER, REAR WHEEL, ENG OIL LT, TRANS TEMP, OVERSPEED)
- AT - SPARE
- AU - AIR FILTER SWITCH
- AV - HOT WATER RELAY
- AW - SPARE
- AX - O/R CAN, FR & RR O/R PINNING SW, OSC ADJ SW
- AY - FUNCTION LOCKOUT, RT & LT SIDE CONTROLLERS
- AZ - ENGINE ECM (SWITCHED)
- BA - OUTRIGGERS CONTROLLER BOX
- BB - CRAB STEER RELAY, BACKUP & TRAVEL ALARM
- BK - EMISSION SENSORS
- BL - DEF LINE HEATERS
- BM - DEF SUPPLY MODULE
- BN - HAZARD SW, RR BRAKE/TAI LIGHTS
- BP - DRIVING LIGHT SW & RLY, HORN
- BR - OSC CYLINDER
- RU - TELEMATICS
- RV - SPARE
- RW - ENG JOG SW
- RX - SPARE
- RY - TURN SIGNAL
- RZ - SPARE

RESISTOR IDENTIFICATION

- BD - ENGINE DISPLAY RTC
- BE - SPARE
- BF - REAR 3RD WRAP
- BG - REAR WRAP
- BH - FRONT WRAP
- BJ - FRONT 3RD WRAP



1. Relays
2. Resistors
3. Fuses

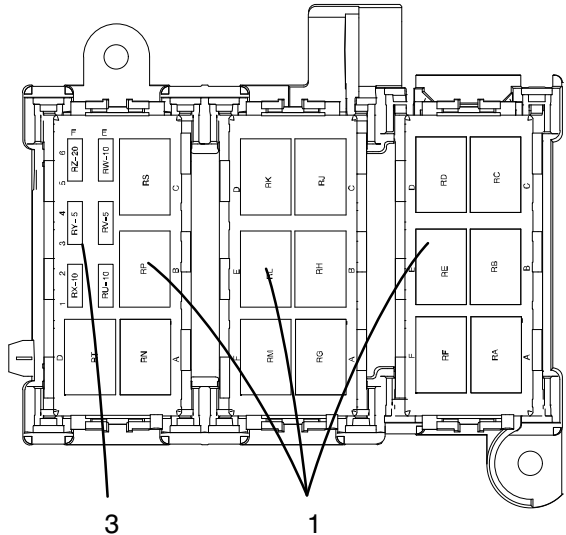


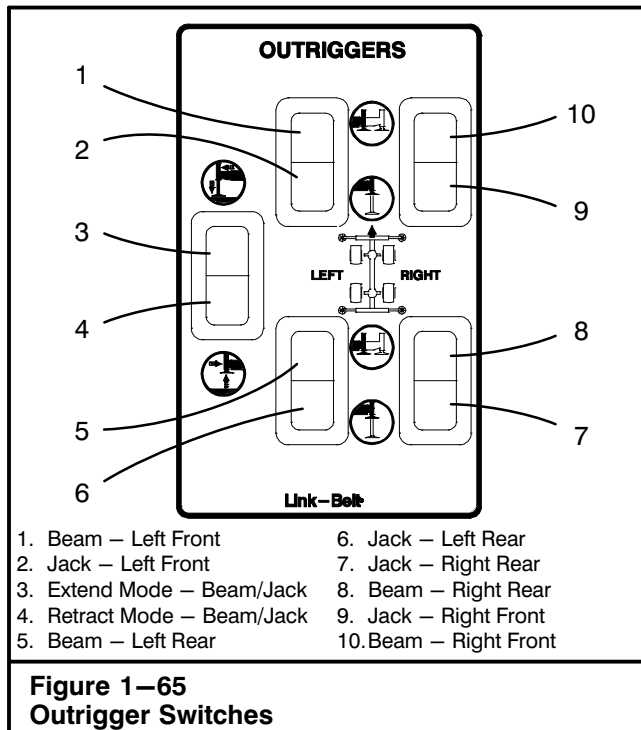
Figure 1-64
Upper Fuse Box's

Upper Fuse Box

The upper fuse box is located in the upper electrical center on the right front of the upper. Refer to Figure 1-63 and Figure 1-64. Remove the fuse box cover to gain access to the fuses. A label which designates the upper electrical circuit protected by each fuse

is on the back of the electrical center cover. Use the fuse puller provided to replace a fuse.

Operator's Manual



Outrigger Operation

The outriggers can be used in any one of three positions; fully retracted, intermediate extended, or fully extended. The outriggers are controlled by switches located on a hand held, tethered control box (Refer to Figure 1–33 and Figure 1–65) and the extend position levers located on the outrigger boxes (Refer to Figure 1–66). Each outrigger switch (Left Front, Left Rear, Right Front, Right Rear) controls all functions of that outrigger beam and jack cylinder. The mode switch controls outrigger cylinder direction, extend/retract. Each extend position lever controls the extend length of the beam. It allows for beams to be fully extended, or limits them to intermediate extended lengths based on the selected position of the extend position lever.

The outrigger pontoons must set on a smooth, solid surface flush with ground with no hills or valleys under them or they may be damaged or destroyed. If there is any doubt as to the ground conditions, use mats under the pontoons. Check pontoons before and during operations. If they are allowed to settle, they may lose their effectiveness, and make continued operations unsafe.

A bubble level is provided on the shifter console, in operator's cab, to assist in determining when crane is level. Refer to Figure 1–33.

The hand held, tethered control box stores on the right side wall of the operator's cab beside the operator's seat. Refer to Figure 1–33 for control box location and

Figure 1–65 for switch identification. The control box allows the operator to remotely control all outrigger functions.



WARNING

Do not extend or retract an outrigger beam or jack unless it is in full view of the operator or signal person. Ensure all personnel and obstructions are clear from the path of the machinery.

To Extend Outrigger Beams

1. Park crane in the desired location. Position the transmission shifter to neutral, engage the park brake, and shutdown engine.



WARNING



Pontoons must be attached to outrigger jacks before crane is set on outriggers. If pontoons should settle, the jacks could disengage from the pontoons, causing a loss of stability.

2. Remove the pontoons from storage and attach one to each outrigger jack.
3. Determine the outrigger position desired. Set the extend position lever as required (Refer to Figure 1–66).



WARNING

When making lifts on outriggers, all outrigger beams must be equally extended; all fully retracted, all intermediate extended, or all fully extended. Failure to do so will cause a loss of stability and possible crane damage and/or personal injury.

4. Start the engine.
5. Push an outrigger switch to the "BEAM"  position and hold.
6. Push the mode switch to "EXTEND MODE"  position and hold until the beam reaches the selected position; intermediate extended or fully extended.
7. When beam reaches selected position, release both switches.
8. Repeat steps 5–7, for each outrigger beam, until all the beams are set to the selected position.

Note: As conditions warrant, a proficient crane operator may operate multiple beams such as one end or side at the same time.

9. If the intermediate extended beam position is to be used, visually check that all beams are properly positioned in the intermediate extended position. All beams must be extended until the stop plate contacts the extend position lever and the arrow is aligned with the outrigger box collar. Refer to Figure 1–66.
10. Set the rated capacity limiter to the proper setting to match the position of the outrigger beams.

WARNING


When making lifts with the crane on outriggers, all outrigger beams must be equally extended; fully retracted, intermediate extended, or fully extended.

When making lifts with the outrigger beams in the intermediate extended position, the extend position lever must be in the intermediate extended position. Visually check that all outrigger beams are extended until the stop plate contacts the extend position lever and the arrow is aligned with the outrigger box collar before beginning operations.

Check that the Rated Capacity Limiter is set to the correct outrigger position before beginning operation.


Failure to perform any of the above may cause crane damage and/or serious personal injury.

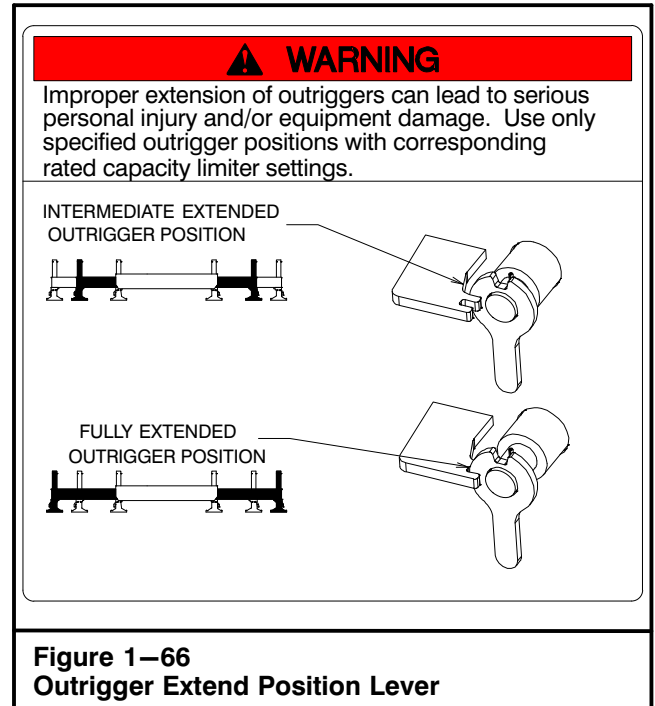
To Extend Outrigger Jacks – Raise The Crane

1. With the beams extended to the selected position (fully retracted, intermediate extended, or fully extended), push an outrigger switch to the “JACK”  position and hold.

CAUTION

When the hoist line is tied off to the crane or any solid object, the winch system can be overloaded causing major winch, wire rope, or crane damage. Do not extend boom, raise or lower the boom, or raise the crane on outriggers unless wire rope is spooled off the drum to prevent tension on the wire rope.

2. Push the mode switch to “EXTEND MODE”  and hold until the jack cylinder is fully extended.
3. Release both switches.



4. Repeat Steps 1–3 for each outrigger jack.

Note: As conditions warrant, a proficient crane operator may operate multiple jack cylinders such as one end or side at the same time.

5. Raise or lower jacks as required to level the crane.
6. Check that all tires are clear of the ground and pontoons are not settling.

Note: A bubble level is provided on the shifter console to assist in determining when the crane is level.



WARNING

All capacities listed in the Crane Rating Manual, when on outriggers, are based on all tires clear of the ground, all outrigger beams equally extended (fully retracted, intermediate extended, or fully extended), using the proper chart for the outrigger position and the crane setting level on a firm, solid surface. Major reductions in the crane lifting capacity and unsafe operating conditions can result if these conditions are not met.

To Retract Outrigger Jacks – Lower The Crane



1. Fully retract the boom. Swing the upper over the front of the carrier and engage the travel swing lock.
2. Fully boom down.

Operator's Manual

3. Push an individual outrigger switch to the "JACK"  position and hold.
4. Push the center mode switch to "RETRACT MODE"  position and hold until the jack cylinder is fully retracted.
5. Release both switches.
6. Repeat Steps 3–5 for each outrigger jack.

Note: As conditions warrant, a proficient crane operator may operate multiple jack cylinders such as one end or side at the same time.

To Retract Outrigger Beams

1. Push an individual outrigger switch to the "BEAM"  position and hold.
2. Push the center mode switch to the "RETRACT MODE"  position and hold until the beam is fully retracted.
3. Release both switches.
4. Repeat Steps 1–3 for each beam.

Note: As conditions warrant, a proficient crane operator may operate multiple beams such as one end or side at the same time.

5. Store all pontoons in the brackets provided.

Outrigger Removal System

The front and rear outrigger boxes can be removed from the carrier to reduce the overall weight of the crane. Quick disconnect type hydraulic fittings are utilized to reduce the effort of removing the outrigger boxes. The outrigger box assemblies weigh approximately 8,500 lb (3 856kg) each. The crane or an auxiliary lifting device can be used to remove and install the outrigger boxes. When using the crane boom to remove outrigger boxes, always refer to the Crane Rating Manual to ensure crane capacities are not exceeded. The auxiliary lifting device, skids, and any rigging used must be capable of handling the entire weight of an outrigger box assembly.

This crane may be equipped with hydraulic pin cylinder system to ease removal of the outrigger boxes from the carrier frame.

Outrigger Box Removal

1. With crane parked on a firm, level surface, position transmission shifter to neutral and apply park brake.
2. Fully retract all outrigger jacks and beams.
3. Remove the pontoons from each outrigger jack and properly store them on the outrigger box.

4. Remove the capscrews from the connecting pins. If equipped with hydraulic pin removal, remove the pin locks from the hydraulic pin cylinder. Store the hardware in the crane's tool box located under the operator's seat.



WARNING

All outrigger jacks and beams must be fully retracted before connecting pins are removed or the hydraulic pin cylinder is retracted. Failure to do so can result in personal injury and/or crane damage.

5. Remove the connecting pins or retract hydraulic pin cylinder.
6. Shutdown engine and relieve hydraulic system pressure.



WARNING

Hydraulic oil is under pressure and may be hot. A sudden release of hot oil could cause burns or other serious injury. Before removing or installing any outrigger circuit hydraulic hose, shutdown the engine and relieve hydraulic system pressure.

7. Remove hydraulic hoses from their ports on the carrier. Be sure to match up and mate the dust caps and plugs from all the quick disconnect fittings and keep them clean for future use. Refer to Figure 1–68.
8. Remove the electrical connection from the receptacle.



WARNING

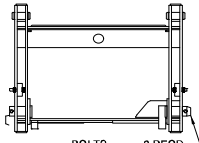
When using the crane's boom or an auxiliary lifting device to handle the outrigger boxes, always ensure lifting capacities are not exceeded.

9. Using the crane's boom or an appropriate auxiliary lifting device, rig a sling to lifting shackles on top of outrigger box.
10. Lift the outrigger box up and away from the crane.
11. Place and secure outrigger box onto a transport vehicle.
12. Repeat procedure for the other outrigger box.
13. Before transporting the crane be sure all hydraulic hoses and mounting pins are secure.

INFORMATION

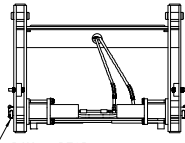
Outrigger pin retention devices must be in place to prevent accidental removal. Retention devices must be removed to pull pins.

STANDARD OUTRIGGER PINS

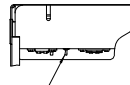


BOLTS 2 REQD
WASHERS 4 REQD
NUTS 2 REQD

OPTIONAL HYDRAULIC OUTRIGGER PIN REMOVAL



PINS 2 REQD
CLIPS 2 REQD

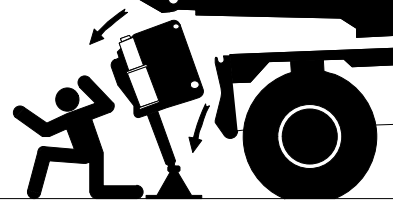


OUTRIGGER PINNING SWITCH (OPTION)
PIN ← UNPIN
VIEW UNDER FENDER



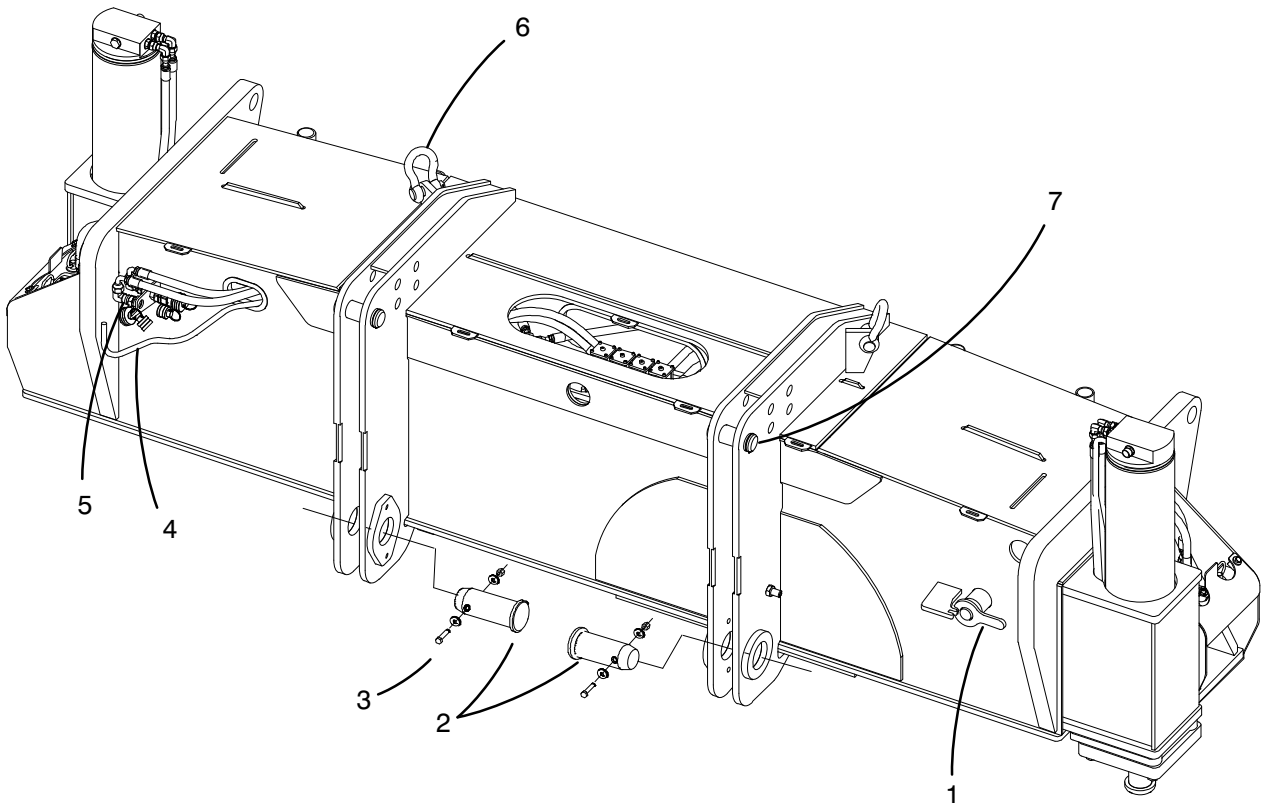
VIEW FROM BACK OF OUTRIGGER

⚠ WARNING



HYDRAULIC OUTRIGGER PIN REMOVAL

Do not activate outrigger pin removal system when crane is on outriggers.



- 1. Extend Position Lever
- 2. Connecting Pins
- 3. Bolt, Washers, And Locknut
- 4. Electrical Connection

- 5. Hydraulic Hoses
- 6. Lifting Shackles
- 7. Mounting Pins

Figure 1–67
Standard Outrigger Box Assembly

Operator's Manual

⚠ WARNING

HYDRAULIC OUTRIGGER PIN REMOVAL

Do not activate outrigger pin removal system when crane is on outriggers.

INFORMATION

Outrigger pin retention devices must be in place to prevent accidental removal. Retention devices must be removed to pull pins.

STANDARD OUTRIGGER PINS

BOLTS 2 REQ
WASHERS 4 REQ
NUTS 2 REQ

OPTIONAL HYDRAULIC OUTRIGGER PIN REMOVAL

PINS 2 REQ
CLIPS 2 REQ

VIEW FROM BACK OF OUTRIGGER

OUTRIGGER PINNING SWITCH (OPTION)

PIN ← UNPIN

VIEW UNDER FENDER

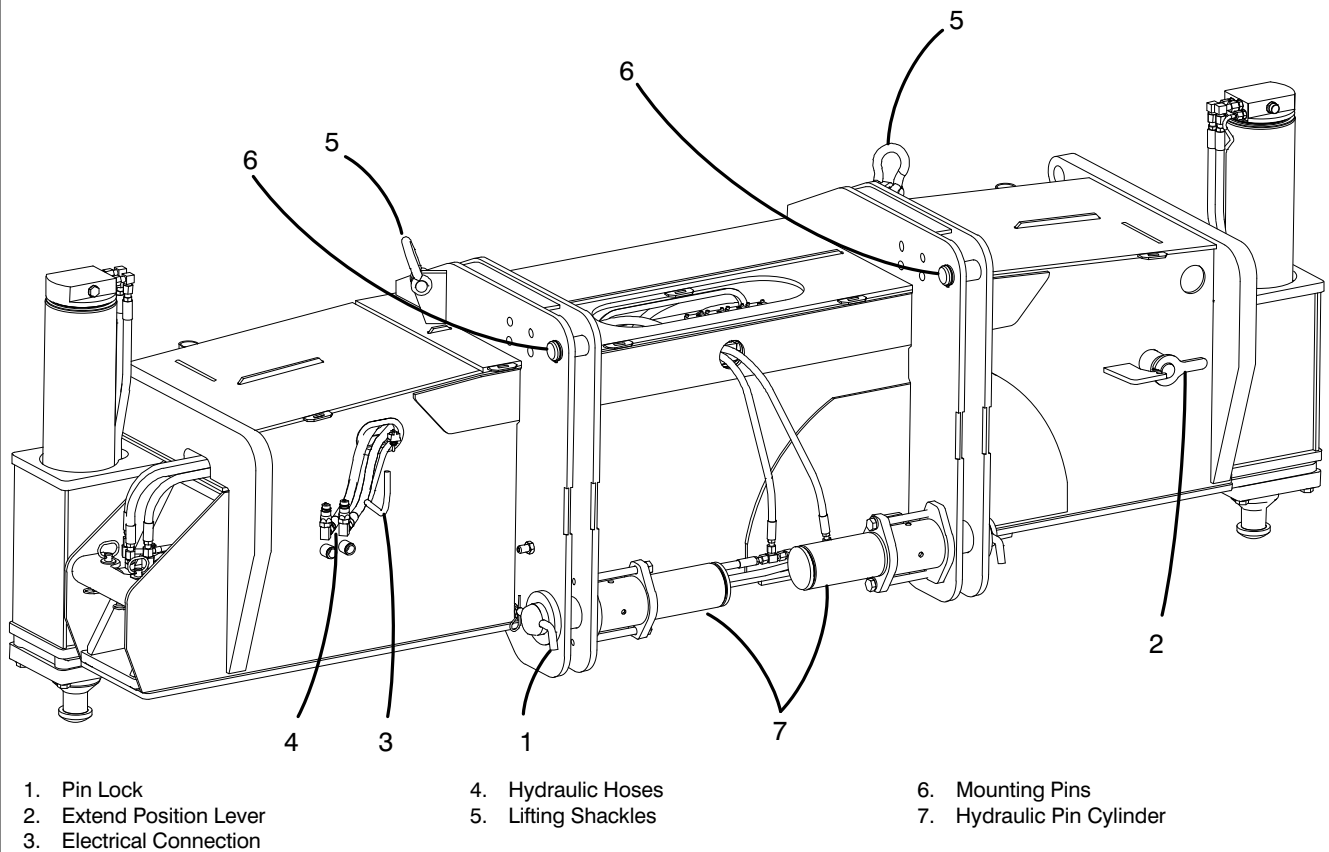


Figure 1–68
Outrigger Box Assembly With Hydraulic Pin Cylinder

Operator's Manual

Outrigger Box Installation

1. With crane parked on a firm, level surface, position transmission shifter to neutral and apply park brake.
2. Rig a sling to the lifting shackles on the top of the outrigger box. Refer to Figure 1–68.



WARNING

When using the crane's boom or an auxiliary lifting device to handle the outrigger boxes, always ensure lifting capacities are not exceeded.

3. Using the crane's boom or an appropriate lifting device, lift the outrigger box off the transport vehicle and set it down to the front or rear of the carrier, positioning it for installation.
4. Carefully lift the outrigger box enough to align the mounting pins of the box with the mounting lugs of the carrier. Lower the box onto lugs.
5. Shutdown the engine and relieve hydraulic system pressure.



WARNING

Hydraulic oil is under pressure and may be hot. A sudden release of hot oil could cause burns or other serious injury. Before removing or installing any outrigger circuit hydraulic hose, shutdown the engine and relieve hydraulic system pressure.

6. Connect hydraulic hoses to the ports on the carrier. Install all dust plugs to any open port. Plug the electrical connector into the receptacle.
7. Install the connecting pins. Install the capscrews, washers, and locknuts to the connecting pins
8. If crane is equipped with the hydraulic pin cylinder, properly start engine and allow the system pressure to reach normal operating range. Activate the hydraulic pin cylinder control switch to extend the cylinder pin through the carrier mounting lug eyes. Install the pin locks on each end of the hydraulic pin cylinder and secure with cotter pins.



WARNING

Outrigger pin locks must be installed to the hydraulic pin cylinders to prevent accidental pin removal.

Crane System Controls

The following pages, along with Figure 1–70, give detailed instructions of individual controls related to crane operation. It is essential that the operator knows the function of each control and its duty in the overall operation of the crane.



WARNING


Read and understand all "Operating Safety" procedures as well as all other operating instructions in this Operator's Manual and the engine manufacturer's manual before attempting to operate the crane. This crane should only be operated by a qualified operator who has read and understood this entire Operator's Manual.



Engine Throttle


The crane is equipped with a throttle pedal to control the engine speed. Press pedal down to increase engine speed; release to decrease engine speed.


Throttle Lock System

The throttle lock system gives the operator the ability to set and hold a specific engine speed. Refer to Figure 1–70. This provides the operator with more flexibility for certain job requirements.

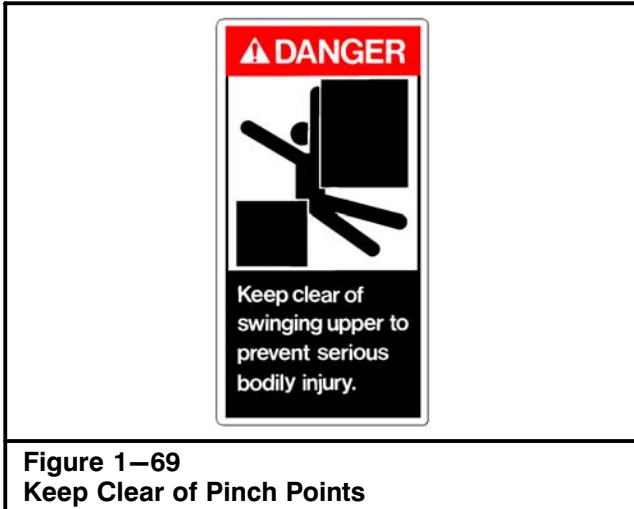
To lock the throttle, press the throttle pedal until the desired engine speed is reached and press the top part of the throttle lock switch  and release. The engine should continue to run at a constant speed when the throttle pedal is released.

To increase throttle lock setting, either press and hold the bottom part of the throttle lock switch  until desired engine speed is reached and release switch, or press the throttle pedal until the desired engine speed is reached and press and release the top part of the throttle lock  switch.

To decrease throttle lock setting, press and release the top part of the throttle lock  switch until desired engine speed is reached.

To disable the throttle lock and return to idle, press and hold the top part of the throttle lock switch .

Operator's Manual





Swing System

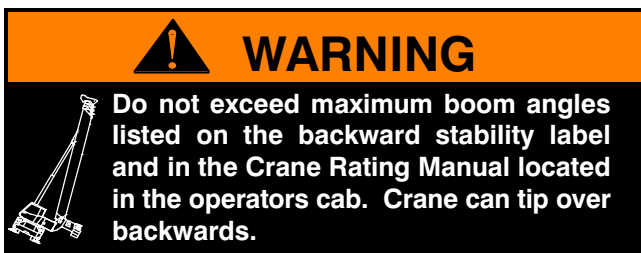
Rotation of the upper over the carrier is controlled by the swing system. Use the following controls to operate the swing function of the crane:

Swing Brake Pedal

The swing brake pedal is used to stop rotation of the upper over the carrier. To apply the swing brake, push down on the swing brake foot pedal. To release the swing brake, release the swing brake foot pedal.

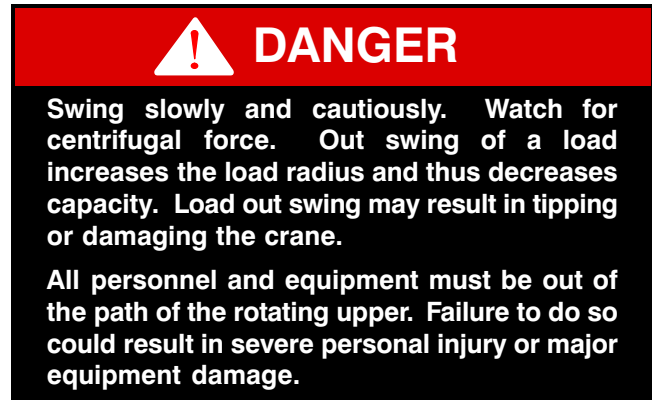
Swing Control Lever

The control lever, on the left side of the operator's seat, is used to operate the swing function of the upper. Move the control lever to the  position to swing left; move it to the  position to swing right. Anytime the swing lever is engaged, an audible alarm will sound to alert ground personnel of the swinging upper.



To Swing The Upper

1. Compare the boom configuration and length to the capacity chart in the Crane Rating Manual. Position the boom safely within the limits specified on the capacity chart.
2. Ensure that all personnel are out of the swing path. Dangerous pinch points are created during swinging.

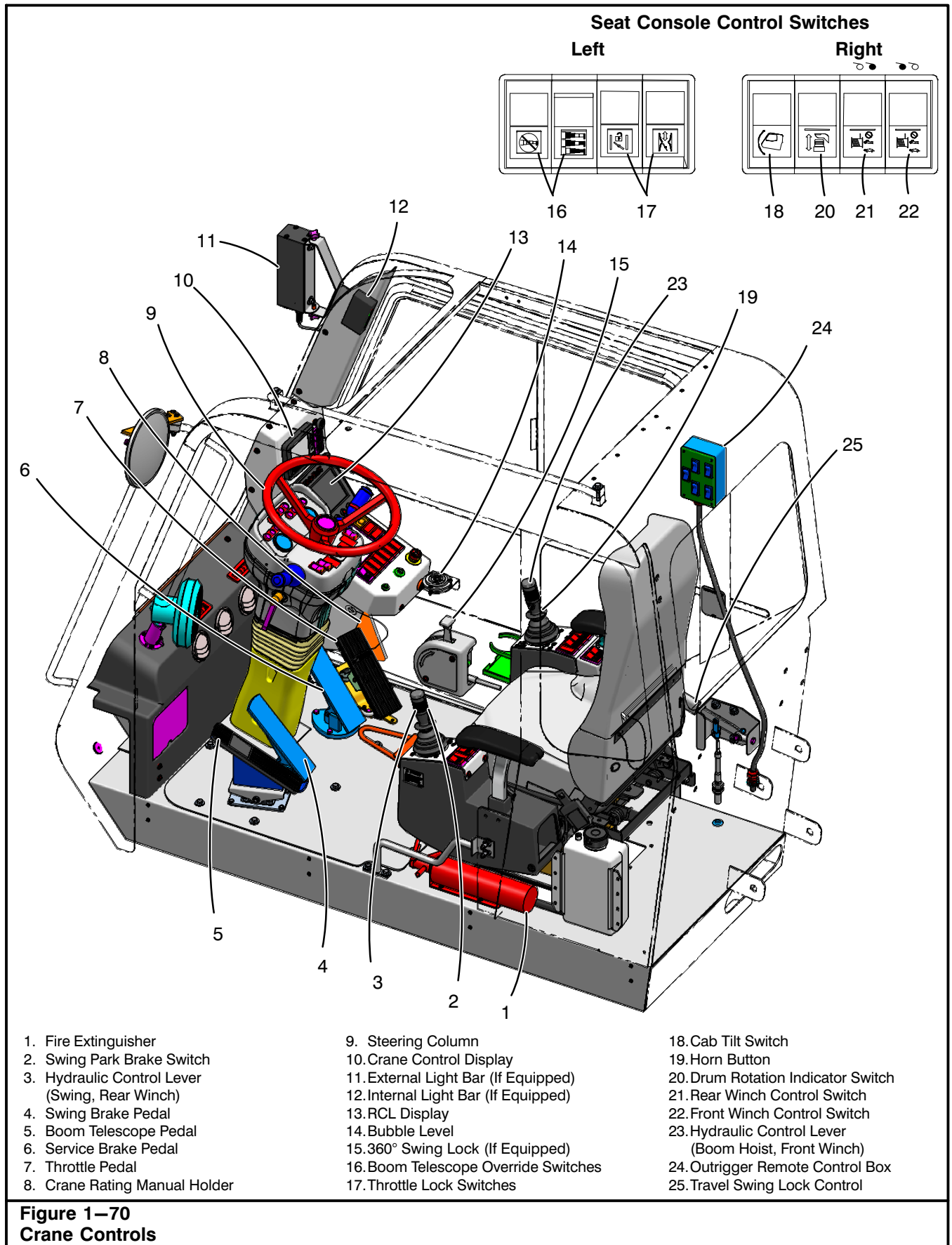


3. Fully apply the swing brake pedal and release the swing park brake and/or swing lock(s).
4. Release the swing brake pedal and begin to engage the swing control lever.

To Stop Upper Swing

1. Ease swing control lever into the neutral position.
2. Apply the swing brake to bring the upper to a complete stop.
3. Engage the swing park brake as required.
4. Check engagement of the swing park brake by trying to swing right, then left. The upper should not swing.

Operator's Manual



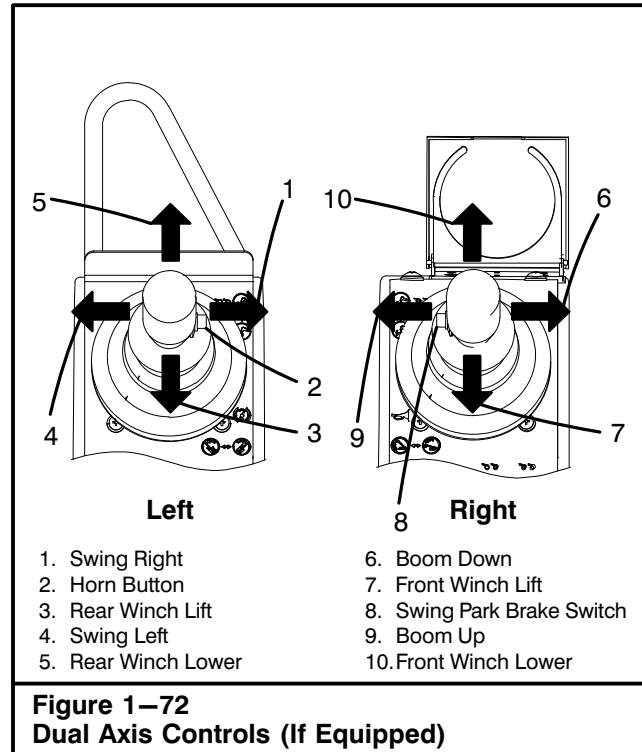
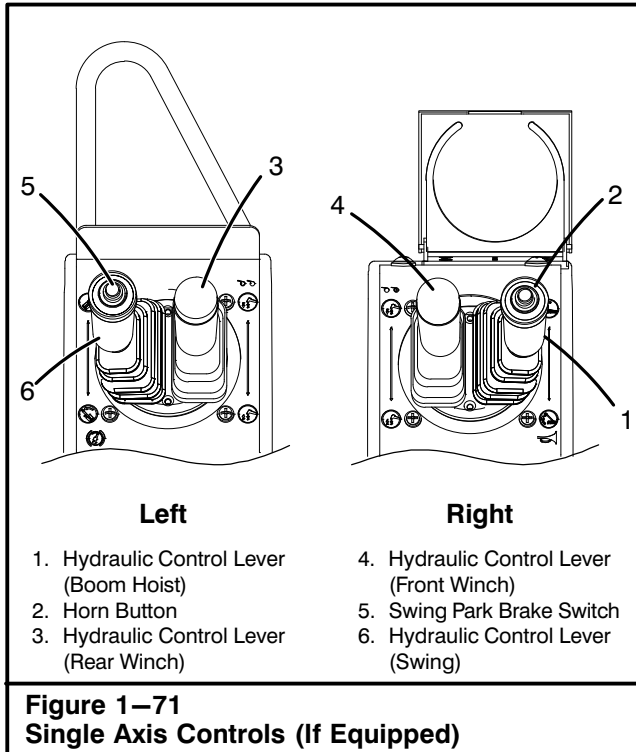
- 1. Fire Extinguisher
- 2. Swing Park Brake Switch
- 3. Hydraulic Control Lever (Swing, Rear Winch)
- 4. Swing Brake Pedal
- 5. Boom Telescope Pedal
- 6. Service Brake Pedal
- 7. Throttle Pedal
- 8. Crane Rating Manual Holder

- 9. Steering Column
- 10. Crane Control Display
- 11. External Light Bar (If Equipped)
- 12. Internal Light Bar (If Equipped)
- 13. RCL Display
- 14. Bubble Level
- 15. 360° Swing Lock (If Equipped)
- 16. Boom Telescope Override Switches
- 17. Throttle Lock Switches

- 18. Cab Tilt Switch
- 19. Horn Button
- 20. Drum Rotation Indicator Switch
- 21. Rear Winch Control Switch
- 22. Front Winch Control Switch
- 23. Hydraulic Control Lever (Boom Hoist, Front Winch)
- 24. Outrigger Remote Control Box
- 25. Travel Swing Lock Control

**Figure 1–70
Crane Controls**

Operator's Manual




Travel Swing Lock

Use the travel swing lock to lock the upper directly over either the front or rear of the carrier. The travel swing lock will engage in these two positions only. Use of the travel swing lock is mandatory when traveling or transporting the crane and during pick and carry operations.


To Release The Travel Swing Lock

1. Fully apply the swing brake pedal.
2. Pull the travel swing lock lever up.

Note: In order to disengage the travel swing lock, it may be necessary to swing the upper slightly to relieve the pressure on the swing lock pin.

3. Move the lever to the right and release. The lever should remain in the released  position.

To Engage The Travel Swing Lock

1. Position the upper directly over either the front or rear of the carrier. Fully apply swing brake pedal.
2. Pull the travel swing lock lever up and to the left. Then push the lever down to the locked  position.

Note: In order to engage the travel swing lock, it may be necessary to swing the upper slightly to align the swing lock pin and retaining ring on the carrier deck.

3. Check the engagement of the travel swing lock by trying to swing the upper right, then left. The upper should not swing.

Swing Park Brake

The swing park brake is a multiple disc type brake and is used for holding the upper, in any position, over the carrier during normal, stationary crane operations. Engage the travel swing lock and release the swing park brake for pick and carry and anytime the crane is traveled or transported. An indicator light on the Crane Control Display (Figure 1-38) will illuminate when the swing park brake is applied.

CAUTION

Do not leave the swing park brake applied during pick and carry operations or when traveling the crane. Use the travel swing lock. Failure to release the swing park brake during these operations may result in damage to the swing mechanism.

To Release The Swing Park Brake

1. Fully apply the swing brake pedal.
2. Push the swing park brake switch on the left controller. The indicator light will go out. Refer to Figure 1-70 for switch location.

Operator's Manual

To Apply The Swing Park Brake

1. Rotate the upper to the desired position over the carrier. Apply the swing brake pedal to bring the upper to a complete stop.
2. Push the swing park brake switch on the left controller. Indicator light will illuminate. Refer to Figure 1–70 for switch location.

CAUTION

Do not attempt to apply swing park brake with the upper in motion. This practice will result in damage to the swing mechanism. Use the swing brake pedal to stop rotation of upper.

3. Check engagement of swing brake by trying to swing upper right, then left. Upper should not swing.

360° Swing Lock

The 360° swing lock, if equipped, is a positive lock against rotation of the upper over the carrier. The upper is mechanically locked by a manually operated pawl that engages the gear teeth in the turntable bearing. Use this swing lock during normal, stationary crane operations. Engage the travel swing lock and release the 360° swing lock anytime the crane is used for pick and carry or is traveled or transported.

CAUTION

Do not leave the 360° swing lock engaged during pick and carry operations or when traveling or transporting the crane. Use the travel swing lock. Failure to release the 360° swing lock during these operations may result in damage to the swing mechanism.

To Release The 360° Swing Lock:

1. Fully apply the swing brake pedal.
2. Move the 360° swing lock lever to the “Disengage” position.

To Engage The 360° Swing Lock:

1. Rotate the upper to the desired position over the carrier. Apply the swing brake pedal to bring the upper to a complete stop.

CAUTION

Do not attempt to engage 360° swing lock with the upper in motion. This practice will result in damage to the swing mechanism. Use swing brake pedal to stop rotation of the upper.

2. Move the 360° swing lock lever to the “Engage” position.

Note: In order to engage the 360° swing lock, it may be necessary to swing the upper slightly to allow the swing lock pawl to engage in the turntable gear teeth

3. Check engagement of 360° swing lock by trying to swing upper right, then left. The upper should not swing.

Wire Rope Winch System

This system controls raising and lowering the winch lines. The system is equipped with a two speed motor that, when activated, will approximately double winch line speed. The controls for the system are shown in Figure 1–70. Review the following for control descriptions and brief summary of operation.

CAUTION

When the hoist line is tied off to the crane or any solid object, the winch system can be overloaded causing major winch, wire rope, or crane damage. Do not extend boom, raise or lower the boom, or raise the crane on outriggers unless wire rope is spooled off the drum to prevent tension on the wire rope.

CAUTION

Cold weather operation of the winch requires a warm-up procedure. Failure to properly warm-up the winch may result in brake slippage. Warm-up the winch before beginning crane operations.

Operator's Manual

Warm-Up Procedure

A warm-up procedure is recommended at each start-up and is essential at ambient temperatures below 40°F (4°C). Allow the engine to run at idle speed, with the main hydraulic pump engaged and the winch control lever(s) in neutral, for several minutes. Once the hydraulic oil begins to warm, operate the winch at low speed, with no load, lifting and lowering only the hook-block or hook ball until warm oil circulates throughout the winch.





WARNING



The weight of the load must be known before making a lift. Compare the load weight to the appropriate capacity chart in the Crane Rating Manual to ensure compliance with capacity ratings. Compare the load weight to the Wire Rope Capacity chart in the Crane Rating Manual to determine the number of parts of line required to lift the load. Rig and set up the crane to ensure compliance with both the appropriate crane capacity chart and Wire Rope Capacity chart in the Crane Rating Manual. Properly set the Rated Capacity Limiter to the correct crane configuration.

Do not lift a load to the point where the hook block, hook ball and/or the load contacts the head machinery. "Two blocking" could damage the hook block, hook ball, wire rope, and/or the head machinery. Always keep the hook block, hook ball, and/or the load a safe distance from the boom.

Front Winch Control Lever

This lever controls the front winch drum. Pull this control lever back to the  position to lift the load. Push this control lever forward to the  to lower the load. Refer to "Winch Operation" for more specific instructions.

Rear Winch Control Lever (If Equipped)

This lever controls the rear winch drum. Pull this control lever back to the  position to lift the load. Push this control lever forward to the  to lower the load. Refer to "Winch Operation" for more specific instructions.

Winch Operation

The following is a brief description of the basic procedure for operating the wire rope winch. Crane operations are to be performed only by a qualified operator who has read and fully understands the entire content of this manual.

To Lift A Load: Attach the hook block or hook ball to the load. Position head machinery directly above the load, pull the control lever back, toward the operator.

Note: When both winch levers are activated simultaneously, the winch line requiring the most line pull may not function.




To Hold A Load: Return the control lever to the neutral position. The automatic brake in the winch system will hold the load in position.

To Lower A Load: Push the control lever forward. Return the control lever to neutral to stop the load.

Winch Control Switch(es)

This switch is used to control engaging/disengaging the high/low speed hoist and disabling the front or rear winch. Refer to Figure 1–70.

High Speed Hoist Or Lower

Move the control lever to the neutral position to bring the load to a complete stop. Press the winch control switch to the high speed  position. Move the control lever to the  or  position. The high speed hoist will activate after engaging the control lever. Refer to Figure 1–70.




Note: Using the high speed hoist reduces the maximum line pull by approximately one half. It is recommended that the high speed hoist button be activated before engaging the winch control lever(s).




WARNING

Do not activate the high speed hoist if the line pull exceeds the available high speed winch line pull. Crane damage can occur. Always refer to the Crane Rating Manual for the winch available line pulls before lifting or lowering any load.


Operator's Manual

To Return To Standard Winch Mode: Move the control lever to the neutral position to bring the load to a complete stop. Press winch control switch(es) to the low speed () position. Move the control lever to the  or  position. Standard winch mode will activate after engaging the control lever(s).

Winch Disable

Press the winch control switch(es) to the disable () position to disable the winch(es) to prevent inadvertent operation of the winch(es) while using the control levers to perform other operations.

Drum Rotation Indicators

This system is used to monitor winch drum speeds through the use of a mechanical signaling device mounted inside each of the winch control levers. To activate the system, push the bottom part of the drum rotation indicator switch , on the right seat console (Figure 1–37), to the “ON” position (indicator within switch will illuminate). Place your thumb over the end of the control lever being used. As the winch drum rotates, a mechanical signal will be felt with your thumb. The frequency of the mechanical signal is a direct indication of the winch drum speed. Push the top part of the drum rotation switch to deactivate system.

First Layer/Third Wrap Indicator (If Equipped)

The crane may be equipped with a first layer/third wrap indicator system. This system allows the operator to monitor the wire rope windings on the drum(s). An audible alarm will sound intermittently, and “First Layer” will appear in the RCL display to alert the operator when the wire rope is down to the first layer on the winch drum(s). The winch function will cutout, an audible alarm will sound continuously, and “Third Wrap” will appear in the RCL display to alert the operator when the wire rope is down to the third wrap on the winch drum(s).

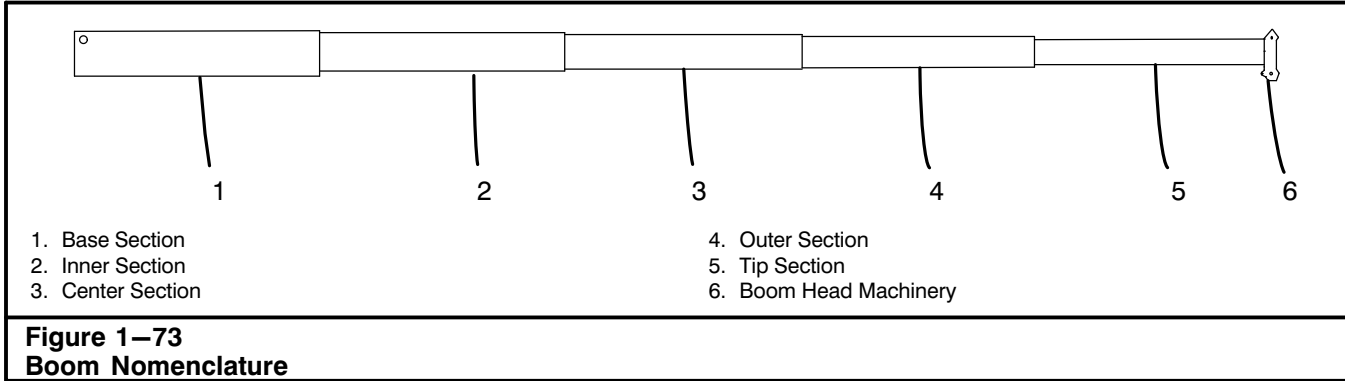


WARNING

Three (3) full wraps of wire rope must be maintained on the winch drum(s) at all times during operation. Wire rope failure may occur.

In order for this system to function correctly, it must be properly calibrated using the controls on the Crane Control Display. Refer to “First Layer/Third Wrap Calibration” in Section 3 of this Operator's Manual. Calibrate the system anytime wire rope is installed on the winch drum(s) or the live end of the wire rope is wound past the winch drum(s).

Operator's Manual



Boom Hoist System

Raising and lowering the boom is controlled by the boom hoist control lever located on the right arm rest. Refer to Figure 1-70.

WARNING

Do not exceed maximum boom angles listed on the backward stability label and in the Crane Rating Manual located in the operators cab. Crane can tip over backwards.

To raise the boom (boom up): Move the boom hoist control lever left to the  position.

CAUTION

When the hoist line is tied off to the crane or any solid object, the winch system can be overloaded causing major winch, wire rope, or crane damage. Do not extend boom, raise or lower the boom, or raise the crane on outriggers unless wire rope is spooled off the drum to prevent tension on the wire rope.

To Lower The Boom (Boom Down): Move the boom hoist control lever to the  position.

CAUTION

Wire rope must be spooled off the winch drum as the boom is lowered. Failure to do so may cause two blocking.

To Stop The Boom: Ease the boom hoist control lever into the neutral position.

Boom Telescope System

The crane is equipped with a five section full power boom. The five section boom consists of a base, inner, center, outer, and a tip section. Refer to Figure 1-73.

The telescoping feature of the boom sections is operated through the use of three hydraulic cylinders and a cable/sheave mechanism which are an integral part of the boom assembly. The boom can be extended or retracted to the desired length using the boom telescope pedal in the operator's cab. Refer to Figure 1-70. The telescope feature has three modes of operation. Refer to Figure 1-74.

Note: Boom must be fully retracted before changing boom modes.

Boom Mode "Amax1": When using boom mode "Amax1" only the inner and center sections telescope simultaneously. This mode offers increased strength capacities. Select this mode through the rated capacity limiter system.

Boom Mode "Amax2": When using boom mode "Amax2" only the center, outer, and tip sections telescope simultaneously. This mode offers increased stability capacities. Select this mode through the rated capacity limiter system.



Boom Mode "Standard": When using boom mode "Standard" all power boom sections extend/retract simultaneously. This mode offers full boom extension. Select this mode through the rated capacity limiter system.




Operator's Manual

Boom Telescope Control Pedal

Figure 1–70 shows the location of the telescope control pedal in the operator's cab. Depress the toe of the telescope control pedal to extend the boom. Depress the heel of the telescope control pedal to retract the boom. Use the telescope mode in conjunction with the telescope control pedal to extend the boom sections to the desired length.

Boom Telescope Override Switches

Boom telescope override switches are provided to manually override the telescope system if the boom is not extending/retracting proportionally. These switches are to be used for that purpose only. Press the  switch to enter telescope override mode. For all boom modes, move the  switch to one of the three positions to override its corresponding boom section so the boom can be extended/retracted proportionally. Refer to Figure 1–70 for switch location. Each position of the switch is defined as follows:

-  [Top position of the switch will override the inner and center sections allowing only the tip and outer sections to extend and retract.
-  [Center position of the switch will override the inner, outer, and tip sections allowing only the center section to extend and retract.
-  [The bottom position of the switch will override the center, outer, and tip sections allowing only the inner section to extend and retract.

To Extend The Boom Sections

1. Park the crane on a firm level surface, position the transmission shifter to neutral, and engage the park brake.
2. Review the appropriate capacity chart in the Crane Rating Manual to establish boom length, angle, and load limitations.

Note: Boom must be fully retracted before changing boom modes.

3. Set the rated capacity limiter to the desired telescope mode.

CAUTION

When the hoist line is tied off to the crane or any solid object, the winch system can be overloaded causing major winch, wire rope, or crane damage. Do not extend boom, raise or lower the boom, or raise the crane on outriggers unless wire rope is spooled off the drum to prevent tension on the wire rope.

4. Depress the toe of the telescope control pedal.

CAUTION

Wire rope must be spooled off the winch drum as the boom is lowered. Failure to do so may cause two blocking.

5. Stop the boom sections by releasing the telescope control pedal.

Note: The telescope control pedal is spring loaded and should return to the neutral position when released.

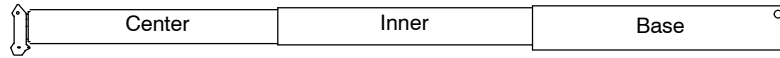
To Retract The Boom Sections

1. Depress the heel of the telescope control pedal.
2. Stop the boom sections by releasing the telescope control pedal.

Operator's Manual

Boom Mode "Amax1"

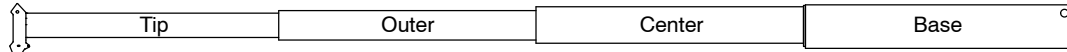
Inner and center sections telescope simultaneously.



Telescope Length (Ft.)		Boom Length (Ft.)
0	0	40
5.0	5.0	50
10.0	10.0	60
15.0	15.0	70
20.0	20.0	80
25.0	25.0	90
27.5	27.5	95

Boom Mode "Amax2"

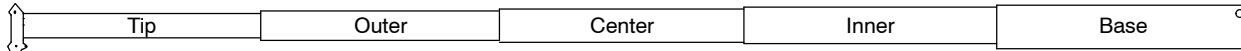
Center, outer, and tip sections telescope simultaneously.



Telescope Length (Ft.)			Boom Length (Ft.)
0	0	0	40
3.33	3.33	3.33	50
6.66	6.66	6.66	60
10.00	10.00	10.00	70
13.33	13.33	13.33	80
16.66	16.66	16.66	90
20.00	20.00	20.00	100
23.33	23.33	23.33	110
27.50	27.50	27.50	122.5

Boom Mode "Standard"

Inner, center, outer, and tip sections telescope simultaneously.



Telescope Length (Ft.)				Boom Length (Ft.)
0	0	0	0	40
2.5	2.5	2.5	2.5	50
5.0	5.0	5.0	5.0	60
7.5	7.5	7.5	7.5	70
10.0	10.0	10.0	10.0	80
12.5	12.5	12.5	12.5	90
15.0	15.0	15.0	15.0	100
17.5	17.5	17.5	17.5	110
20.0	20.0	20.0	20.0	120
22.5	22.5	22.5	22.5	130
25.0	25.0	25.0	25.0	140
27.5	27.5	27.5	27.5	150

Figure 1-74
Boom Telescope Mode

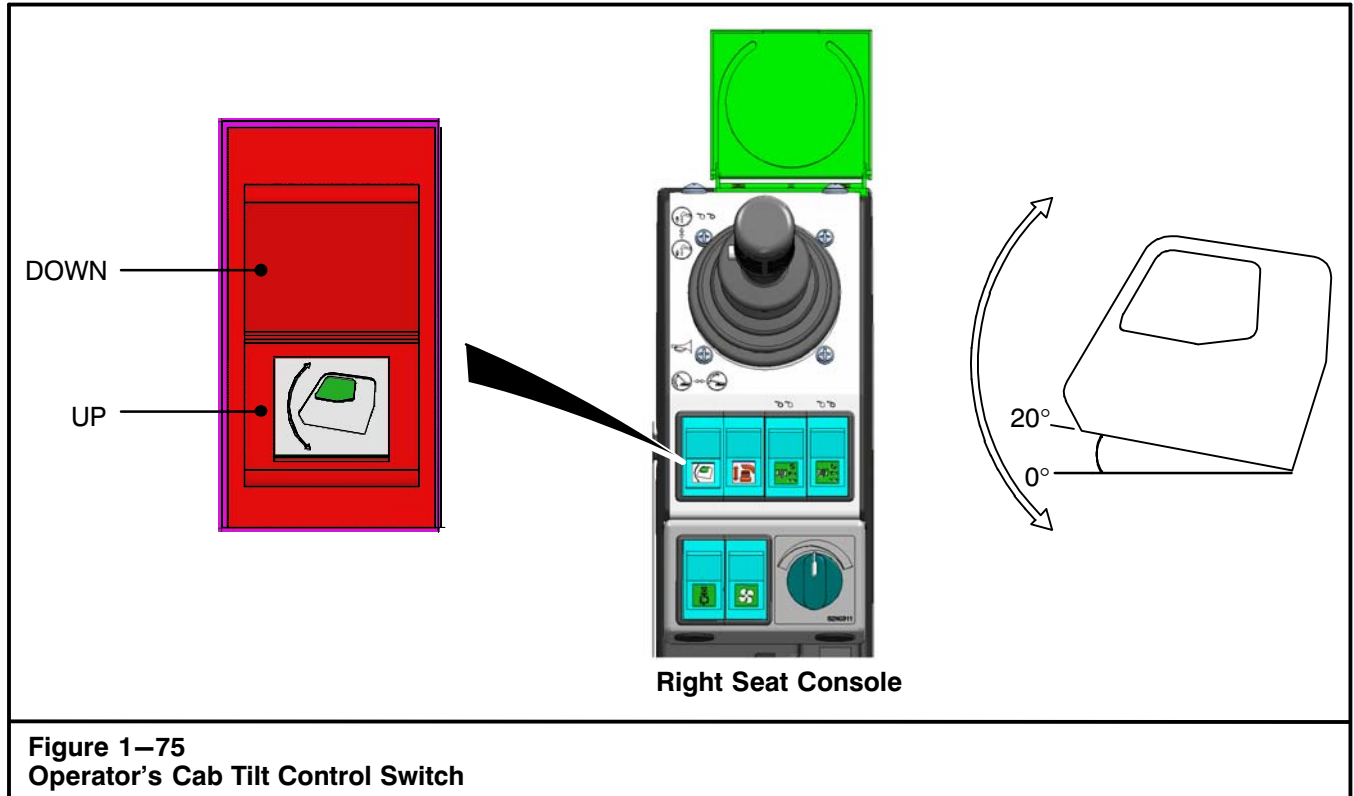


Figure 1–75
Operator's Cab Tilt Control Switch

Operator's Cab Tilt

Note: When the cab is tilted, the travel system is disabled and travel of the crane cannot be performed.

The operator's cab tilts up from 0 to 20 degrees above horizontal to improve vertical visibility and help to reduce operator fatigue due to neck strain when at high boom angles. Use the three position momentary switch located on the left seat console to operate the operator's cab tilt function. Refer to Figure 1–75.

Operator's cab must be returned to its horizontal 0 degree position before exiting the operator's cab.

Before operating the operator's cab tilt feature, the operator's cab door must be secured in the fully closed or open position.

Tilting The Operator's Cab

- Actuate top part of the rocker switch and hold to lower the operator's cab. Release switch to stop.
- Actuate bottom part of the rocker switch and hold to raise the operator's cab. Release switch to stop.

Operator's Manual

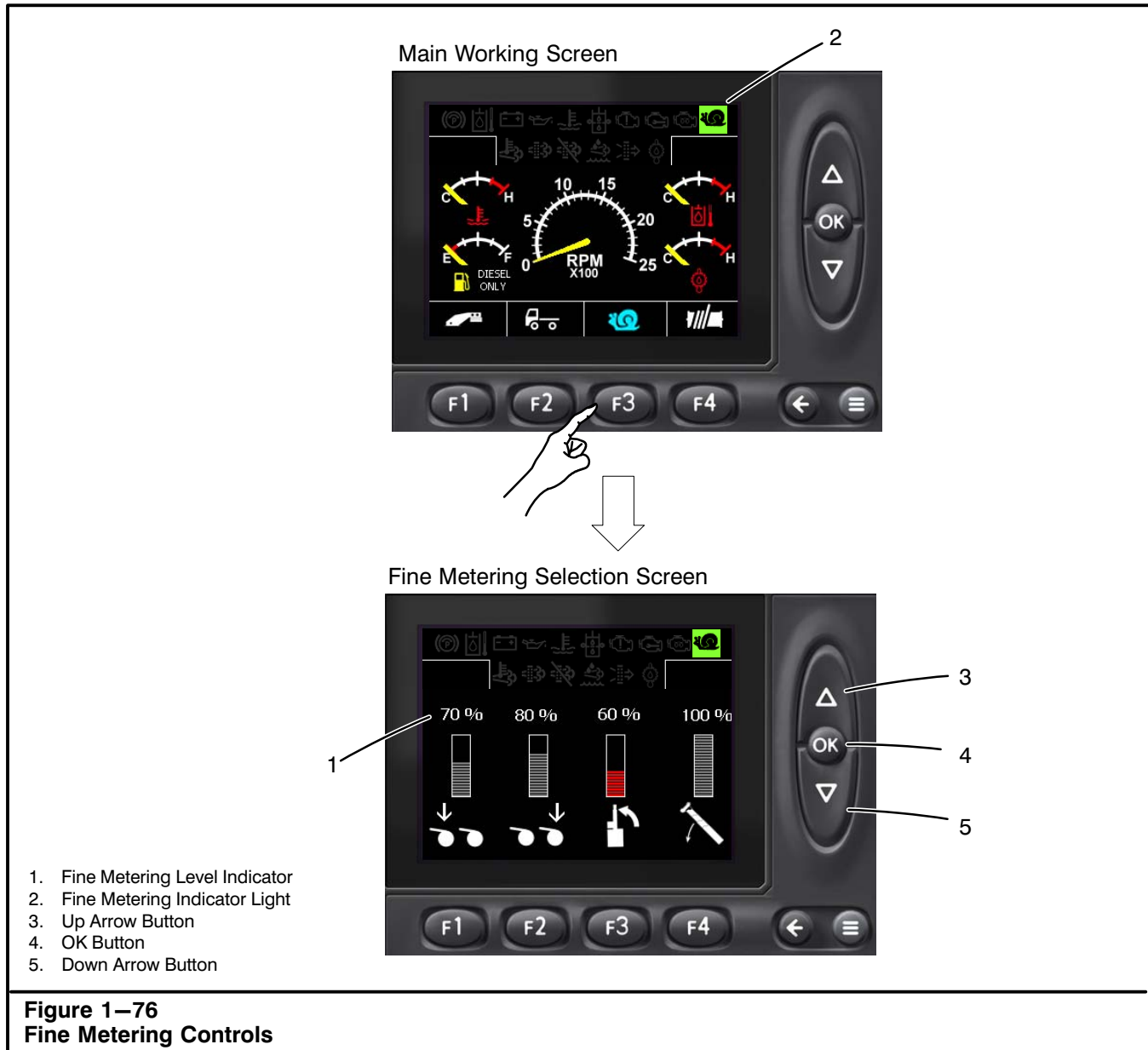


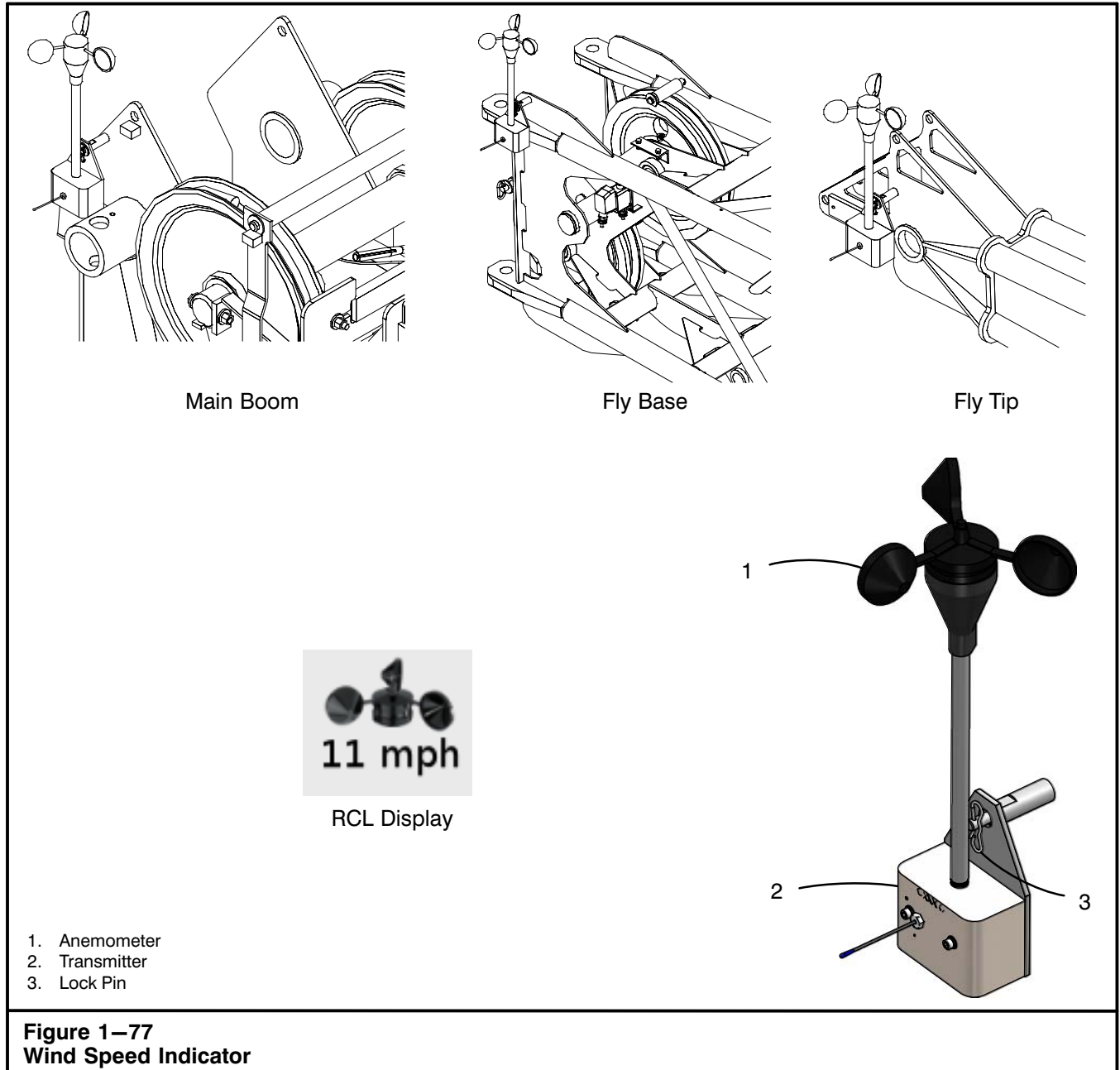


Figure 1-76
Fine Metering Controls

Fine Metering Control

The hydraulic control system is equipped with a fine metering mode. Refer to Figure 1-76. Fine metering allows very slow movements of the main and auxiliary winches, boom hoist, and swing functions enabling the operator more precise movement of the load when required for precision work. Fine metering can be adjusted on a scale from 20 to 100%. An indicator light on the main working screen will illuminate to alert the operator that the fine metering system has been enabled and a level indicator alerts the operator to the set fine metering level. Use the following procedure to adjust the fine metering system.

1. From the main working screen, press the Function Key F3  to bring up the fine metering selection screen.
2. From the fine metering selection screen, press the appropriate function key for the crane function to adjust.
3. Press the Up or Down Arrow button to adjust the fine metering to the desired level.
4. Press the OK button to activate the fine metering system. Indicator light will illuminate
5. Press the Back  button to return to the previous screen.



Crane Monitoring System

A Crane monitoring system is included to assist the operator in safe operation of the crane. The following systems outline some of the aids used for monitoring crane conditions during operation.

Wind Speed Indicator

The crane may be equipped with a wireless wind speed indicator. The indicator is used to monitor wind speeds at the main boom head or the fly head when erected. Refer to Figure 1-77. An anemometer

mounted on the boom head or fly transmits wind speed data to the RCL display unit in the operator's cab. Refer to "Wind Speed Restrictions" found in the Crane Rating Manual for more information on wind speed restrictions.

CAUTION

Remove the anemometer assembly from the boom head or fly during transport to prevent damage to the unit.

Operator's Manual

Operating In Wind Or Lightning

Avoid working a crane in high winds and when there is a likelihood of lightning. Rated lifting capacities do not account for the effects of wind on a suspended load or boom. If you must work in a wind, reduce capacities to those listed in "Wind Speed Restrictions" in the Crane Rating Manual. Wind blowing against the load and the boom and/or fly produces a side load on the boom and/or fly and reduces its capacity. When lifting loads in a wind which have large surface areas, such as building panels, the movement of the load may pose a danger to workmen or building structures. Out swing of a load will increase the load radius, and may overload the crane. This could lead to boom and/or fly fail-

ure or the crane tipping. Monitor the wind speed using a wind speed indicator or the "Wind Scale" chart below. Stop lifting operations, ground the load, and fully retract and lower the boom to horizontal if wind speed exceeds the maximum allowed listed in "Wind Speed Restrictions" in the Crane Rating Manual. Use the following "Wind Scale" chart as a general guide.


DANGER

If there is a likelihood of lightning, immediately stop lifting operations, ground the load, and fully retract and lower the boom.

Wind Scale				
Wind Speed		Wind Strength		Inland Wind Effect
mph	km/h	Beaufort Scale	WMO* Description	
<0.6	<1	0	Calm	Calm, smoke rises vertically.
0.6–3.1	1–5	1	Light Air	Smoke drift indicates wind direction, wind vanes remain still.
3.7–6.8	6–11	2	Light Breeze	Wind felt on face, leaves rustle, wind vanes begin to move.
7.4–11.8	12–19	3	Gentle Breeze	Leaves and small twigs constantly moving, light flags extended.
12.4–17.4	20–28	4	Moderate Breeze	Dust, leaves, and loose paper lifted, small tree branches move.
18.0–23.6	29–38	5	Fresh Breeze	Small trees in leaf begin to sway. Crested waves form on inland waters.
24.28–30.4	39–49	6	Strong Breeze	Larger tree branches moving. Telegraph wires whistle. Umbrellas used with difficulty.
31.1–37.9	50–61	7	Near Gale	Whole trees moving. Resistance felt walking against wind.
38.5–46.0	62–74	8	Gale	Breaks twigs off trees. Resistance felt walking against wind.
46.6–54.1	75–87	9	Strong Gale	Slight structural damage. Slate blows off roofs.
54.7–62.8	88–101	10	Storm	Trees broken or uprooted. Considerable structural damage.

* World Meteorological Organization

Operator's Manual

Wind Gusts At Various Heights

The maximum wind speed in the Crane Rating Manual refers to a 3 second gust measured at the boom or fly tip. Weather reports often report wind speed based on

a 10-minute average measured at a height of 10 meters (33 ft). The table below shows the maximum 3 second gust based at various heights based on the 10-minute average:

Beaufort Scale	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
V [m/s] (mph)	5.4 (12.1)	7.9 (17.7)	10.7 (23.9)	13.8 (30.9)	17.1 (38.3)	20.7 (46.3)	24.4 (54.6)	28.4 (63.5)
z [m] (ft)	v(z) [m/s] (mph)							
10 (32.8)	7.6 (17)	11.1 (24.8)	15 (33.6)	19.3 (43.2)	23.9 (53.5)	29 (64.9)	34.2 (76.5)	39.8 (89)
20 (65.6)	8.1 (18.1)	11.9 (26.6)	16.1 (36)	20.7 (46.3)	25.7 (57.5)	31.1 (69.6)	36.6 (81.9)	42.7 (95.5)
30 (98.4)	8.5 (19)	12.4 (27.7)	16.8 (37.6)	21.6 (48.3)	26.8 (59.9)	32.4 (72.5)	38.2 (85.5)	44.5 (99.5)
40 (131.2)	8.7 (19.5)	12.8 (28.6)	17.3 (38.7)	22.3 (49.9)	27.6 (61.7)	33.4 (74.7)	39.4 (88.1)	45.8 (102.5)
50 (164)	8.9 (19.9)	13.1 (29.3)	17.7 (39.6)	22.8 (51)	28.3 (63.3)	34.2 (76.5)	40.3 (90.1)	46.9 (104.9)
60 (196.8)	9.1 (20.4)	13.3 (29.8)	18 (40.3)	23.3 (52.1)	28.8 (64.4)	34.9 (78.1)	41.1 (91.9)	47.9 (107.1)
70 (229.7)	9.3 (20.8)	13.5 (30.2)	18.3 (40.9)	23.6 (52.8)	29.3 (65.5)	35.5 (79.4)	41.8 (93.5)	48.7 (108.9)
80 (262.5)	9.4 (21)	13.7 (30.6)	18.6 (41.6)	24 (53.7)	29.7 (66.4)	36 (80.5)	42.4 (94.8)	49.4 (110.5)
90 (295.3)	9.5 (21.3)	13.9 (31.1)	18.8 (42.1)	24.3 (54.4)	30.1 (67.3)	36.4 (81.4)	42.9 (96)	50 (111.8)
100 (328.1)	9.6 (21.5)	14.1 (31.5)	19.1 (42.7)	24.6 (55)	30.4 (68)	36.9 (82.5)	43.4 (97.1)	50.6 (113.2)
110 (360.9)	9.7 (21.7)	14.2 (31.8)	19.2 (42.9)	24.8 (55.5)	30.8 (68.9)	37.2 (83.2)	43.9 (98.2)	51.1 (114.3)
120 (393.7)	9.8 (21.9)	14.3 (32)	19.4 (43.4)	25.1 (56.1)	31.1 (69.6)	37.6 (84.1)	44.3 (99.1)	51.6 (115.4)
130 (426.5)	9.9 (22.1)	14.5 (32.4)	19.6 (43.8)	25.3 (56.6)	31.3 (70)	37.9 (84.8)	44.7 (100)	52 (116.3)
140 (459.3)	10 (22.4)	14.6 (32.7)	19.8 (44.3)	25.5 (57)	31.6 (70.7)	38.2 (85.5)	45.1 (100.9)	52.5 (117.4)
150 (492.1)	10 (22.4)	14.7 (32.9)	19.9 (44.5)	25.7 (57.5)	31.8 (71.1)	38.5 (86.1)	45.4 (101.6)	52.9 (118.3)
160 (524.9)	10.1 (22.6)	14.8 (33.1)	20.1 (45)	25.9 (57.9)	32.1 (71.8)	38.8 (86.8)	45.7 (102.2)	53.2 (119)
170 (557.7)	10.2 (22.8)	14.9 (33.3)	20.2 (45.2)	26 (58.2)	32.3 (72.3)	39.1 (87.5)	46 (102.9)	53.6 (119.9)
180 (590.5)	10.3 (23)	15 (33.6)	20.3 (45.4)	26.2 (58.6)	32.5 (72.7)	39.3 (87.9)	46.3 (103.6)	53.9 (120.6)
190 (623.4)	10.3 (23)	15.1 (33.8)	20.4 (45.6)	26.4 (59.1)	32.7 (73.1)	39.5 (88.4)	46.6 (104.2)	54.2 (121.2)
200 (656.2)	10.4 (23.3)	15.2 (34)	20.6 (46.1)	26.5 (59.3)	32.8 (73.4)	39.8 (89)	46.9 (104.9)	54.6 (122.1)

V= 10 minute average wind speed at 10m (32.8 ft) height

z=height above ground

v(z)=3 second gust speed at height z

ref. EN13000

Operator's Manual

Capacity Reduction for Loads with Large Wind Sail Area

Allowable wind speed must be reduced for loads with large wind sail area (Frontal Area, $A > 4.9 \text{ ft}^2$ per 1000 lbs or Wind Coefficient, $C_f > 1.2$) by the following formula:

$$v_r = v \sqrt{\frac{(.00586)W}{C_f A}}$$

$K = .00586 \text{ ft}^2/\text{lb} [.0012 \text{ m}^2/\text{kg}]$

$C_f =$ Wind coefficient of load

$W =$ Rated lifting capacities (lbs) (kg)

$W_r =$ Reduced lifting capacities (lbs) (kg)

$v =$ Maximum wind speed from Crane Rating Manual
Wind Restrictions chart (mph) [m/s]

$v_r =$ Reduced wind speed based on wind sail area of load (mph) [m/s]

$A =$ Actual wind sail area of load (ft^2) [m^2]

Example 1:

Rated lifting capacities, $W = 50,000 \text{ lbs} [22\ 650\text{kg}]$

Actual load = $45,000 \text{ lbs} [20\ 400\text{kg}]$

Maximum wind speed, $v = 20 \text{ mph} [9\text{m/s}]$

Actual wind coefficient, $C_f = 1.6$

Actual wind sail area of load, $A = 300\text{ft}^2 [27.9\text{m}^2]$

$$v_r = 20 \sqrt{\frac{(.00586)(50,000)}{(1.6)(300)}} = 15.6 \text{ mph}$$

$$v_r = 9 \sqrt{\frac{(.0012)(22650)}{(1.6)(27.9)}} = 7.0\text{m/s}$$

Example 2: 40% Capacity Deduction

Rated lifting capacities, $W = 50,000 \text{ lbs} [22\ 650\text{kg}]$

Actual load = $25,000 \text{ lbs} [11\ 300\text{kg}]$

Maximum wind speed, $v = 20 \text{ mph} [9\text{m/s}]$

40% Capacity Reduction, $W_r = 30,000 \text{ lbs} [13\ 600\text{kg}]$















Max wind speed w/ Capacity Reduction, $v_r =$
 $29 \text{ mph} [13\text{m/s}]$

Actual wind coefficient, $C_f = 1.6$

Actual wind sail area of load, $A = 300 \text{ ft}^2 [27.9\text{m}^2]$

$$v_r = 13 \sqrt{\frac{(.0012)(13600)}{(1.6)(27.9)}} = 7.9\text{m/s}$$

The wind coefficient is a measure of resistance to air flow, and is dependent on the object's shape and size. This value can be estimated using relevant standards such as ISO 4302. The following table gives a general guideline of typical shapes and corresponding coefficients:

Shape	Example	Wind Coefficient C_f
 	Plate, shutter, or sheet pile	1.1 to 2.0
 	Ball, spherical reservoir	0.3 to 0.4
 	Silo, reactor vessel	0.6 to 1.0
 	Half sphere	0.8 to 1.2
 	Half sphere	0.2 to 0.3
 	Wind turbine blade or complete rotor	0.05 to 0.1
 	Wind turbine blade or complete rotor	Approx. 1.6

Typical Shapes And Corresponding C_f Values

Boom Angle Indicator

A bubble type boom angle indicator is mounted on the base section of the boom to the right of the operator's cab. Refer to Figure 1–78. It must be adjusted properly and the crane must be level for the unit to accurately indicate boom angles. Even under these conditions its readings are only approximate. When making near capacity lifts, measure the load radius to determine crane capacity. Check the adjustment of the boom angle indicator daily to ensure its accuracy. Refer to “Boom Angle Indicator Adjustment” in Section 3 of this Operator's Manual.

Anti-Two Block Warning System

Integrated into the Rated Capacity Limiter System is an anti-two block (ATB) warning system. An anti-two block warning system is an electromechanical system designed to alert the operator before the hook block' hook ball or load contacts the head machinery of the main boom, auxiliary lifting sheave, or fly. When a two block situation is imminent, an audio/visual alarm is activated to alert the operator of the pending danger. When the alarm activates it is essential that the operator discontinue operations immediately, and correct the two-block situation.

Three basic components are used to make up the anti-two block system. The anti-two block weight, anti-two block switch with lockout clip, and the display unit in the operator's cab. Refer to Figure 1–79 and Figure 1–80.

An anti-two block weight is suspended from the head machinery switch(es) where lifts are to be made and is used to hold the switch(es) in the “working” position. When the anti-two block weight is lifted by the hook block, hook ball, or load, it allows the switch to activate the audio/visual alarm on the display unit in the operator's cab. In addition to the audio/visual alarm, function limiters will be activated.

CAUTION

Do not allow the load to spin out of control when hoisting. The anti-two block weight may become entangled with the wire rope and could damage the anti-two block system, wire rope, or boom. Use rotation resistant wire rope during single part line hoisting applications, especially when long fall lifts are involved.

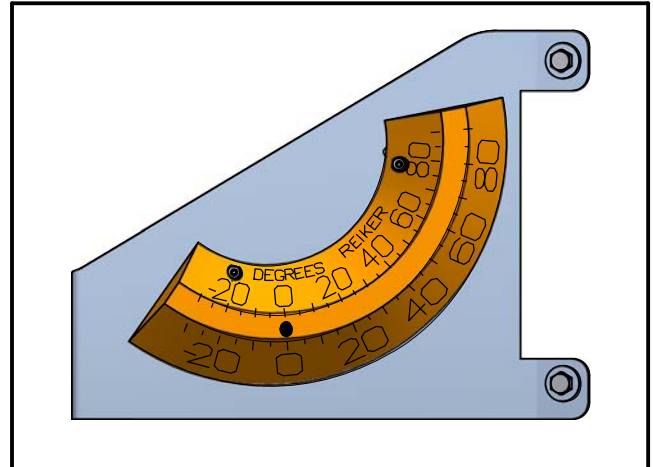


Figure 1–78
Boom Angle Indicator

The added feature of hydraulic function limiters, prevents the operator from continuing crane functions which will cause a two block situation to occur. The crane functions of winch up, boom down, and boom extend are disabled when the anti-two block weight is lifted. These functions will remain disabled until the two block situation is corrected or the “Cancel Alarm” button on the display unit is pressed and held to override the system.

Note: Push the “Cancel Alarm” button momentarily once to silence the audible alarm. Press and hold the “Cancel Alarm” button for 2 seconds or longer to temporarily override the system.

The main boom head must always have an anti-two block switch. Each of the added attachments used on the crane must employ a similar head machinery switch as well, in order for that particular attachment to be monitored by the system.

The plug assembly is connected to the jumper assembly on the boom head when operating from the main boom. It is connected to the jumper assembly on the attachment when operating from that attachment.

Check that all the harness connections between the attachments are properly connected and test the system before beginning operations. Test the system by manually lifting the ATB weight and verifying that the functions of winch up, boom down, and boom extend are disabled.

Operator's Manual

WARNING

FAILURE TO HAVE FULLY OPERATIONAL ATB SYSTEM COULD RESULT IN SERIOUS INJURY OR DEATH. MAIN BOOM ATB IS DISABLED WHEN LOCKOUT IS INSTALLED. MAIN BOOM ATB IS FUNCTIONAL WHEN LOCKOUT IS NOT INSTALLED.

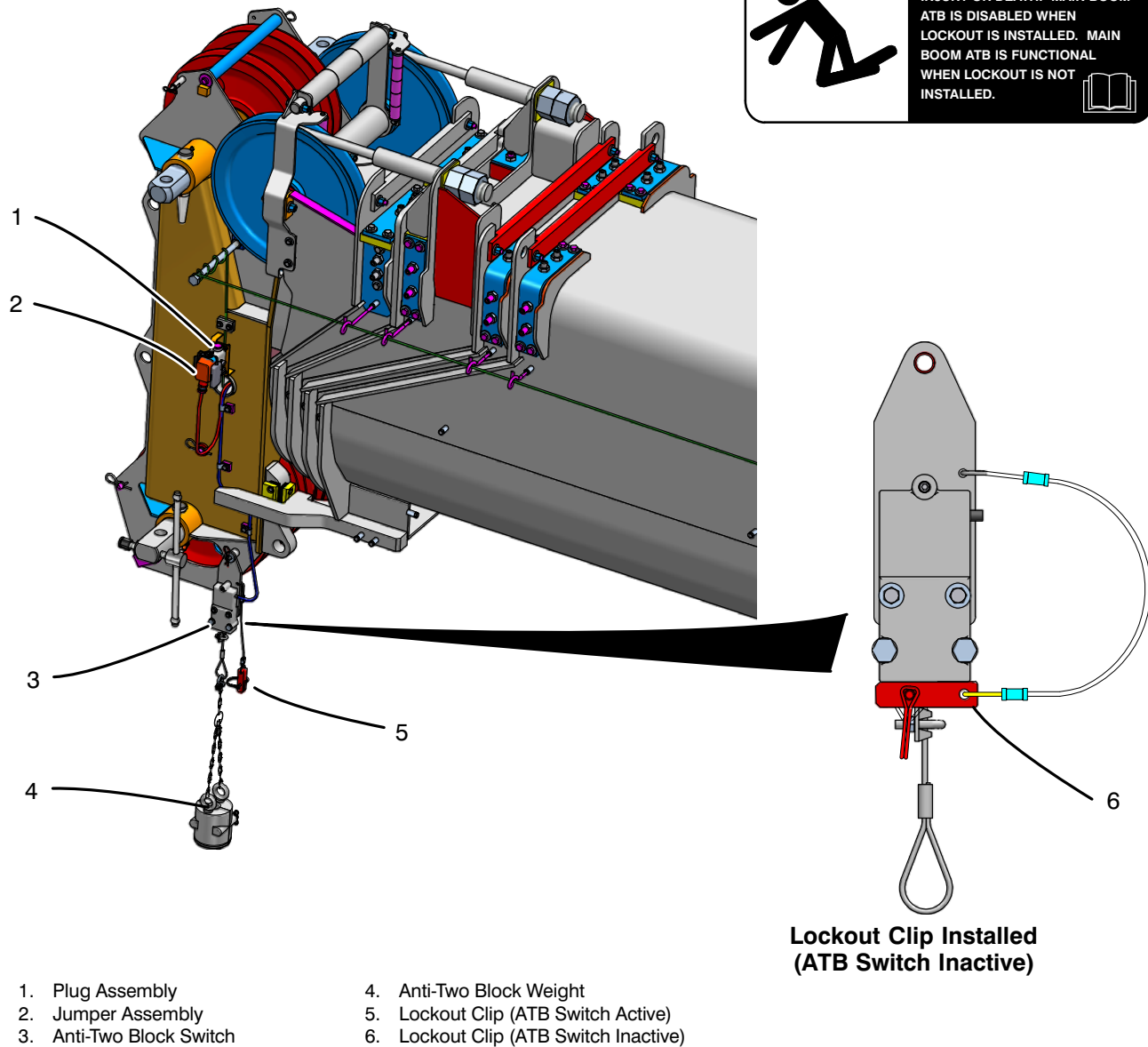


Figure 1-79
Anti-Two Block Weights And Switches

Lockout Clip

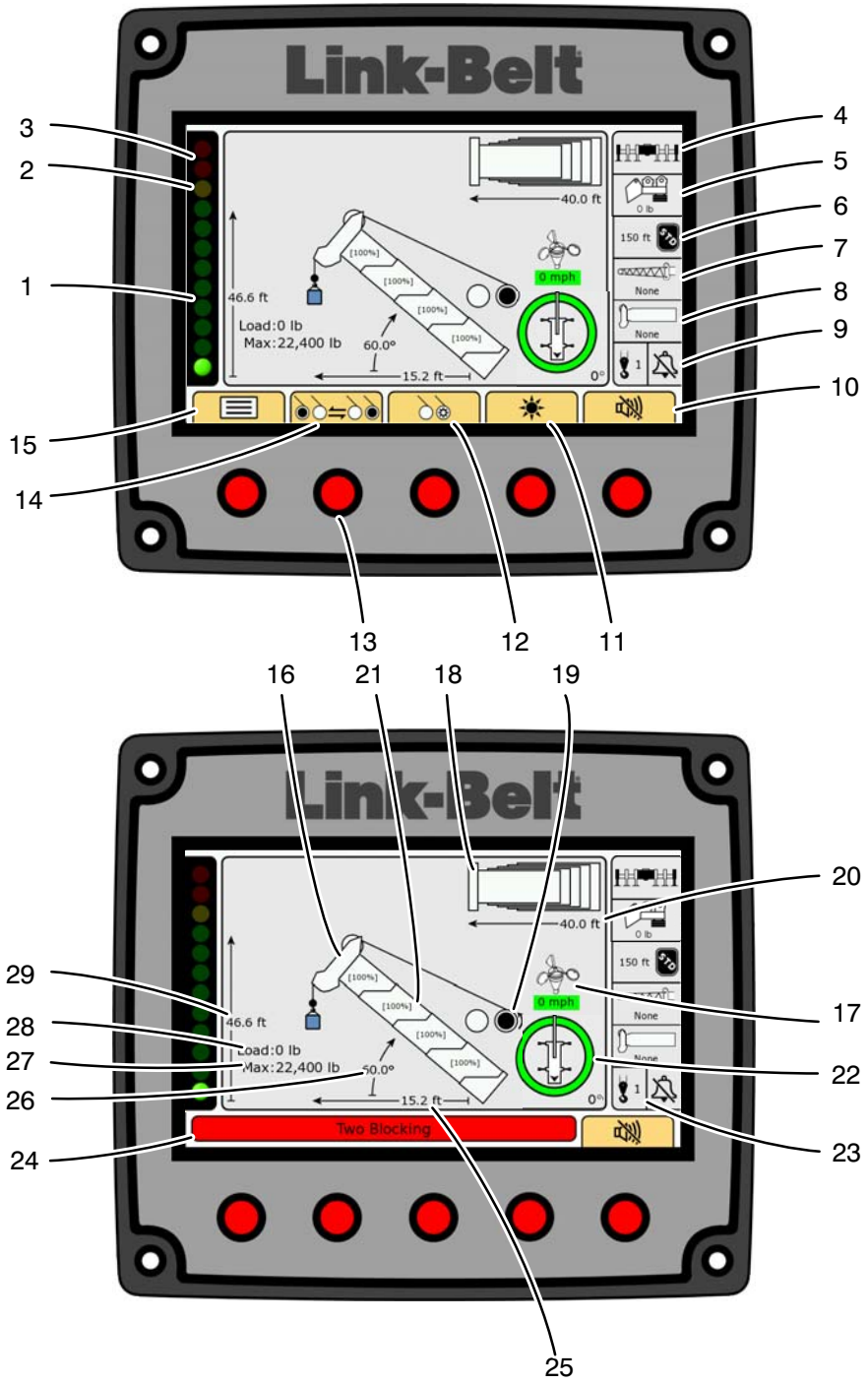
The lockout clip is used to hold the main boom anti-two block switch in the “working” position, the same as having a two block weight suspended from the switch.

When operating from the main boom the lockout clip must be removed from the anti-two block weight cable. When operating from an attachment only, the lockout clip must be installed on the anti-two block weight cable.

When both main boom and any attachment are reeved for operation, the lockout clip must be removed from the cable.

Note: When using main boom and any attachment, an anti-two block weight must be suspended from the anti-two block switch on the main boom and on each attachment that is to be monitored.

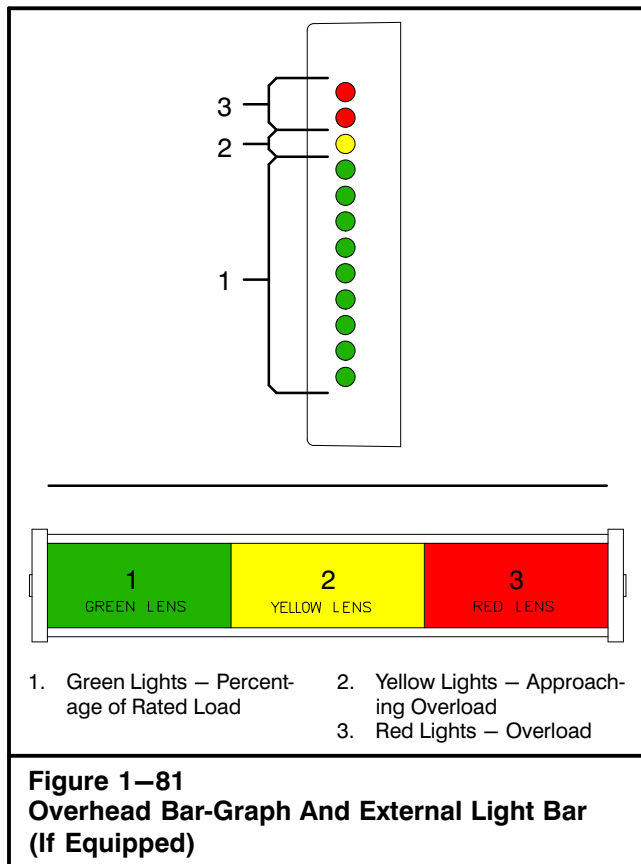
Operator's Manual



- | | | |
|------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1. Bar-Graph | 11. Brightness Icon | 21. Boom Section Length Display |
| 2. Pre-Alarm Indicator | 12. Winch Setup Icon | 22. Working Area Display |
| 3. Overload Indicator | 13. Selection Buttons | 23. Parts of Line Display |
| 4. Outrigger Configuration | 14. Winch Select Icon | 24. Warning Message Area |
| 5. Counterweight Configuration | 15. Main Menu Icon | 25. Load Radius Display |
| 6. Boom Extension Mode | 16. Crane Representation Image | 26. Boom Angle Display |
| 7. Attachment Configuration | 17. Wind Speed Display | 27. Maximum Rated Capacity Display |
| 8. Stowed Attachment Configuration | 18. Boom Telescope Animation Display | 28. Actual Load Display |
| 9. Operator Alarm Indicator | 19. Drum Rotation Direction Indicator | 29. Boom Head Height Display |
| 10. Cancel Alarm Icon | 20. Boom Length Display | |

Figure 1–80
Rated Capacity Limiter

Operator's Manual



Rated Capacity Limiter

The following describes the function and operation of the Rated Capacity Limiter (RCL). The system is intended to aid the operator in the efficient operation of the crane by continually monitoring the load and warning of an approach to an overload or unsafe condition.

WARNING

Although the system will alert the operator of an approaching overload or unsafe condition, it remains the responsibility of the operator to operate the crane safely at all times.

This system must never be substituted for the good judgment of the crane operator using safe operating procedures. The operator is solely responsible for safe operation of the crane.

!!THIS SYSTEM IS AN OPERATOR'S AID – NOT A SAFETY DEVICE!!

System Description

The system monitors crane functions by means of high accuracy sensors and continuously compares the load with a copy of the crane capacity chart which is stored in the computer memory. If an overload is approached, the system warns by means of audible and visual alarms and is configured to cause function limitation.

The Rated Capacity Limiter provides the operator with a continuous display of:

- Rated Capacity
- Actual Load
- Radius of the Load
- Angle of the Main Boom
- Crane Configuration
- Length of the Main Boom
- Height of the Main Boom Head Above the Carrier Deck

Note: The function of the RCL system is an operational aid to warn or to indicate to the operator when the load being lifted approaches, meets, or exceeds the rated capacity of the crane. The RCL system does not function as a scale or weighing device.

The actual load displayed by the RCL system is less accurate when the actual load lifted is a small percentage of the allowable load. This typically occurs when lifting light loads with a short boom length at high boom angles. Crane configurations of this type produce low pressures in the boom hoist cylinder resulting in less accuracy of the RCL sensors and calculated load. The RCL load accuracy improves greatly when the actual load lifted approaches the rated load (higher boom hoist cylinder pressures).

An additional feature of the system is the provision of operator alarms. These alarms, when properly set, provide a method of obstacle avoidance. This is achieved by means of maximum boom length, maximum boom angle, maximum load radius, maximum boom head height, left and right swing, and defined area alarms. These alarms can be programmed for each job site and set rapidly for the prevailing site conditions thereby aiding the operator in safe operation of the crane.

Operator's Manual

Display Unit

The following is a description of the control buttons, indicators, and windows on the display unit. Use them along with Figure 1–80.

1. Bar-Graph

The Bar-Graph is a series of twelve colored lights which gives a visual indication of how much of the crane's capacity is being used and the rate at which an overload is being approached. Each green light represents 10% of the crane's rated capacity being used. Yellow indicates 90–99.9%, and the red lights indicate an overload.

Note: System may be equipped with an overhead bar-graph or an external light bar which operates similar to the bar-graph on the display. Refer to Figure 1–81.

2. Pre-Alarm Indicator

The Pre-Alarm Indicator illuminates yellow at a pre-set value of 90% of Maximum Rated Capacity and provides a visual indication of an approach to an overload.

3. Overload Indicator

The Overload Indicator illuminates red at a pre-set value of 100% of the Maximum Rated Capacity and provides a visual indication of Maximum Allowed Load. It will also illuminate whenever a wire rope limit is exceeded. Function limiters will occur simultaneously for an Overload, Wire Rope Limit, or a Two-Block condition, but function limiters will not occur when exceeding an operator settable alarm. An audible alarm will sound and a message will appear in the warning message area for all 4 conditions.

4. Outrigger Configuration

This area displays the current outrigger configuration. It will also display rigging and travel modes.

5. Counterweight Configuration

This area displays the current counterweight configuration.

6. Boom Extension Mode

This area displays the current boom extension mode. It also shows the maximum boom length for the current boom extension mode.

7. Attachment Configuration

This area displays the current attachment configuration.

8. Stowed Attachment Configuration

This area displays the current stowed attachment configuration.

9. Operator Alarm Indicator

This indicator will display whether or not an operator alarm is set.

10. Cancel Alarm Icon

The button located below this icon can be pushed once to silence the audible alarm when the alarm has occurred as a result of either an Overload, a Two Block, or an Operator Settable alarm. It is also used to reset the function limit relay when it is necessary to by-pass a function limit which has occurred as a result of either an Overload or a Two Block alarm. This requires the button be pressed and held for 2 seconds and longer.

11. Brightness Icon

The button located below this icon is used to adjust the display brightness.

12. Winch Setup Icon

The button located below this icon is used to enter the active winch setup screen. The active winch setup screen allows the user to configure lift point and parts of line for the active winch.

13. Selection Buttons

The selection buttons are used to activate each of the icons at the bottom of the screen. The icons will change depending on the current menu display.

Operator's Manual

14. Winch Select Icon

The button located below this icon is used to select which winch will be in use.

15. Main Menu Icon

The button located below this icon navigates to the main menu. The main menu contains items such as: Crane Configuration, Operator Alarms, Diagnostics, Setup, About.

16. Crane Representation Image

This crane representation image is a generic representation of the boom, active winch configuration, auxiliary head configuration (on or off), and fly configuration (on or off). The attachment image will not change with installed attachment.




17. Wind Speed Display

The current wind speed is displayed here.

18. Boom Telescope Animation Display

The Boom Telescope Animation Display is a real-time visual representation of the location of the boom sections, location of the telescope cylinder, and the status of the pins and latches. It also includes a numeric readout of the telescope cylinder length in inches (*cm*).

19. Drum Rotation Direction Indicator (DRDI)

This Drum Rotation Direction indicator is used to monitor Winch Up , Winch Down , and Error states .

Note: If the error state indicator appears, contact your Link-Belt Distributor or factory for service.

20. Boom Length Display

The Boom Length Display gives a continuous indication of the boom length in feet (*m*). It is the distance from the centerline of the boom foot pin to the centerline of the boom head machinery.

21. Boom Section Length Display

The Boom Section Length Display shows the current section lengths as a percentage of their absolute maximum length (not in the current boom mode). The maximum length for each section in the current boom mode is shown in brackets.

22. Working Area Display

This area displays a graphical representation of the allowable lifting quadrant(s) based on the selected configuration. A quadrant not allowed will be filled red, an allowable quadrant will be filled green.

23. Parts of Line Display

The Parts of Line Display shows the parts of line currently selected for the winch in use.

24. Warning Message Area

The Warning Message Area displays text messages of various alarms which may occur during normal operation of the system. When an alarm occurs, the rectangular area fills in red. The Warning Message Area will only be shown when there is an active message. Otherwise the navigation button icons will be shown. Refer to Figure 1–83. Press any of the selection buttons, except the cancel alarm button, to temporarily replace the Warning Message Area with the navigation icons.

25. Load Radius Display

The Load Radius Display gives a continuous indication of the radius of the load in feet. It is the horizontal distance from the centerline of rotation to the centerline of the hook.

26. Boom Angle Display

The Boom Angle Display gives a continuous indication of the angle of the main boom relative to horizontal.

27. Maximum Rated Capacity Display

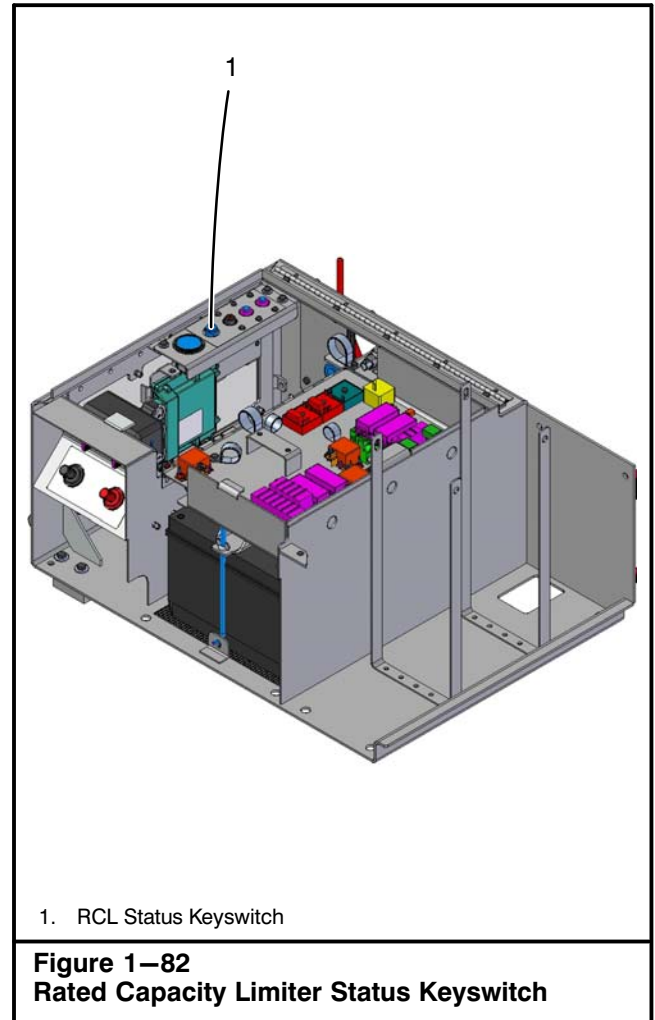
The Maximum Rated Capacity Display is a digital display of the maximum permitted capacity. It is derived from a copy of the crane's capacity chart which is stored in the computer memory and is the reference capacity for any lifting operation. It is dependent on the configuration currently selected, which is shown in the crane configuration screen, and which determines the section of the capacity chart to be used as the rated capacity reference.

28. Actual Load Display

The Actual Load Display is a digital display of the total load suspended below the boom or fly head. It includes the load, any slings, pins, or tackle used to secure the load and the hook block or ball.

29. Boom Head Height Display

The Boom Head Height Display gives a continuous display of the height of the boom head or attachment head above the carrier deck.



System Operation

The following is a list of procedures which are used to operate the multiple features of the Rated Capacity Limiter. Use these procedures in conjunction with the previous display unit control descriptions.

System Bypass

In emergency situations, the Rated Capacity Limiter computer can be bypassed. There is a RCL Status keyswitch located on the back of the operator's cab, to bypass the system. Refer to Figure 1–82. Move the key to the "RCL BYPASSED" position to bypass the system. For emergency use while the system is bypassed, refer to "System Inoperative or Malfunctioning" in this Section of this Operator's Manual.

Operator's Manual



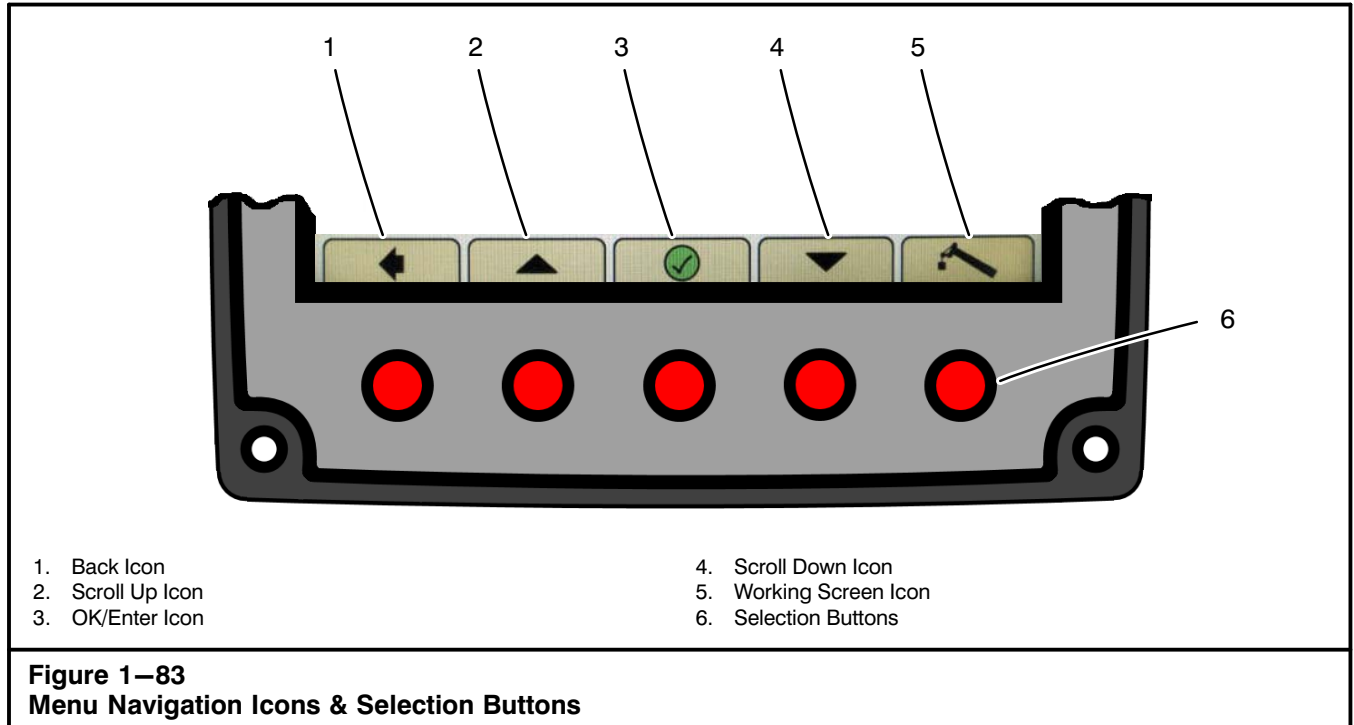
WARNING

The RCL System is not operational when the computer is bypassed. Bypass the system in emergency situations only.

System Inoperative Or Malfunctioning

When operational aids are inoperative or malfunctioning, the following recommendations for continued use of the crane should be followed or the crane should be shutdown.

1. Steps shall be taken to schedule repairs and recalibration immediately. The operational aids shall be put back into service as soon as replacement parts, if required, are available and the repairs and recalibration can be carried out. Every reasonable effort must be made to expedite the repairs and recalibration.
2. When the rated capacity limiter is inoperative or malfunctioning, the designated person responsible for supervising the lifting operations shall establish procedures for determining load weights and shall ascertain that the weight of the load does not exceed the crane ratings at the radius where the load is to be handled.
3. When a boom angle or radius indicator is inoperative or malfunctioning, the radius or boom angle shall be determined by measurement.
4. When the anti-two block warning device is inoperative or malfunctioning, the designated person responsible for supervising the lifting operations shall establish procedures, such as assigning an additional signal person, to furnish equivalent protection. This does not apply when lifting personnel in load line supported baskets. Personnel shall not be lifted in load line supported baskets when the anti-two block devices are not functioning properly.
5. When a boom length indicator is inoperative or malfunctioning, the designated person responsible for supervising the lifting operations shall establish the boom length at which the lift will be made by actual measurement or markings on the boom.
6. When a level indicator is inoperative or malfunctioning, other means shall be used to level the crane.
7. In situations where inconsistency exists, verified weights, measured radii, boom lengths, and authorized crane capacities must always take precedence over indicator readings.



System Navigation

The RCL display has two main display modes; the working screen and the menu. The working screen displays all information relevant to the safe operation of the crane. This includes crane configuration as well as live data such as boom length and load radius. The menu is used to navigate to various setup and diagnostic screens needed to properly setup the system. Although the five navigation icons at the bottom of the screen will change depending on what the display is currently showing, the five primary icons for menu navigation are as follows. Refer to Figure 1–83. If a task associated with a button is not available, that button will be disabled and greyed out.

1. Back Icon

The selection button located below the Back Icon navigates back one menu.

2. Scroll Up Icon

The selection button located below the Scroll Up Icon scrolls up one menu item each time it is pressed.

3. OK/Enter Icon

The selection button located below the OK/Enter Icon selects the menu item currently highlighted.

4. Scroll Down Icon

The selection button located below the Scroll Down Icon scrolls down one menu item each time it is pressed.

5. Working Screen Icon

The selection button located below the Working Screen Icon immediately navigates to the working screen when it is pressed.

6. Selection Buttons

These buttons are used to select the function of the icon displayed above them.

Operator's Manual

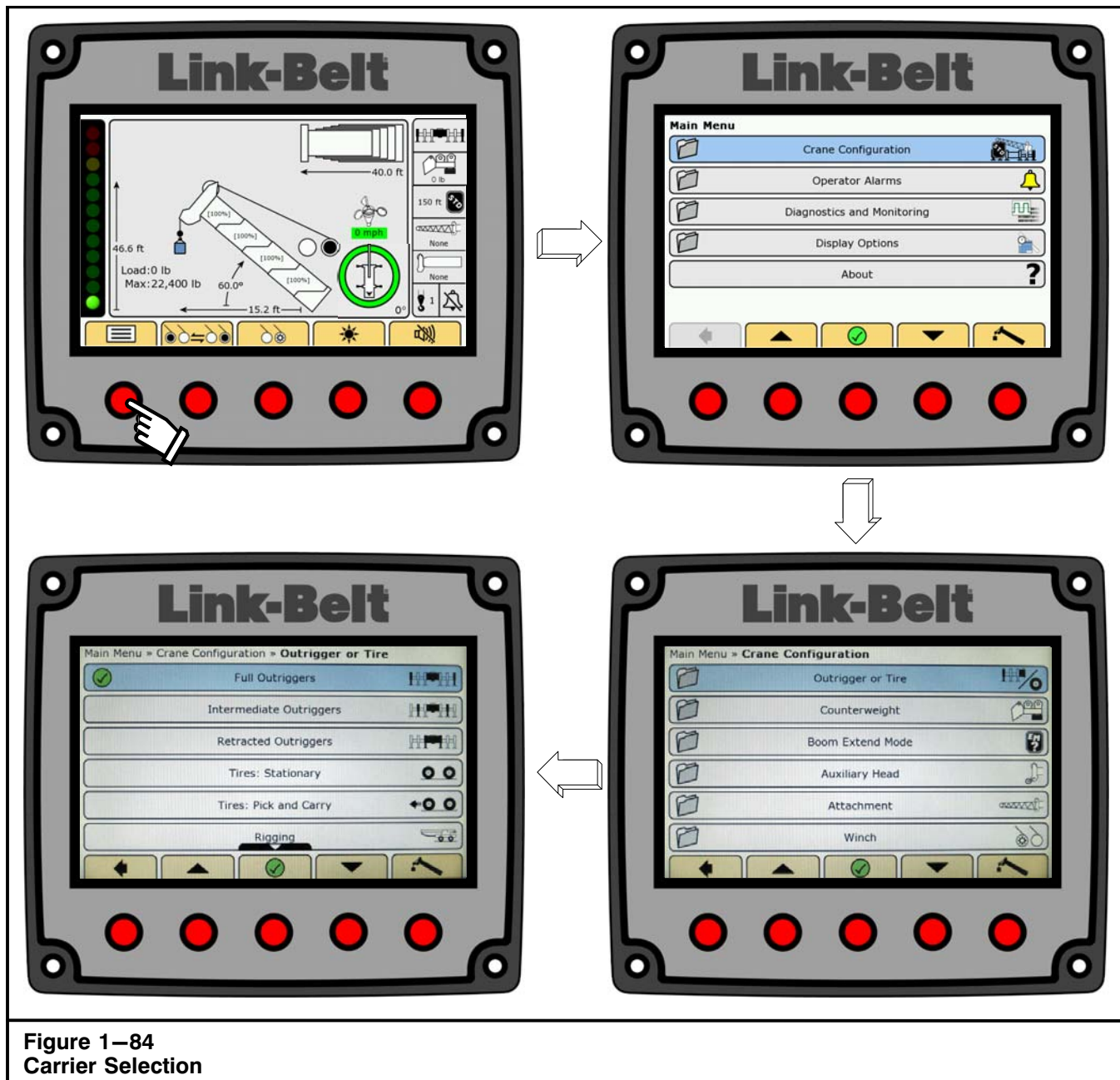





Figure 1-84
Carrier Selection

Configuration Selection

In the normal operational mode the system is programmed to remember the last configuration selected. Each time the system is powered up it will automatically default to that last configuration. Only when the crane is rigged differently must a new configuration be selected. Use the following procedure to select the crane configuration.

Note: When selecting configurations allowed on outriggers, all beams must be equally extended; all fully retracted, intermediate extended, or fully extended.

Depending on how the crane is equipped or which selections have been made, some screens shown may not appear or may not appear as illustrated. The system cannot be programmed for configurations not allowed by the capacity charts in the Crane Rating Manual.

1. From the normal working screen, press the Main Menu button .
2. Scroll to Crane Configuration, and press the OK/Enter button .
3. Scroll to Outrigger or Tire, and press the OK/Enter button . Refer to Figure 1-84.

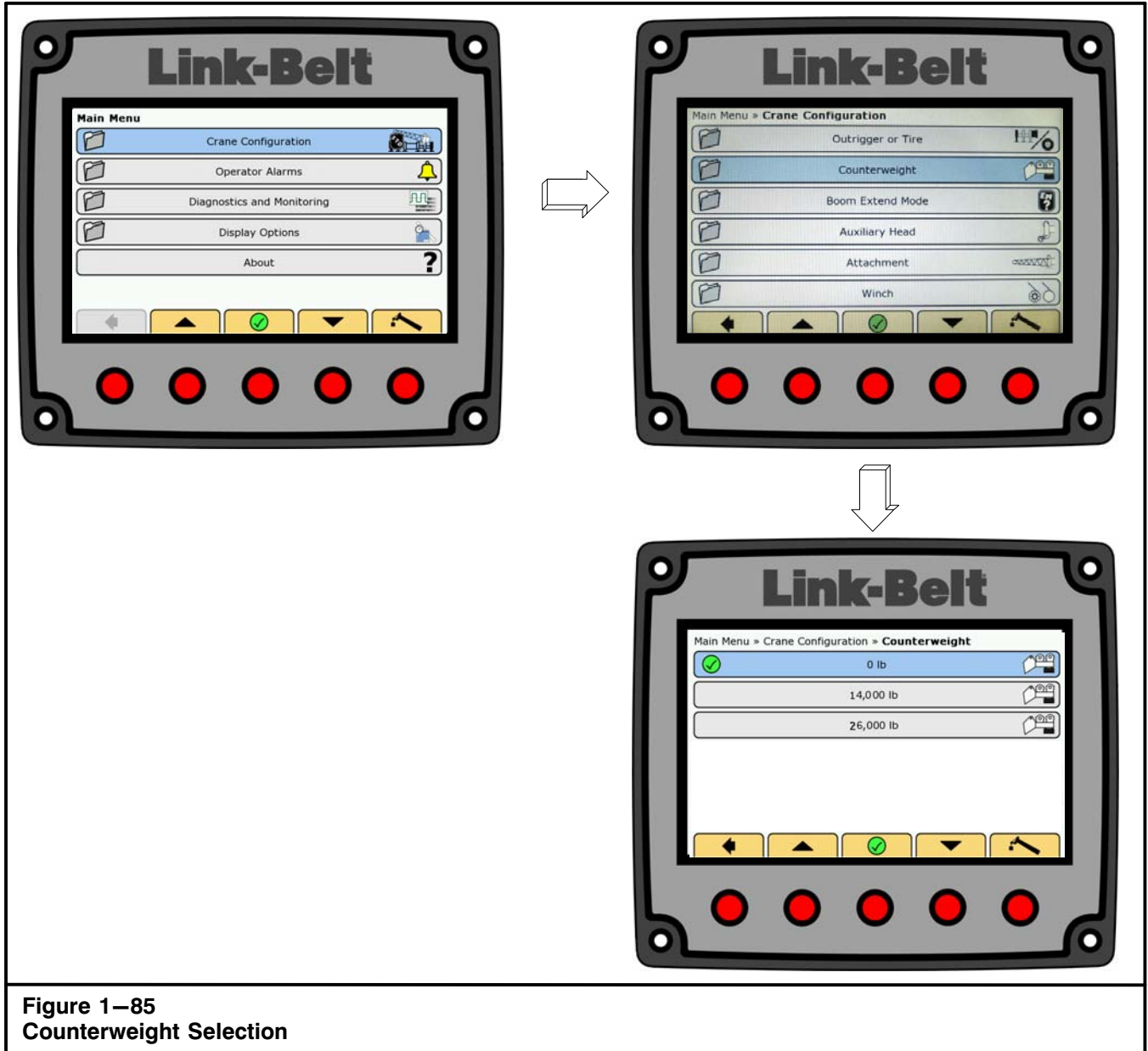


Figure 1–85
Counterweight Selection

4. The menu will change and graphically display the carrier options. Scroll to the desired carrier configuration, and press the OK/Enter button . If rigging is desired, refer to “To Select Rigging And Travel Modes” in this Section of this Operator’s Manual.
5. After a selection is made, the display will automatically return to the Crane Configuration menu.
6. On the Crane Configuration menu, scroll to Counterweight, and press the OK/Enter button .
7. Scroll to the desired counterweight, and press the OK/Enter button . Refer to Figure 1–85.
8. After a selection is made, the display will automatically return to the Crane Configuration menu.



WARNING

The RCL System is not operational when in the Rigging or Travel Modes. Return the RCL System to normal operation before operating the crane.

Operator's Manual

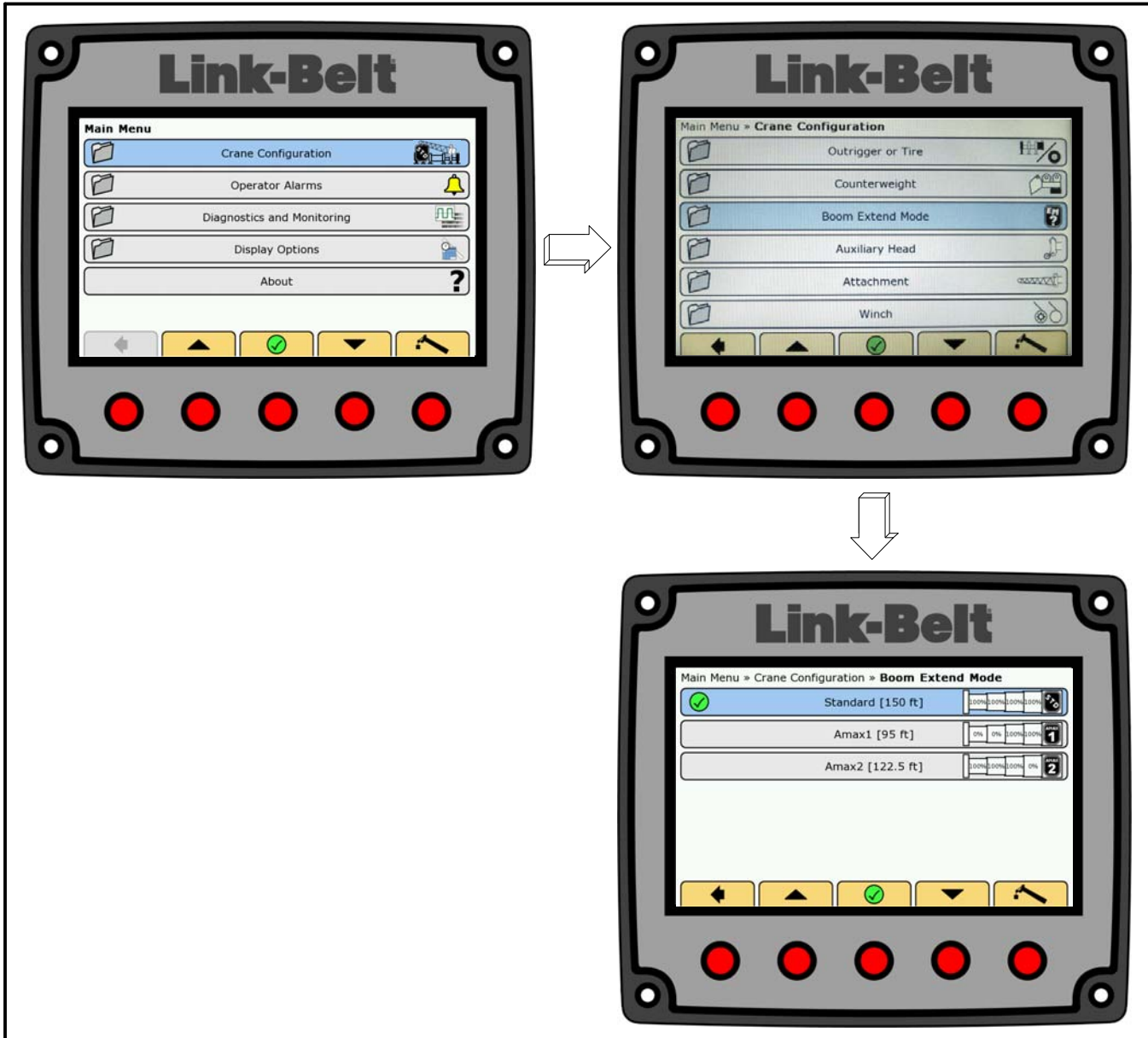




Figure 1–86
Boom Extend Mode Selection

9. On the Crane Configuration menu, scroll to Boom Extend Mode, and press the OK/Enter button .
Refer to Figure 1–86.
10. Scroll to the desired boom extend mode, and press the OK/Enter button .

Note: Refer to the Crane Rating Manual to determine the best boom mode to maximize lifting capacity at working radius. Boom mode options will only be displayed when the boom is fully retracted and the telescope cylinder unlatched from all boom sections.

11. After a selection is made, the display will automatically return to the Crane Configuration menu.

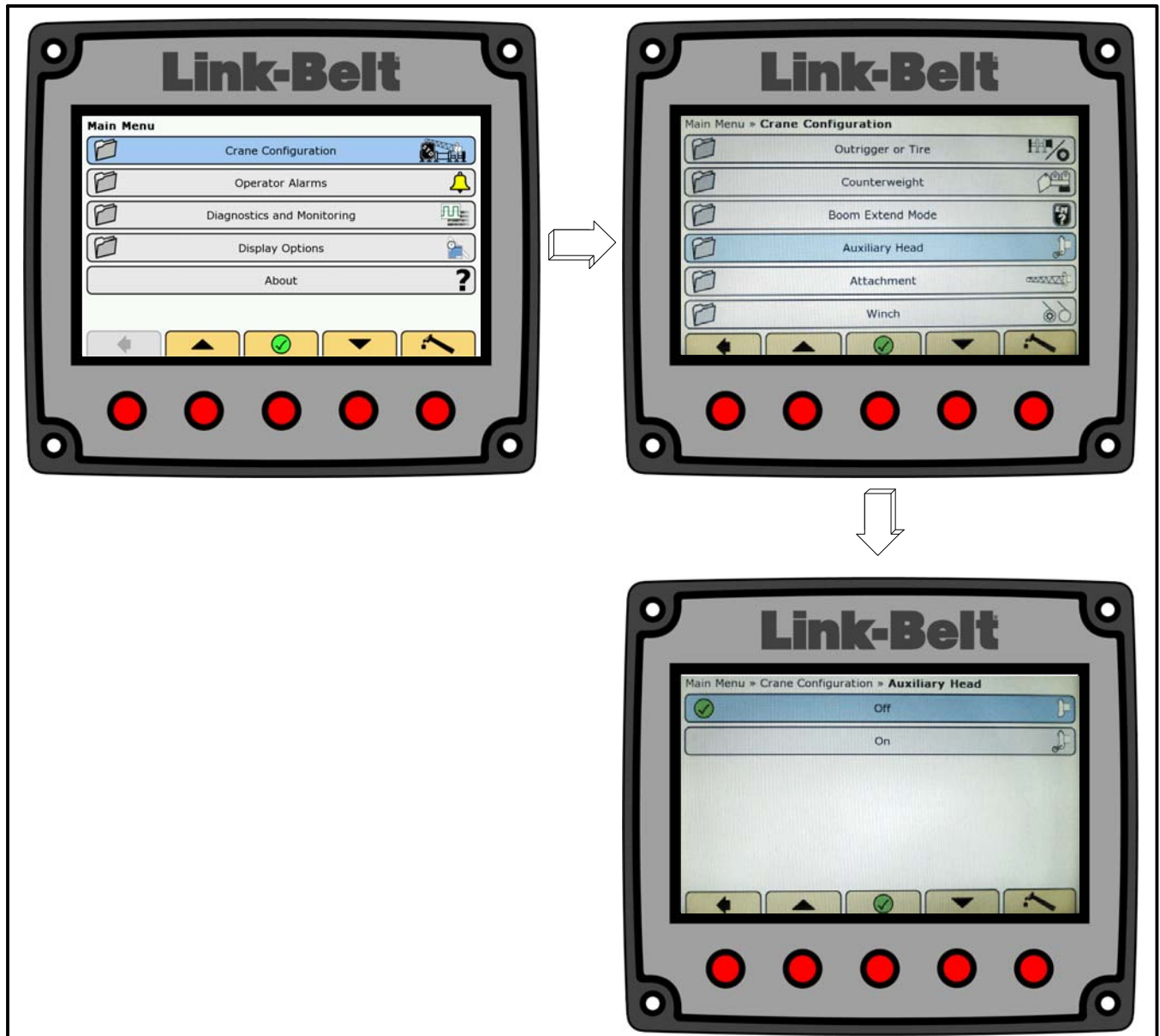




Figure 1–87
Auxiliary Head Selection

12. On the Crane Configuration menu, scroll to Auxiliary Head, and press the OK/Enter button . Refer to Figure 1–87.
13. Scroll to the desired auxiliary head (off or on), and press the OK/Enter button .
14. After a selection is made, the display will automatically return to the Crane Configuration menu.

Operator's Manual

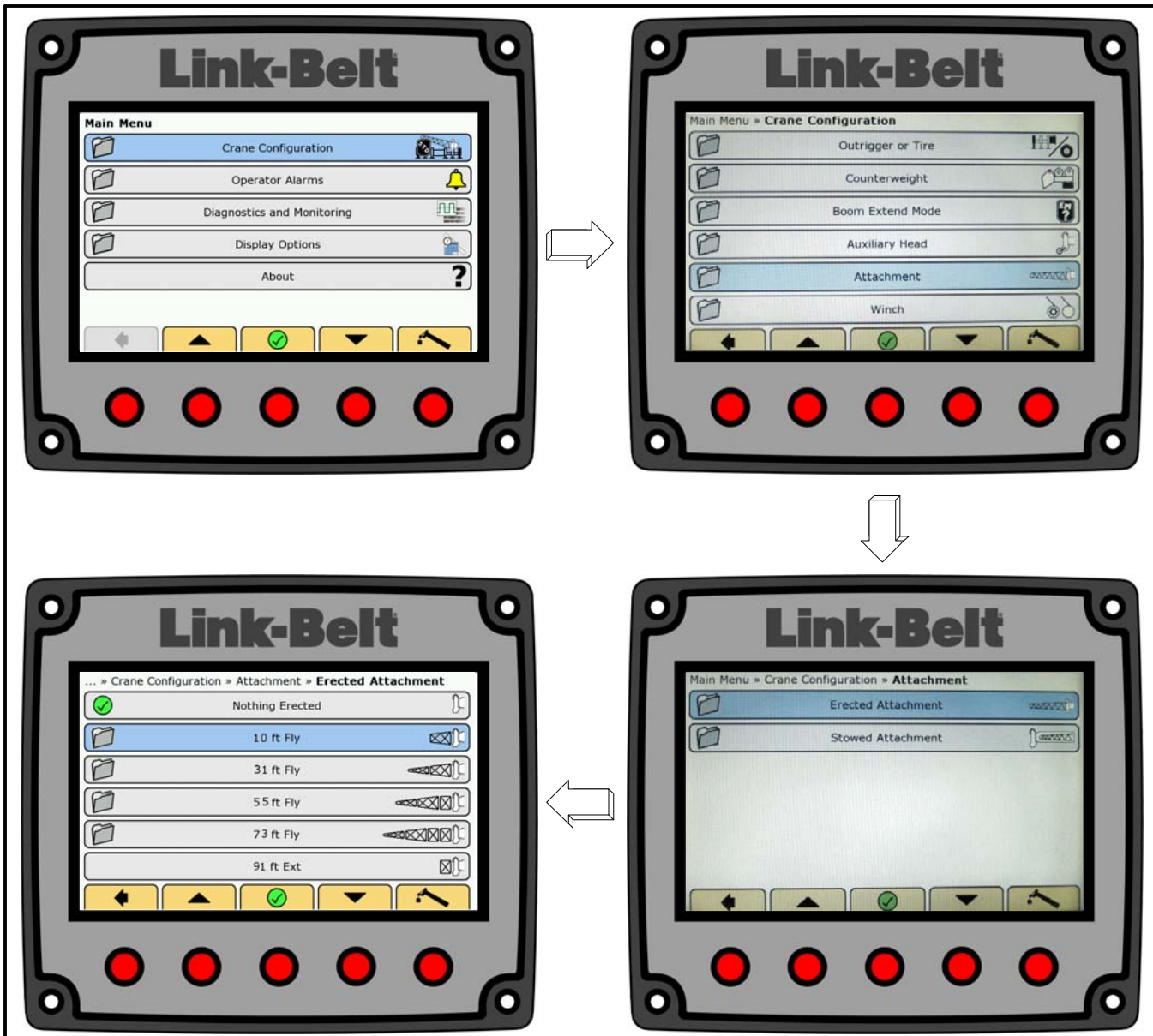






Figure 1–88
Erected Attachment Selection

15. On the Crane Configuration menu, scroll to Attachment, and press the OK/Enter button .
16. Scroll to Erected Attachment, and press the OK/Enter button  to display the fly options. Scroll to the desired erected fly, if required, and press the OK/Enter button . Refer to Figure 1–88.
 - a. If Nothing Erected is selected, the display will automatically return to the Crane Configuration menu.
 - b. If an erected attachment is selected, the display will change and graphically display the available offsets as required.
 - c. Scroll to the desired offset angle, and press the OK/Enter button . Refer to Figure 1–89.
 - d. After a selection is made, the display will automatically return to the Crane Configuration menu.

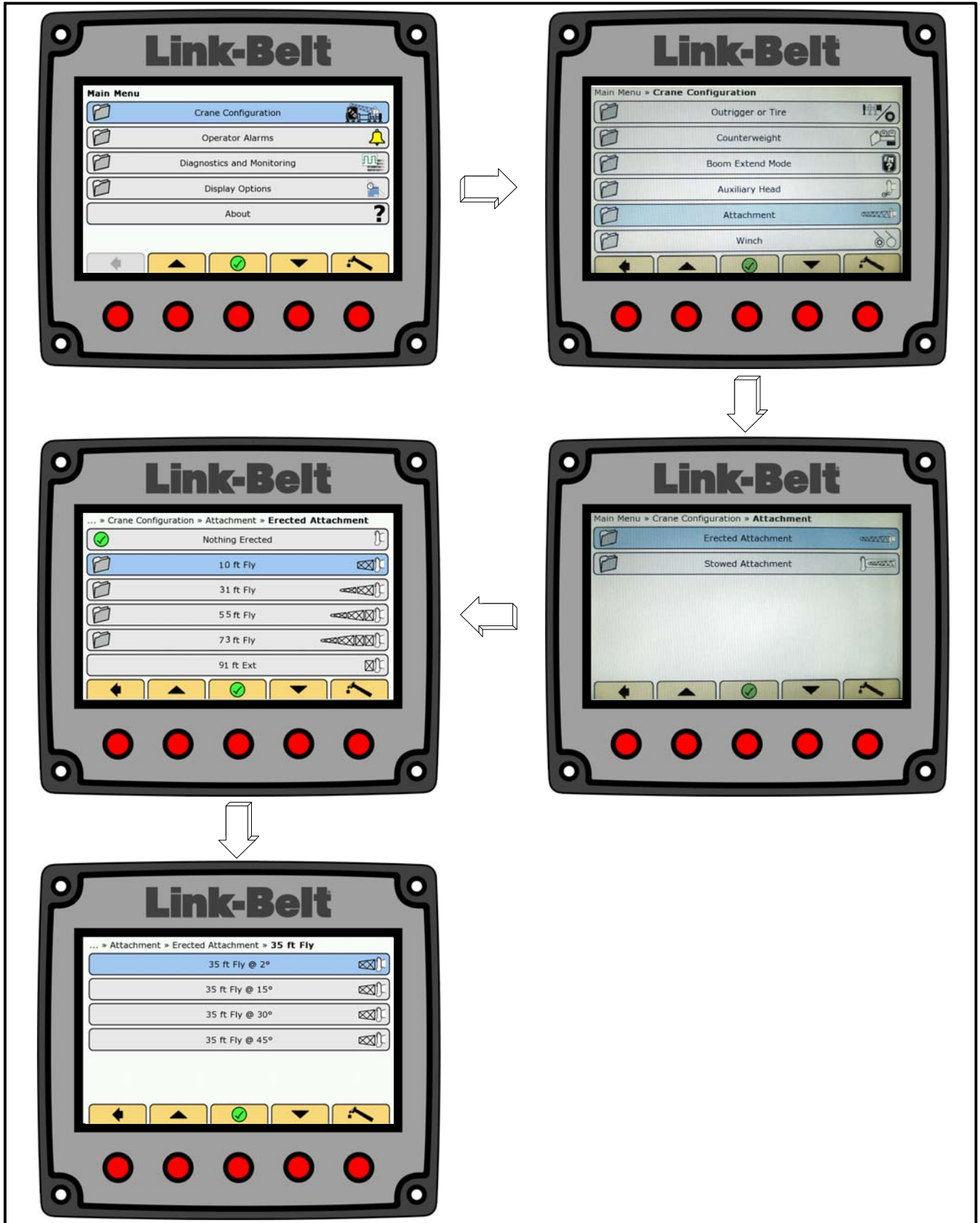


Figure 1–89
Erected Attachment Selection

Operator's Manual

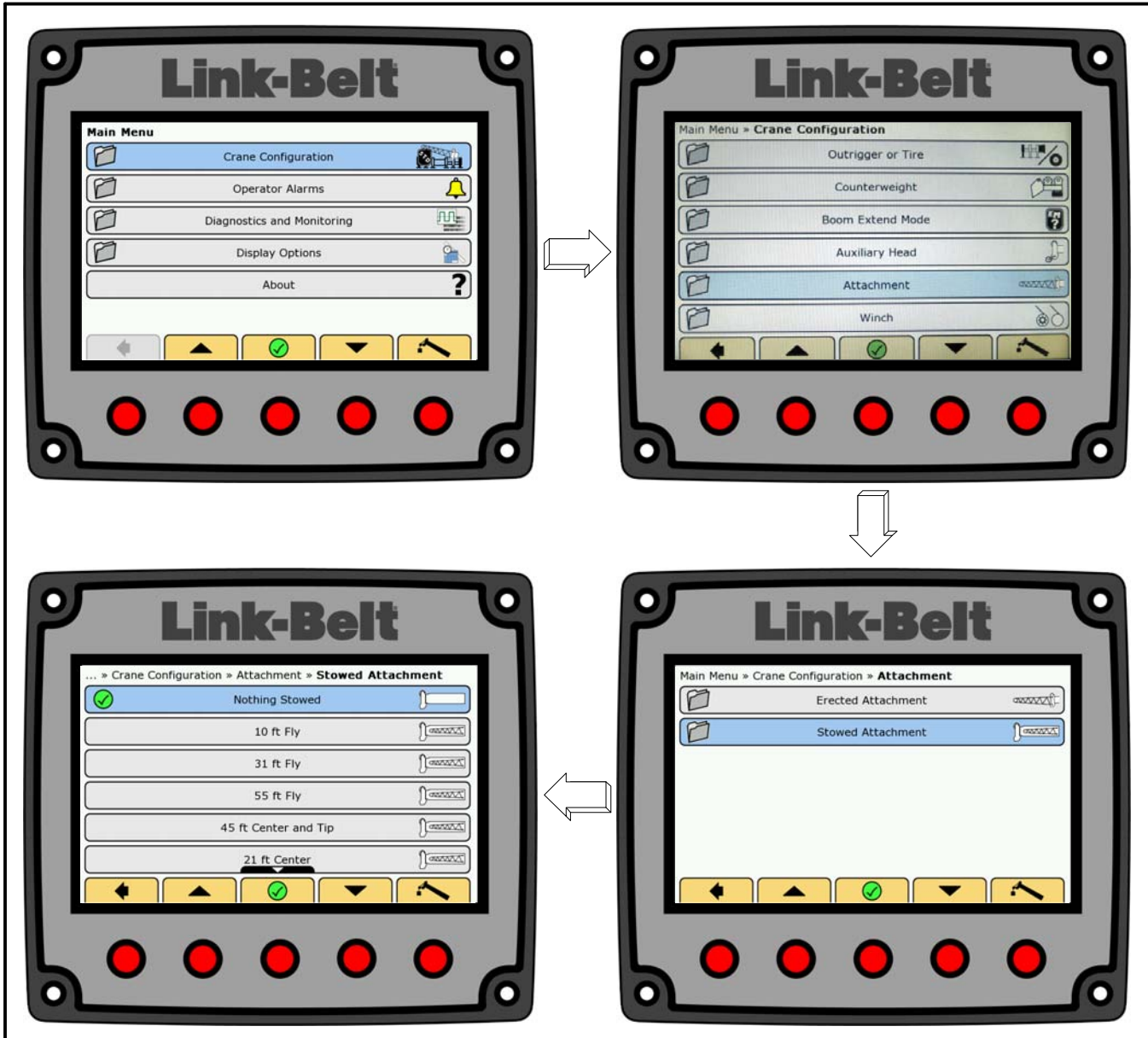



Figure 1–90
Stowed Attachment Selection

17. If the crane is equipped with a fly and was not selected as an erected attachment, on the Crane Configuration menu, navigate to Attachment » Stowed Attachment to display the stowed fly options. Scroll to the desired stowed deduct, if required, and press the OK/Enter button . Refer to Figure 1–90.

18. After a selection is made, the display will automatically return to the Crane Configuration menu.

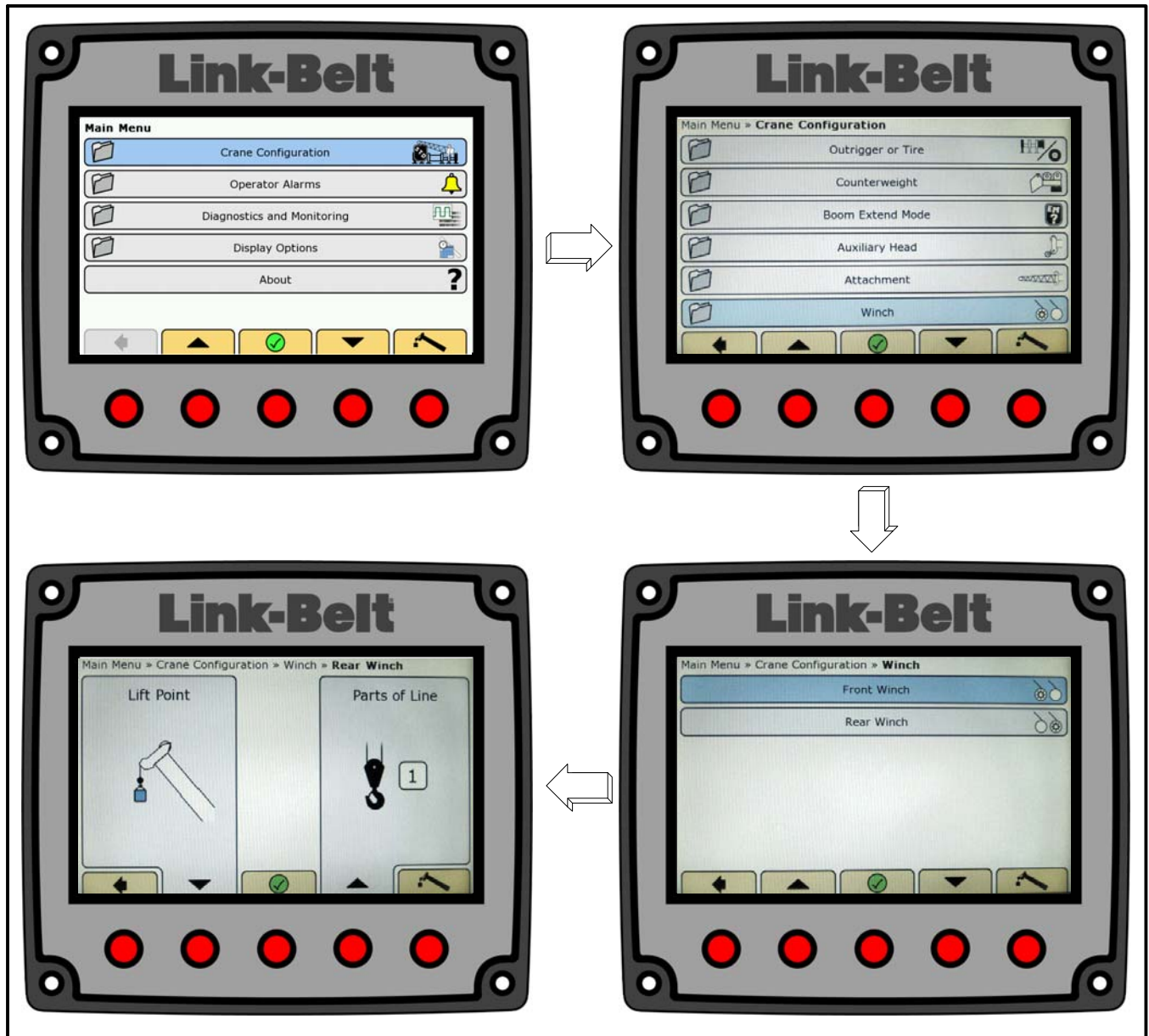




Figure 1–91
Winch Configuration

19. On the Crane Configuration menu, scroll to Winch, and press the OK/Enter button  to display the front and rear winch items. Refer to Figure 1–91.

a. Scroll to the desired winch menu item, and press the OK/Enter button . This will only configure the selected winch. The winch select button on the working screen is used to change the active winch.

Operator's Manual

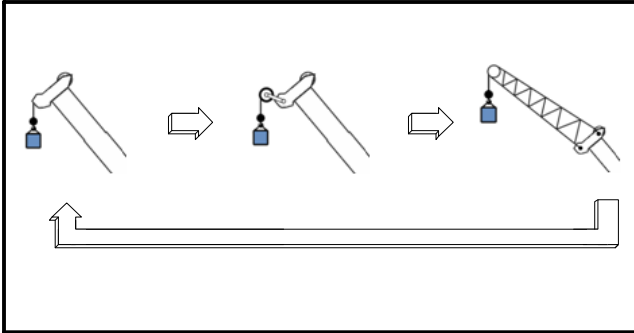






Figure 1-92
Lifting Point Selection

- b. Scroll through the available lifting points until the desired lifting point, for the winch selected, is displayed. Refer to Figure 1-92.
- c. Scroll through the available parts of line until the desired parts of line, for the winch selected, is displayed. Refer to Figure 1-93.
- d. Press the OK/Enter button  to confirm the selections for lifting point and parts of line. If the back button  or working screen button  is pressed before pressing the OK/Enter button , the changes made to lifting point and parts of line will not be saved.
- e. Repeat Steps a thru d for the other winch, if required.

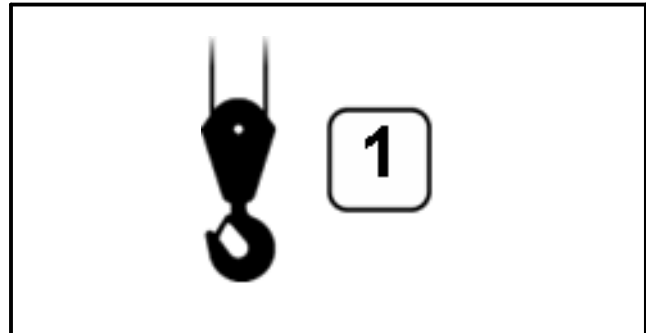


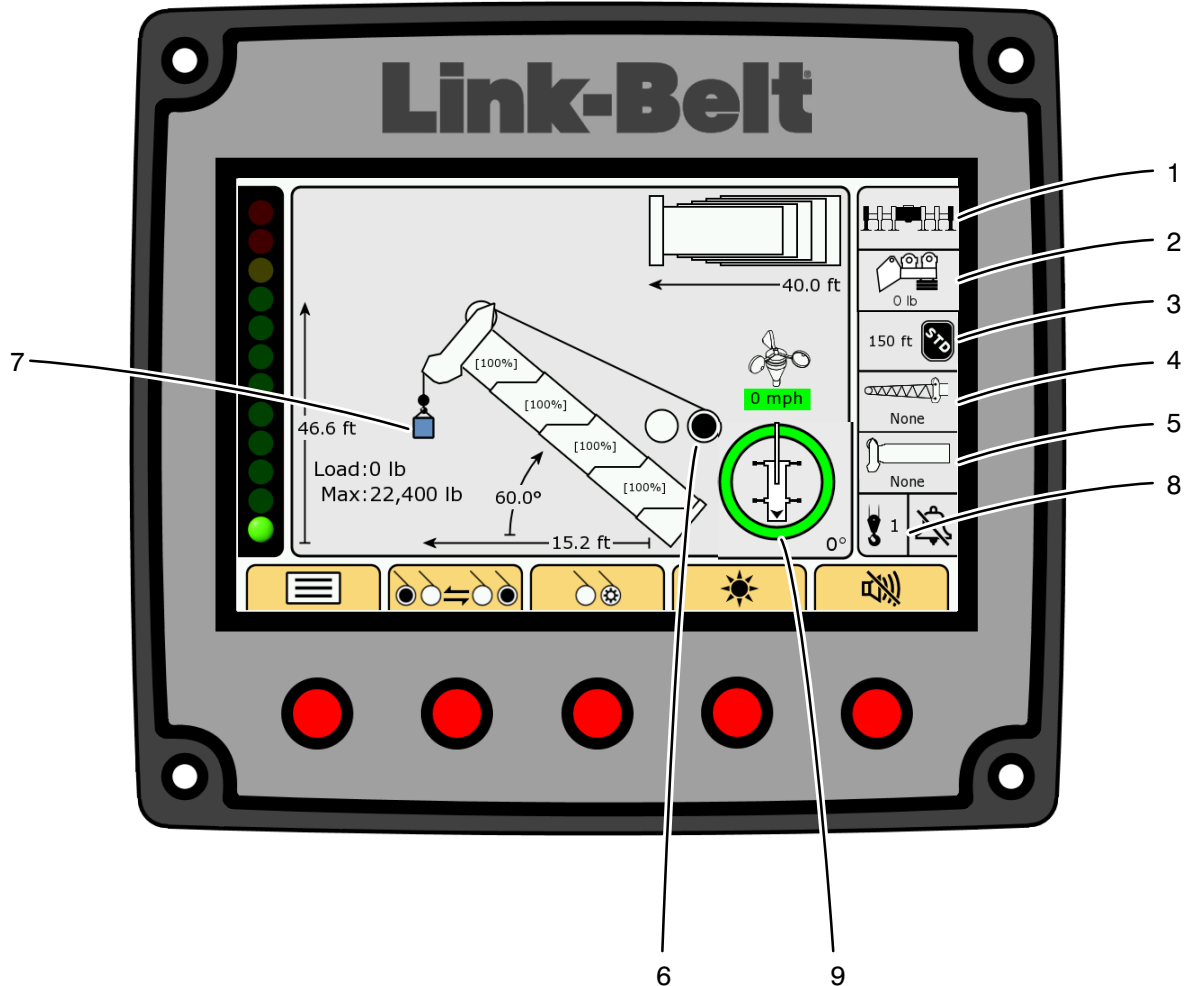


Figure 1-93
Parts Of Line Selection

20. Press the back button  to navigate back to the Crane Configuration menu.

Note: A change to any selection can be made at anytime during the configuration routine. When on the Crane Configuration menu, simply navigate to the desired configuration menu to go directly to that sub-routine.

21. Press the Working Screen button  to return to the normal working screen and graphically display the crane configuration as previously selected.



In this example the crane is setup on fully extended outriggers (1), 0 lb of counterweight (2), boom mode STD (standard) (3), no fly installed (4), no stowed attachment (5), the front winch available with the fly and the rear winch selected (6), with the winch rope reeved over the main boom head (7), with one part of line (8), and 360 degree capacities with the boom currently positioned over the rear (9).

Figure 1–94
Normal Working Screen Example

Operator's Manual

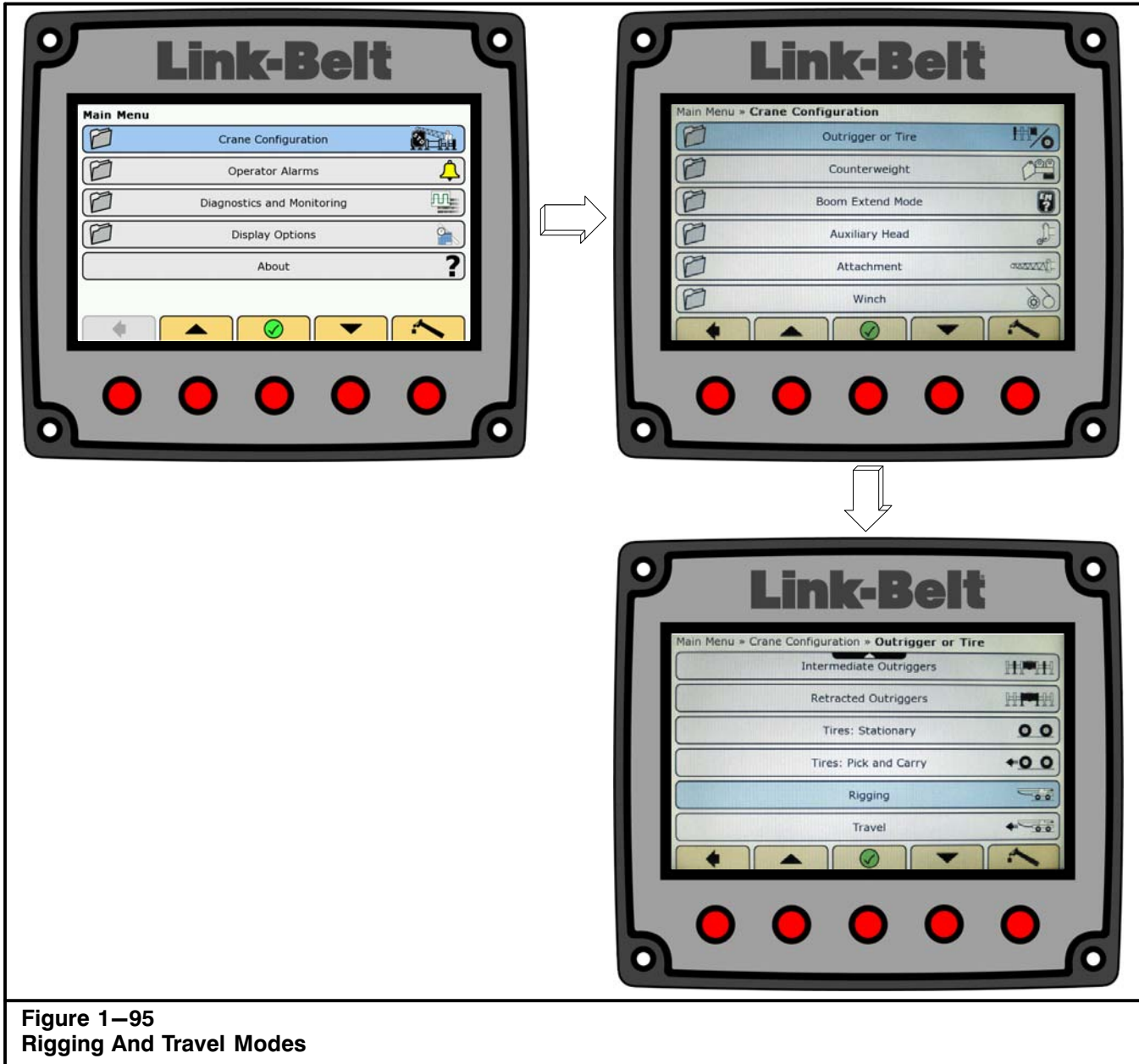


Figure 1–95
Rigging And Travel Modes

To Select Rigging And Travel Modes




The Rigging and Travel modes are used to facilitate rigging and travel of the crane by inhibiting function limiters and the audible alarm while selected. Refer to Figure Figure 1–95. To resume crane operation, select proper outrigger or tire configuration per the proper procedure.



WARNING

The RCL System is not operational when in the Rigging or Travel Modes. Return the RCL System to normal operation before operating the crane.


Operator's Manual

1. From the normal working screen, press the Main Menu button .
2. Navigate to Crane Configuration » Outrigger or Tire.
3. Scroll to Rigging or Travel.
4. Select Rigging  for rigging of the crane. Select Travel  when traveling the crane.

Note: Boom must be fully retracted to enter Travel Mode.

When changing from Travel Mode to Rigging Mode, an outrigger selection and boom mode selection must be made prior to selecting Rigging mode.

Cancel Audible Alarm And Reset Function Limiters

The CANCEL ALARM button  is used to cancel the audible alarm when the alarm has occurred as a result of either an Overload, a Two Block alarm, or an Operator settable alarm. The audible alarm may be canceled by pressing and releasing the CANCEL ALARM button. The audible alarm remains canceled until the condition which caused the alarm has been removed. For example, if the audible alarm was canceled because of an overload condition, it will remain canceled until the overload condition is removed. However, if a different alarm, e.g. two block condition, was to occur when the

audible alarm was still canceled for an earlier overload condition, the new alarm condition would cause the audible alarm to be sound.



WARNING

Once the function limiters have been by-passed, the crane is no longer protected against the condition that initially caused the function limiters to occur.

Note: The CANCEL ALARM feature is a temporary function. The audible alarm or function limit is automatically reset when the condition which caused the alarm is no longer present.

The CANCEL ALARM is also used to reset the function limiters when it is necessary to by-pass the function limiters which has occurred as a result of either an Overload, a Two Block alarm, or a Rope limit. Function limiters are reset by first canceling the audible alarm (as described above) and then pressing and holding the CANCEL ALARM button for about 2 seconds, after which the function limiters will be reset to allow operation. The button has to be held in for the function limiters to continue to be over-ridden. Once released, if still in original condition it will continue to limit functions.

Operator's Manual

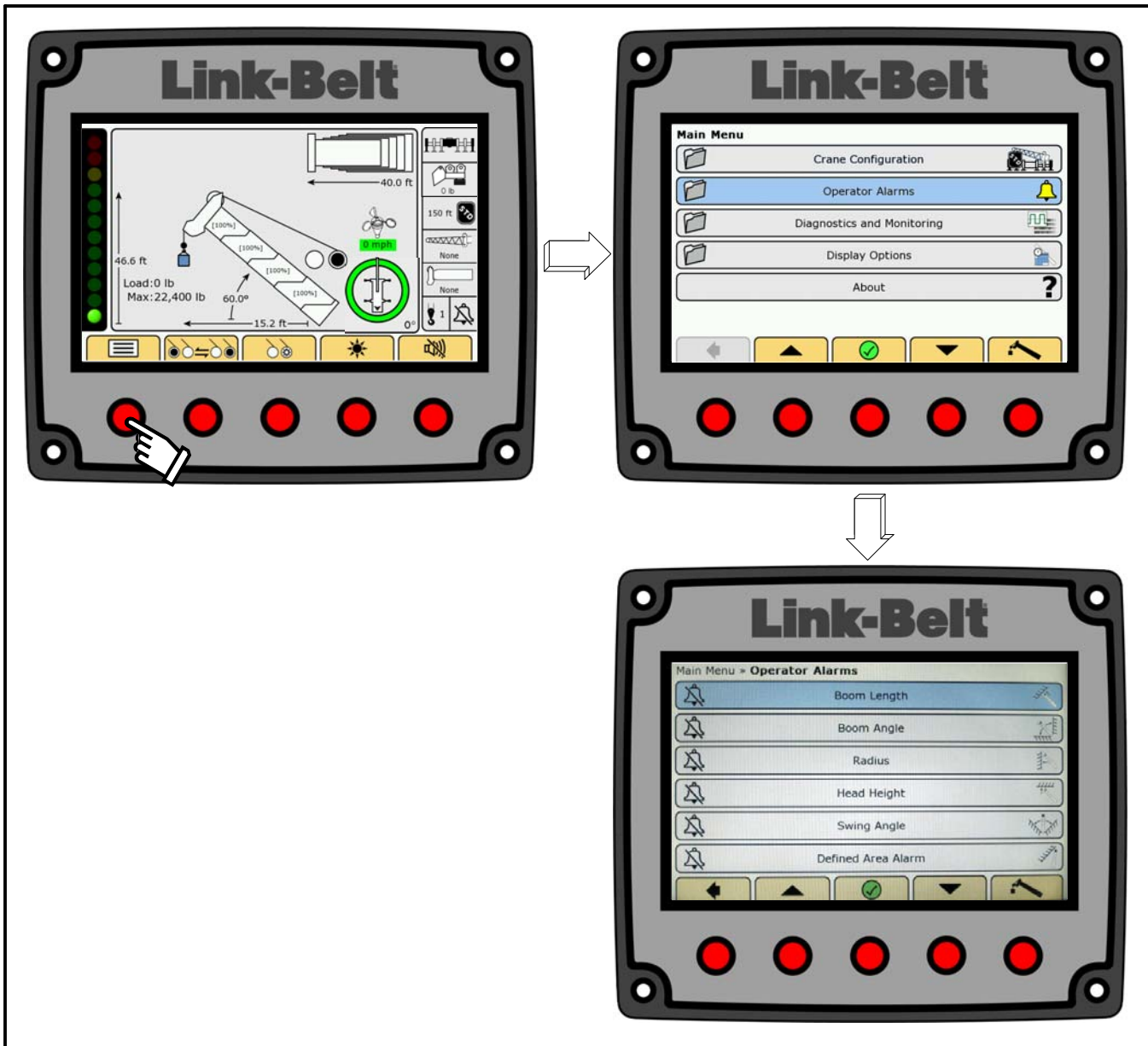


Figure 1-96
Operator Settable Alarms

Operator Settable Alarms

Some alarms occur automatically as a result of limitations imposed by the capacity chart. The operator has control over additional alarms which can be set to operate within the normal chart limitations and which are, in addition to those already set by the chart.

Operator alarms will be stored in the computer memory, even if the crane is shutdown, until they are disabled. Refer to Figure 1-96.

The following alarms are available for operator use.

Minimum Angle	Maximum Load Radius	Left and Right Swing
Maximum Angle	Maximum Boom Length	
Maximum Height	Operator Defined Area	



WARNING

The operator settable alarms are a warning device. All functions remain operational when entering the operator defined bad area. For safe operation, adequate distance must be maintained to allow for operator reaction time to avoid entering the bad area. It is the responsibility of the operator to set points which ensure that the crane's boom, attachment, load, rigging, etc. maintains a safe working distance and complies with local safety regulations.

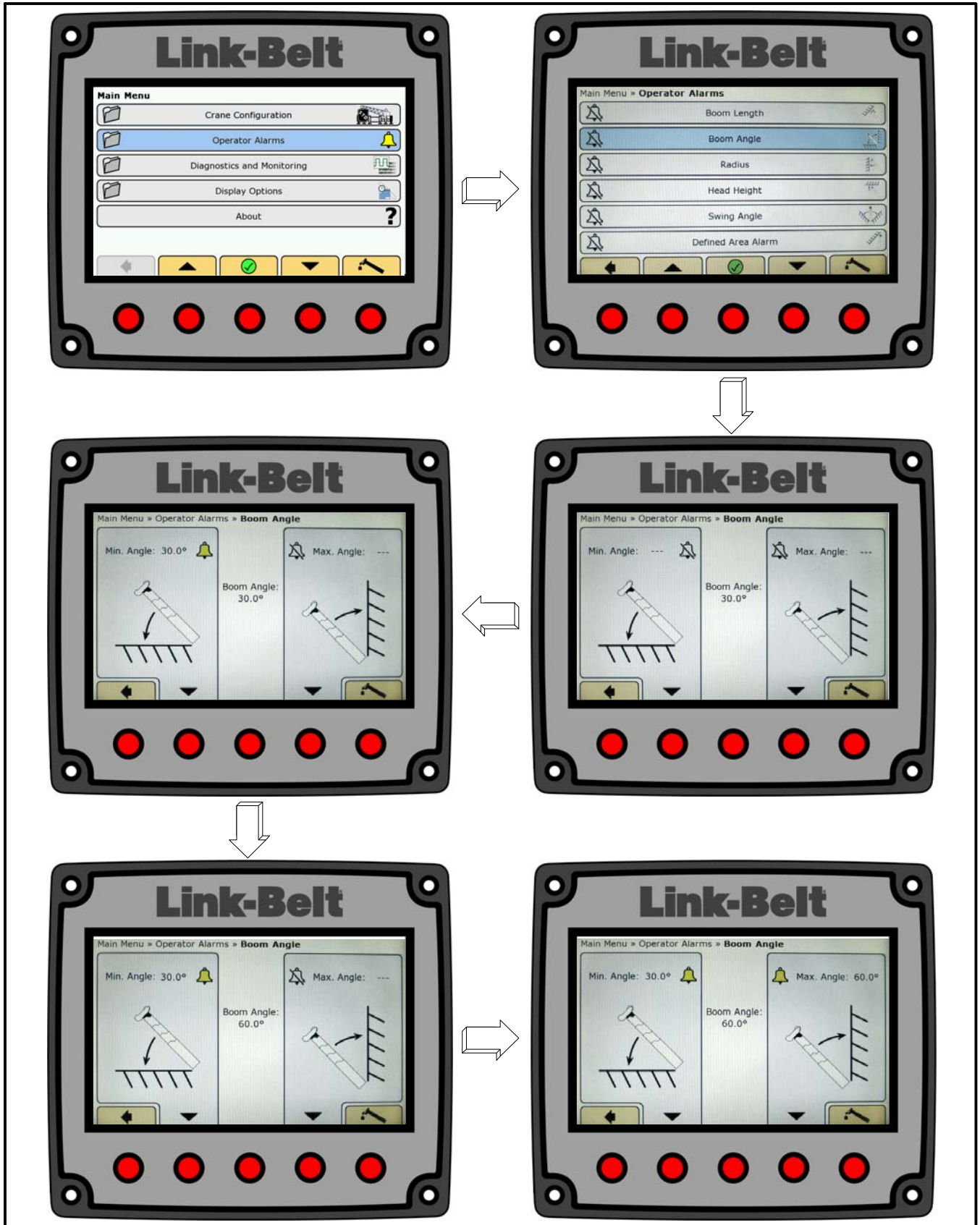





Figure 1-97
Boom Angle Alarm

Operator's Manual

Setting Angle, Length, Height, Radius, And Swing Operator Settable Alarms



1. From the normal working screen, press the Main Menu button .
2. Scroll to Operator Alarms, and press the OK/Enter button . Refer to Figure 1–96.
3. Scroll to the desired alarm to be set, and press the OK/Enter button .



WARNING



Avoid positioning the boom, attachment, load, rigging, etc. into the bad area when setting the alarm values.

When selecting the alarm values, ensure that the load will maintain a safe distance from the obstacle.

4. Place the crane in the desired position depending upon the alarm to be set. The numerical value for the value being set will be the current position of the crane.

Note: If an alarm had been previously set, the alarm value displayed will be the previously set alarm value and indicated by the  icon. The previous alarm must first be disabled, then set the new alarm. Alarms which are disabled are indicated by the .

5. Press the corresponding selection button to set the alarm value.
6. Press the back button  to return to the Operator Alarms menu or press the Working Screen button  again to return to the normal working screen.
7. Test the alarm, with no load, to ensure the alarm points have been properly set. When approaching the alarm set point, the audible alarm will sound intermittently and a warning message will appear in the warning message area. When exceeding the alarm set point, the audible alarm will sound continuously and a warning message will appear in the warning message area.

Note: An alarm icon  will appear on the normal working screen to alert the operator that an operator alarm has been set. If no operator alarm is set, the alarm disabled icon  will appear.

8. Use the following examples to understand the use of the procedure.

WARNING








If crane or obstacle is moved or if a different size load is lifted, the alarm(s) must be reset.

WARNING

Check the crane's current configuration, capacity chart, and Working Areas chart in the Crane Rating Manual to ensure safe, stable operation under conditions described in the following examples.

To Set Minimum Angle Alarm

Example: To have an alarm whenever the boom is below a 30 degree angle, use the following procedure:

1. From the normal working screen, press the Main Menu button .
2. Scroll to Operator Alarms, and press the OK/Enter button . Refer to Figure 1–97.
3. Scroll to Boom Angle , and press the OK/Enter button .
4. Move the boom to a 30 degree angle.
5. Press the corresponding button for "Min. Angle" to set the alarm. The displayed value will be the alarm setting. The  will appear to indicate that the alarm is set.
6. Press the back button  to return to the Operator Alarm menu or press the Working Screen button  again to return to the normal working screen.
7. Test the alarm, with no load, to ensure the alarm points have been properly set. When approaching 30 degree boom angle, the audio will sound intermittently and "Approaching Minimum Angle" will appear in the warning message area. The audible alarm will sound continuously and "Minimum Angle" will appear in warning message area whenever the boom is lowered below 30 degrees.

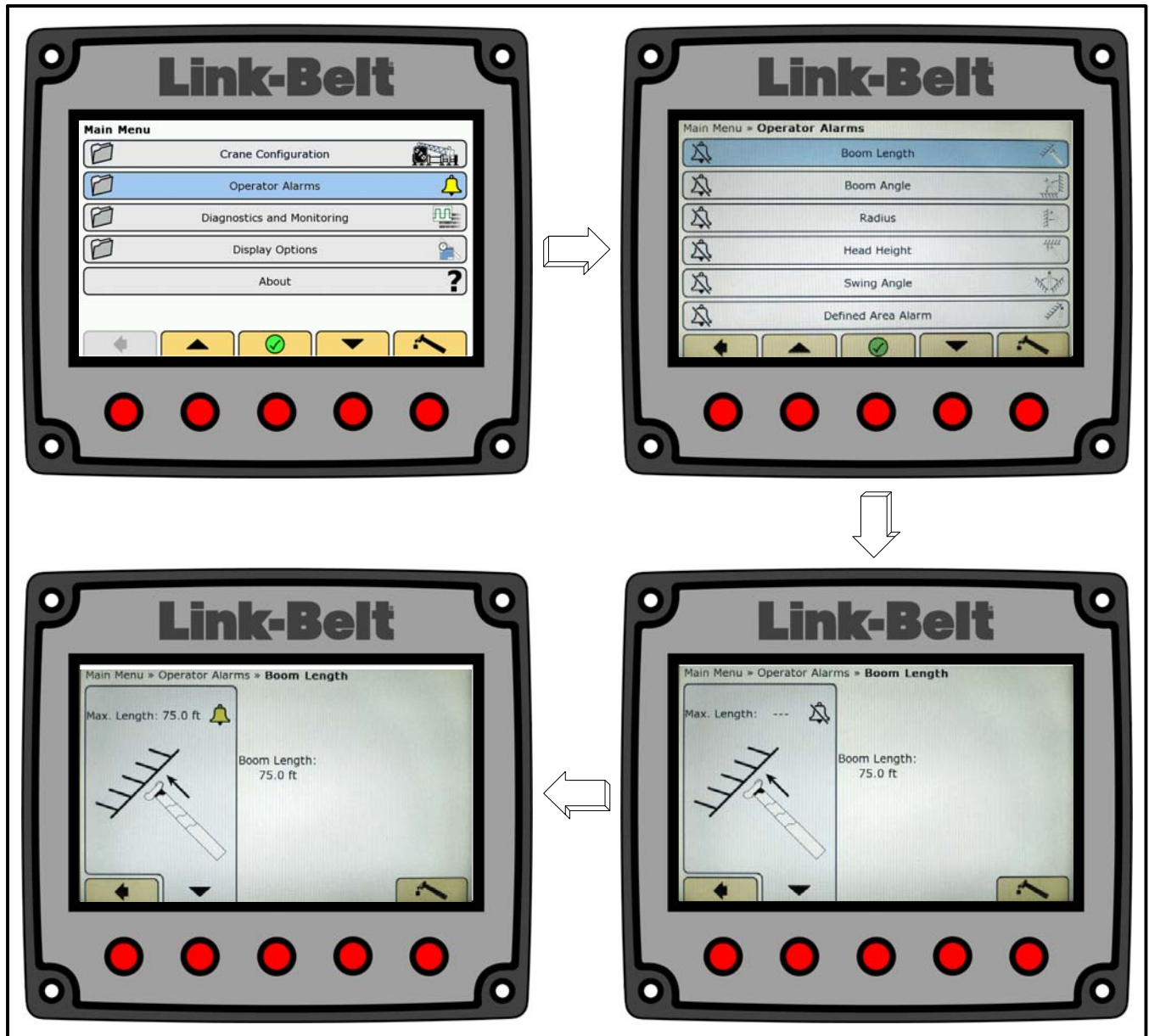









Figure 1-98
Boom Length Alarm

To Set Maximum Angle Alarm

Refer to Figure 1-97.

Example: To have an alarm whenever the boom is above a 60 degree angle use the following procedure:

1. From the normal working screen, press the Main Menu button .
2. Scroll to Operator Alarms, and press the OK/Enter button .
3. Scroll to Boom Angle , and press the OK/Enter button .
4. Move the boom to a 60 degree angle.
5. Press the corresponding button for "Max. Angle" to set the alarm. The displayed value will be the alarm setting. The  will appear to indicate that the alarm is set.
6. Press the back button  to return to the Operator Alarms menu or press the Working Screen button  again to return to the normal working screen.








Operator's Manual

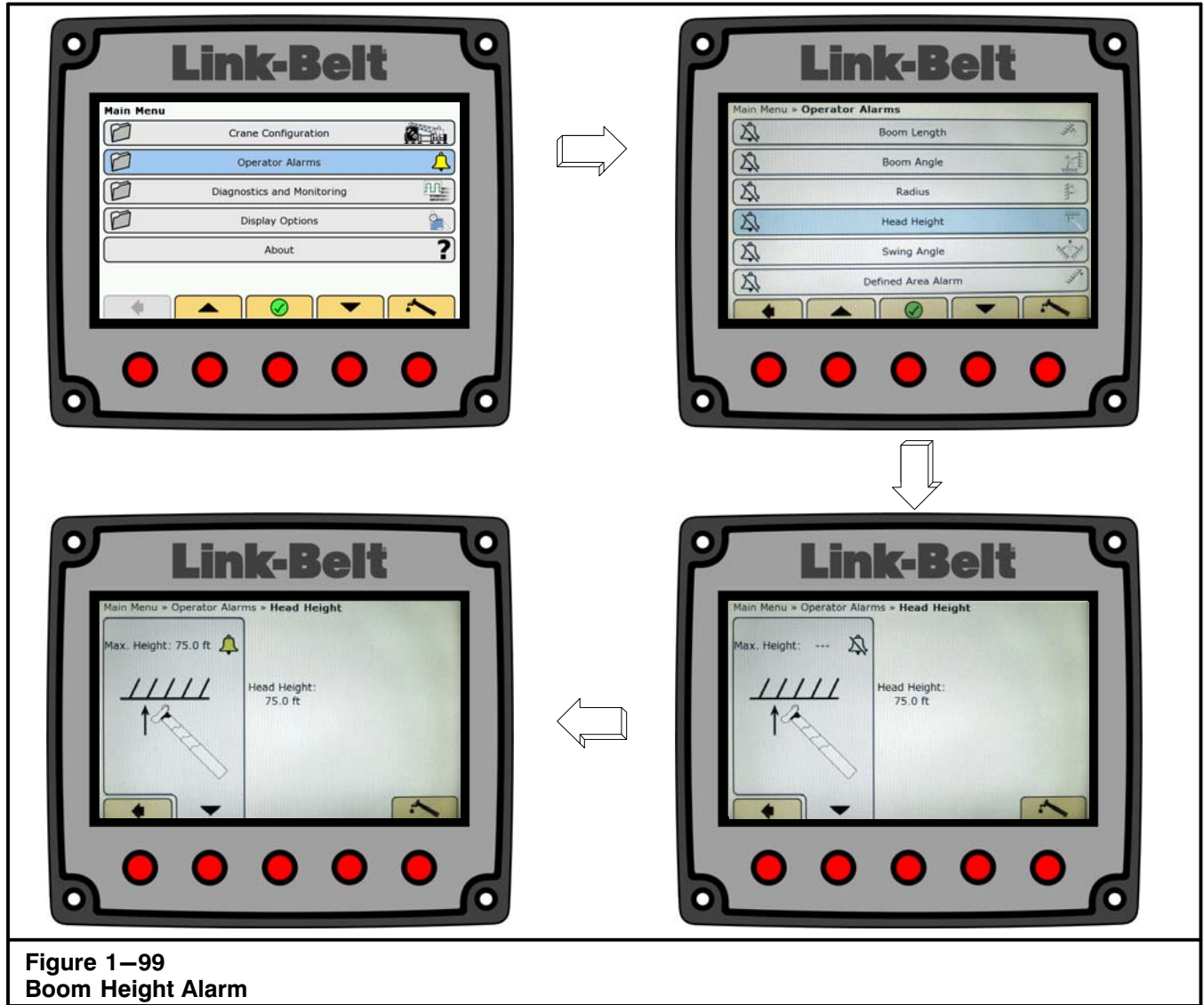
7. Test the alarm, with no load, to ensure the alarm points have been properly set. When approaching 60 degree boom angle, the audio will sound intermittently and “Approaching Maximum Angle” will appear in the warning message area. The audible alarm will sound continuously whenever the boom is raised above 60 degrees and “Maximum Angle” will appear in warning message area.

To Set Maximum Length Alarm

Refer to Figure 1–98.

Example: To have an alarm whenever the boom length exceeds 75 feet, use the following procedure:








1. From the normal working screen, press the Main Menu button .
2. Scroll to Operator Alarms, and press the OK/Enter button .
3. Scroll to Boom Length , and press the OK/Enter button .
4. Extend the boom so that the length is 75 feet.
5. Press the corresponding button for “Max. Length” to set the alarm. The displayed value will be the alarm setting. The  will appear to indicate that the alarm is set.
6. Press the back button  to return to the Operator Alarms menu or press the Working Screen button  again to return to the normal working screen.
7. Test the alarm, with no load, to ensure the alarm points have been properly set. When approaching 75 foot boom length, the audio alarm will sound intermittently and “Approaching Maximum Length” will appear in the warning message area. The audible alarm will sound continuously whenever the boom length exceeds 75 feet and “Maximum Length” will appear in the warning message area.



To Set Maximum Height Alarm

Note: The height measured here is from the carrier deck to the tip of the attachment.

Example: To have an alarm whenever the boom tip height exceeds 75 feet, use the following procedure:

1. From the normal working screen, press the Main Menu button .
2. Scroll to Operator Alarms, and press the OK/Enter button .
3. Scroll to Head Height , and press the OK/Enter button .
4. Extend the boom and/or adjust the boom angle so that the head height is 75 feet.
5. Press the corresponding button for “Max. Height” to set the alarm. The displayed value will be the alarm setting. The  will appear to indicate that the alarm is set.
6. Press the back button  to return to the Operator Alarms menu or press the Working Screen button  again to return to the normal working screen.
7. Test the alarm, with no load, to ensure the alarm points have been properly set. When approaching 75 foot boom tip height, the audio alarm will sound intermittently and “Approaching Maximum Height” will appear in the warning message area. The audible alarm will sound continuously whenever the boom tip height exceeds 75 feet and “Maximum Height” will appear in the warning message area.

Operator's Manual

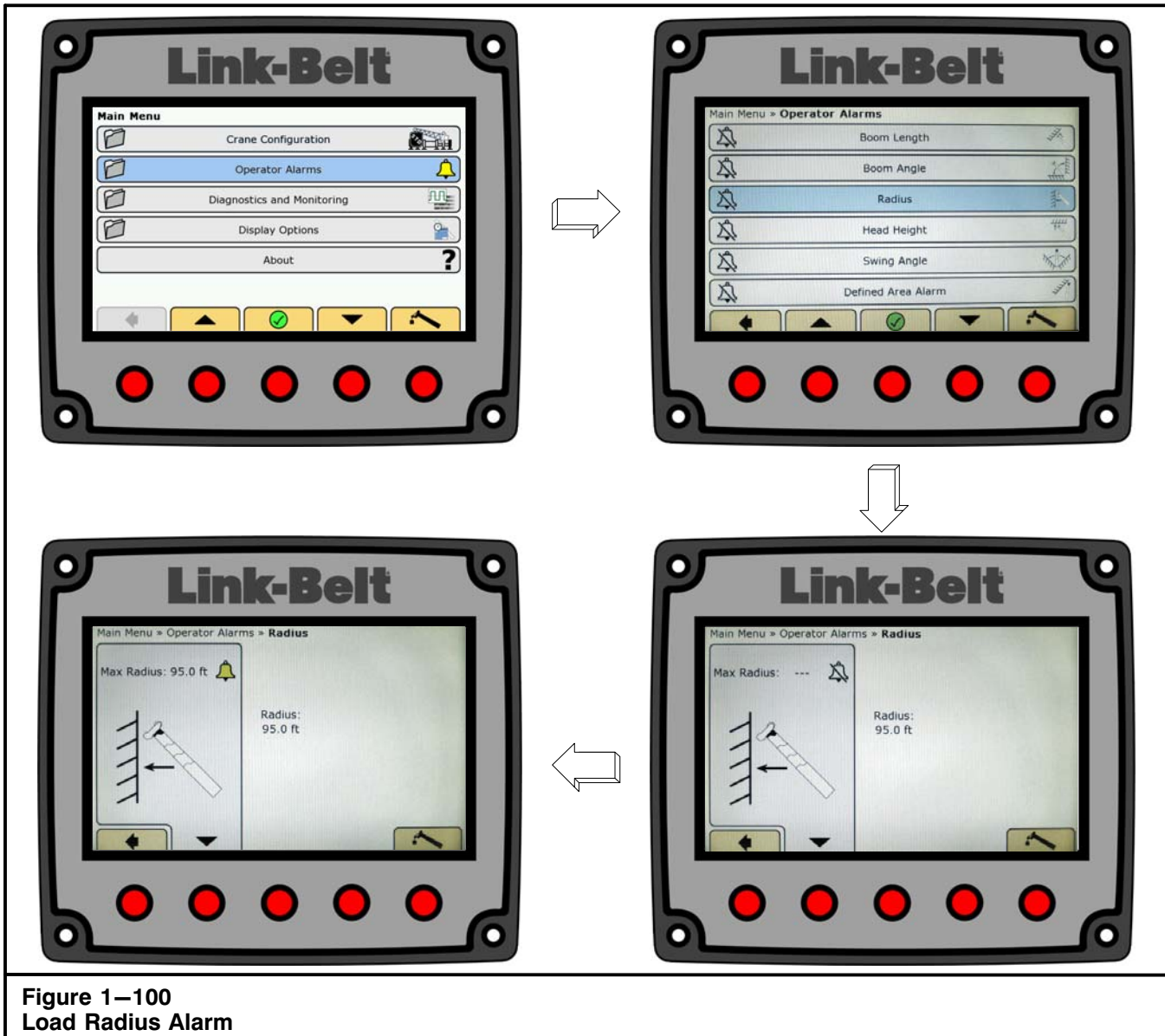







Figure 1-100
Load Radius Alarm



To Set Maximum Radius Alarm

Example: To have an alarm whenever the boom radius exceeds 95 feet, use the following procedure:

1. From the normal working screen, press the Main Menu button .
2. Scroll to Operator Alarms, and press the OK/Enter button .
3. Scroll to Radius , and press the OK/Enter button .
4. Extend the boom and/or adjust the boom angle so that the radius is 95 feet.
5. Press the corresponding button for "Max. Radius" to set the alarm. The displayed value will be the

alarm setting. The  will appear to indicate that the alarm is set.

Operator's Manual

6. Press the back button  to return to the Operator Alarms menu or press the Working Screen button  again to return to the normal working screen.
7. Test the alarm, with no load, to ensure the alarm points have been properly set. When approaching

95 foot boom radius, the audio will sound intermittently and "Approaching Maximum Radius" will appear in the warning message area. The audible alarm will sound continuously whenever the boom radius exceeds 95 feet and "Maximum Radius" will appear in warning message area.

Operator's Manual

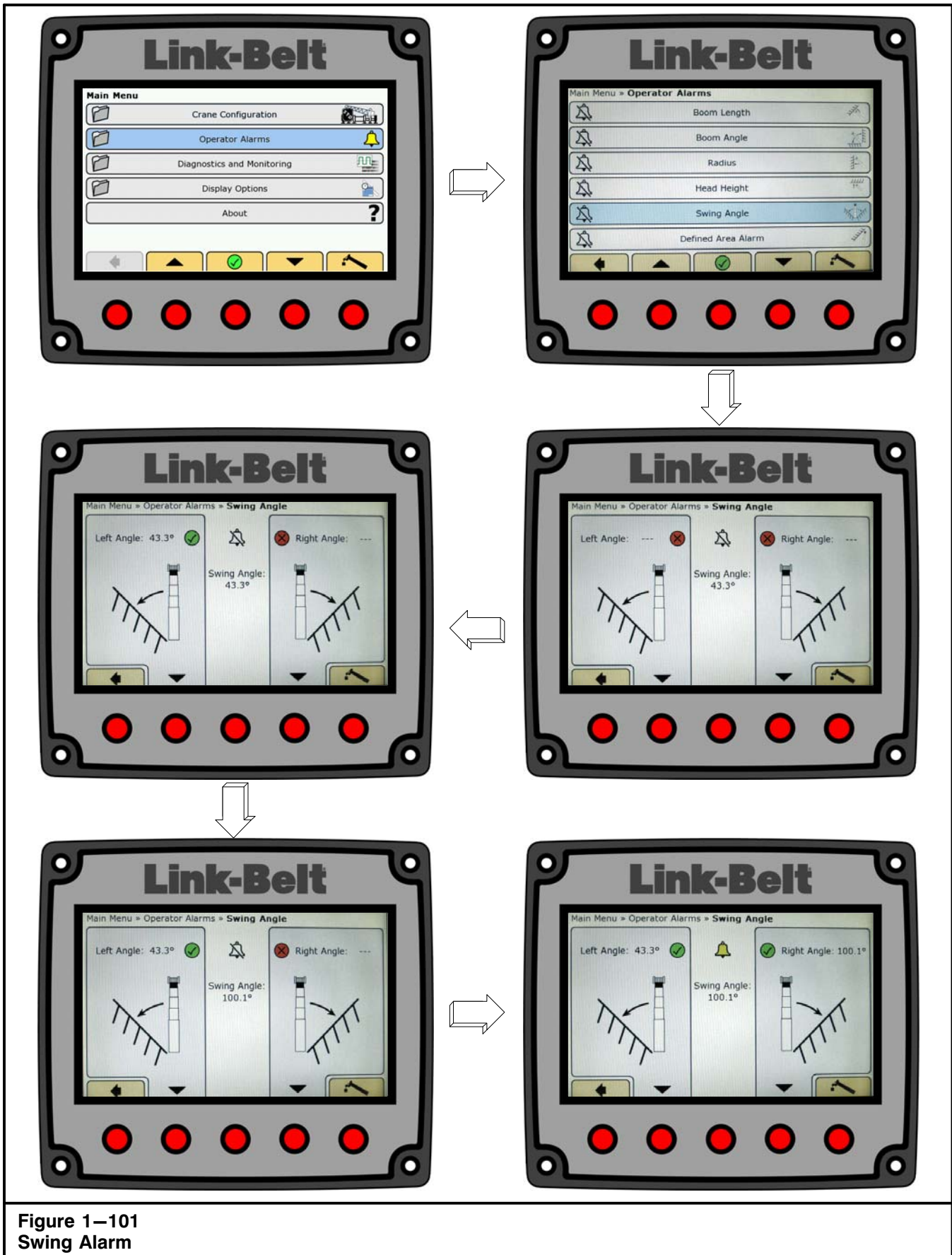











Figure 1-101
Swing Alarm

To Set Left And Right Swing Alarms

Example: To have an alarm whenever the LEFT SWING AND RIGHT SWING exceed pre-determined alarm points, use the following procedure:

1. From the normal working screen, press the Main Menu button .
2. Scroll to Operator Alarms, and press the OK/Enter button . Refer to Figure 1–101.
3. Scroll to Swing Angle , and press the OK/Enter button .
4. Swing the boom to the left alarm point.
5. Press the corresponding button for “Left Angle” to enter the left alarm point. The displayed value will be the left alarm setting. The  will appear to indicate that the angle is set.
6. Swing the boom to the right alarm point.
7. Press the corresponding button for “Right Angle” to enter the right alarm point. The displayed value will be the right alarm setting. The  will appear to indicate that the angle is set.
8. When both angles are set, the  will appear to indicate that the alarm is set.
9. Press the back button  to return to the Operator Alarms menu or press the Working Screen button  again to return to the normal working screen.
10. Test the alarm, with no load, to ensure the alarm points have been properly set. When approaching the set alarm point, the audio alarm will sound intermittently and “Approaching Swing Angle Limit” will appear in the warning message area. The audible alarm will sound continuously whenever the swing exceeds the alarm points and “Swing Angle Limit” will appear in warning message area.

Note: Both the left and right swing alarms must be set for the system to determine the operator set working area.

Operator's Manual

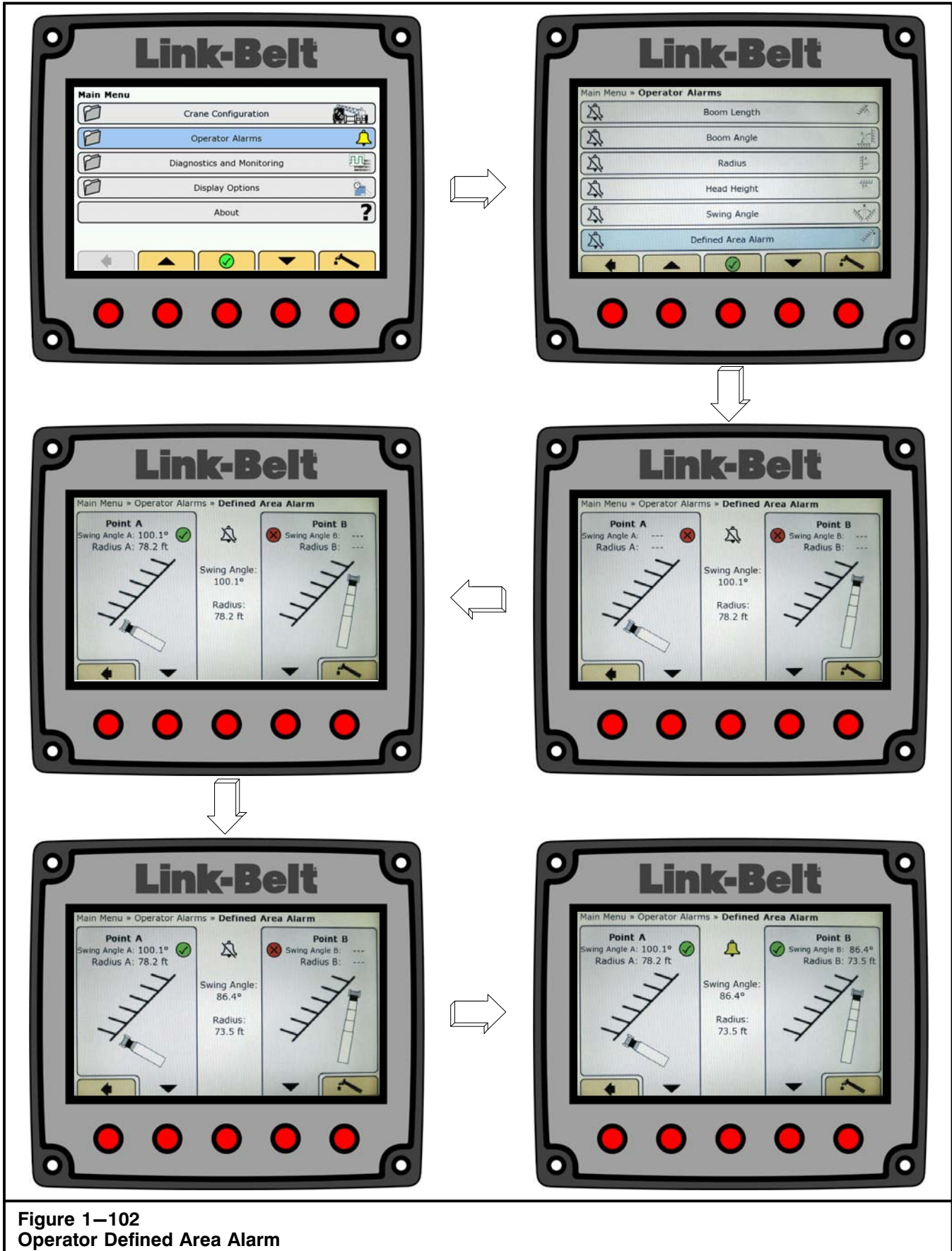



Figure 1-102
Operator Defined Area Alarm

Operator's Manual


Operator Defined Area Alarm


The operator defined area alarm, when set, will define an imaginary vertical plane between two set points to optimize the working area. When approaching the plane, the audio alarm will sound intermittently, and the message "Approaching Defined Area" will appear in the warning message area. When passing the plane, the audio alarm will sound continuously and the message "Defined Area" will appear on the warning message area. Use the following procedure, Figure 1–102, and Figure 1–103 to set the operator defined area alarm.

 **WARNING**



For safe operation, adequate distance must be maintained to allow for operator reaction time to avoid entering the bad area. It is the responsibility of the operator to set points which ensure that the crane's boom, attachment, load, rigging, etc. maintains a safe working distance and complies with local safety regulations.


Setting Operator Defined Area Alarm

1. From the normal working screen, press the Main Menu button .

2. Scroll to Operator Alarms, and press the OK/Enter button .
3. Disable any previously set left and right swing alarms if required. Refer to "To Disable Operator Settable Alarms" in this Section of this Operator's Manual.

Note: It is recommended to clear the left and right swing alarms prior to setting the defined area alarm.





4. Scroll to Define Area , and press the OK/Enter button .

 **WARNING**

Avoid positioning the boom, attachment, load, rigging, etc. into the bad area when setting the left or right alarm points.

When selecting the left and right alarm points, ensure that the load will maintain a safe distance from the obstacle. Also ensure that the two points are set so that the tailswing of the crane will not enter the bad area.

Operator's Manual







5. Position the boom, attachment, load, rigging, etc. to the desired Point A and press the corresponding button for "Point A" to set the first point. The displayed values for swing angle and radius will be the set point. The  will appear to indicate that Point A is set.
6. Position the boom, attachment, load, rigging, etc. to the desired Point B and press the corresponding button for "Point B" to set the second point. The displayed values for swing angle and radius will be the set point. The  will appear to indicate that Point B is set.
Note: For best results, the two points should be separated by a minimum of 10 ft (3m) or 30 degrees.
7. When both angles are set, press the back button  to return to the Operator Alarm menu or press the Working Screen button  again to return to the normal working screen.

8. Test the alarm, with no load, to ensure the alarm points have been properly set. When approaching the plane, the audio alarm will sound intermittently and the message "Bad Working Area" will appear on the warning message area. When passing the plane, the audio alarm will sound continuously and the message "Bad Working Area" will appear on the warning message area.

 **WARNING**

If crane or obstacle is moved or if a different size load is lifted, the area alarm must be reset.

To Disable Operator Settable Alarms

1. From the normal working screen, press the Main Menu button .
2. Scroll to Operator Alarms, and press the OK/Enter button .
3. Scroll to the desired alarm to be disabled, and press the OK/Enter button .
4. Press the corresponding button for each alarm. The  icon indicates the alarm has been cleared.
5. When all desired alarms are disabled, press the back button  to return to the Operator Alarm menu or press the Working Screen button  again to return to the normal working screen.

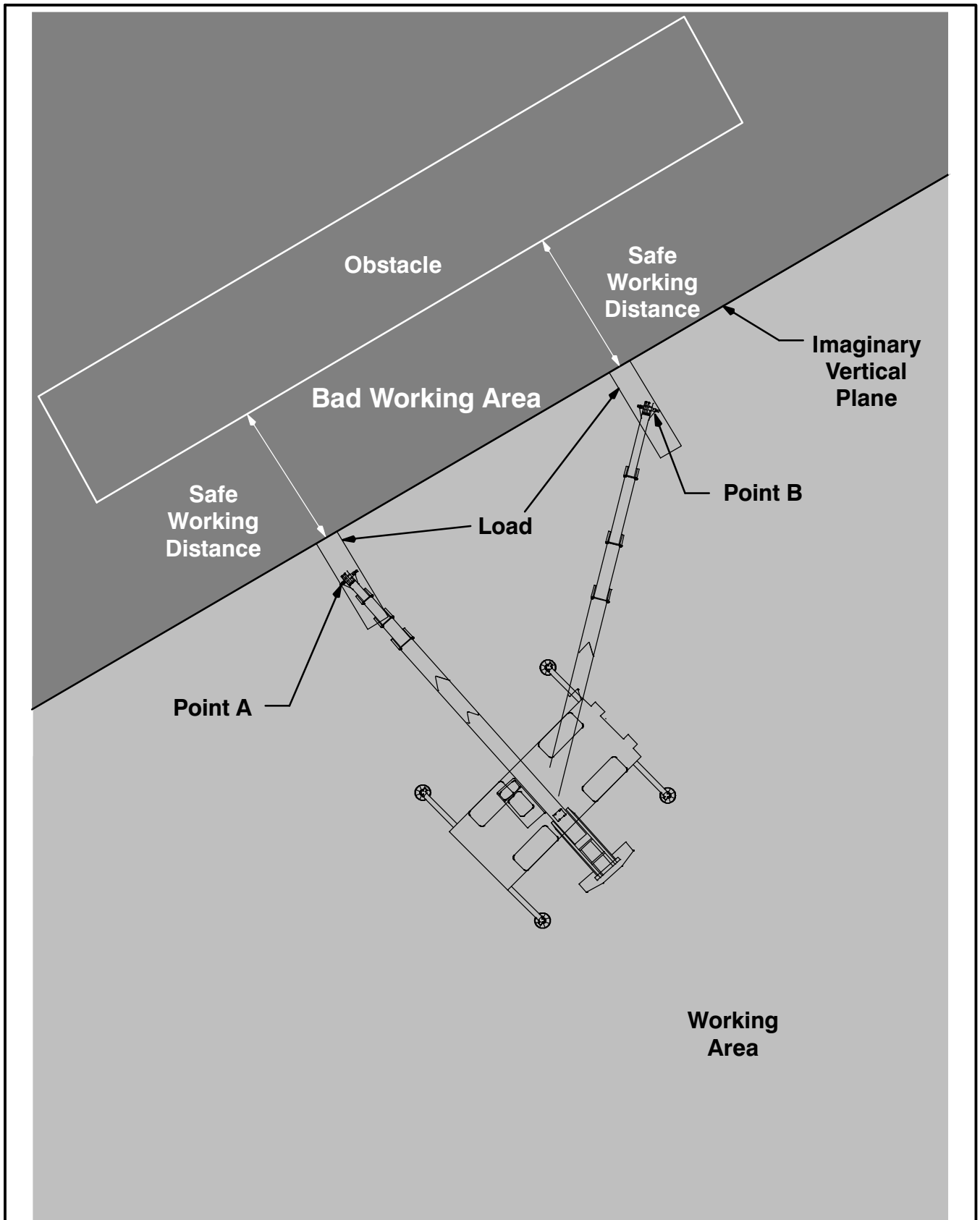


Figure 1–103
Operator Defined Area Alarm

Operator's Manual

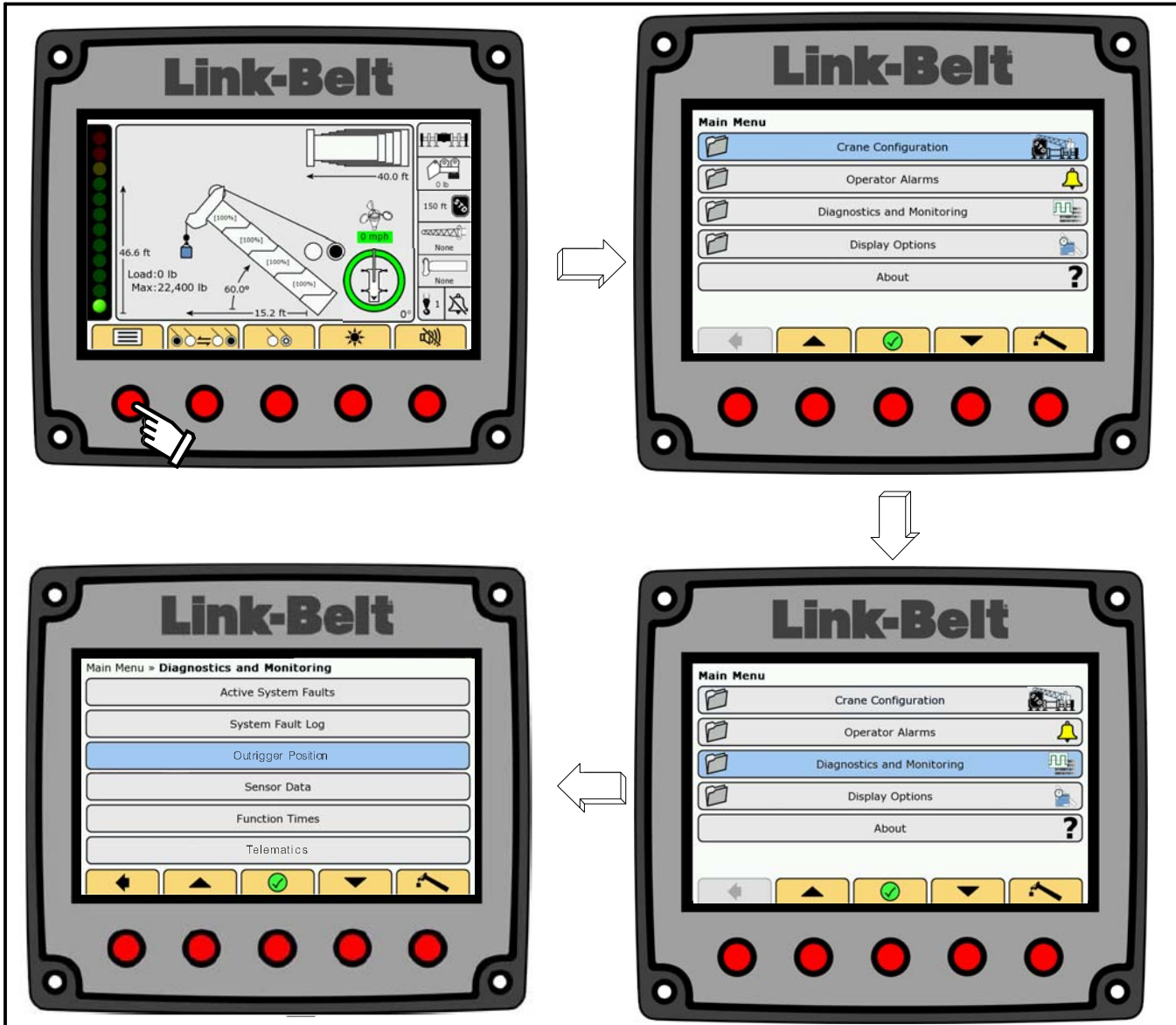





Figure 1–104
Outrigger Position Screen Access

Outrigger Position Screen

The calibrated position of each outrigger beam will be graphically displayed on the screen. Also the outrigger beam length will be displayed from the centerline of the crane. Refer to Figure 1–104 and Figure 1–105.

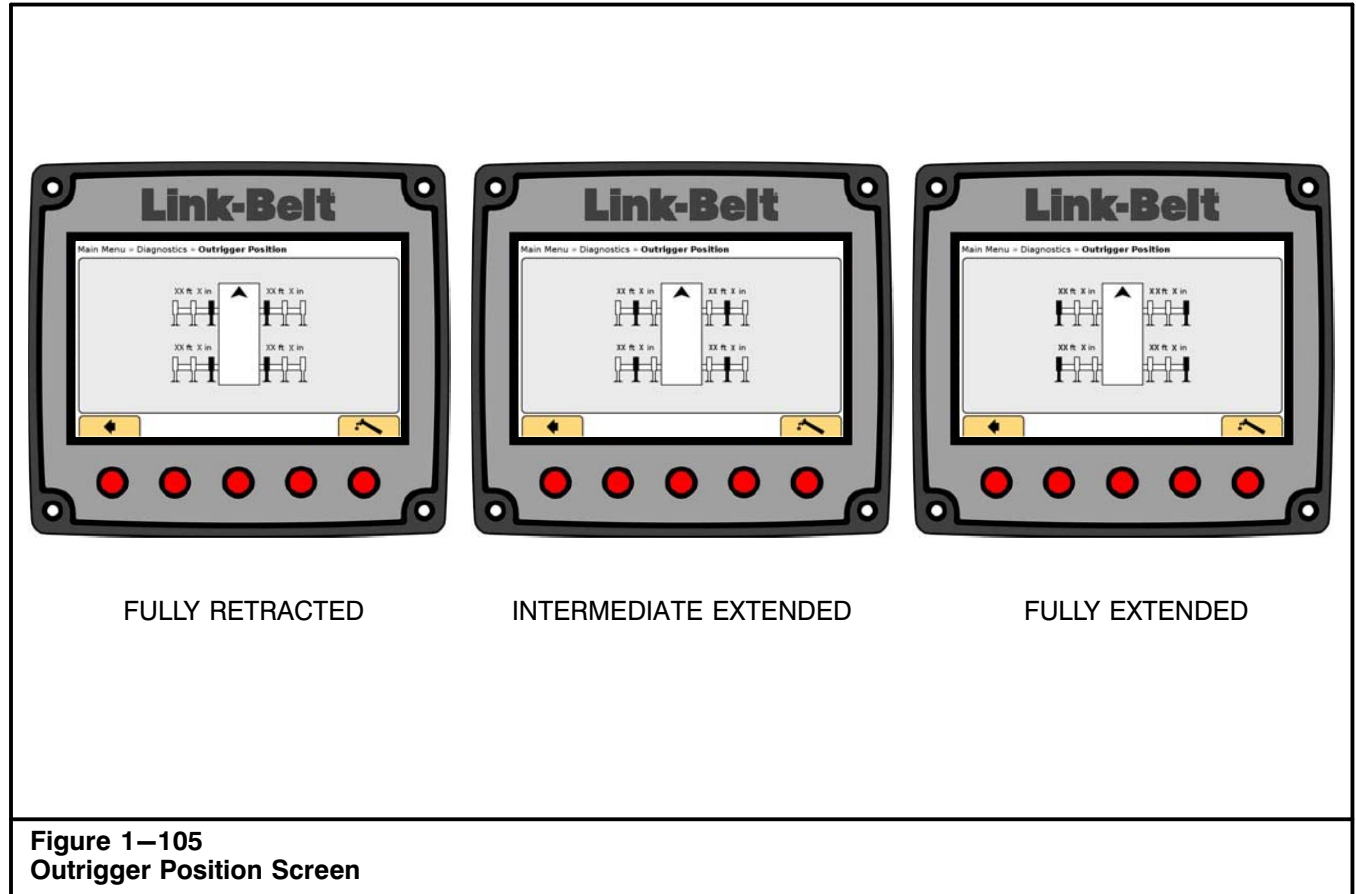
1. From the normal working screen, press the Main Menu button .
2. Scroll to Diagnostics, and press the OK/Enter button .
3. Scroll to Outrigger Position and press the OK/Enter button .




WARNING

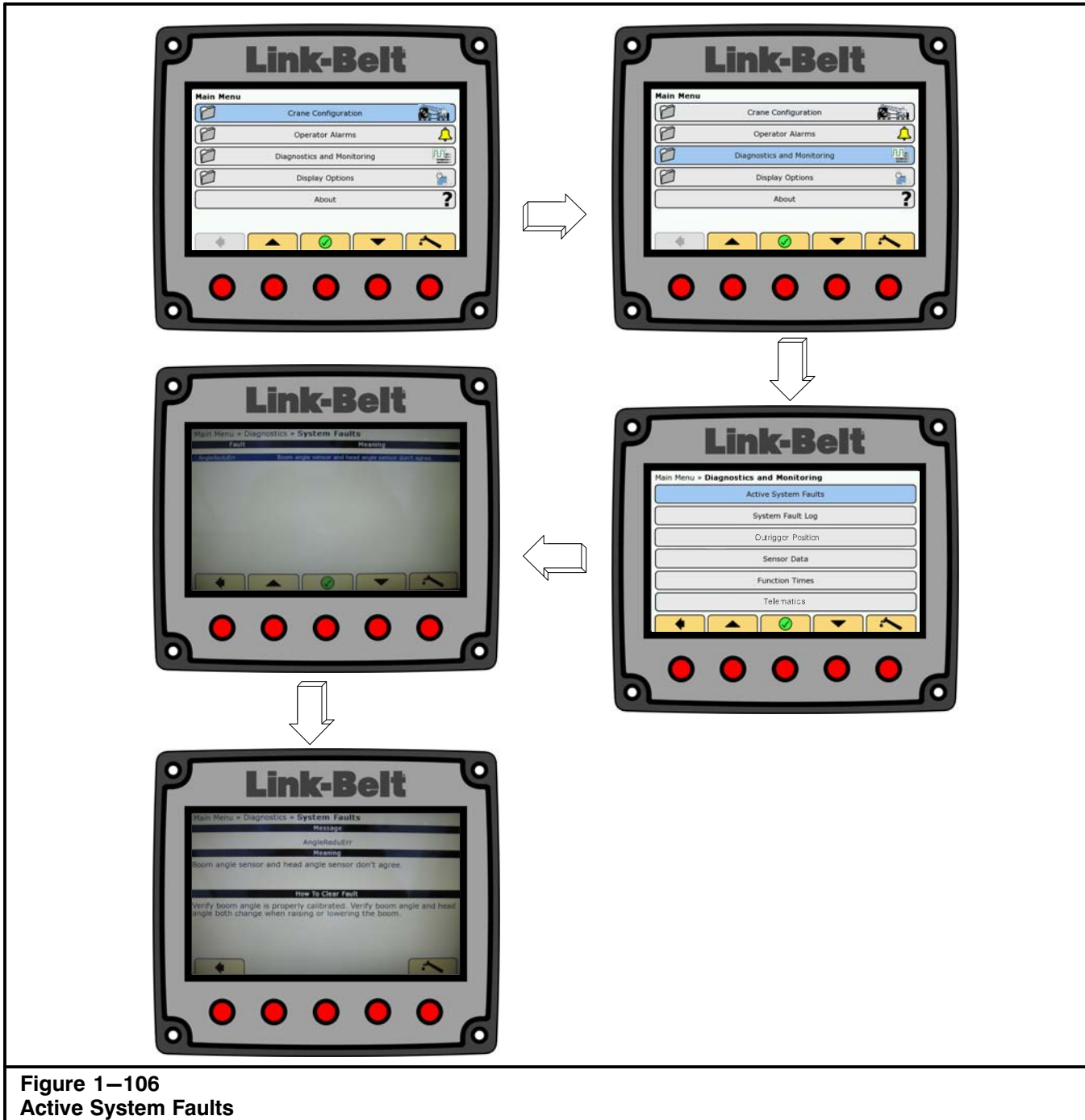
The outrigger position screen is used to display outrigger beam position. Properly extend the outrigger beams using the outrigger extend position lever/pin to ensure correct outrigger beam position. Failure to do so may cause a loss of stability and possible serious personal injury and/or major crane damage.

!!THIS SCREEN IS AN OPERATOR'S AID – NOT A SAFETY DEVICE!!






4. Outrigger position and length of each beam, from crane centerline to pontoon centerline, will be displayed.
5. Press the Working Screen Button  to return to the normal working screen.




Operator's Manual



Active System Faults

The Active System Faults menu displays current system faults. Refer to Figure 1-106 and the System Faults Messages chart.

1. From the normal working screen, press the Main Menu button .
2. Scroll to Diagnostics, and press the OK/Enter button .
3. Scroll to Active System Faults, and press the OK/Enter button .

4. Scroll to the fault code to be addressed, and press the OK/Enter button .
5. The message selected, meaning of the message, and how to clear the message will be displayed.
6. Press the back button  to return to the System Faults menu or press the Working Screen button  to return to the normal working screen.

Operator's Manual

Active System Faults Messages		
Message	Meaning	How To Clear Message
DispComErr	Display communication lost.	Verify display is properly connected to the CAN bus. Check all CAN bus wiring including termination resistors.
ATBComErr	ATB switch communication lost.	Verify boom reel is properly connected to the CAN bus. Check all CAN bus wiring including termination resistors.
ATBShort	ATB switch short circuit.	Verify ATB switch is functioning properly. Check wiring between ATB switch and boom reel.
LenComErr	Boom length sensor communication lost.	Verify boom reel is properly connected to the CAN bus. Check all CAN bus wiring including termination resistors.
LenDataErr	Boom length sensor data is invalid.	Verify boom length is properly calibrated. Verify boom length value changes when extending or retracting the boom.
LenReduErr	Boom length sensor and boom controller length don't agree.	Verify boom length and boom controller are properly calibrated. Verify sensor boom length and boom controller length both change when extending or retracting the boom.
AngleComErr	Boom angle sensor communication lost.	Verify boom reel is properly connected to the CAN bus. Check all CAN bus wiring including termination resistors.
AngleDataErr	Boom angle sensor data is invalid.	Verify boom angle is properly calibrated. Verify boom angle value changes when raising or lowering the boom.
AngleReduErr	Boom angle sensor and head angle sensor don't agree.	Verify boom angle is properly calibrated. Verify boom angle and head angle both change when raising or lowering the boom.
HeadComErr	Head angle sensor communication lost.	Verify boom reel is properly connected to the CAN bus. Check all CAN bus wiring including termination resistors.
HeadDataErr	Head angle sensor data is invalid.	Verify head angle is properly calibrated. Check wiring between head angle sensor and boom reel. Verify head angle changes when raising or lowering the boom.
HPresComErr	Head pressure sensor communication lost.	Verify head pressure sensor is properly connected to the CAN bus. Check all CAN bus wiring including termination resistors.
RPresComErr	Rod pressure sensor communication lost.	Verify rod pressure sensor is properly connected to the CAN bus. Check all CAN bus wiring including termination resistors.
DispIOComErr	Display I/O communication lost.	Verify display is properly connected to the CAN bus. Check all CAN bus wiring including termination resistors.
BoomComErr	Boom controller communication lost.	Verify boom controller is properly connected to the CAN bus. Check all CAN bus wiring including termination resistors.
Telematic-sModComErr	Telematics module communication lost.	Verify telematics module is properly connected to the CAN bus. Check all CAN bus wiring including termination resistors.

Operator's Manual

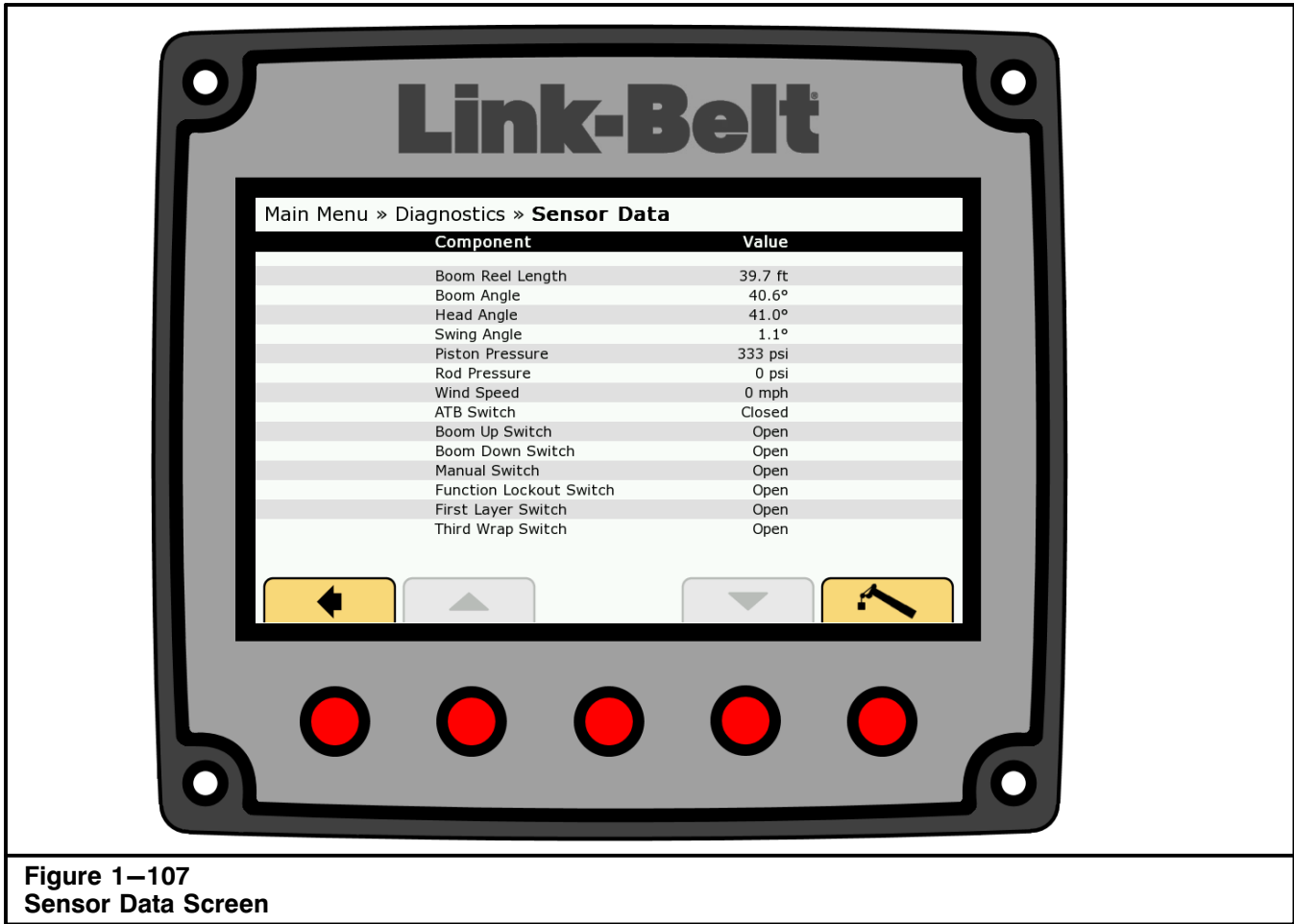







Figure 1–107
Sensor Data Screen

Sensor Data

The Sensor Data menu displays data being read by various sensors on the crane. Refer to Figure 1–107.

1. From the normal working screen, press the Main Menu button .
2. Scroll to Diagnostics, and press the OK/Enter button .
3. Scroll to Sensor Data, and press the OK/Enter button .
4. The data being generated by the various sensors will be displayed.
5. Press the back button  to return to the Diagnostics menu or press the Working Screen button  to return to the normal working screen.

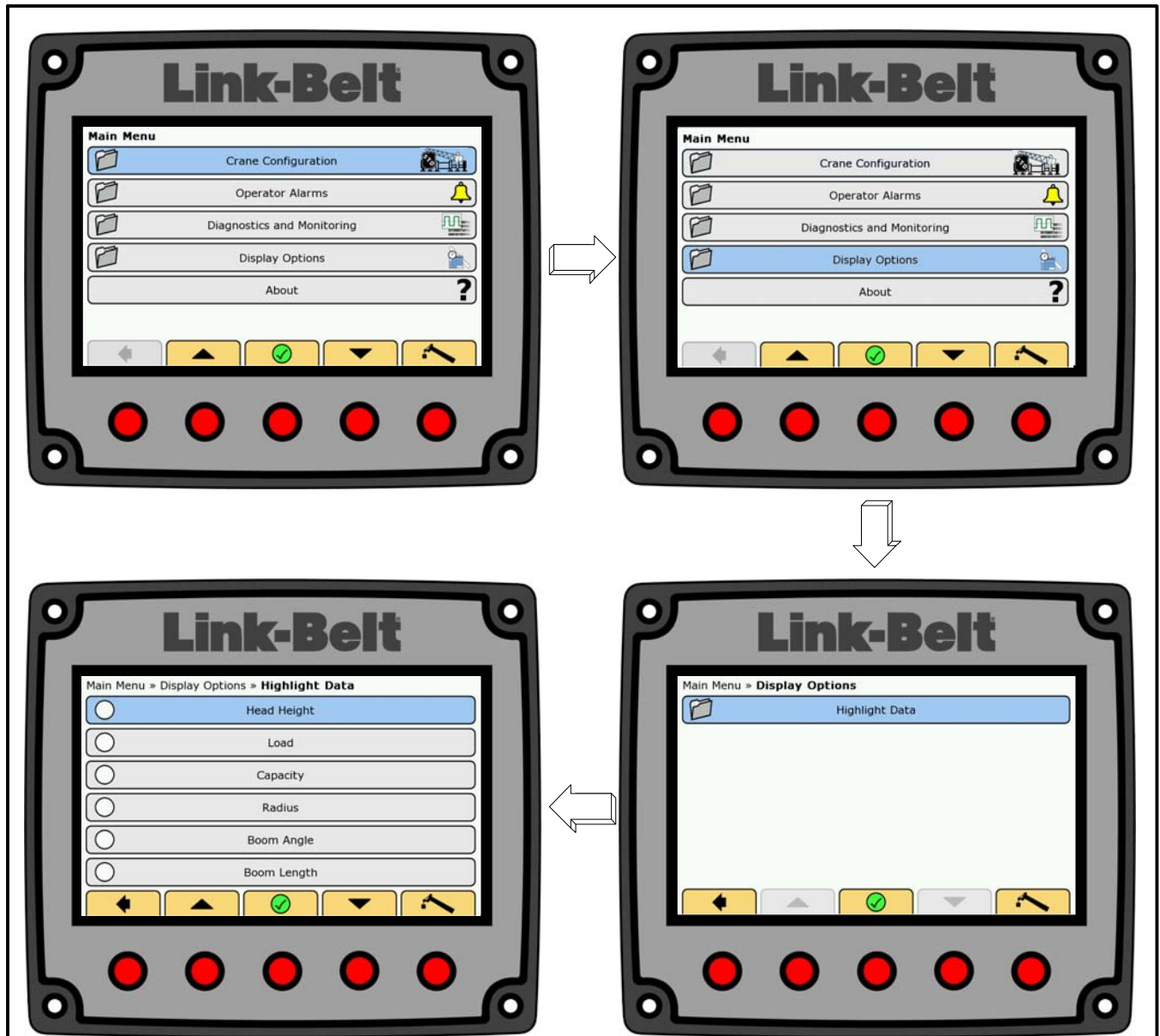









Figure 1–108
Highlight Data

Highlight Data Menu

The Highlight Data menu allows the Operator to select specific data to be highlighted on the normal working screen. The data will appear with a purple highlighting. Refer to Figure 1–108.

1. From the normal working screen, press the Main Menu button .
2. Scroll to Crane Configuration, and press the OK/Enter button .
3. Scroll to Display Options, and press the OK/Enter button .
4. Scroll to Highlight, and press the OK/Enter button .
5. Scroll to the information to be highlighted, and press the OK/Enter button .
6. Repeat Step 5 for each item to be highlighted.
7. Press the back button  to return to the Display Options menu or press the Working Screen button  to return to the normal working screen.

Operator's Manual

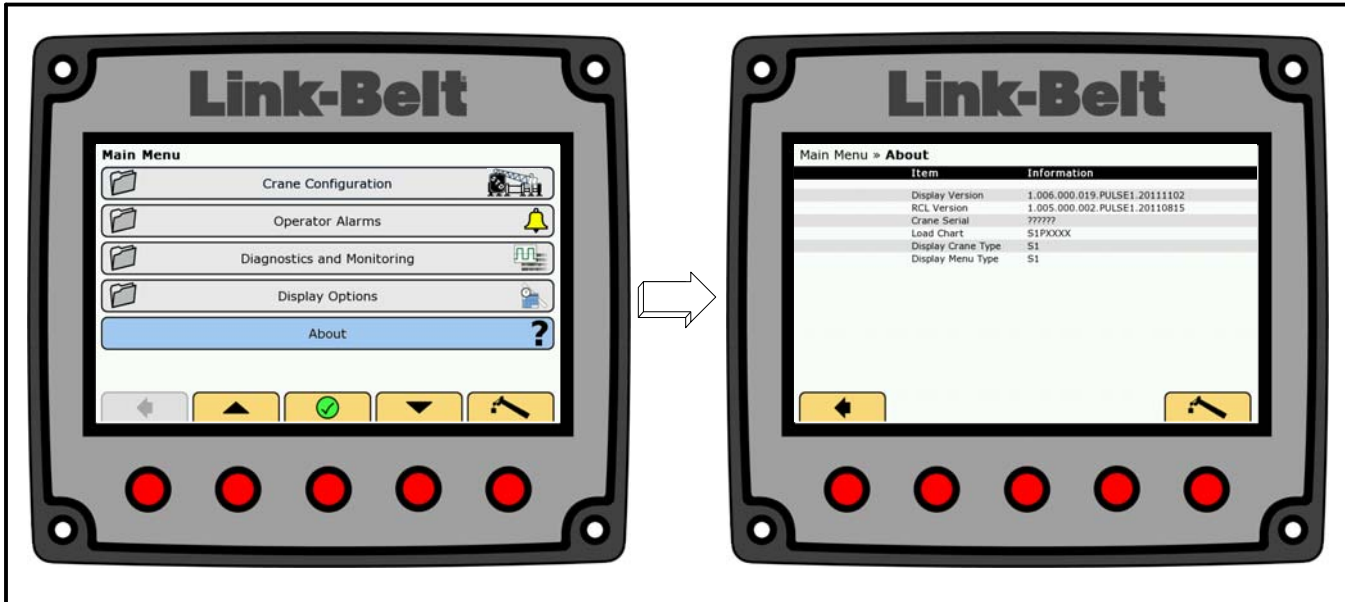






Figure 1–109
About Screen

About Menu

The About menu displays which version of the Display, ECM, and Boom Controller software is currently installed. Refer to Figure 1–109. The crane serial number is also displayed on this screen.

1. From the normal working screen, press the Main Menu button .
2. Scroll to About, and press the OK/Enter button .
3. Press the back button  to return to the Main menu or press the Working Screen button  to return to the normal working screen.

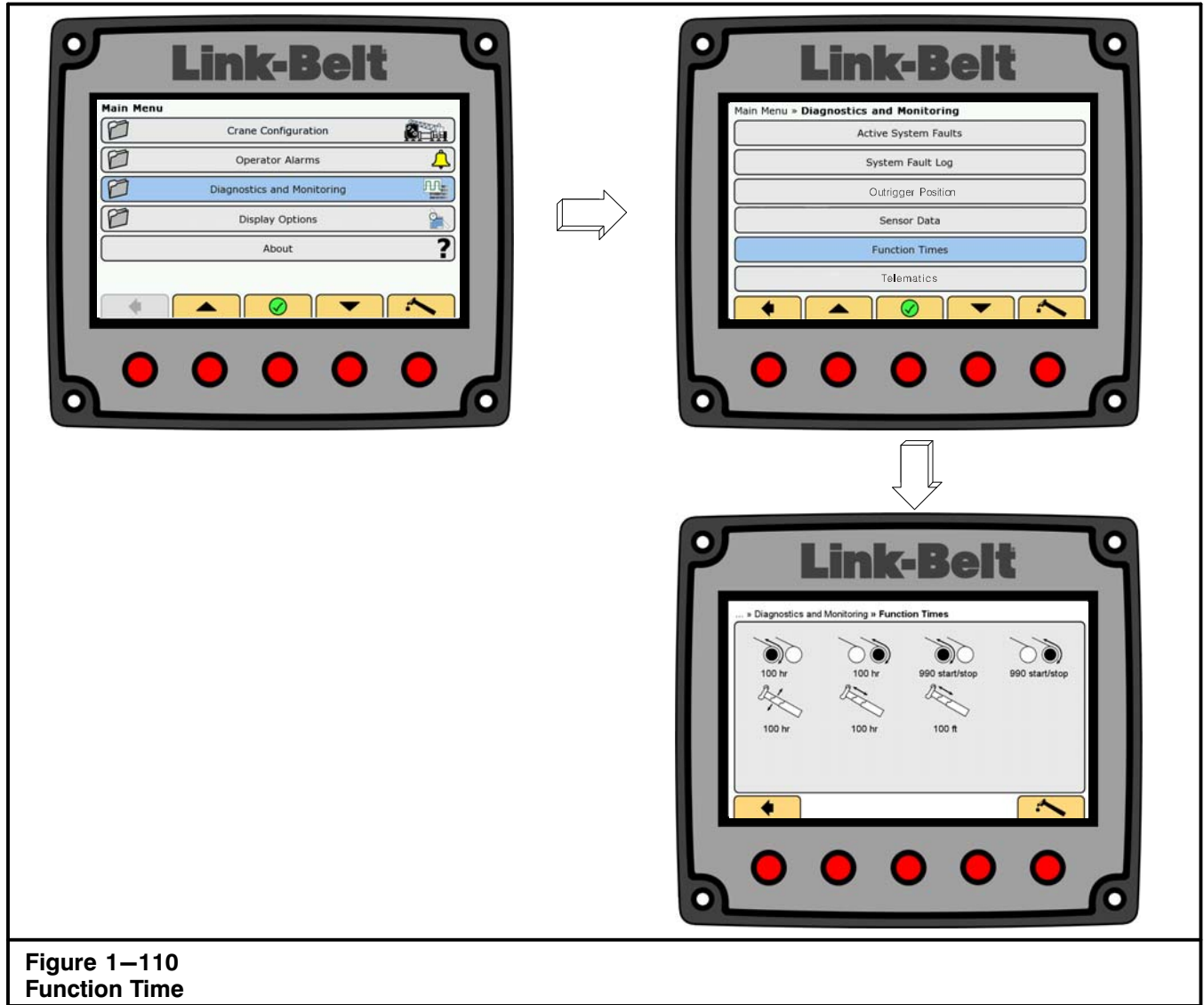







Figure 1–110
Function Time

Function Time Monitoring

The function time monitoring screen enables the operator to monitor the hours of use for the winch(s), boom hoist cylinder, and boom telescope cylinder for service purposes. The screen also displays the number of times the winch(s) has been started and stopped along with the total cumulative distance the boom has been extended and retracted.

1. From the normal working screen, press the Main Menu button .
2. Scroll to Diagnostics and Monitoring, and press the OK/Enter button .
3. Scroll to Function Time, and press the OK/Enter button . Refer to Figure 1–110.
4. From this screen, monitoring of the winch(s), boom hoist cylinder, and boom telescope cylinder can be done.
5. Press the back button  to return to the Diagnostics and Monitoring menu or press the Working Screen button  to return to the normal working screen.

Operator's Manual

Telematics

TELEMATICS - refers to the use of wireless devices and computer module technologies to transmit data in real time back to an organization.

This Link-Belt crane is equipped with one or more onboard computers that monitor and/or control the crane's performance. Crane owners may access electronic data by subscribing to the optional telematics feature offered by our telematics partner.

Specific electronic data transmitted by the onboard computers may be, but is not limited to, water temperature, oil temperature, engine rpm, fuel consumption, crane location, and other data that may be transmitted via satellite to our telematics partner. A crane owner may access this data by subscribing to the telematics feature through our telematics partner. A crane owner may then use some or all of the data transmitted from the crane's onboard computers to monitor the crane's activity, location, maintenance/service schedule, and/or other areas to assist them in managing this crane.

Note: Link-Belt recognizes that each individual crane's data transmitted via telematics is the property of the crane owner.










Data sharing is offered by Link-Belt through our telematics partner in an effort to provide Link-Belt distributors and our crane owners with overall enhanced product support through filed troubleshooting, expedited parts procurement, infield repairs and other various support outlets. Any data shared by the crane owner is a "snapshot" of the data from the crane.

Link-Belt may request the crane owner "share data". The crane owner should determine who and when specific data related to their crane is shared. Link-Belt and its representatives may be in possession of specific crane data only when the crane owner selects "share data".

Shared data received by Link-Belt is not intended to be "stored" in any permanent data file at our factory. Shared data may exist at the factory location through the normal course of business until deleted by automatic expiration.

Link-Belt reserves the right to modify this policy as required and make every reasonable attempt to notify telematics subscribers of changes to this policy.

Transmitting Data

1. From the normal working screen, press the Main Menu button .
2. Scroll to Diagnostics and Monitoring, and press the OK/Enter button .
3. Scroll to Telematics, and press the OK/Enter button . Refer to Figure 1–111.
4. Scroll to the data that you would like to send, and press the OK/Enter button .
5. A confirmation screen will pop up. Press  to send the data or press  to cancel and return to the previous screen.
6. A  will be shown beside the data selected while the data is being sent. The Telematics Module will send data every 10 seconds for 10 minutes or until ignition is turned off.
7. Press the back button  to return to the Diagnostics and Monitoring menu or press the Working Screen button  to return to the normal working screen.

Computer Return And Stored Data Disclosure

In the event the Rated Capacity Limiter (RCL), Load Moment Indicator (LMI), or other computer containing recorded/stored data on this crane is returned to Link-Belt Cranes or the original equipment manufacturer (OEM) of an onboard computer, for service or replacement, the crane owner must submit a written request to have the recorded/stored data on that computer downloaded to an electronic device that is to be returned to the crane owner before any examination and/or work is started on that specific computer.

Should Link-Belt direct the crane owner to return an onboard computer to the OEM of that computer, Link-Belt recommends the crane owner submit a written request to the OEM requesting the OEM download the recorded/stored data to an electronic device and return that device to the crane owner prior to any examination and/or work being started on that specific computer.

In some instances, in order to read data recorded/stored in an onboard computer special equipment is required, and access to the crane and/or the computer is needed. Link-Belt or the OEM of the computer has the special equipment necessary to retrieve the recorded data, or directions on how the data may be retrieved. Please contact your nearest Link-Belt distributor for assistance.

It is the position of Link-Belt that the crane owner owns any data that is recorded and stored in the onboard computer system(s) installed on our cranes.

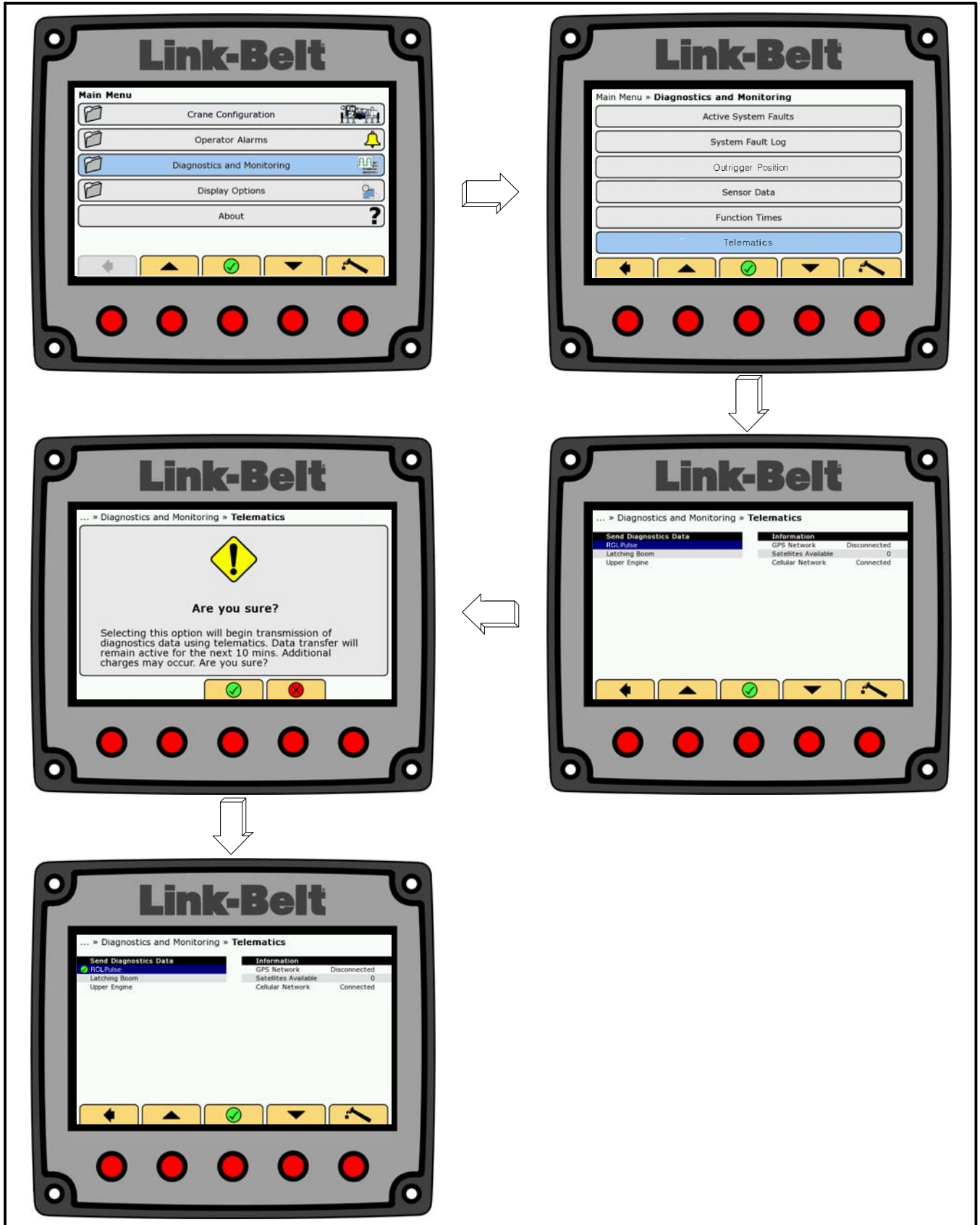
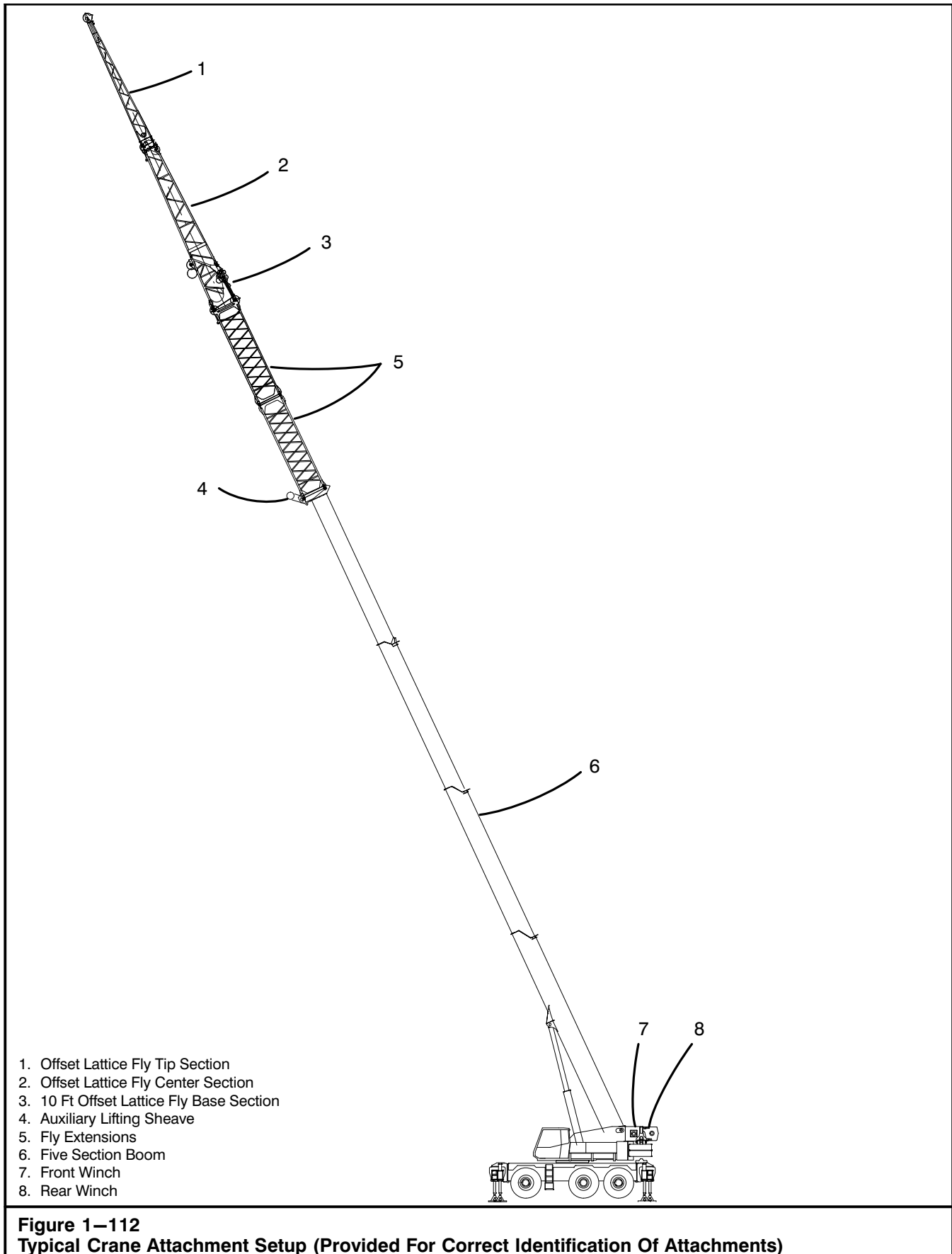
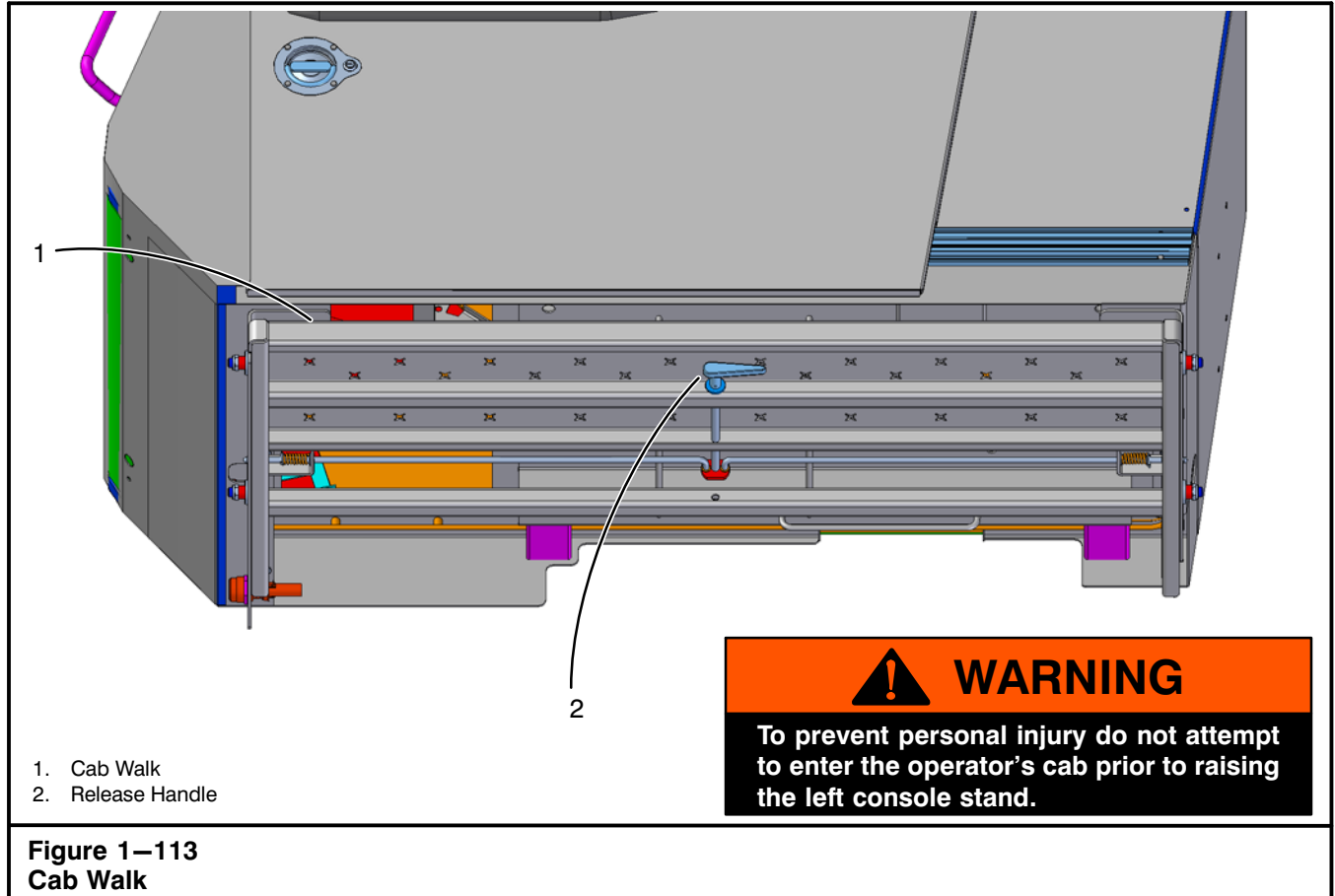


Figure 1-111
Telematics

Operator's Manual





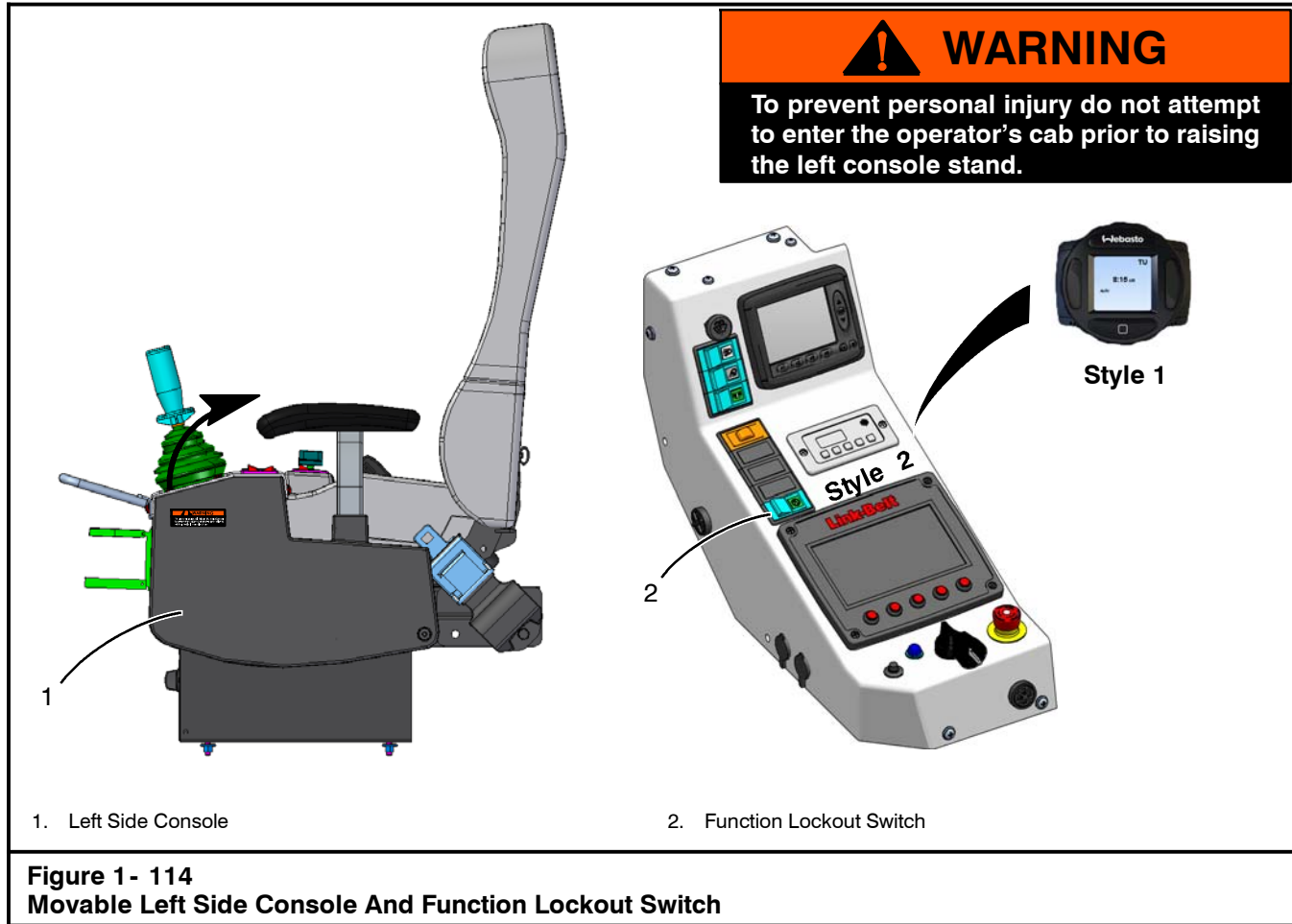
Entering And Exiting The Operator's Cab

Entering or exiting the operator's cab could be hazardous if certain aspects are not taken into consideration. The elevation of the carrier deck and operator's cab alone could cause serious injury if someone was to fall. For this reason ladders are mounted on each side of the carrier to provide easy access to the carrier deck and the operator's cab. A cab walk assembly is mounted under the operator's cab and should be extended when entering/exiting the operator's cab. Refer to Figure 1–113. Turn the release handle to extend/retract the cab walk assembly. (Retract the cab walk anytime the crane is

traveled, lifted, or transported.) Numerous hand grips are also attached to the operator's cab as well as non-skid safety strips on the surface of the carrier deck, to provide safe entry to the operator's cab. Use these features to make climbing on the crane as safe as possible. Remain in three point contact with the crane at all times (two hands and one foot or two feet and one hand).

Inside the operator's cab, two separate features are provided to prevent accidental operation of the hydraulic controls while entering or exiting the operator's seat. Refer to "Function Lockout Switch" and "Movable Left Side Console" in this Section of this Operator's Manual for complete operating instructions.

Operator's Manual



Function Lockout Switch

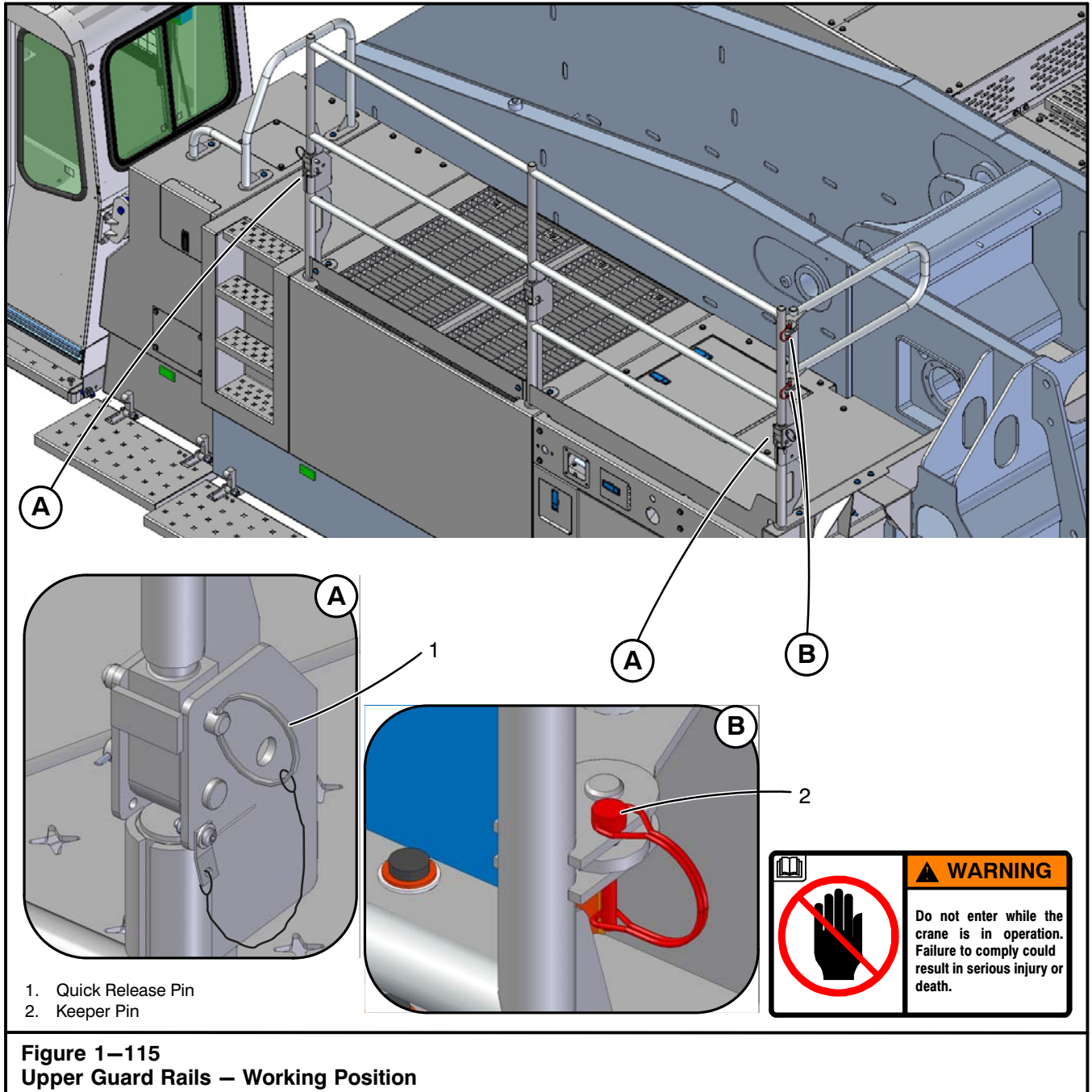
This switch is used to disable the hydraulic functions which are operated by the control levers and boom telescope foot pedal. The switch is on the right side control console. Refer to Figure 1- 114. Press the left part of the switch to disable hydraulic functions and to prevent inadvertent operation of these controls. To allow normal operation of the control levers and boom telescope foot pedal, press the right part of the function lockout switch. The right part of the switch will illuminate to indicate the switch is in the "OPERATION" position. This switch must always be in the "DISABLE" position before entering or exiting the operator's seat.

Movable Left Side Console

The left side console is hinged at the rear to allow the operator to lift the console up, out of the way while entering or exiting the operator's cab. A spring assists lifting the console.

Lifting the left side console also performs the same duty as the function lockout switch, disabling all hydraulic functions related to the control levers and boom telescope foot pedal. Ensure the left side console is lifted up, out of the way before attempting to enter or exit the operator's cab.

One more feature which is available to ease entry and exit of the operator's cab, is the adjustable operator's seat. Lift the left hand arm rest up out of the way and move the seat and/or console back as required to allow safe entry. This feature also provides operator comfort during crane operation as well. Refer to "Operator's Seat" in this Section of the Operator's Manual for complete seat operating instructions.

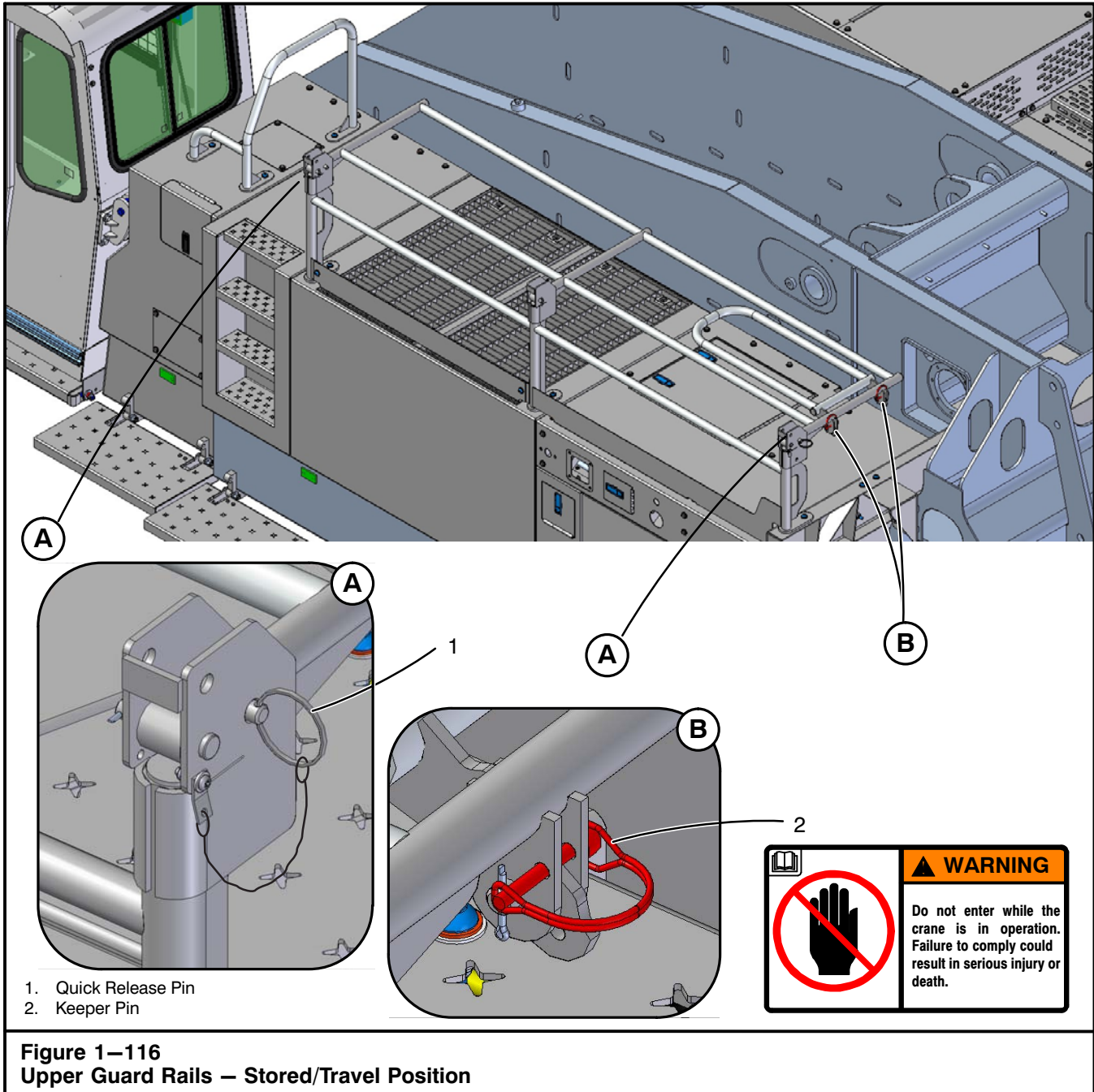


Upper Guard Rails

The crane is equipped with guard rails on the upper to make access to upper components safer when servicing the crane. The rails should remain in the working

position at all times except during highway travel and crane transport. Refer to Figure 1–115. Position the rails in the storage/travel position before traveling the crane on highway and transporting the crane. Refer to Figure 1–116.

Operator's Manual



Operator's Manual

Break-In Period

Operate a new crane at half throttle for the first twenty (20) hours of operation. A break-in period under moderate loads will assist in providing long, trouble-free performance.

Before Starting Operations

Before starting daily operations, make the following checks and inspections:

Engine

Check fuel, oil, and cooling systems for proper fluid levels. Check for leaks. Repair or fill as required. Refer to engine manufacturer's manual for additional details.

Gear Cases

Visually inspect all gear cases for leaks or damage. If leaks or damage exists, repair and fill case to proper lubrication level. Refer to Section 2 of this manual for additional information.

Hydraulic System

Check all hoses for chafing, bulging, or other damage. Replace as necessary. Inspect hydraulic system for external leaks. Repair as needed. Check hydraulic reservoir oil level. Add oil if necessary.

Lubrication

Lubricate crane as outlined in Section 2 of this Operator's Manual.

Note: Operators may have nothing to do with lubrication or maintenance of the crane, but it could be advantageous for them to be familiar with it. Knowledge of preventive maintenance makes the operator more aware of malfunctions in the crane so repairs can be made with a minimum of downtime.

Tires And Wheels

Check tire inflation. Inflate to pressures per the "Tire Inflation Label" on the left rear fender of the crane or on the "Tire Inflation Chart" in Crane Rating Manual. Check wheel lug nut torque, each day, for the first five (5) days of operation and every 100 hours of operation thereafter. Refer to Section 3 of this Operator's Manual for additional information.

Wire Rope And Sheaves

Inspect all wire rope and sheaves for damage or deterioration. Replace as necessary. Refer to Section 5 of this Operator's Manual for additional information.

General Inspection

Visually inspect the entire crane for loose or missing cotter pins or bolts, or damaged fly chords or lattices. Check for oil or fluid leaks. Make repairs as needed.

Electrical System

Check the operation of all lights, windshield wipers, horns, turn signals, etc. Repair as needed.

Brakes

Start the engine and allow the hydraulic system pressure to reach its normal operating range. Check that the service brake indicator light is not lit. Check the park brake and service brake operations. Adjust or repair as needed.

Controls

Check all controls for proper operation and adjustment. Repair as needed.

Carrier Suspension

Check that the oscillation suspension is properly adjusted and functioning normally. Refer to "Suspension Height Adjustment" found later in this Section of this Operator's Manual. During pick and carry operations and/or when traveling the crane, damage to the axles, cylinders, and other suspension components can occur if the oscillation suspension is not properly adjusted. Oscillation cylinders which are not properly adjusted can leave suspension components unprotected from shock loads which can lead to major crane damage.

Operator's Manual

Boom Distortion Due To Thermal Effects Of The Sun

The heat from the sun may have a thermal effect on the sides of telescopic booms causing the sides of the boom to expand (lengthen). The sides of the boom may not expand equally if the boom is extended for long periods of time with only one side of the boom exposed to the sun. The unequal expansion may cause boom distortion (the boom may “deflect” to one side). This is more noticeable with long boom lengths and/or long booms with long lattice flies attached to the boom.

For example, a 100 ft (30.5m) main boom, with a 50°F (10°C) temperature differential between the two sides of the boom, may cause the centerline of the main boom head to “deflect” as much as 3 ft (0.9m) off the centerline of the crane. Attaching a 50 ft (15.2m) lattice fly to the same boom may cause the centerline of the fly head to “deflect” as much as 10 ft (3.0m) off the centerline of the crane. This “deflection” to one side creates a “side load” on the boom and/or fly. Side load on a boom or fly, whether induced by the load or thermal effects, is dangerous and shall be avoided.

Prior to lifting any loads, inspect the boom or boom and fly combination to ensure they are straight. If the boom or boom and fly combination is not straight, ensure that all the boom wear pads are properly adjusted.

If the boom is distorted due to temperature differential on the sides of the boom, reposition the boom to allow the thermal effects from the sun to equalize the temperatures of the side walls of the boom to eliminate the distortion before lifting a load.

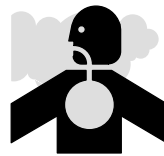
Fire Extinguisher

A fire extinguisher is located in the operator's cab under the left console. Refer to Figure 1–70. Raise the left console to gain access to the extinguisher. It is an ABC type fire extinguisher, meaning it is capable of extinguishing most types of fires. The operator should be familiar with its location, the clamp mechanism used to secure it in place, and foremost the operation of the device. Specific instructions, regarding operation, are given on the label attached on the fire extinguisher. A charge indicator on the fire extinguisher monitors the pressure within the tank. Check the indicator daily to ensure the fire extinguisher is adequately charged and ready for use.

Engine Starting Procedure

WARNING

This Operator's Manual and the engine manufacturer's manual must be thoroughly read and understood by the operator before starting the engine. Serious personal injury and/or major crane damage could result from improper operating procedures.





WARNING

Diesel exhaust fumes can be harmful. Start and operate engine in a well ventilated area. If it is necessary to operate in an enclosed area, vent the exhaust to the outside. Properly maintain the exhaust system to its original design.

Before attempting to start the engine, the operator should carefully read and understand the engine starting instructions in the engine manufacturer's manual and this Operator's Manual. Attempting to start or run the engine before studying these instructions may result in engine damage. The operator should learn and obey all applicable “Rules of the Road” and if not already a competent driver, obtain instructions to attain these necessary skills. With the crane fully serviced and the operator familiar with all gauges, switches, controls and having read and fully understood this entire manual, start the engine using the following procedures:

1. Walk around the crane to verify that there are no persons under, or in close proximity to the crane.
2. Sound the horn twice in succession and wait 10–15 seconds while making a visual check to verify that there are no persons under or in close proximity to the crane.
3. Check that the swing park brake is applied. The engine will not start when the swing park brake is not applied.

Operator's Manual

4. Turn the ignition switch to the on position to energize the engine electrical system.
5. If required, allow the "Wait To Start" indicator light  (on the Crane Control Display) to go out.
6. Turn the ignition switch to the start position. Release the ignition switch immediately after the engine starts. If the engine fails to start in 30 seconds and the "Wait To Start" indicator light  begins to flash, release the ignition switch and allow the starter motor to cool for 90 seconds (wait to start indicator light will stop flashing) before trying to start the engine again.

Note: If the ignition switch is turned to the start position and nothing happens, turn the ignition switch back to the "Off" position then back to start position.

Note: A minimum crank speed of 130 RPM must be achieved for the engine to begin to fire. A minimum of 325 RPM engine speed is required for the engine to maintain running on its own.

7. Continue to crank the starter while the engine is in the 325-330 RPM range; this will help keep the engine running in cold ambient conditions. The engine RPM can be viewed while cranking by going to the engine data and aftertreatment control screen of the crane control display.

Note: The starter is equipped with over crank protection (OCP) to protect against thermal damage. A built-in circuit breaker opens should the starter overheat and resets at a safe operating temperature. If this happens there will be no operator notification at this time, the starter will stop cranking.

Note: Repeat the above step until the engine starts.

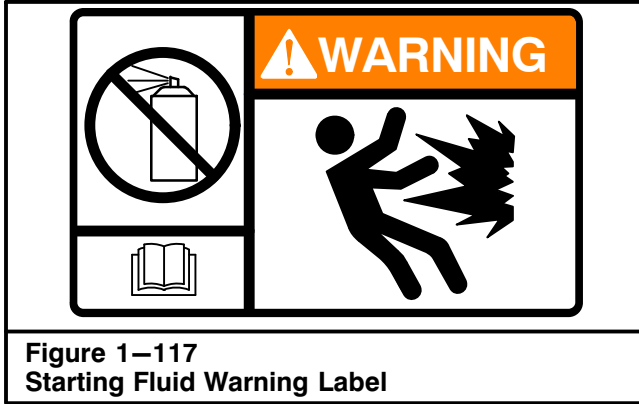
8. After the engine is started in extreme cold it will take several seconds for the engine to come up to idle speed.
9. If the engine fails to start after four attempts, refer to the engine manufacturer's manual for instructions.
10. Warm Up — Run the engine at low throttle with no load while the engine is warming up. Observe the following instruments for proper indications.
 - a. Engine Oil Pressure — Observe the engine oil pressure indicator light on the Crane Control Display. If the light does not go out after the engine runs 10–15 seconds, shutdown the engine immediately and repair the problem to avoid major engine damage. Refer to the engine manufacturer's manual for proper oil pressure operating range.

- b. Coolant Temperature Gauge — Observe the coolant temperature gauge on the Crane Control Display to ensure engine is warming up to the proper operating temperature. For proper cooling system operating temperature range, refer to the engine manufacturer's manual.
 - c. Battery Indicator Light — Observe the battery indicator light on the Crane Control Display to ensure battery and electrical system is working properly.
11. When the engine has thoroughly warmed up, after all pressures and temperatures are within operating ranges, and all daily checks have been made, the crane is ready for operation.

Engine Shutdown Procedure


1. Lower any load to the ground and secure it properly.
2. Engage the travel swing lock.
3. Throttle the engine back to idle.
4. Position the transmission shifter to neutral.
5. Turn the ignition switch to the "OFF" position.
6. Remove the ignition keys from the operator's cab and lock the doors if the crane is to be left unattended.


Operator's Manual



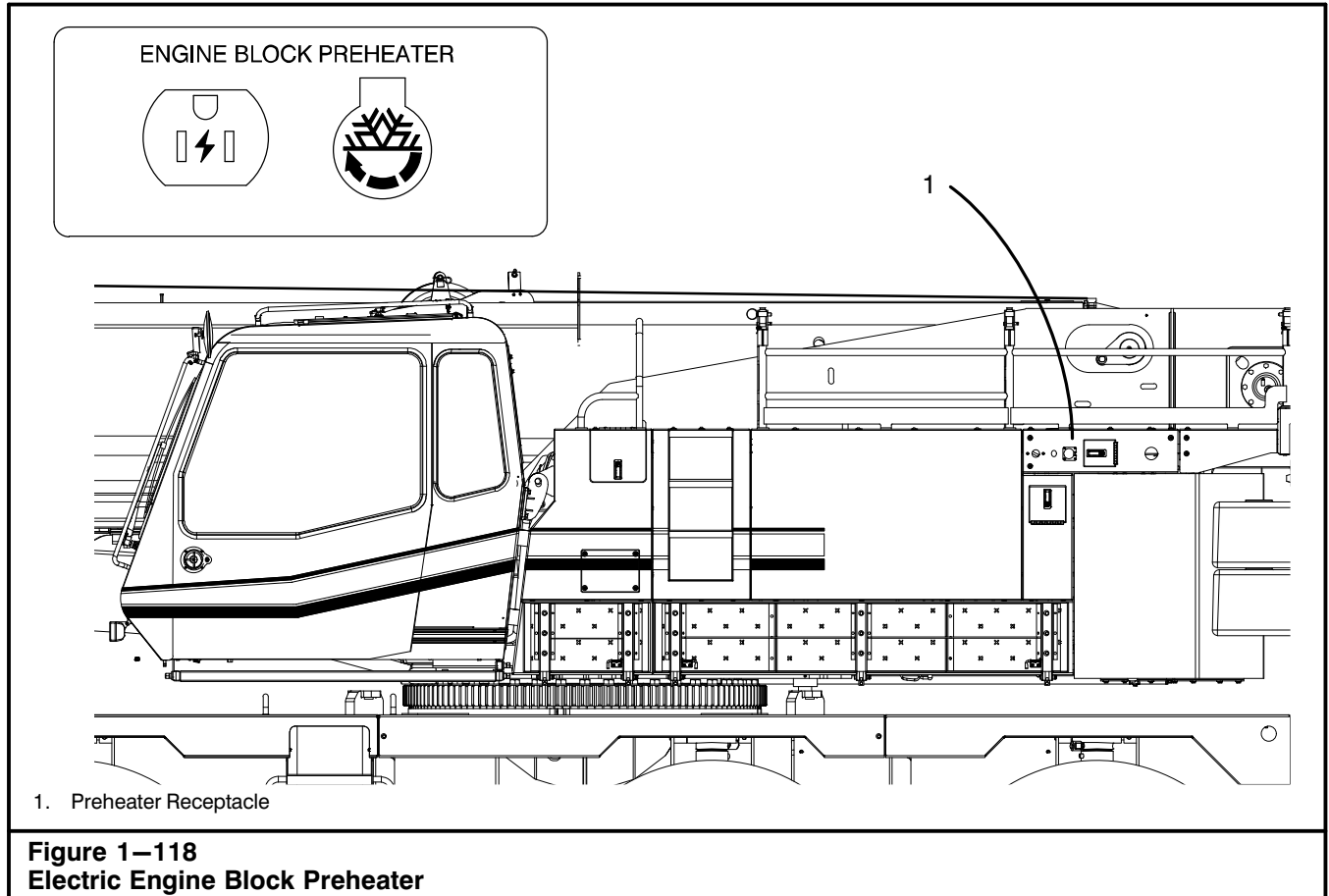
Cold Engine Starting

To help ignition in cold ambient conditions, air intake heater is used to warm the intake air prior to starting the engine. This improves combustion efficiency which aids

in starting a cold engine. With the ignition switch in the on position, the ECM senses ambient air temperature then determines if the air intake must be energized to warm the intake air. A "Wait To Start" indicator light  on the Crane Control Display will illuminate to alert the operator not to crank the engine because the combustion chamber is too cold for fuel ignition. When the cylinders are warm enough to ignite the first charges of fuel, the indicator light will go out and the engine can be started.

 **DANGER**

Do not use starting fluids to aid in engine start up. This engine is equipped with a air intake grid heater type cold starting aid and use of a starting fluid can cause an explosion resulting in serious personal injury or death.



Electric Engine Block Preheater

The electric engine block preheater uses electrical power to heat the coolant and circulate it through the engine. The electric engine block preheater receptacle is located on the left side of the upper. Refer to Figure 1-118.

To Start The Electric Engine Block Preheater

1. Park crane in suitable area for storage, engage the park brake, position the transmission shifter to neutral, and shutdown the engine.
2. Plug an approved extension cord into the receptacle on the left side of the upper. Plug the cord into the receptacle as indicated by the identification label. Plug the other end into a 110V to 120V electrical source.

WARNING

Areas adjacent to the preheater must be clean and free of oil and debris to avoid possible fire hazard.

Note: Unplug the engine block preheater before starting the engine.

To Stop Electric Engine Block Heater

1. Unplug preheater cord from electrical source.
2. Properly store the cord.

Operator's Manual

Arctic Weather System

Diesel Fired Engine Block Preheater (Style 1)



WARNING

This crane is equipped with a fuel operated heater that starts automatically when the timer is set. Ensure the timer is in manual mode and the heater is turned off when the crane is in enclosed spaces and during refueling. Failure to do so may lead to serious personal injury and/or major crane damage.

This crane may be equipped with an arctic heater. Refer to the following instructions to operate the arctic heater.

This heater uses coolant circulating through the unit to provide heat and is controlled using a timer. The coolant from the radiator is heated and circulates coolant through engine block. The coolant heater fuel system is equipped with an inline fuel filter. It should be changed annually. Refer to Section 2 of this Operator's Manual.



WARNING

Avoid the Risk of Explosion:

Switch heater off at filling stations and areas where explosive material, fumes, and dust may collect.

Avoid the Risk of Asphyxiation:

Do not operate heater in closed spaces such as garages and shops without adequate ventilation or exhaust extraction.

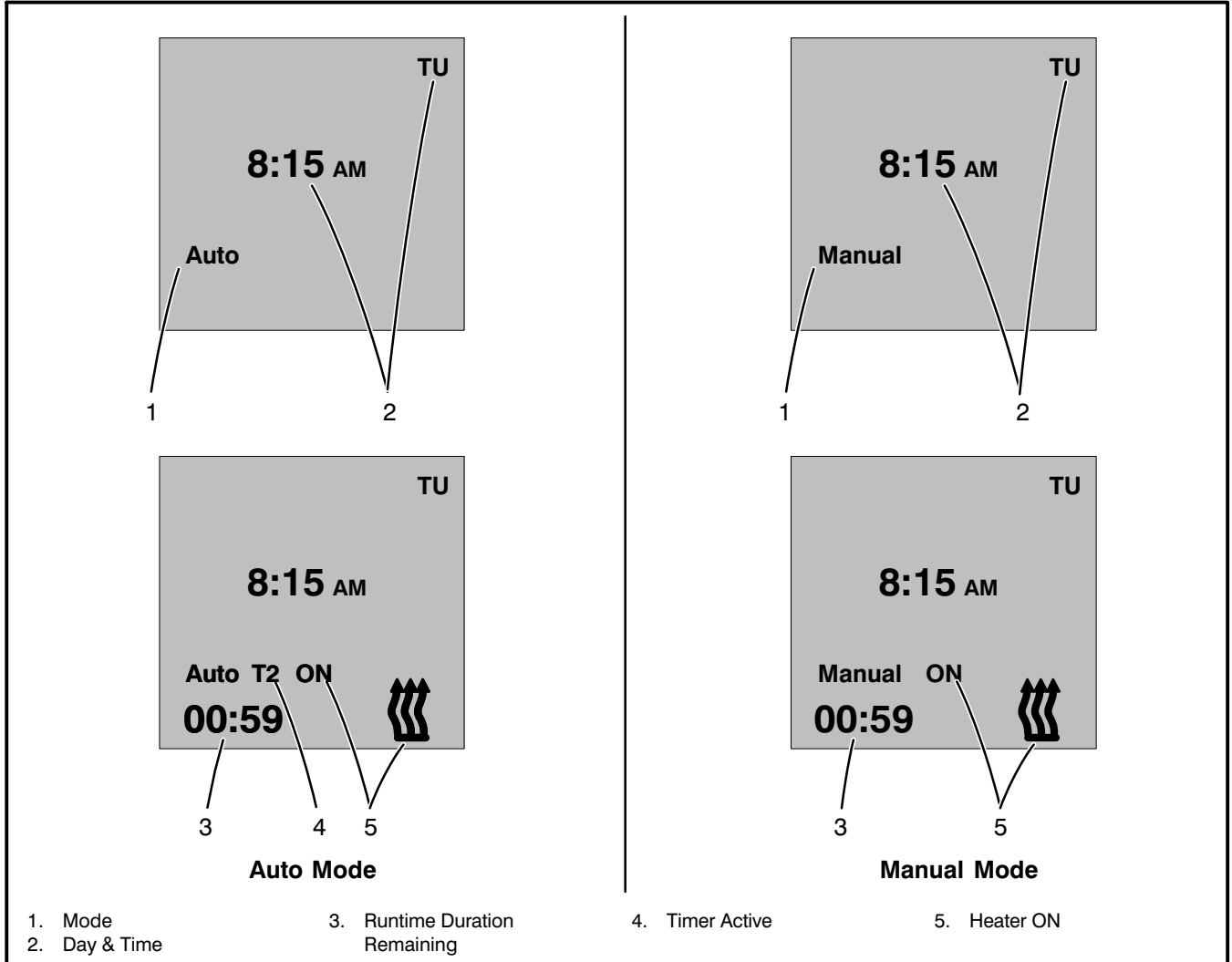


Figure 1-119
Timer Screen

Arctic Heater Timer

The diesel engine block preheater uses diesel fuel to power the unit and to heat the coolant and circulate it through the engine. The controls for the preheater are located on the right side control console in the operator's cab. Refer to Figure 1-36.

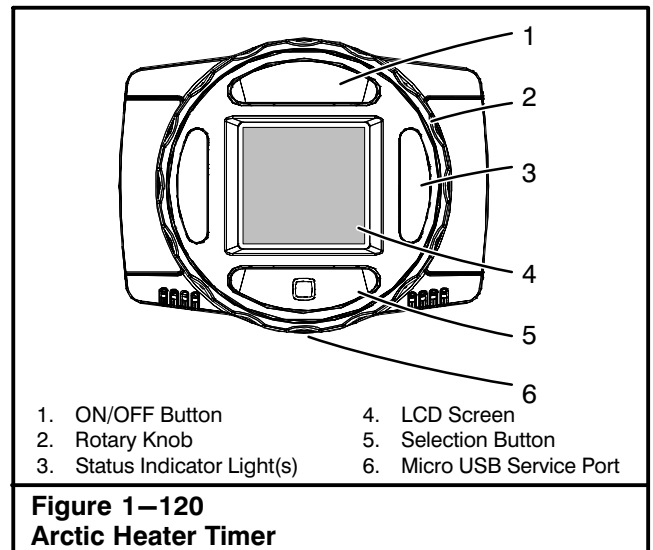


Figure 1-120
Arctic Heater Timer

Operator's Manual

Use the chart below to set the heater duration at various temperatures. This will allow the engine block and oil in the hydraulic reservoir to heat sufficiently for an engine start.

Ambient Temperature		Heating Duration
°F	°C	Minutes
-10	-23.3	30
-20	-28.8	40
-30	-34.4	50
-40	-40.0	60

Note: The timer LCD display will not function below -22°F. To run in manual mode while the timer display is not functioning, press the ON/OFF button once to activate the timer, then press the ON/OFF button a second time to start the heater. A green light attached to the timer enclosure will illuminate when the heater is on and functioning. If you believe the heater should be running and the light is not illuminated refer to the Manufacturer's Service Manual for troubleshooting the heater.

If the battery cables have been disconnected from the batteries, the low-voltage threshold and timer duration must be reset.

1. To set the time and date on the timer
 - a. Press the ON/OFF Button to enter the time and date. Use the Rotary Knob to scroll through each value and use the Selection Button to advance to the next setting.
2. To set the lower voltage threshold
 - a. Press the Selection Button to enter into the menu.
 - b. Use the Rotary Knob to scroll to "Options", then "LVD".
 - c. Change the voltage from 11.4V to 11V then press the Selection Button to save and return to the "Options" menu.
 - d. Scroll to the "Back" selection and select until you have returned to the main screen.
3. To set the duration
 - a. Press the Selection Button to enter into the menu.
 - b. Use the Rotary Dial to scroll up to "Duration" and select.
 - c. Use the Rotary Dial to change the duration from 120 min to 60 min, then press the Selection Button to save the duration and return to the menu.
 - d. Scroll to the "Back" selection and select until you have returned to the main screen.

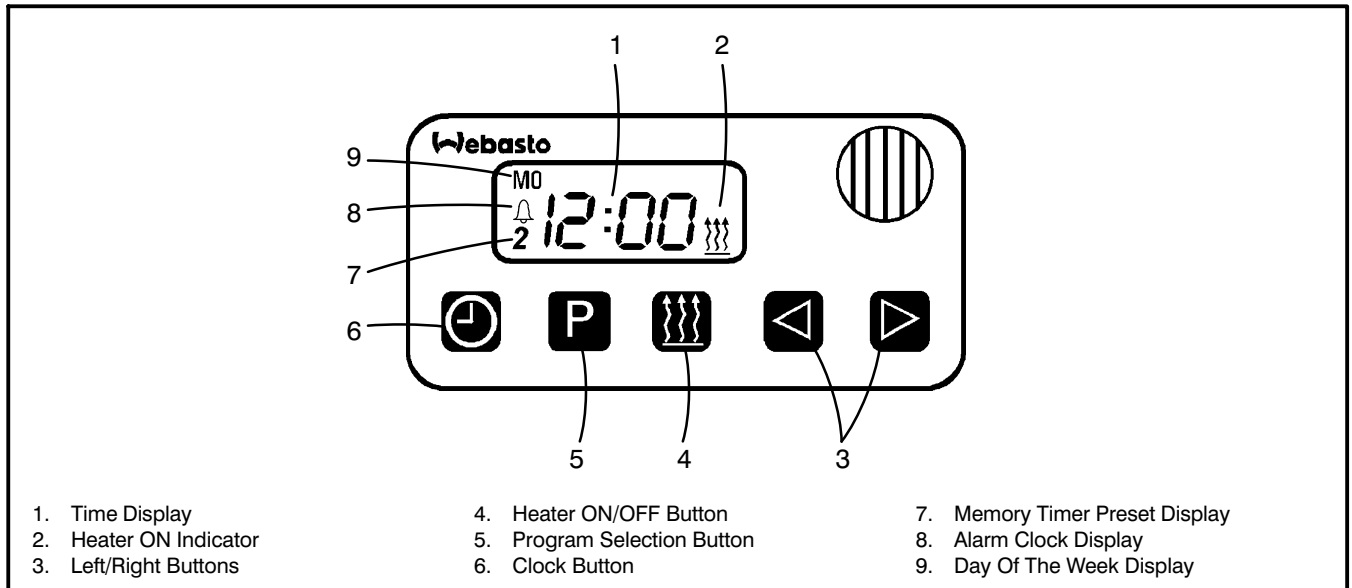
Operator's Manual

Timer Definitions

	Definitions	Default
Mode	<p>Two modes are possible:</p> <p>Auto mode enables the pre-defined timer programs. Standard ON/OFF functionality is still possible while in this mode.</p> <p>Manual mode allows the heater to be operated via the ON button on the timer. While in Manual Mode, all Auto Mode functionality is indefinitely disabled.</p>	Manual
Language	Language changes between English, Spanish, and French.	English
Duration	<p>Duration allows user to select heater runtime of the heater. Set range is between 10–120 minutes selectable by 10 minute increments. While using Manual Mode, the “Duration” setting will be used for the runtime of the heater when the ON button is pressed.</p> <p>Note: Setting the Duration run-time (in the Duration section) before setting a timer program will default all new programs to the user defined duration time.</p>	60 minutes
Error Codes	<p>This section will log the last 5 error codes and the date that it was set. Highlight and select an error code for a full description.</p> <p>If the heater produces an error code, the status indicator lights will flash red and the error will display on the main screen. Error codes cannot be reset through the timer. Contact a Link-Belt Distributor for resetting an error code.</p> <p>Note: Error code functionality does not apply to most coolant heaters. Codes on products with no blink code functionality can still be obtained using the PC Diagnostics test tool. Contact a Link-Belt Distributor for detailed PC diagnostics information.</p>	No Errors
Time & Date	Time & Date allows user to properly set the current date and time. User also has the ability to switch between AM/PM and 24 hour format. If the 24 hour format is selected the date format will change to dd/mm/yyyy.	AM/PM mm/dd/yyyy
Timer	There are 4 heater start-up cycles possible 7 days per week. Select the day or the specific timer (T1 – T4) using the rotary knob and the selection button. Once the day, time, and duration have been entered, press the selection button to set. A check mark will confirm the timer has been saved. To turn the timer OFF, select the timer check mark and dial the duration down to the OFF position and click the selection button.	Calendar Fields Empty
Skip	The Skip feature looks similar to timer programming; however when a specific timer program is selected, it will update the check mark to an “s” for skipped. When a program has been skipped, it will disable that specific timer program for one cycle (7 day period). Preset timer programming will reactivate after this one-time skip cycle.	Calendar Fields Empty
LVD	<p>LVD “Low Voltage Disconnect” allows the user to adjust the battery voltage level at which the timer will shut down heater functionality.</p> <p>If battery voltage is equal to or less than the threshold selected +0.1v, the heater will not start. i.e. if an 11.5v threshold is selected the heater cannot be started until B+ has reached 11.7v.</p> <p>12 volt – Range between 11v – 12.5v 24 volt – Range between 21v – 25.5v</p>	11.4V 24.2V
Default	Default allows the user to perform a factory reset of the control settings and saved timer program data.	N/A

Operator's Manual

Hour Meter	The hour meter logs the operating hours of an active ON signal to the heater. This does not reflect the true runtime of the heater itself. Note: For warranty purposes a diagnostic printout is still required where applicable. This hour meter is for reference only.	N/A
SW Version	This displays the firmware version of the timer.	Installed Version
Back	Select this to return to the previous screen.	N/A



- | | | |
|------------------------|-----------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. Time Display | 4. Heater ON/OFF Button | 7. Memory Timer Preset Display |
| 2. Heater ON Indicator | 5. Program Selection Button | 8. Alarm Clock Display |
| 3. Left/Right Buttons | 6. Clock Button | 9. Day Of The Week Display |

Figure 1–121
Diesel Fired Engine Block Preheater Controls

Diesel Fired Engine Block Preheater (If Equipped)

The diesel engine block preheater uses diesel fuel to power the unit and to heat the coolant and circulate it through the engine. The controls for the preheater are located on the right side control console in the operator's cab. Refer to Figure 1–118.

WARNING

Explosion hazard!

Do not operate the preheater while refueling.

Do not operate the preheater in an area where toxic or explosive materials or fumes may be present.

WARNING

Diesel exhaust fumes can be harmful. Start and operate engine in a well ventilated area. If it is necessary to operate in an enclosed area, vent the exhaust to the outside. Properly maintain the exhaust system to its original design.

Starting Preheater

Manual: Press the Heater ON/OFF button (continuous heat mode). Heater ON indicator will illuminate.

Automatic: Set the timer up to 2 hr. before you want to start the engine. The heater will start up at set time.

Note: If heater is being switched on while the engine is warm only the circulating pump will run. Coolant temperature must fall below 86°F. (30°C) before heater starts.

Startup Sequence:

1. The coolant circulating pump, ceramic igniter, and combustion air fan start operation and after approximately 60 seconds combustion starts (audible combustion sound).
2. After the coolant temperature has reached the set point of 170°F (77°C) the preheater automatically adjust its heat output to a lower operating range (part-load heat output). If the temperature of the coolant continues to rise and climb over 174°F (79°C) at the heater outlet, the heater will cycle off.
3. When the temperature falls below 149°F (65 °C) the heater will restart and repeat the heating cycle.

Stopping Preheater

Manual: Press the Heater ON/OFF button . Heater ON indicator will extinguish. Combustion is extinguished followed by an after run cycle of approximately 90 seconds.

Automatic: When the timer has reached the end of the timed cycle (up to 2 hours).

Operator's Manual

Timer Operation

The timer enables you to preset the start time of the heater up to 7 days in advance. When the heater is in operation, the display and operation buttons of the timer are illuminated.

Heater Preset Operation

The preset starting time is the time at which the timer switches the heater on automatically. Three memory preset locations numbered 1 to 3 are available. Each memory location can be assigned a given time together with the day of the week of which only one can be activated at any one time. It is recommended that memory locations 1 and 2 be used for presetting starting times within 24 hours of setting the timer. Memory location 3 can be used for a starting time within the next 7 days of setting the timer.

Setting The Heater Preset Start Time

1. Press the **P** button. The timer memory preset location number will flash.
2. Continue to press the **P** button until the desired preset number 1, 2, or 3 is visible.
3. Press the **◀** or **▶** button to select day of the week. Heater will start on the time and day selected. Once set, wait for flashing to stop. To program the other 2 memory preset locations, repeat procedure for each location.

Operating Time Duration Operation

The period of time during which the heater is in operation is referred to as operating time. The heater remains in operation for as long as the operating time has been preset. Heater operation can be preset for any time from as little as 1 minute to a maximum of 120 minutes (factory preset is 60 minutes).

Setting The Operating Time Duration

1. The heater must be switched off. Press the **◀** button for 3 seconds – operating time is flashing.
2. Set the desired operating time using the **◀** and **▶** buttons.

Remaining Operating Time Operation

The remaining operating time refers to the time the heater still continues to remain in operation after the ignition is turned off. It can only be changed while the heater is in operation and the ignition switched off.

Setting The Remaining Operating Time

Set the desired remaining operating time (1 to 120 minutes) using the **◀** and **▶** buttons.

Setting The Clock And Day Of The Week

1. Press and hold the **⏰** button until time of the day starts flashing.
2. Set the clock using the **◀** and **▶** buttons.
3. After 5 seconds, day of the week begins flashing.
4. Set the day of the week in the same manner as the time.

Viewing The Time

The clock time can be displayed with the ignition switched off by pressing the **⏰** button.

Setting The Alarm Clock

Repeatedly press the **P** button until the bell symbol appears on the display. Set the desired wake up time using **◀** the and **▶** buttons. The alarm clock turns off after 5 minutes or when one of the buttons is pressed. The alarm time is not bound to a specific day of the week.

To recall the alarm time, repeatedly press **P** the button until bell symbol **⏰** appears on the display. To erase the wake up time: press **P** the button until the bell symbol **⏰** is no longer visible on the display.

Troubleshooting

The following describes basic troubleshooting procedures for the coolant heater. Troubleshooting is normally limited to the isolation of defective components and should be done by trained, certified personnel only.

Before troubleshooting, check for and eliminate these potential component failures:

- Blown fuses
- Fuel supply (plugged fuel filter)
- corrosion on battery terminals, electrical wiring, connections, and fuses.
- loose contact on connectors
- wrong crimping on connectors

Operator's Manual

General Failure Symptoms		
Failure Symptom	Probable Cause	Remedy
Coolant heater switches off automatically (Fault Lockout)	No combustion after start or automatic repeat start.	Switch off heater momentarily and switch on once again.
	Flame extinguishes during operation.	Switch off heater momentarily and switch on once again.
	Heater overheats	Check coolant lines for obstructions, closed valves and kinks. Check coolant level. Allow heater to cool down, reset overheat. Limiter, switch off heater momentarily and switch on once again.
	Crane electrical system voltage too low.	Charge the battery. Switch off the heater momentarily and switch on once again.
Heater expels black fumes from exhaust	Combustion air and/or exhaust ducting blocked.	Check combustion and exhaust ducting for obstructions.

Heater Lockout Reset Procedure

The coolant heater is designed with a lockout safety feature built in to the control unit. After 3 consecutive unsuccessful startup attempts, the heater will lock itself out from any further start attempts. The heater may also enter the lockout mode after experiencing an overheat condition. The following procedure will clear the lockout mode and reset the heater for normal operation:

1. Remove fuse F1 (15 Amp), refer to wiring diagram Figure 1–122 for identification. Wait 10 seconds before reinserting. This is done to prepare the control unit for resetting.
2. Wait a further 10 seconds after reinserting fuse F1. Turn the heater on using the On/Off button.
3. Wait 10 seconds after turning the heater on and remove fuse F1 again.
4. Wait a further 30 seconds and then turn the heater off.
5. Reinsert fuse F1 after waiting 3 to 10 seconds after shutting off the heater.
6. Wait a further 10 seconds and turn the heater back on again.

The lockout mode should now be canceled and the heater operating normally.

Maintenance

The heater requires a minimum of maintenance to keep in good operating condition. The following maintenance procedures should be performed annually before each heating season:

Annual Maintenance

Enclosure And Heater

- Clean the heater and enclosure box from any accumulated debris or dust with compressed air.
- Inspect all components for wear and damage.

Electrical System

- Check wiring harnesses for damage, repair or replace if damaged.
- Check the condition of the batteries and the connections.
- Load test the batteries and replace if required.

Note: The heater will not function properly with weak batteries.

Operator's Manual

Combustion Air System

- Check for obstructions at air intake port.
- Check air intake tube carefully for restrictions and damage. Repair or replace as required.

Exhaust System

- Check the exhaust system carefully for restrictions or corrosion. Repair or replace as required

Fuel System

- Change fuel filter located on the left side of the fuel tank. Inspect fuel line for damage, restrictions, routing, or loose connections. Repair or replace as required.

Coolant System

- Inspect all coolant lines and clamps for leakage, restrictions, or damage. Repair or replace as required.
- Inspect coolant circulation pump for leakage. Repair or replace as required.

Operational Test

- Run the heating system for at least 15 minutes.
- Check water and fuel connections for leakage. Retighten hose clamps if necessary.

Note: Operate the heater at least once a month for 10 minutes.

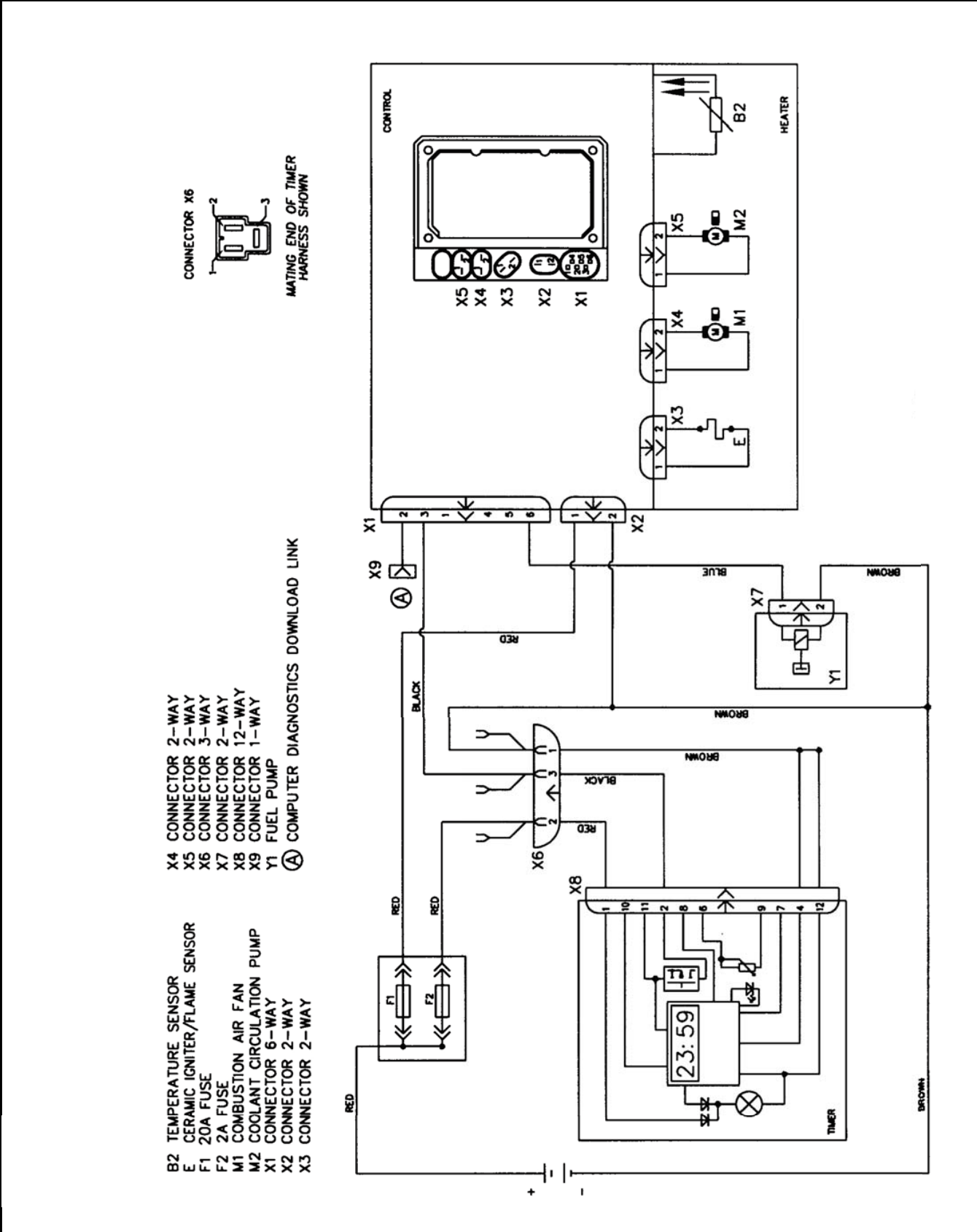
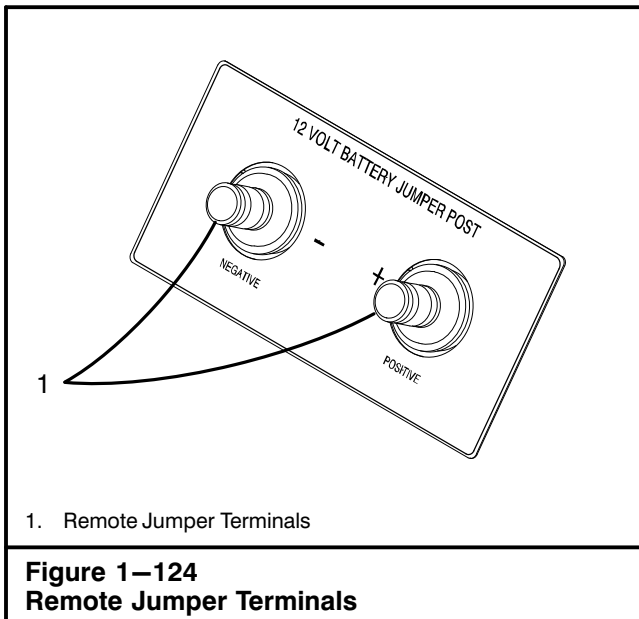
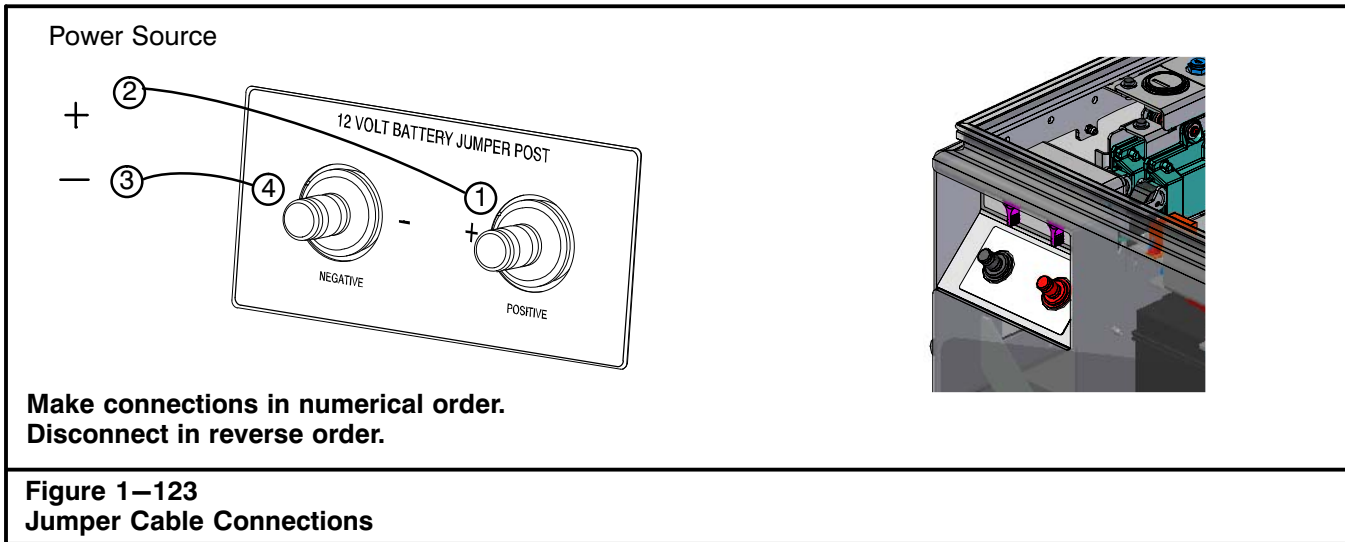


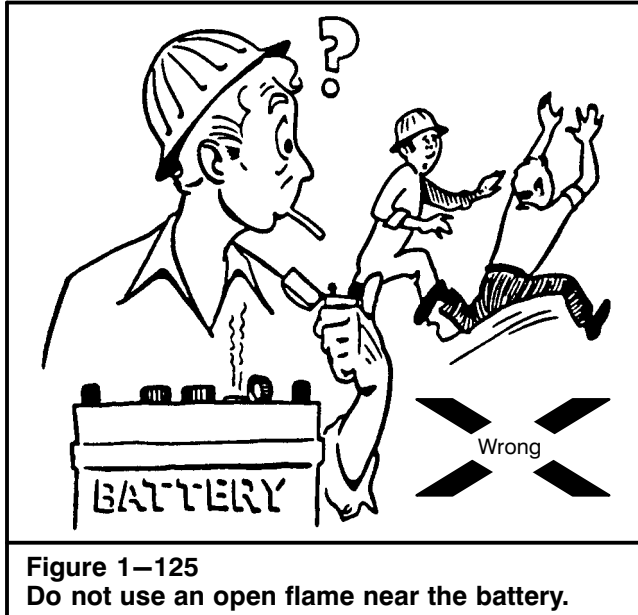
Figure 1-122
Coolant Heater Wiring Diagram

Operator's Manual



Remote Jumper Terminals

The remote jumper terminals are located on the side of the electrical center. Refer to Figure 1–123 and Figure 1–124. Open the access door to gain access to the terminals. They are provided to ease access to the battery terminal connections. The terminals are clearly marked to show positive (+) and negative (–) connections.



Jump Starting The Crane

The crane has three (3) 12V batteries. To jump start the crane a 12V power source and two (2) jumper cables are required. Refer to Figure 1-126.

WARNING

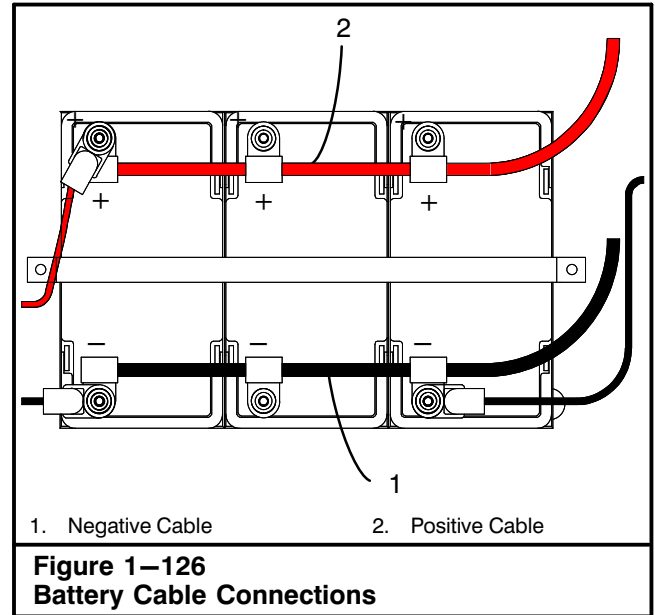
To avoid serious personal injury and/or major equipment damage, follow these procedures in the order they are given.

Wear protective clothing and shield your face and eyes when working around batteries. Batteries contain sulfuric acid which burns skin, eyes, and clothing.

Do not jump start a damaged battery. Ensure vent caps are tight and level. If another vehicle is used, ensure booster vehicle and crane are not touching.

The gases around the battery can explode if exposed to open flames or sparks. An explosion could result in serious personal injury and/or major equipment damage.

Battery posts, terminals, and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds. Wash hands after handling.



1. Check all battery terminals and remove any corrosion before attaching jumper cables.
2. Connect one end of the first jumper cable to the 12V positive (+) terminal of the discharged battery.
3. Connect the other end of the first cable to the 12V positive (+) terminal of the 12V power source or booster battery.
4. Connect one end of the second jumper cable to the negative (-) terminal of the 12V power source or booster battery.
5. Connect the other end of the second cable to the ground stud on the upper frame.
6. If another vehicle is used to jump start the crane, start the booster vehicle. Run the booster vehicle's engine at a moderate speed and allow discharged batteries to charge for a few minutes prior to attempting to start the disabled crane.
7. Start the disabled crane. After the crane is started, remove jumper cables in reverse order.
8. Let the crane's engine run for a few minutes to charge the discharged batteries.
9. Check the battery gauge in the operator's cab. The gauge reading should be increasing toward 14 volts.

Note: If the batteries are severely discharged, voltage may increase slowly. If voltage does not increase, replace the batteries and/or check the electrical system.

Operator's Manual

Crane Operation

Cranes are used primarily for making heavy lifts. In order to do this properly, certain procedures must be followed. The following is a suggested procedure for making typical lifts:

Note: Before operating the crane near airports, radio and microwave towers, power lines, etc., always consult and comply with all local, state, and federal laws.

1. Determine the weight to be lifted. Be sure to add the weight of the hook block, slings, rigging, fly, etc. Determine height to which the load must be lifted.
2. Consult the capacity chart, Working Areas and Working Range charts in the Crane Rating Manual located in the operator's cab. Find the shortest boom length and load radius that will accomplish the job.
3. Position the crane so a minimum swing is necessary. Do not swing the upper over areas not covered on the capacity chart in the Crane Rating Manual, as the crane could tip, even without a load on the hook in these areas.
4. The crane must be supported by a firm, solid level surface before starting to lift. All capacities in the Crane Rating Manual are based on the crane being level in all directions. If the crane is not level, out swing or side swing of the load will greatly reduce lifting capacities and could cause crane damage or an accident. If the ground is soft, use mats.
5. If outriggers are used, the following points must be observed:
 - a. The outrigger beams must all be equally extended (all fully retracted, intermediate extended, or fully extended) to lift the loads shown in the Crane Rating Manual. Serious reductions in lifting capacity will result if beams are not in the same position and this could lead to serious crane damage or an accident.
 - b. Outrigger pontoons must be on solid, smooth footing, flush with the ground (no hills, or valleys under pontoons), otherwise pontoons may be damaged or destroyed. If there is any doubt, use mats.
 - c. All capacities listed for the crane on outriggers are based on the outrigger jacks being used to raise the crane so that all tires are clear of the ground and the crane is level. A bubble level is provided in the operator's cab to assist the operator in leveling the crane.
6. When making lifts on tires, the following points must be observed:
 - a. All tires must be inflated to pressures as listed on the Tire Inflation label located on the left rear fender of the crane.
 - b. On tire lifts are to be made from the main boom only. Do not use the auxiliary lifting sheave or fly.
 - c. Lifts while on tires must be from firm level surface. Use mats and/or grade the supporting surface as required to ensure safe lift.
7. Make sure the Rated Capacity Limiter is properly set to match the crane configuration.
8. Raise the boom and swing over the load. Extend the boom to the desired length. Make sure power boom sections extend per the selected boom mode.
9. Lower the hook block and fasten it onto the load. The following points must be observed:
 - a. The boom peak must be directly above the load. Booms are made to lift, and should never be used to drag a load sideways.
 - b. Always use chains, wire ropes, or slings of ample size and make periodic checks of their condition.
 - c. Always use sufficient parts of line. Consult Wire Rope Capacity chart in the Crane Rating Manual located in the operator's cab for the number of parts of line needed for a given lift.
 - d. When lifting loads, care should be taken to prevent sudden loading or unloading of the winch rope. Ease into the load. Lift the load a few inches off ground and hold to check brakes.
10. Lift the load to the desired height. Boom to the desired angle. Be careful when booming down or swinging the load, as these increase the load radius and result in a decrease in capacity. Make sure the load being lifted remains within the lifting capacity of the crane at the boom length and radius being used.
11. Control the load at all times. Use hand lines to guide the load. Do not guide loads into place with your hands. Swing slowly and smoothly. Avoid jerks when starting or stopping swings.
12. If the crane is to travel with a suspended load, refer to "Pick And Carry Operation" found later in this Section of this Operator's Manual for further instructions.

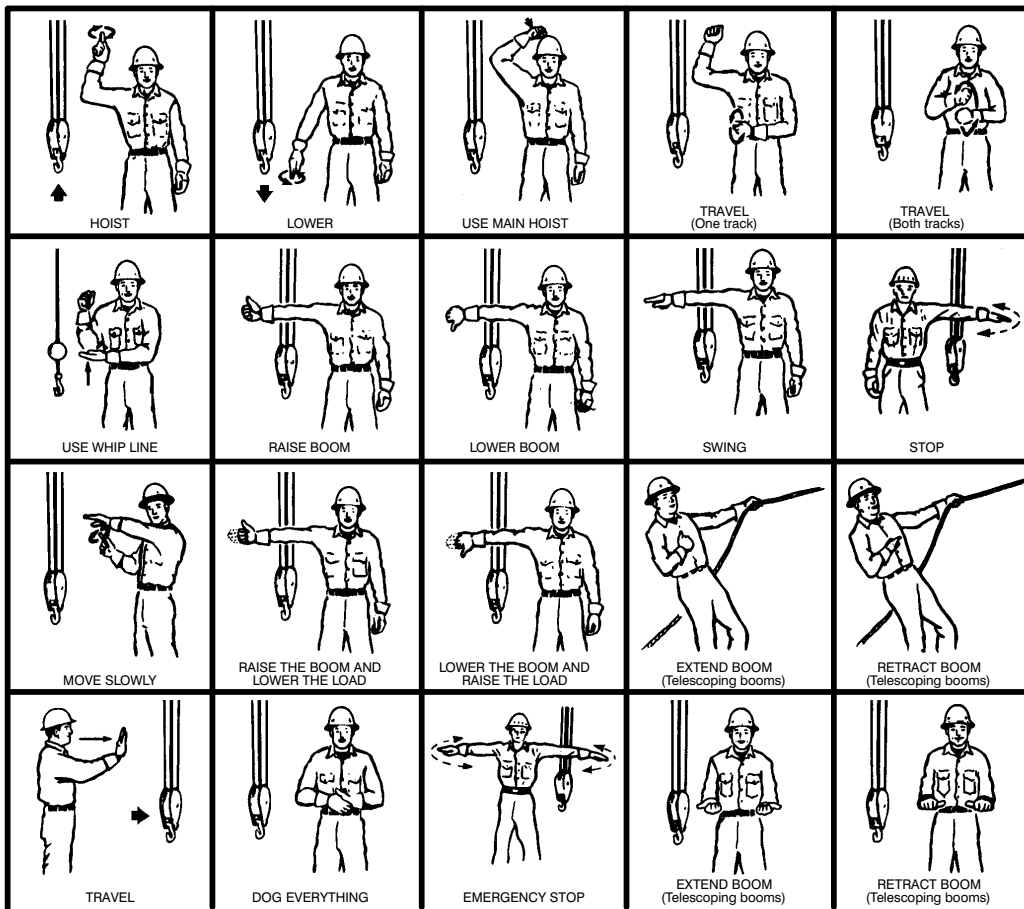
During Operation

The operator must remain alert to possible malfunctioning of the crane while operating. If the crane does malfunction, lower the load and shutdown the crane until the problem is found and corrected. During operation, the operator must:

1. Remain alert to any noise or loss of power, or bad response to control of the crane. Watch the engine oil pressure and water temperature gauges for proper operating ranges.
2. Watch the hydraulic system oil temperature gauge. If the temperature exceeds maximum temperature, shutdown the crane until the problem is corrected. (Refer to Section 2 of this Operator's Manual for the maximum temperature for each viscosity of hydraulic oil.)
3. Listen for any unusual noises in the hydraulic system, power train, or the speed reducers. If any, correct problem.
4. Make sure all controls work freely and easily, with no sticking or binding. Lubricate or adjust as necessary.
5. Watch for oil leaks or any loss of control. If any develop, correct before continuing operation.
6. If working on outriggers, periodically check the outriggers to make sure the crane is level and stable. If working on tires, make sure the tires are inflated to the proper pressure. (Refer to the Tire Inflation label located on the left rear fender of the crane for proper tire pressure.)
7. Heed all warning and caution labels. Observe good safety practices at all times.

Operator's Manual

Standard Hand Signals For Controlling Crane Operations



Reprinted from ASME B30.5-2011 by permission of the American Society of Mechanical Engineers. All rights.

Figure 1-127
Hand Signals

Hand Signals

Hand Signals are important for communications between the designated signalman and the operator. A hand signal chart, Figure 1-127, is included in this Section of the Operator's Manual. A copy is also located on the front outrigger box and on the right side window of the operator's cab.

These signals should be used at all times unless voice instructions with a radio or telephone are being used. One person should be designated as a signalman and their signals obeyed by the operator. Obey a stop signal from anyone.

Counterweight Removal System

Access to certain job sites may require the crane to be transported on roads with strict vehicle load limitations. In order to meet such limitations the crane may be equipped with a counterweight removal system so the counterweight can be removed and transported separately. Removing the counterweight can reduce the weight of the crane by as much as 26,000 lb (11 794kg).

Counterweight Removal

1. Park the crane on a firm level surface, position the transmission shifter to neutral, and engage the park brake.
2. Properly level the crane on fully extended outriggers with all tires clear of the ground.
3. Fully retract all boom sections. If equipped, properly store the fly on the boom.
4. Install the counterweight removal brackets to the rear outrigger box if required. Refer to Figure 1–128. Removal brackets weigh approximately 60 lb (27kg) each.
5. Swing the upper over the front of the carrier. Engage the travel swing lock.
6. Install the hand held remote control box to the left rear of the upper. Plug the box into the receptacle as indicated by the identification label.
7. Remove the lock pins and pins which secure the counterweight to the upper frame.

Note: Counterweight cylinders may have to be raised (retracted) to relieve pressure on the pins to ease removal.

8. Push the “Down” button on the remote control box to lower the counterweight to the counterweight removal brackets.



WARNING

To avoid personal injury, do not place any body part under counterweight during removal or installation of the counterweights.

9. Remove the lock pins and pins which secure the counterweight to the counterweight removal cylinders.
10. Push the “Up” button to retract the cylinders away from the counterweight.
11. Swing the upper over the rear of the carrier. Attach a sling to the counterweight using the lifting bars cast into the counterweight.
12. Attach other end of sling to the crane's hook block.



WARNING

When operating the crane with no counterweight, always refer to the Crane Rating Manual to ensure lifting capacities are not exceeded.

Do not travel or transport the crane with the counterweight positioned on the removal brackets. Counterweight may fall causing severe personal injury and/or crane damage.

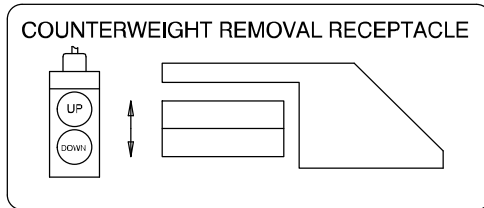
13. Lift counterweight off removal brackets and onto transport vehicle.

CAUTION

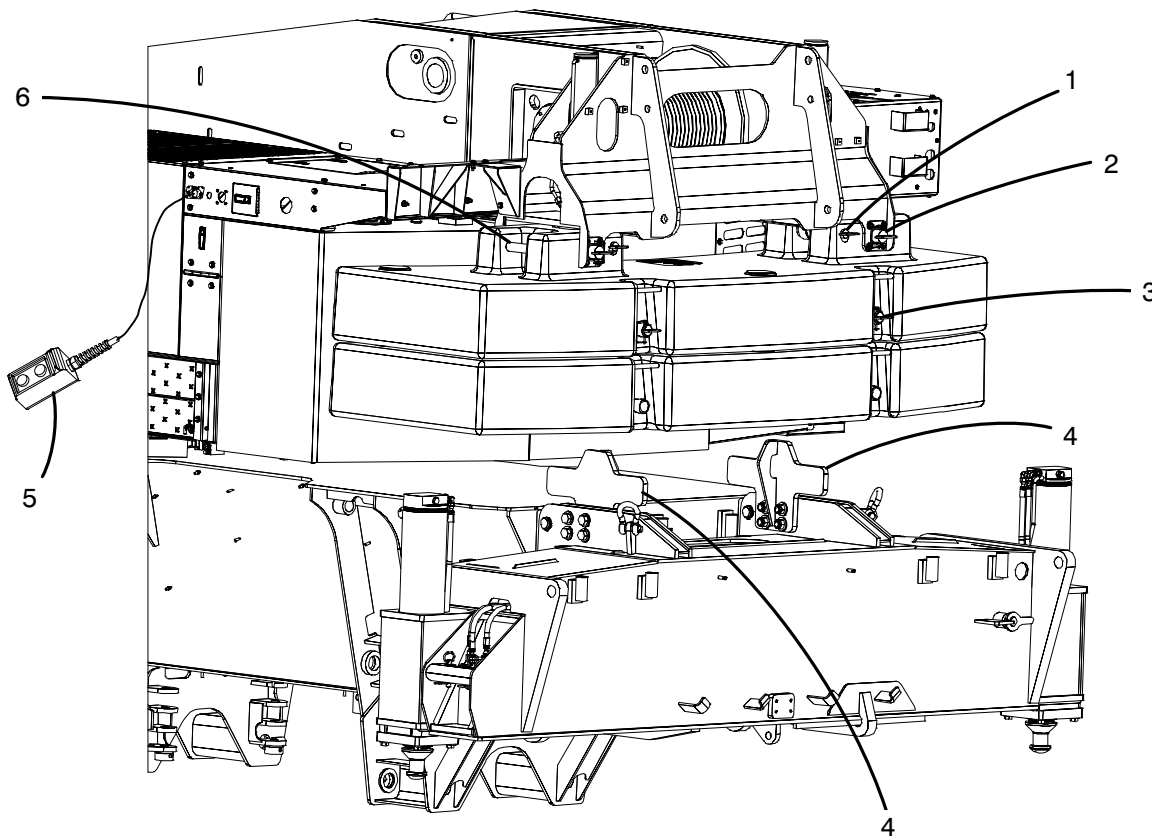
When swinging over the rear, boom hoist cylinder may contact counterweight removal brackets at low boom angles. When operating at low boom angles, be aware that counterweight removal brackets may be installed on the rear outrigger box.

14. Remove the hand held remote control box from the left rear of the upper. Store in crane's tool box located under the operator's seat.

Operator's Manual



DO NOT ALLOW BOOM TO CONTACT CTWT BRACKET



1. Pin & Lock Pin – Counterweight To Counterweight Removal Cylinder
2. Pin & Lock Pin – Counterweight To Upper Frame
3. Pin & Lock Pin – Counterweight To Counterweight
4. Counterweight Removal Brackets
5. Hand Held Remote Control Box
6. Lifting Bar

Figure 1–128
Counterweight Removal System

Operator's Manual

Counterweight Installation

1. Park the crane on a firm level surface, position the transmission shifter to neutral, and engage the park brake.
2. Properly level the crane on fully extended outriggers with all tires clear of the ground.
3. Install the counterweight removal brackets to the rear outrigger box if required. Refer to Figure 1–128. Removal brackets weigh approximately 44 lb (20kg) each.

CAUTION

When swinging over the rear, boom hoist cylinder may contact counterweight removal brackets at low boom angles. When operating at low boom angles, be aware that counterweight removal brackets may be installed on the rear outrigger box.

4. Attach a sling to the counterweight using the lifting bars cast into the counterweight.
5. Using the crane, pick the counterweight off the transport vehicle.

WARNING

When operating the crane with no counterweight, always refer to the Crane Rating Manual to ensure lifting capacities are not exceeded.

6. Swing the upper over the rear of the carrier. Engage the travel swing lock. Set the counterweight on the removal brackets. Make sure counterweight is balanced on the removal brackets.



WARNING

Counterweight must be balanced on the removal brackets. Counterweight may fall causing personal injury and/or crane damage.

7. Swing the upper over the front of the carrier and engage the travel swing lock.
8. Install the hand held remote control box to the left rear of the upper. Plug the box into the receptacle as indicated by the identification label.
9. Push the “Down” button on the remote control box to extend the counterweight removal cylinders to align connecting lugs on the counterweight.
10. Install the pins and lock pins to secure the counterweight to the counterweight removal cylinders.
11. Push the “Up” button on the remote control box to retract the cylinders and lift the counterweight.



WARNING

To avoid personal injury, do not place any body part under counterweight during removal or installation of the counterweights.

12. Continue to lift counterweight until the lugs on the counterweight align with the lugs on the upper frame.
13. Install the pins and lock pins that secure the counterweight to the upper frame.
14. Lower (extend) cylinders slightly to transfer the weight of the counterweight from the cylinders to the upper frame.
15. Remove the hand held remote control box and store in the crane's tool box located under the operator's cab seat.

Operator's Manual

Traveling The Crane

Note: Refer to “Reducing Speed” and “Descending A Grade” in this section of the Operator’s Manual before traveling the crane.

Certain conditions must be met for safe travel. Refer to the following outlined procedures before traveling crane.



WARNING

Do not use rear wheel, 6-wheel, or crab steer mode for extended or high speed travel as steering behavior may be unfamiliar and a loss of crane control could occur.

Do not travel with upper over the side. Crane may tip over causing personal injury and/or crane damage. Engage the travel swing lock.

Reducing Speed



WARNING

Rapidly lifting off of the accelerator pedal will cause a sharp sudden decrease in speed. This may cause major crane damage. Slowly lift foot at a rate equivalent to the reduced rate of speed of the machine.

This machine has a unique drive system in comparison to a traditional mechanical/automatic transmission. By lifting your foot from the accelerator pedal the motors provide instantaneous hydrostatic braking. This braking force can be significant and requires controlling the accelerator pedal differently than a machine with a mechanical/automatic transmission. Slowing down at a gradual rate requires the operator to slowly lift his/her foot at the rate that he/she would like to reduce speed. Rapidly lifting off of the accelerator will cause a sharp sudden decrease in speed, and may cause damage to the travel system.

Operator's Manual

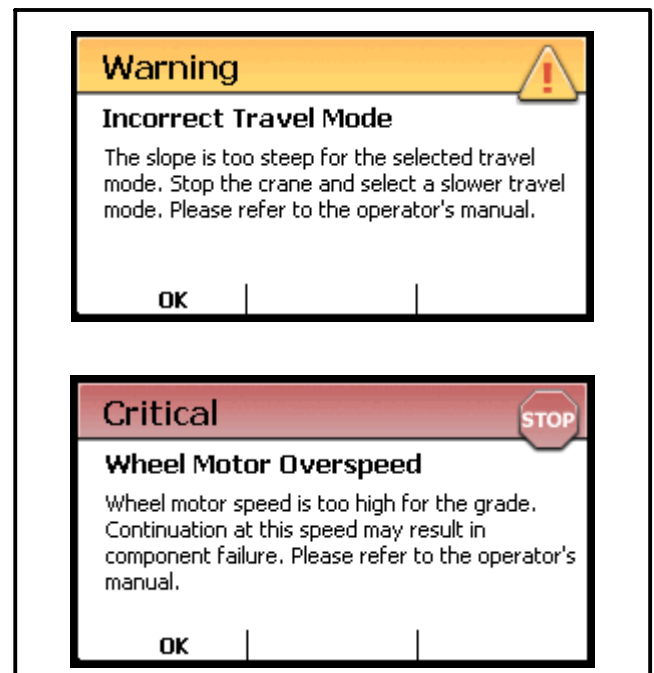
Travel Slope Grades				
Counterweight	Ascending		Descending	
	Degrees	% grade	degrees	% grade
0 (outriggers removed)	13.0	23%	7.0	12%
0 (outriggers installed)	11.0	19%	11.0	19%
14,000 lbs	10.0	18%	10.0	18%
26, 000 lbs	5.0	9%	9.0	16%

Traveling On A Slope

The crane may be traveled on slopes under the following conditions:

1. Ensure the driver and all passengers are wearing seat belts and keep all doors closed during travel eg storage box doors, tool box doors, cab door, etc.
2. Ensure that the suspension has been adjusted to the proper travel height. Refer to "Suspension Height Adjustment" in this Operator's Manual.
3. Inflate the tires to pressure listed on the Tire Inflation label located on the left side of the hydraulic reservoir or the Tire Inflation chart in the Crane Rating Manual for 2.5 mph (4km/h) maximum speed.
4. Position the upper over the front with the travel swing lock engaged. Release the swing park brake and 360° swing lock if equipped.
5. If counterweights are installed, outrigger boxes must remain installed with jacks and beams fully retracted.
6. Boom must be fully retracted and lowered to 10° or less.
7. Fly must be properly stored if equipped.
8. Travel at no more than 2.5 mph (4km/h). Maintain a safe distance from all obstructions, structures, and power lines.
9. Do not travel with a load on a slope.
10. Travel only on a firm, smooth surface.
11. Always travel straight up or down the slope. Traveling on a side slope should be avoided if possible. However, if conditions deem this unavoidable, do not exceed 3° (5%) side slope.
12. Refer to the Travel Slope Grades chart to determine maximum slope depending on crane configuration.

The following error messages may appear in the Crane Control Display while traveling on a slope.



Operator's Manual

Ascending A Grade



WARNING

Rapidly lifting off of the accelerator pedal will cause a sharp sudden decrease in speed. This may cause major crane damage. Slowly lift foot at a rate equivalent to the reduced rate of speed of the machine.

After selecting the proper travel mode, the operator must use the accelerator pedal to control travel pump stroke, which directly controls speed, acceleration, and deceleration.

When ascending grades, the engine may bog down from the fixed engine speed. The accelerator pedal position may need to be reduced to continue ascending the grade and avoid stalling the engine. As the crane starts the initial ascent, the engine rpm's start to drop. Gently easing up on the accelerator reduces pump flow allowing the engine to maintain the fixed rpm. With the pump flow reduced, the engine has enough horsepower to keep the crane slowly ascending the slope.

Descending A Grade



WARNING

Rapidly lifting off of the accelerator pedal will cause a sharp sudden decrease in speed. This may cause major crane damage. Slowly lift foot at a rate equivalent to the reduced rate of speed of the machine.

This machine is equipped with a hydrostatic travel system which offers an advantage when descending a steep grade. The hydraulic circuit will limit the speed at which the motors will rotate, and this speed limiting will depend on the travel mode selected. Grades must not be descended faster than they can be ascended. If the machine travels up a grade in a selected travel mode then it must travel down the grade in the same or lower travel mode (e.g. an operator must not travel up a hill in two-wheel drive low and down the same hill in two-wheel drive high; this may result in an unsafe condition and or component damage). Keeping the accelerator pedal engaged during travel is critical for ensuring sufficient flow and pressure in the travel circuit at all times. If the operator completely disengages the accelerator pedal to coast or slow the machine, it will continue to roll without maintaining proper hydraulic flow and pressure resulting in possible travel motor damage/failure. This may be counter-intuitive to some operators, but it is the correct way to operate the machine, utilizing the hydraulics to maintain constant speed or control deceleration at all times, including descending a grade. Extremely steep grades may require the additional use of the service brakes. Also, an out-of-control machine or an emergency stop will require the use of the service brakes. The large mass of these machines will possess a large amount of energy when it is traveling, and operators must use caution when traveling the crane in order to maintain a safe operating environment.

Operator's Manual

Highway Travel

Highway travel is considered to be any travel of the crane over 2.5 mph (4km/h). The following conditions and precautions must be met for any highway travel.

1. Ensure the driver and all passengers are wearing seat belts and keep all doors closed during travel eg storage box doors, tool box doors, cab door, etc.

CAUTION

All fly attachments must be properly stored prior to any highway travel.

2. If equipped, the fly must be secured in the stored position on boom.

CAUTION

Do not leave the swing park brake or 360° swing lock, if equipped, in the engaged position during highway travel operations. Failure to release these devices during this operation may result in damage to the swing speed reducer.

3. The boom must be over the front of the crane with the travel swing lock engaged. Release the swing park brake and the 360° swing lock if equipped.
4. All boom sections must be fully retracted with the boom at 0° angle. Secure the hook block to prevent excessive swinging.



DANGER

It is recommended that the boom be positioned at 0 degrees when traveling the crane on the highway. However, it may be necessary to raise the boom slightly to increase right side visibility. If the boom must be raised, extreme care must be taken to avoid boom contacting any overhead obstacles, especially power lines.

5. All outriggers must be fully retracted (jacks and beams) with all pontoons removed from jacks and stored properly.

Note: The crane can travel with the outrigger boxes removed.

6. The drive train must be set to 2-Wheel drive and the steering selection switch in the conventional mode.
7. Ensure that the suspension has been adjusted to the proper travel height. Refer to "Suspension Height Adjustment" found later in this Section of the Operator's Manual.
8. Fold the guard rails to the storage/travel position.
9. Retract the cab walk to the stored position.
10. Check all tires for correct pressure, adjust if required. Refer to the Tire Inflation label located on the left rear fender of the carrier.

CAUTION

Extended travel may cause the hydraulic oil in the travel circuit to overheat. Crane damage may occur if hydraulic oil temperatures are exceeded. Monitor the trans temperature gauge to ensure hydraulic oil temperature within the travel circuit is not exceeded. Refer to "Transmission Controls" found earlier in this Section for maximum travel system temperatures.

11. During highway travel there must be at least a 30 minute rest period every 50 miles of driving or 2 hours of sustained operation whichever occurs first and a 60 minute rest period after 4 hours of operation.
12. Obey all "Rules of the Road" and travel carefully.

Operator's Manual

Job Site Travel, No Load, Upper Over The Front Boom Fully Retracted 2.5 MPH (4km/h) Maximum

Counterweight		Maximum Boom Angle (°)			
lbs	kg	10', 31'–55' Fly Stored	10', 31' Fly Base Erected 2° Offset	55' Fly Erected 2° Offset	73'–91' Fly Erected 2° Offset
0	0	45	45	45	PROHIBITED
14,000	6 350	45	45	45	PROHIBITED
26,000	11 794	45	45	45	25

Job Site Travel, No Load, Upper Over The Rear Boom Fully Retracted 2.5 MPH (4km/h) Maximum

Counterweight		Maximum Boom Angle (°)			
lbs	kg	10', 31'–55' Fly Stored	10, 31' Fly Base Erected 2° Offset	55' Fly Erected 2° Offset	73'–91' Fly Erected 2° Offset
0		45	PROHIBITED	PROHIBITED	PROHIBITED
14,000	6 350	45	45	45	PROHIBITED
26,000	11 794	45	45	45	25

Job Site Travel

Job site travel is limited to speeds of 2.5 mph (4km/h) or less. The crane may be traveled on the job site with no load per the following procedure:

1. Ensure the driver and all passengers are wearing seat belts and keep all doors closed during travel eg storage box doors, tool box doors, cab door, etc.
2. Ensure that the suspension has been adjusted to the proper travel height. Refer to "Suspension Height Adjustment" in this Operator's Manual.
3. Inflate the tires to pressure listed on the Tire Inflation label located on the left side of the hydraulic reservoir or the Tire Inflation chart in the Crane Rating Manual for 2.5 mph (4km/h) maximum speed.

Note: The crane can travel with the outrigger boxes removed only with the main boom fully retracted and all fly attachments removed or properly stored.

4. If traveling on a firm, smooth, and level surface, refer to the job site travel chart for the proper crane configuration. Do not move the boom during travel.
5. If traveling on a slope, refer to Traveling On A Slope in this Operator's Manual.
6. If swinging the upper is required, level the crane on fully extended outriggers (if installed).

CAUTION

When swinging over the rear, boom hoist cylinder may contact counterweight removal brackets at low boom angles. When operating at low boom angles, be aware that counterweight removal brackets may be installed to outrigger box.

7. Position the upper over the front or rear depending on the job site travel chart used.

CAUTION

Do not leave the swing park brake applied or the 360° swing lock lever in the engaged position when traveling the crane. Failure to release these devices while traveling may result in damage to swing mechanism.

8. Engage the travel swing lock. Release the swing park brake and the 360° swing lock if equipped.
9. Fully retract all outrigger jacks and beams (if installed) and properly store the pontoons.
10. Secure the hook block and/or hook ball to prevent excessive swinging.

Operator's Manual

CAUTION

Extended travel may cause the hydraulic oil in the travel circuit to overheat. Crane damage may occur if hydraulic oil temperatures are exceeded. Monitor the trans temperature gauge to ensure hydraulic oil temperature within the travel circuit is not exceeded. Refer to "Transmission Controls" found earlier in this Section for maximum travel system temperatures.

11. Carefully travel at no more than 2.5 mph (4km/h). Maintain a safe distance from all personnel, obstructions, and power lines.
12. If outrigger boxes are installed on the crane, take extra care due to the increased overall width caused by the outrigger beams. The outriggers or pontoons must not be allowed to hit any obstructions. Maintain a safe distance from all personnel, obstructions, and power lines. Travel only on a firm, level surface.
13. Once the desired destination is reached, position the transmission shifter to neutral and apply the park brake.

Operator's Manual

Pick And Carry Operation

Note: Refer to “Reducing Speed” and “Descending A Grade” in this section of the Operator's Manual before traveling the crane.

Travel during pick and carry operations is restricted to speeds of 2.5 mph (4km/h) or less, and creep, on a firm, level surface. Creep is defined as crane movement limited to 200 ft (61m) in a 30 minute period and not to exceed 1mph (1.6km/h) maximum speed. Lifts are to be made off the main boom only, with the crane prepared as follows:

1. Ensure the driver and all passengers are wearing seat belts and keep all doors closed during travel eg storage box doors, tool box doors, cab door, etc.
2. If equipped, the fly must be secured in the stored position on boom.
3. Ensure that the suspension has been adjusted to the proper travel height. Refer to “Suspension Height Adjustment” found later in this Section of this Operator's Manual.
4. Inflate the tires to the required pressure listed on the Tire Inflation label located on the left rear fender.
5. Make sure the Rated Capacity Limiter is properly set to the correct pick and carry configuration. Do not exceed Pick And Carry capacities. Refer to Creep or 2.5 mph (4km/h) capacity charts in the Crane Rating Manual.
6. Level the crane on fully extended outriggers (if installed) with the tires clear of the ground.

Note: The crane can perform pick and carry operations with the outrigger boxes removed. Refer to the appropriate capacity chart in the Crane Rating Manual before performing pick and carry operations without the outrigger boxes installed.

7. Position the upper over the rear of the carrier and engage the travel swing lock. Release the swing park brake and the 360° swing lock if equipped.

CAUTION

Do not leave swing park brake applied or 360° swing lock lever in the engaged position during pick and carry operations. Failure to release these devices during this operation may result in damage to the swing speed reducer.

8. Boom must be extended in accordance with boom mode “Amax1”, “Amax2”, or “Standard” as applicable.
9. Retract all outrigger jacks (if installed) just clear of the ground but leave the outrigger beams fully extended.
10. Attach as many hand lines as necessary to prevent the load from swinging during travel.
11. Carefully attach the load to the winch rope and lift it only as high as necessary.
12. Move the range select switch located on the overhead control panel to the 6-wheel drive mode.

CAUTION

Extended travel may cause the hydraulic oil in the travel circuit to overheat. Crane damage may occur if hydraulic oil temperatures are exceeded. Monitor the trans temperature gauge to ensure hydraulic oil temperature within the travel circuit is not exceeded. Refer to “Transmission Controls” found earlier in this Section for maximum travel system temperatures.

13. Carefully travel at no more than creep speed or 2.5 mph (4km/h) depending on which chart was selected with the Rated Capacity Limiter.
14. If outrigger boxes are installed on the crane, take extra care due to the increased overall width caused by the extended outrigger beams. The outriggers or pontoons must not be allowed to hit any obstructions. Maintain a safe distance from all personnel and obstructions. Travel only on a firm, level surface.
15. Once the desired destination is reached, position the transmission shifter to neutral and apply the park brake.

Towing The Crane

Always use good judgment and reliable equipment when towing the crane. Towing the crane should be done in emergency situations and for short distances only. Use extra caution when towing the crane on the highway and in traffic.

CAUTION

Do not tow the crane long distances and over 1 mph (1.6km/h). Damage to the hydraulic travel motors will occur. Tow the crane only for short distances and at low speeds.

When making connections between the crane and towing vehicle, be sure none of the connections will cause damage to either vehicle. The recommended connecting points on the crane are the outrigger box mounting lugs. Refer to Figure 1–129. Be sure to use towing equipment of ample size and strength.

Always exercise safety and follow all local codes when towing the crane. Prepare the crane as follows before towing it.

1. If equipped, store the fly on the boom.

CAUTION

Do not leave the swing park brake applied or the 360° swing lock engaged when towing the crane. Failure to release these devices during this operation may result in damage to the swing speed reducer.

2. The boom must be over the front of the crane with the travel swing lock engaged. Release swing park brake and the 360° swing lock if equipped.
3. All boom sections must be fully retracted with the boom at a 0° angle. Secure the hook block to prevent excessive swinging.
4. All outriggers must be fully retracted (jacks and beams) with all pontoons removed from jacks and stored properly.
5. The transmission shifter and all control levers in the operator's cab must be in the neutral position.
6. Unlock the steering column by turning the ignition switch to the "ON" position. Turn on the hazard flashers.
7. Release the park brake when the crane is attached to the towing vehicle and ready to be towed. Releasing the park brake may require the brake to be manually "caged" to allow the front wheels to rotate. Refer to "Caging The Park Brake" found in this Section of this Operator's Manual.
8. Position the guard rails in the storage/travel position.

CAUTION

Do not tow the crane long distances or exceed 1 mph (1.6km/h) speed. Damage to the hydraulic travel motors will occur. Tow the crane only for short distances and at low speeds.

9. Fully retract and store the cab walk.
10. Tow the crane 1 mph (1.6km/h) or less. When the desired location is reached, apply the park brake. Applying the park brake may require the brake to be manually "uncaged". Refer to "Travel Park Brake" in this Operator's Manual.

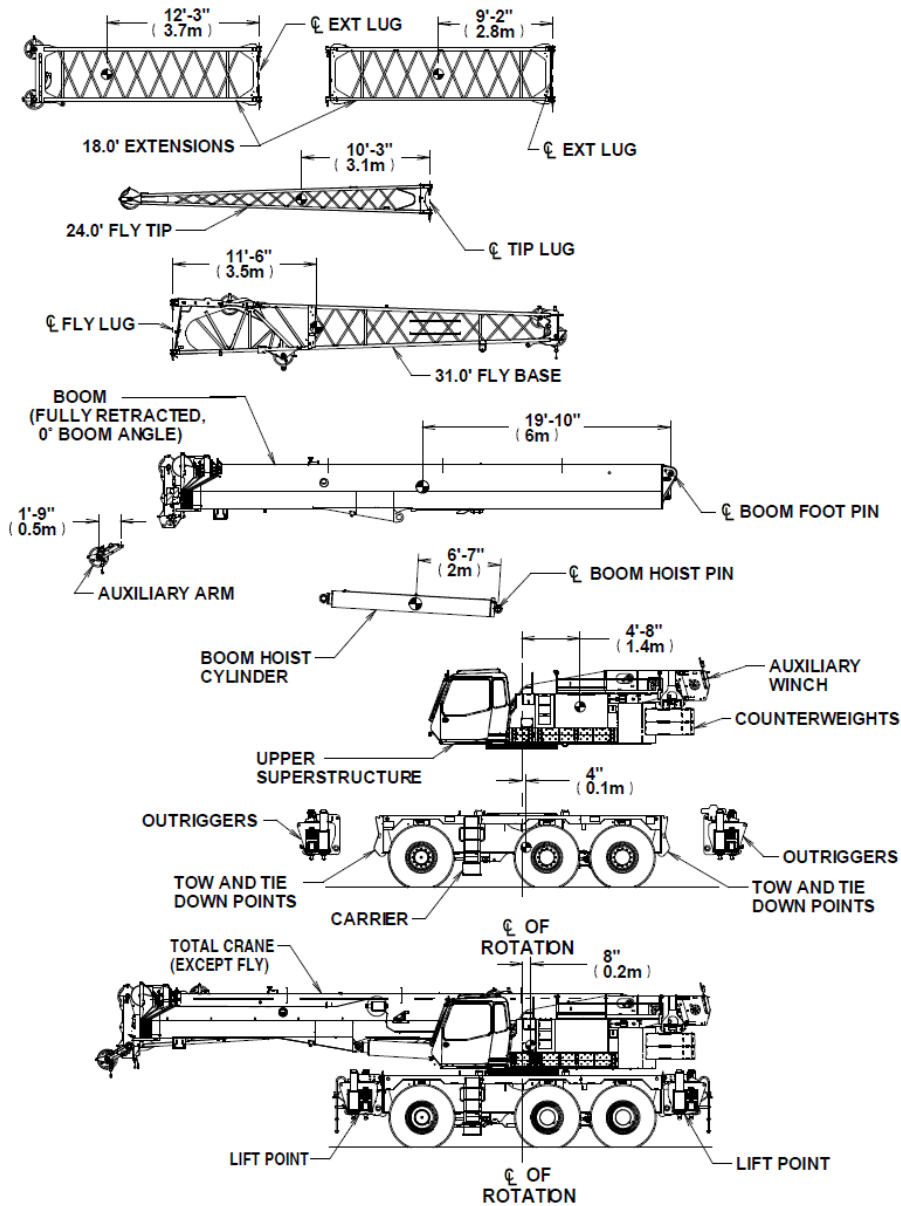
Operator's Manual

Lifting The Crane

The entire crane (except the fly) can be lifted or the components may be removed from the crane and lifted individually. Refer to Figure 1–129 for the center of gravities (CG's) and weights for the entire crane and the individual components. The following conditions and precautions must be met before lifting the crane or removing any component.

1. The crane must be parked on a firm level surface with the travel swing lock engaged, the swing park brake released, and if equipped the 360° swing lock disengaged.
2. Use lifting equipment, shackles, slings, etc., of suitable size and strength. All lifting equipment must be inspected before lifting the crane. The inspection must be recorded and dated in accordance with current OSHA regulations.
3. When lifting the entire crane (without fly), extend the outrigger beams to the intermediate position and install slings around the beams. Protect slings from any sharp edges.
4. The weights and locations of all CG's include all possible options (heaviest crane) except the fly. Use the CG's as a starting point. Center hoist line on the CG, lift a few inches and adjust the hoist line to keep the crane/components level at all times.
5. Removal of any components from the crane will shift the CG of the entire crane. Adjust hoist line to account for the removal of any component.
6. The hook block and ball are assumed to be stored in the front carrier storage compartment.
7. Do not lift crane with fly attached to boom. Damage to the fly may result. Remove the fly from the crane before lifting. Refer to Section 4 of this Operator's Manual for the correct procedures for removing the fly.
8. Use only properly attached nylon straps to lift fly base or fly tip to prevent damage to the component. Protect the straps from sharp edges.
9. Do not allow the hoist lines to contact boom while lifting crane. Damage to the boom may result.

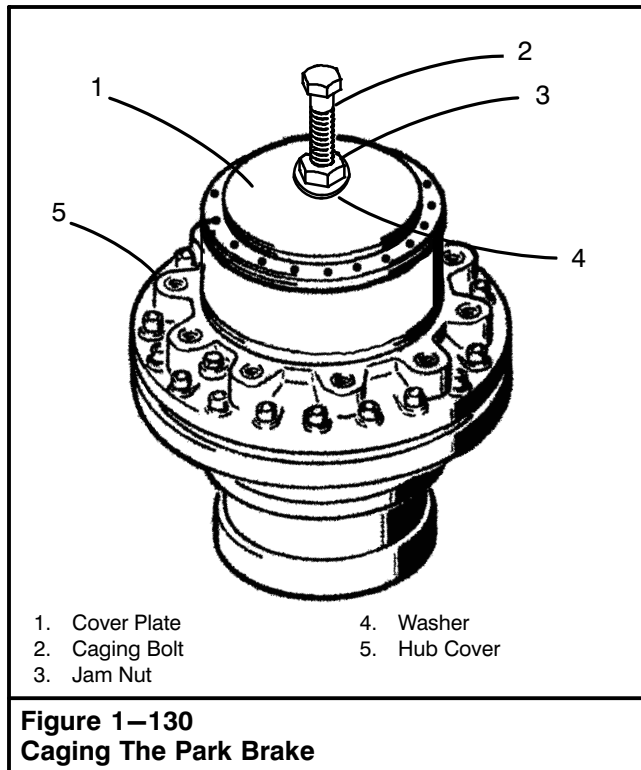
Operator's Manual



Description	Weight
Carrier	31,126 lb (14 118kg)
Outriggers (Both)	17,139 lb (7 774kg)
Upper Structure	25,571 lb (11 599kg)
Boom Hoist Cylinder	4,130 lb (1 873kg)
Boom W/ Foot Pin	26,190 lb (11 880kg)
Counterweight	24,200 lb (10 977kg)
Auxiliary Winch + Rope	3,317 lb (1 505kg)
Auxiliary Arm	120 lb (54kg)
Hook Ball & Block	3,116 lb (1 413kg)
Total Crane	134,909 lb (61 194kg)
Fly Base	2,566 lb (1 164kg)
Fly Tip	810 lb (367kg)
18' Fly Extension	971 lb (441kg)
18' Fly Ext W/ Sheave	1,324 lb (600kg)

Figure 1–129
Towing And Lifting The Crane

Operator's Manual



Caging The Park Brake

If the park brake can not be released to tow the crane, it may have to be manually “caged” to allow the front wheels to rotate. Use the following procedure to cage and uncage the park brake. Refer to Figure 1–130.

1. Clean the surface of the cover plate.
2. Remove the center plug (not shown) from the cover plate.
3. Install the jam nut on the caging bolt as far as possible.

Note: The caging bolt with jam nut is supplied with the crane and should be found in the crane's tool box located under the operator's seat. If the bolt can not be found, refer to the crane's Parts Manual for replacement.

CAUTION

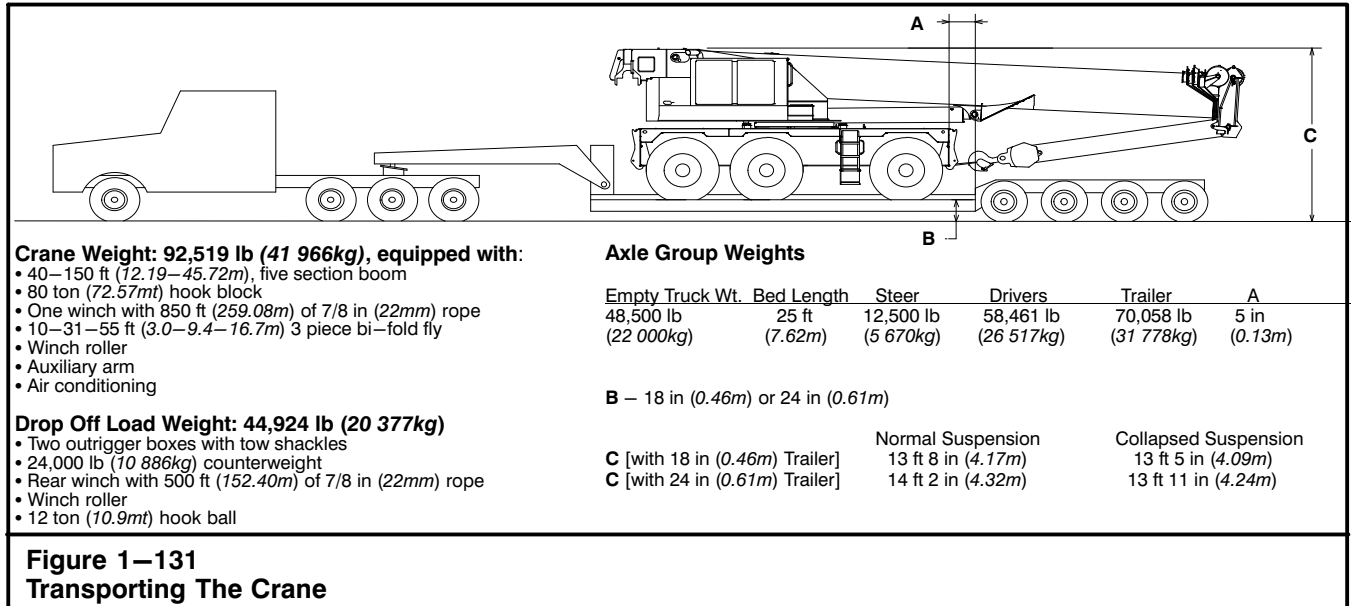
Do not use a pneumatic impact wrench to install caging bolt. Caging bolt and/or piston may be damaged. Use only hand tools to install caging bolt.

4. Place the washer on the caging bolt and manually install the caging bolt through the cover plate and into the piston within the brake.
5. Hand tighten the caging bolt until it bottoms out in the piston. Do not use a hand or power tool for this step.
6. Loosen the caging bolt 1/4 turn.
7. While holding the caging bolt with a wrench, manually turn **only** the jam nut until it contacts the washer (4) against the cover plate.
8. Continue to hold the caging bolt stationary with one wrench while tightening the jam nut with a second wrench. Rotate the jam nut approximately 3/4 turn to cage the spring washers and release the park brake.
9. Confirm that the park brake is released by manually rotating the hub cover.

Uncaging The Park Brake

1. While holding the caging bolt stationary with one wrench, loosen the jam nut with a second wrench by turning it counter-clockwise. Rotate the jam nut until the washer is loose; approximately two full turns.
2. Remove the caging bolt from the cover plate by turning it counter-clockwise.
3. Apply pipe sealant to the threads of the center plug (not shown) and install it in the cover plate.
4. Properly store the caging bolt, jam nut, and washer in the crane's tool box located under the operator's seat.

Operator's Manual



Transporting The Crane

When transporting the crane, precautions should be taken in securing the crane to the trailer, barge, or other means of conveyance. The outrigger box mounting lugs are the recommended tie down points.

If chains are wrapped around the outrigger box collar, be certain the chains will not damage the hydraulic lines and fittings. The chains should be wrapped around the outrigger box, not the outrigger beam.

Always exercise safety and follow all local codes when loading, unloading, or transporting the crane.



WARNING

Do not use towing shackles as a means of lifting crane. These shackles are not intended to be used to lift the crane and may break if subjected to the entire weight of the crane. Severe personal injury or extensive equipment damage may result from this practice.

Prepare crane as follows before transporting it:

1. If equipped, store the fly on boom.
2. The boom must be over the front of the crane with the travel swing lock engaged. Release the swing park brake and the 360° swing lock if equipped.

CAUTION

Do not leave the 360° swing lock, if equipped, in the engaged position while transporting the crane. Failure to release the 360° swing lock during this operation may result in damage to the swing speed reducer.

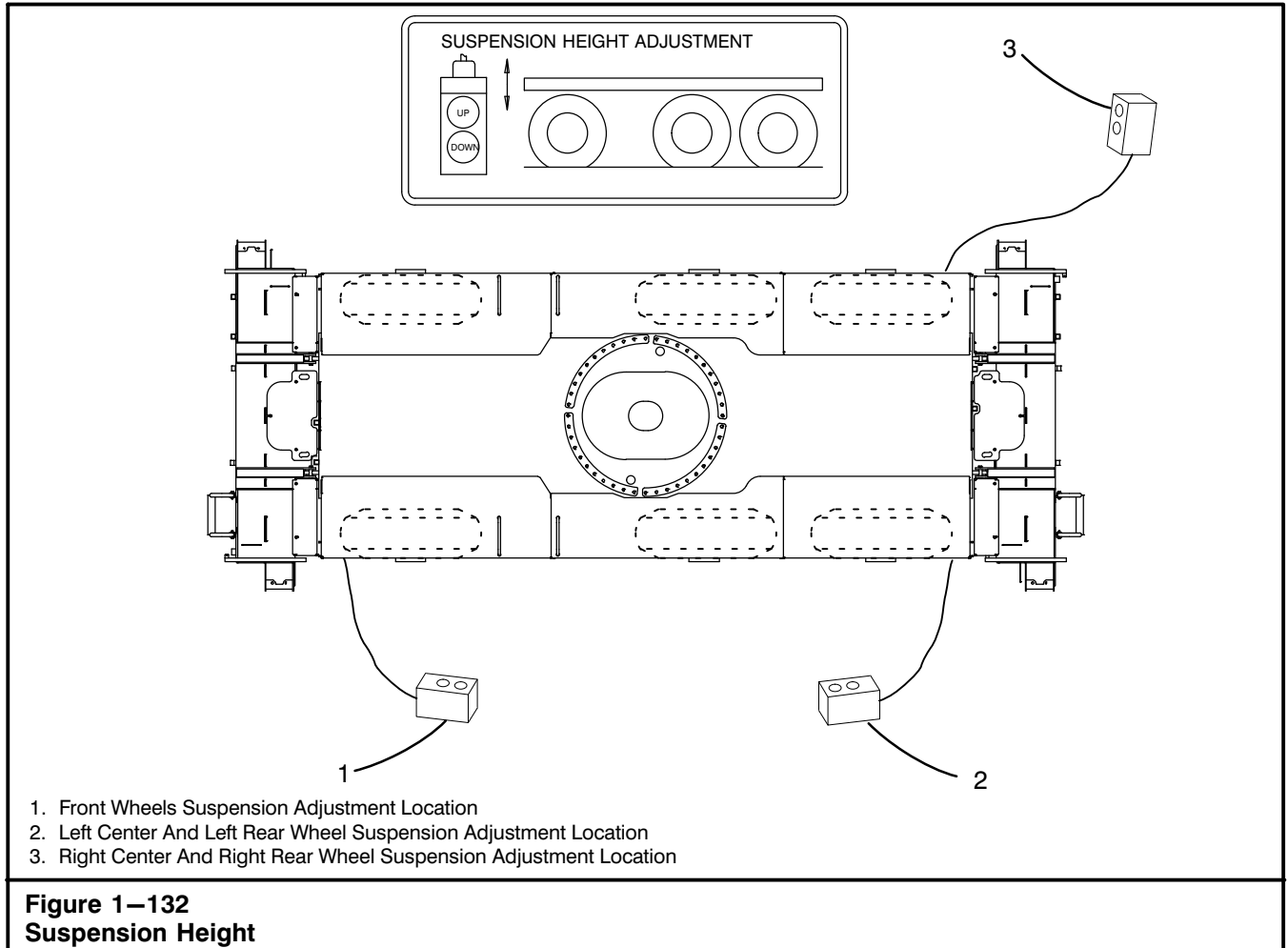
3. All boom sections must be fully retracted with the boom at a 0° or less. Secure the hook block to prevent excessive swinging.
4. If outrigger boxes are installed on the crane, all outriggers must be fully retracted (jacks and beams) with all pontoons removed from jacks and stored properly.
5. Position the transmission shifter to neutral and engage the park brake.
6. If transport height adjustment is required, refer to “Suspension Height Adjustment” found later in this Section of this Operator’s Manual.

Operator's Manual

7. All control levers in the operator's cab must be in the neutral position.
8. Fold the guard rails to the storage/travel position.
9. Retract the cab walk to the stored position.
10. Securely cover the exhaust to prevent air being forced into the exhaust. Covering the exhaust will also help prevent any water or other contamination from entering the exhaust which could also damage the turbocharger.
11. Lock all windows and doors. Remove the keys from the crane.
12. Depending on the specific situations, further preparations may be needed to protect the crane from the environment or vandalism. See "Crane Storage" later in this Section of this Operator's Manual for further suggestions.

CAUTION

When a turbocharged engine is not running, air forced into the exhaust will cause the turbocharger impeller to spin. Without the engine running, the turbocharger bearing is not lubricated. When transporting the crane and the exhaust is facing in a direction such that the travel speed continually forces air into the exhaust, it may cause major damage to, or total destruction of the turbocharger.



Suspension Height Adjustment

The oscillation suspension cylinders can be retracted to reduce the overall height of the crane during transport. A hand held remote control box with 20 ft (6.1m) of cable is used to adjust the height of the crane. (This is the same remote control box as used on the counterweight removal system.) Refer to Figure 1–132. A quick connect electrical connection is provided under the left front fender for the front wheels. A second quick connect electrical connection is provided under the left rear fender for the left side center and rear wheels. A third quick connect electrical connection is provided under the right rear fender for the right center and rear wheels.

Once the crane reaches the job site and is unloaded from the transport vehicle, the suspension must be

properly adjusted to the correct travel height before operating the crane.

CAUTION

Do not travel the crane with the axle oscillation cylinders fully extended or fully retracted. Major damage to suspension components can occur if the crane's oscillation suspension is not properly adjusted. Oscillation cylinders which are not properly adjusted can leave suspension components unprotected from shock loads which can lead to major crane damage. Inspect the axle oscillation cylinders daily for the proper adjustment as required.

Operator's Manual

Use the following procedures to adjust the travel height.

Note: This procedure is potentially very dangerous. It requires no fewer than three people to perform. One person in the operator's cab, one person to make adjustments, and one person to carefully watch so no one gets hurt.

1. Park the crane on a firm level surface.
2. Position the upper directly over the front of the carrier, boom fully retracted at 0 degree angle, and the travel swing lock engaged.
3. Select 2-wheel high drive mode.



DANGER

Working in close proximity with the tires with the transmission in gear can be extremely dangerous. Ensure the park brake is applied and fully functional. Post a signal person to watch carefully to ensure the safety of the person servicing the crane. Failure to comply with the above could result in a fatal accident.

4. Apply the park brake, block the wheels if necessary, and move the transmission shifter to forward.
5. Measure the non-painted rod length for each oscillation cylinder pair (front, right, and left side). The sum of the exposed rods should equal 4.25 in \pm 0.125 in (10.8cm \pm 0.3cm). If suspension cylinders are not within specification proceed to the next step.

6. With the crane on a firm, level surface and on tires, push the UP button to extend the oscillation cylinders until the measured sum of the exposed rods equals 4.25 in (10.8cm) for each cylinder pair (front, right, and left side).

Note: Do not retract suspension cylinders to obtain the measured sum of the exposed rods.

7. Measure the non-painted rod length on the front oscillation cylinder pair. Measured sum should equal 4.25 in \pm 0.125 in (10.8cm \pm 0.3cm).
8. Measure the non-painted rod length on the left rear oscillation cylinder pair. Measured sum should equal 4.25 in \pm 0.125 in (10.8cm \pm 0.3cm).
9. Measure the non-painted rod length on the right rear oscillation cylinder pair. Measured sum should equal 4.25 in \pm 0.125 in (10.8cm \pm 0.3cm).
10. For transporting the crane, the suspension may be fully lowered exposing 0 inches of rod length. Press the DOWN button and hold until cylinders are fully retracted.
11. Move the transmission shifter to neutral.
12. Disconnect the control box and store in the storage box located behind the fuel tank.

Operator's Manual

Crane Storage

Anytime the crane is going to be left unattended it should be prepared so that it will not be damaged by the elements, be an attraction to vandals, or a plaything for children.

Short Term Storage

1. Do not leave crane where it will be a traffic hazard.
2. Lower all loads to the ground.
3. The travel swing lock must be engaged.
4. Fully retract the boom. Boom down to 0°. The fly may be erected if the crane is on outriggers.
5. Tie off the hook block to the towing shackles. Winch lines should be snug.
6. All control levers must be in the neutral position.
7. Position the transmission shifter to neutral, engage the park brake, and shutdown the engine. Block the wheels to prevent the crane from rolling if on tires.
8. If the crane is on outriggers, the outriggers must be properly set and supported so the crane will remain level.
9. In cold weather, locate the crane where it will not freeze to the ground.
10. To preserve battery life, move the battery disconnect switches to the off position.
11. Lock all windows and doors. Remove the keys from the crane.

Long Term Storage

1. Store the crane inside a building if possible.
2. Thoroughly clean the crane.
3. Touch up any spots where paint has chipped. This will prevent rusting.
4. Lubricate the entire crane as per the lubrication chart. Make sure all gear cases are filled to their proper oil level.

5. Inflate tires to proper pressure as shown on the Tire Inflation label located on the left rear fender of the crane or the Tire Inflation chart located in the Crane Rating Manual. Check tire pressures periodically during storage to make sure they do not go flat. If possible block the crane up so the tires are clear of the ground. Make sure the blocking is placed so the crane cannot fall off it. If this is not possible, set the crane on planks so the tires will not sink in the ground. Block tires to prevent crane from rolling.
6. Fully retract all hydraulic cylinders if possible. Fully retract the boom and store the fly, if equipped. Cover all cylinder rods and machined and unpainted surfaces with a coat of grease.
7. Leave all control levers in neutral.
8. Position the transmission shifter to neutral, engage the park brake, and shutdown the engine.
9. Prepare the engine as per the engine manufacturer's manual. Make sure antifreeze protection is sufficient to prevent the engine from freezing. If antifreeze protection is not adequate, completely drain the engine block.
10. After the engine has cooled, cover all open areas around the engine, operator's cab, etc. to prevent entry of water. Cover the entire engine area with a tarp if possible.
11. To preserve battery life, move the battery disconnect switches to the off position.
12. Remove the keys and lock the operator's cab doors if in a location where vandalism may occur. Cover all operator's cab glass with plywood or boards to prevent glass breakage. Provide a means of locking the engine access doors, fuel tank, and hydraulic reservoir.
13. Drain all moisture from the air reservoirs to prevent rust and deterioration.
14. Store the crane so it does not provide a plaything for children. Such a unit can be an "attractive nuisance" for children to play on. If they fall off it or get entangled, serious injury may result.
15. While in storage, the crane should be "exercised" every 60 days to ensure the working condition of the crane. Remove necessary tarps and covers, start the engine, and operate all switches, control cables, and hydraulic functions several times to circulate lubricants and to keep all mechanisms and linkages operative.

Operator's Manual

Table Of Contents

General Lubrication Information	2-1
Lubrication Chart	2-2
Lubrication Specifications	2-3
Link-Belt Preferred Hydraulic Oil	2-7
Disposal Of Used Lubricants, Fluids, Etc.	2-7
Engine Cooling System	2-8
Cooling System Test	2-8
Cooling System Level Check	2-8
Cooling System Coolant Change	2-10
Engine Fuel Filters	2-11
Fuel Filter Water Drain	2-11
Fuel Filter/Water Separator Change	2-12
Secondary Fuel Filter Change	2-12
Hydraulic Reservoir	2-13
Water Drain	2-13
Hydraulic Reservoir Oil Level Check	2-13
Adding Oil To The Hydraulic Reservoir	2-13
Hydraulic Reservoir Oil Change	2-13
Hydraulic Reservoir Filter Change	2-16
Hydraulic Charge Flow Filter Change	2-17
Hydraulic Pressure Filter Change	2-18
Hydraulic Case Drain Filter Change	2-19
Setting The Transmission Hydraulic Oil Temperature Alarm	2-20
Hose Reel Inspection	2-21
Hydraulic Pump Drive Lubrication	2-22
Pump Drive Oil Level Check	2-22
Pump Drive Oil Change	2-22
Engine Air System Inspection	2-24
Engine Air Cleaner	2-24
Changing The Air Cleaner Filter	2-25
Swing Speed Reducer Lubrication	2-26
Swing Speed Reducer Oil Level Check	2-26

Operator's Manual

Swing Speed Reducer Oil Change	2-26
Winch Drum Lubrication	2-27
Winch Drum Oil Level Check	2-27
Winch Drum Oil Change	2-27
Boom Inspection And Lubrication	2-28
Wire Rope Lubrication	2-29
Lattice Fly Inspection And Lubrication	2-29
Crane Monitoring Systems	2-30
Hook Block, Ball, And Swivel Inspection And Maintenance	2-31
Turntable Bearing Capscrew Torque	2-32
Turntable Bearing Capscrew Inspection Schedule	2-32
Hydraulic Hose Assembly Inspection	2-33
Paint Maintenance	2-33
Regular Preventative Maintenance	2-34
Polishing And Waxing Procedure	2-34

General Lubrication Information

The crane should be regularly and systematically lubricated in accordance with the Lubrication Chart shown on the following page. Refer to Figure 2–1. Another copy of the chart is located on the right side of the crane behind the front engine access door. The time intervals shown on the Lubrication Chart are intended as a guide only. Under unusual working conditions, such as working in dry, dusty conditions, in water or mud, or around a corrosive atmosphere, more frequent lubrication could be necessary. In these cases, the oiler must use his best judgment and work out his own lubrication schedule.

In addition to the points on the Lubrication Chart, all movable linkages and control cables should be periodically lubricated to resist wear.

There are some very practical reasons for lubricating and lubricant changes. Lubricants serve more than one purpose. They not only lubricate, but they transport chemically reactive additives, wash away minute wear particles, serve as a corrosion inhibitor, and act as a heat transfer medium. Draining and refilling any gear unit with a fresh supply of oil also assists in eliminating wear particles not trapped by magnetic plugs.

WARNING

Shutdown the engine before fueling or lubricating crane. To avoid a fire hazard, do not smoke or handle fuel around an open flame. To avoid crane damage and to prevent serious injury, do not lubricate gears or any assemblies while they are in motion.

The following procedures are important for proper lubrication of the crane:

1. Wipe the grease gun nozzle and grease fittings clean before lubricating. This will help keep dirt and grit from entering the bushing or bearing.
2. Keep all grease and oil cans and containers clean. Wipe off oil can covers before using. Always replace the lid on containers when finished to prevent entry of foreign materials.
3. Drain oil cases when hot to drain off accumulated sludge.
4. Watch for signs of incorrect lubrication such as failure of clean grease to purge the old grease.
5. Bleed off hydraulic pressure before opening or removing a line or fitting.
6. Replace all guards before starting crane.
7. Use a clean funnel equipped with a strainer for pouring lubricants.
8. Clean the area around check and fill plugs before removing them to prevent entry of foreign particles.



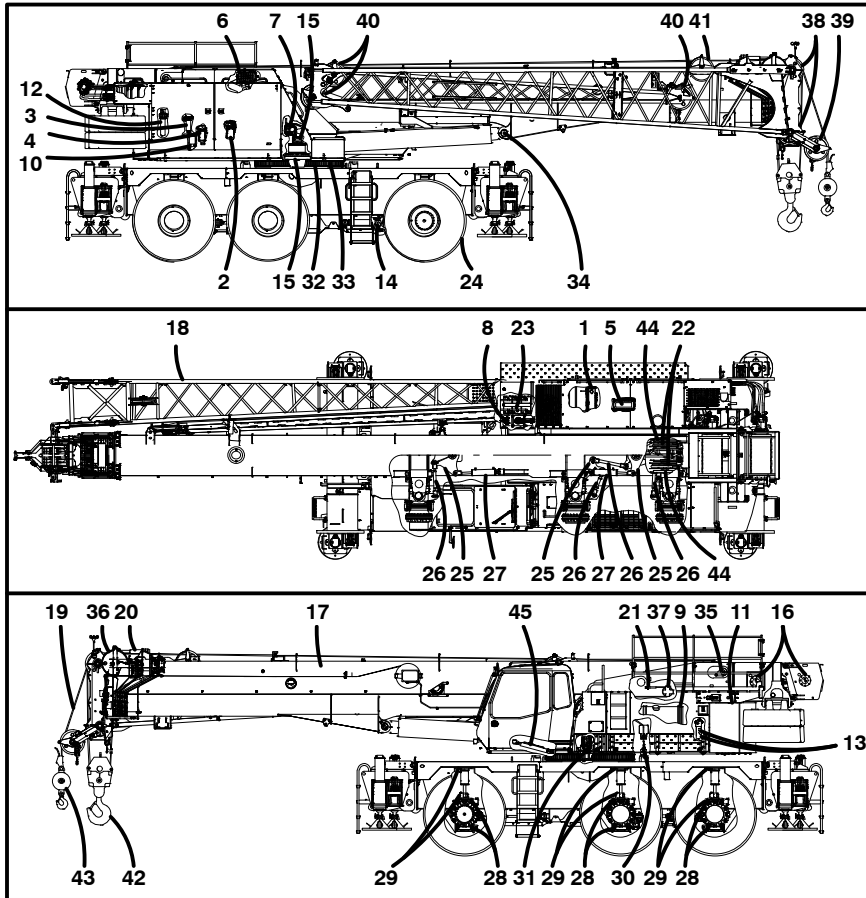
DANGER

When it is required to operate the crane during maintenance and/or adjustments, use extreme caution as service personnel may have to work near and/or under moving machinery. Serious personal injury and/or death may result. Always remain in visual and/or verbal contact to ensure the safety of service personnel. Use a signal person if necessary.

Note: See specific instructions in this Section of this Operator's Manual for lubrication check and change procedures on all gear compartments.

Keep grease, oil containers, and guns clean. Wipe all fittings before lubrication. Raise the crane on outriggers or block the wheels and shutdown the engine before working on the crane. Replace all guards and panels before operating the crane.

Operator's Manual



KEY

- SYMBOLS:
 - * Check fluid level and fill as required.
 - 0 Inspect, lubricate, adjust, repair, or replace as required.
 - + Change oil (and filter if applicable).
 - # Change filter only.
 - @ Clean filter/strainer as necessary.
 - X Clean fins if needed.
 - \$ Drain water.
 - N/A Not applicable.
 - A,E,H, etc. Lubrication codes. Refer to Lubrication Code Identification on this chart. Link-Belt recommends the lubrication types on this chart. However, if an equivalent is to be used refer to the Operator's Manual for detailed specifications to ensure a correct equivalent is used.
2. Refer to engine manufacturer's manual for proper maintenance, lubrication, fuel or coolant grade, and additional information.
3. Refer to the Operator's Manual for additional information.
4. Lubricate the turntable bearing through the grease fittings on the front of the upper frame. Use a low pressure handgun and pump grease until clean grease comes out. Rotate the upper a few degrees and pump grease until clean grease comes out again. Repeat throughout the 360° cycle.

CAPACITY

Location	Gallons	Liters	Lube Code Above -10° F	Lube Code Below -10° F
Pump Drive	1.25	4.7	TT	TT
Hydraulic Reservoir	255.00	965.3	Key 3	Key 3
Hydraulic System	425.00	1,608.8	Key 3	Key 3
Swing Speed Reducer	1.20	4.5	E	LL
Swing Brake	0.08	0.30	Key 3	Key 3
Winch Drums (Each)	5.50	20.8	HH	QQ
Fuel Tank	90.00	340.7	Key 2	Key 2
Engine Coolant	17.00	64.4	Key 2	Key 2
Engine Oil	6.00	22.7	Key 2	Key 2

LUBRICATION CODE IDENTIFICATION

Lube Code	Recommended Type
A	Grease, NLGI Grade No. 2
E	Extreme Pressure Gear Lubricant, 80W/90
H	Grease (Summer Grade)
HH	Gear Lubricant, SAE 90 API GL2/GL3
KK	Grease, NLGI Grade No. 1
LL	Extreme Pressure Gear Oil, 75W/90
QQ	Synthetic Gear Oil, Grade 150
TT	Synthetic Gear Oil, Grade 220

MAINTENANCE

Location	Ref No.	Service Interval (Hours)	Operation	Key	Lube Code Above -10° F	Lube Code Below -10° F
Engine Cooling System	1	10	*X	1,2,3	Key 2	Key 2
Engine Oil	2	10	*	1,2	Key 2	Key 2
Primary Fuel Filter/Water Separator	3	10	\$	1,2,3	Key 2	Key 2
Secondary Fuel Filter	4	Key 2	#	1,2,3	Key 2	Key 2
Engine Crankcase Filter	5	Key 2	#	1,2,3	N/A	N/A
Engine Air Cleaner	6	10	0	1,2,3	N/A	N/A
Dosing Module Filter	7	Key 2	#	1,2,3	N/A	N/A
Diesel Exhaust Fluid	8	10	*	1,2,3	Key 2	Key 2
Fuel Tank	9	10	*	1,2,3	Key 2	Key 2
Pump Drive	10	10	*	1,3	TT	TT
Hydraulic Reservoir	11	2000	+	1,3	TT	TT
		10	*, \$	1,3	Key 3	Key 3
		500	#	1,3	Key 3	Key 3
Charge Filter	12	500	#	1,3	Key 3	Key 3
Pressure Filters	13	500	#	1,3	Key 3	Key 3
Case Drain Filter	14	500	@	1,3	Key 3	Key 3
Swing Speed Reducer	15	50	*	1,3	E	LL
		1000	+	1,3	E	LL
Winch Drum(s)	16	50	*	1,3	HH	QQ
		1000	+	1,3	HH	QQ
Boom	17	10	0	1,3	N/A	N/A
Fly	18	10	0	1,3	N/A	N/A
Wire Rope	19	10	0	1,3	Key 3	Key 3
Boom Extend Wire Rope Anchors	20	250	0	1,3	N/A	N/A
Boom Retract Wire Rope Anchors	21	250	0	1,3	N/A	N/A
Hose Reel	22	250	0	1,3	N/A	N/A
Batteries	23	50	0	1	N/A	N/A
Tires	24	10	0	1,3	N/A	N/A

LUBRICATION

Location	Reference Number	Number Of Points	Lube Interval (Hours)	Lube Code Above -10° F	Lube Code Below -10° F
Bell Cranks	25	4	50	A	KK
Steer Linkage	26	16	50	A	KK
Steering Cylinder Ends	27	8	50	A	KK
Control Arms	28	24	50	A	KK
Oscillation Cylinder Pins	29	12	250	A	KK
Travel Swing Lock	30	1	250	A	KK
360 Swing Lock	31	4	250	A	KK
Turntable Bearing	32	2, Key 4	50	A	KK
Turntable Gear Teeth	33	All	50	H	H
Boom Hoist Cylinder Pins	34	2	10	A	KK
Boom Foot Pins	35	2	10	A	KK
Boom Extend Sheaves	36	2	50	A	KK
Boom Retract Sheaves	37	2	50	A	KK
Boom Head Machinery	38	All	50	A	KK
Auxiliary Lifting Sheave	39	1	50	A	KK
Fly Sheaves (Base & Tip)	40	All	50	A	KK
Fly Wire Rope Deflector	41	1	50	A	KK
Sheave					
Hook Block & Sheaves	42	All	Key 3	A	KK
Hook Ball	43	1	Key 3	A	KK
Hose Reel Wobble Rollers	44	2	50	A	KK
Cab Tilt Cylinder	45	2	150	A	KK

Figure 2-1
Lubrication Chart

Lubrication Specifications

The following specifications are approved for use in Link-Belt cranes. The specifications are identified by a code letter. When a code letter appears on the lubrication or maintenance chart, it is referring to one of the lubricants as described on the following pages. These lubricants are listed by specifications and by one brand name. Most reputable oil companies can provide a lubricant to match a particular specification. It may then be used in the crane no matter what the brand name. When using other brand names, the user assumes all responsibility for product and patent liability.

Type A

Grease, NLGI Grade No. 2

A mineral oil based, multipurpose lithium complex extreme pressure (EP) grease. Composed of a lithium complex soap, compounded with highly refined paraffinic base oils and formulated with a special additive package to provide rust and corrosion protection, resistance to water washout, oxidation stability, and wear protection under high loads. It meets the requirements of ASTM D4950 GC-LB covering wheel bearing and chassis greases. Recommended for use as a multipurpose industrial grease, particularly where temperature operation is of concern.

Typical Characteristics:

Appearance	Blue, Tacky
Lithium Complex Soap, wt %	10
Penetration, D 217, Worked 60 X	280
D 217, Worked 10,000 X % Change	10
Dropping Point, Mettler, °F (°C)	450+ (232+)
Mineral Oil Viscosity, D 445	
cSt at 104°F (40°C)	150–205
cSt at 112°F (100°C)	14.5–18
Rust Protection, D 1743	Pass
Copper Corrosion, D 4048	1B
Timken, OK Load, lbs, D 2509	40
Four-Ball EP, D 2596	
Load Wear Index, kgf	46
Weld Point, kgf	250
Four-Ball Wear, mm, D 2266	0.4
1 hr, 167°F (75°C), 1200 rpm, 40 kg	
Water Washout, wt % loss at	
100°F (38°C) D 1264	4
Grease Mobility, U.S. Steel Method g(l)/min	
–30°F (34°C)	0.0 (0)
–20°F (29°C)	0.5(1.9)
0°F (–17°C)	5.5(20.8)
20°F (7°C)	30(113.6)
Guide to Usable Temperature	
Min., °F (°C)	–20 (–29)
Continuous Service, Max, °F (°C)	325 (163)
Short Exposure, Max, °F (°C)	450 (232)

Shell Code 70311– ALBIDA LC or Equivalent.

Type E

Extreme Pressure Gear Lubricant, 80W/90

An extreme pressure gear lubricant containing anti-foam protection, oxidation stability, anti-rust, and anti-corrosion qualities. Contains sulfur and phosphorus additive materials but no zinc in compliance with Eaton, General Motors, and International Harvester truck driving axle requirements.

Must meet or exceed military specification MIL–PRF–2105E, and is suitable for API service designations GL3, GL4, MT–1, and GL5, with a rating of 10 as determined in the shock load test CRC–L–42.

Used in hoist reducer, swing reducer, driving axles, and drop transmissions.

Physical Properties:

Appearance	Very Dark Red, Dark
Gravity, °API	25.7–27
Flash, COC, (Min) (°F) (°C)	375 (191)
Pour Point, (Max) (°F) (°C)	–20 (–29)
Viscosity, Max @ 100°F (38°C) SUS	829
Viscosity, Max @ 210°F (99°C) SUS	72.5
Viscosity Index	95–100
Sulfur	2.37
Ash (%)	None
CU Corr 3 Hours 250°F (121°C)	1 b
Channel Point, Max (°F) (°C)	0 (–17)
Timken Test Lever Load lb (Min)	50
Phosphorus (%)	12

Shell 59210 Spirax HD 80W/90 or Equivalent.

Operator's Manual

Type H

Grease (Summer Grade)

For open gear applications. Satisfactory down to -40°F (-40°C) on dry gears. Good adhesiveness on open gears at 73°F (22.7°C) and good retention. The grease with use will become tacky and will resist leaking. Used on cast tooth gears and ring gear teeth. Extremely resistant to water washing.

Physical Properties:

Mineral Oil Component:

Viscosity at 100°F (38°C) SUS	4545
Viscosity at 210°F (99°C) SUS	170
Load Wear Index	56
Penetration, Worked at 77°F (25°C) (60 Strokes)	280
Dropping Point, Min ($^{\circ}\text{F}$) ($^{\circ}\text{C}$)	222(105)
Soap Base — Calcium (%) with 22% graphite and 3% Molybdenum Disulfide	9.0
Water (%)	0.5
Recommended Max Temperature ($^{\circ}\text{F}$) ($^{\circ}\text{C}$)	175 (79)
Consistency	Buttery Grease
Color	Black—Gray

Shell 71228 — Rhodina SDX Grease 2 or Equivalent.

Type HH

Gear Lubricant

This gear lubricant is suitable for use in a wide variety of mobile equipment gear and brake applications. Has good oxidation and thermal stability, is non-corrosive to most gear and bearing materials, and is inhibited to provide good foam resistance and water separation characteristics. Has moderate concentration of EP additives.

Must meet performance requirements of AGMA Specification 250.04 for extreme pressure lubricants. Is suitable for API service designations of GL2 and GL3.

Typical Characteristics:

Appearance	Very Dark Red
Gravity, $^{\circ}\text{API}$	26.7–29
Flash, COC, Min $^{\circ}\text{F}$ ($^{\circ}\text{C}$)	410 (210)
Pour Point, Max $^{\circ}\text{F}$ ($^{\circ}\text{C}$)	-10 (-23)
Viscosity cSt @ 104°F (40°C)	150
Viscosity cSt @ 212°F (100°C)	14.4
Viscosity SUS @ 100°F (38°C)	796
Viscosity SUS @ 210°F (99°C)	76
Viscosity Index	95–100
Sulfur, %	0.66
Phosphorous, %	0.03
Timken OK Load, Lbs (Min)	60
AGMA No. EP	4

Shell 65104, OMALA 150 or Equivalent.

Type KK

Gear Lubricant

Low temperature, extreme pressure, synthetic all purpose grease made from a low pour point synthetic hydrocarbon lubricant, thickened with lithium or clay. The grease is fortified with an extreme pressure additive and a rust inhibitor to provide even better equipment protection.

A multi-purpose grease that can be pumped from normal grease dispensing equipment at temperatures down to a -55°F (-48°C). Good for heavy duty operation.

Recommended for use in centralized lube systems, wheel bearings, chassis bearings, universal joints, and all other applications requiring a grease of this type. Offers full protection regardless of the season. Pumpable at -55°F (-48°C), even in a hand grease gun. Excellent anti-wear and load carrying ability, stays in place better than lighter greases, waterproof to resist wash-out, good shear stability. Assures good high temperature performances. Compatibility of this grease with ordinary greases presents no problems.

Physical Properties:

Thickener	Lithium or Clay
Penetration worked @ 77°F (25°C) (ASTM D217)	
60 strokes	315–325
Texture	Smooth
Dropping Point, ($^{\circ}\text{F}$) ($^{\circ}\text{C}$)	
(ASTM D2265) Max	+500 (260)
Viscosity (ASTM D445) cSt	
104 $^{\circ}\text{F}$ (40 $^{\circ}\text{C}$)	26.2–32
212 $^{\circ}\text{F}$ (100 $^{\circ}\text{C}$)	5.08–5.2
Rust Properties (ASTM D1743)	Pass
Four Ball, EP (ASTM D2596)	
Wear, mm, Max	0.7
Weld, kg, Min	250
Color	Red or Brown

Exxon Mobil Mobiltemp SHC 32 or Equivalent.

Type LL

Extreme Pressure Gear Oil, 75W/90

A synthetic, extreme pressure gear oil designed for cold weather operation in hypoid, spiral bevel, and planetary gear axles. Must meet the requirements of Military Specification MIL–PRF–2105E. Meets API GL–5 and MT–1 performance ratings

Physical Properties:

Gravity, $^{\circ}\text{API}$ (ASTM D–1298)	25.2–33.3
Kinematic Viscosity, (ASTM D–443)	
Min @ 212 $^{\circ}\text{F}$ (100 $^{\circ}\text{C}$), cSt	15.5
Max @ 104 $^{\circ}\text{F}$ (40 $^{\circ}\text{C}$)	126
Apparent Viscosity, (ASTM 2983) (Brookfield)	
Max @ -40°F (-40°C), ml	150,000
Flash Point (ASTM D–92)	
Min $^{\circ}\text{F}$ ($^{\circ}\text{C}$)	400 (204)
Pour Point (ASTM D–97)	
Max $^{\circ}\text{F}$ ($^{\circ}\text{C}$)	-49 (-45)
Viscosity Index (ASTM D–2270)	140–151
Copper Corrosion, (ASTM D–130)	
3 hrs. @ 250 $^{\circ}\text{F}$ (121 $^{\circ}\text{C}$) Max	3
Foaming Characteristics (ASTM D–892)	
(Foam readings taken immediately	
after 5 minutes aeration)	
Max @ 75 $^{\circ}\text{F}$ (24 $^{\circ}\text{C}$), ml	20
Max @ 200 $^{\circ}\text{F}$ (94 $^{\circ}\text{C}$), ml	50
Storage Stability, % Max	
(FTMS 791B Method 3440)	0.25
Compatibility	
(FTMS 791B Method 3430)	Note 1

The latest revision of all referenced specifications and test methods shall be used.

FTMS= Federal Test Method Standard.

Note 1: Use approved per Eaton PS–163 and Mack GO–J Plus.

Mobil Oil Molilube SHC 75W/90, Code No. 51100-6 or Equivalent.

Operator's Manual

Type QQ

Synthetic Gear Oil

A specially formulated lubricant for applications where service conditions are severe because of high operating and bulk oil temperatures. Typical applications are spur, helical, herringbone, bevel, and planetary gears and gear boxes with multiple disc brakes. Lubricant is derived from synthetic based oils that are more resistant to thermal and oxidation degradation. Can offer advantages of extension of lubricant life and reduced risk of damage to crane elements.

Typical Characteristics:

AGMA Grade No.	4 EP
Gravity, °API	25.5–34.4
ISO Viscosity Grade	150
Viscosity, cSt (ASTM D–445)	
@104°F (40 °C)	140
@ 212°F (100 °C), Cst	14.0
Viscosity, SUS (ASTM D–2161)	
@ 100°F (38 °C)	737
@ 210°F (99 °C)	75–100
Viscosity Index	96–150
Pour Point,	
(ASTM D–97) °F (°C)	–23 (–10)
Flash Point, COC, (ASTM D–92)	
°F (°C)	229–460
Rust Test, Distilled Water,	
(ASTM D–665)	Pass
Copper Corrosion Test	
24 hr. –30 hr. @ 212°F (100 °C)	1b
Timken Extreme Pressure Test	
(ASTM D–2782) Pass Value (lbs)	60
FZG Test, Stages, Pass	12
Phosphorus, Wt. %	0.005–0.03

Mobil SHC 629 or Equivalent.

Type TT

Synthetic Gear Oil

A specially formulated lubricant for applications where service conditions are severe because of high operating and bulk oil temperatures. The high viscosity index allows the oil to flow at low temperatures and maintain viscosity at high temperatures. Typical applications are spur, helical, herringbone, bevel, planetary gears, and gear boxes with multiple disc brakes. This lubricant is derived from synthetic based oils that are more resistant to thermal and oxidative degradation. It can offer advantages of extension of lubricant life and reduced risk of damage to crane elements.

Physical Properties:

Gravity, °API	31.6–32.4
ISO Viscosity Grade	220
Viscosity, cSt (ASTM D–445)	
@ 104°F (40 °C)	217–228
@ 212°F (100 °C)	25.2–28.8
Viscosity Index (ASTM D–2270)	146–165
Pour Point (ASTM D–97)	
(°F)	–35–49
(°C)	–37–45
Flash Point, COC (ASTM D–92)	
(°F)	482–510
(°C)	250–266
Rust Test, Distilled Water (ASTM D–665)	Pass

Mobil Oil Company – Mobilgear SHC 220 – or Equivalent.

Link-Belt Preferred Hydraulic Oil

Important:

- Use only pre-filtered hydraulic oil.
- Change interval based on normal operating conditions. Extreme conditions may shorten life. Extended change intervals may be possible for light duty conditions. Oil analysis is recommended at 500 hour intervals to determine fluid health.
- Link-Belt Preferred hydraulic oil is recommended for refill and/or top off. The oil type filled from the factory is indicated on the hydraulic information label. Refer to Figure 2–7. Mixing of oil types is not recommended and may cause adverse effects and warranty may be void.
- Ambient temperature usage based on normal duty cycles. Extreme duty cycles may impact machine's ability to cool the hydraulic oil. Maximum hydraulic oil temperature for the specific oil used must never be exceeded.

Oil Grades	Oil Temperature Use	Ambient Temperature Use	Oil Change Interval (Hours)	Container Capacity		Part Number
				Gallons	Liters	
Standard Temperature Multigrade Oil	10°F to 195°F –12°C to 91°C	10°F to 120°F –12°C to 49°C	3,500	5 55	18.9 208.0	830667001 830667002
Extended Temperature Multigrade Oil	–5°F to 195°F –21°C to 91°C	–5°F to 120°F –21°C to 49°C	4,000	5 55	18.9 208.0	830675001 830675002
Arctic Temperature Multigrade Oil	–40°F to 165°F –40°C to 74°C	–40°F to 80°F –40°C to 27°C	4,000	5 55	18.9 208.2	830673001 830673002

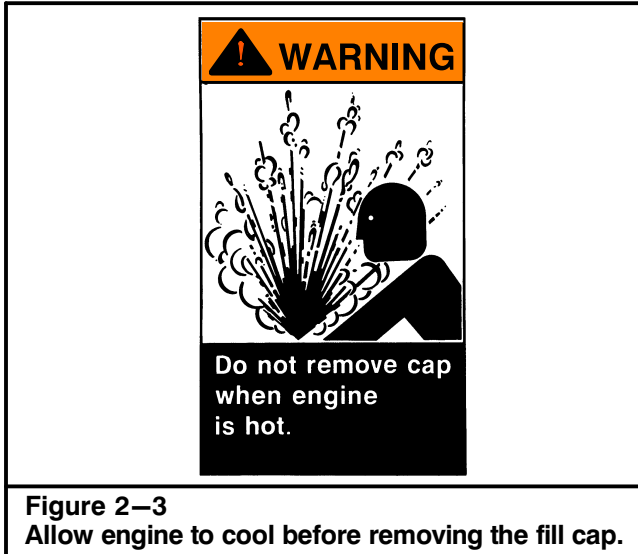
Disposal Of Used Lubricants, Fluids, Etc.

Properly dispose of used lubricants and filters. Every drop of misplaced oil damages the environment. Each year literally thousands of gallons of used oil is dumped into our fields and streams or buried in community landfills. These methods of disposal permanently damage the world around us. You can see that the oil you use is properly disposed of by sending it to a recycling center. Most local automobile service stations are happy to receive used oil and will see to it that the oil is recycled. Refer to the latest EPA, state, and local regulations regarding proper disposal.



Figure 2–2
Please Don't Do It!

Operator's Manual



Engine Cooling System

The coolant in the engine cooling system must be maintained at the proper level and proper concentration levels to adequately keep the engine operating at safe temperatures.

Antifreeze must be used in all climates for both freezing and boiling protection. It broadens the operating temperature range by lowering the coolant freezing point and by raising its boiling point. Refer to engine manufacturer's manual for proper coolant selection.

WARNING

Avoid prolonged and repeated skin contact with antifreeze. Such prolonged, repeated contact can cause skin disorders or other bodily injury. Keep out of reach of children.

Coolant is toxic. Keep away from children and pets. If not reused, dispose of in accordance with local environmental regulations.

Cooling System Test

Check the antifreeze concentration and the freezing point protection as outlined in the engine manufacturer's manual.

Testing the engine coolant is important to ensure that the engine is protected from internal cavitation and from corrosion. Refer to engine manufacturer's manual for additional information on coolant system analysis.

Cooling System Level Check

Check the coolant level in the surge tank every 10 hours of operation. Check the protection level per the maintenance interval schedule in the engine manufacturer's manual.

1. Park the crane on a firm level surface. Position the upper directly over the front of the carrier.
2. Engage the travel swing lock and shutdown the engine.
3. Check that the coolant level in the surge tank is at least up to the "Full-Cold" level in the sight gauge on the side of the surge tank. Refer to Figure 2-4.

WARNING

Engine cooling system is pressurized. Do not remove fill cap from the surge tank with a hot engine. Heated coolant spray or steam can cause personal injury. Wait until the engine has cooled before slowly removing fill cap.

4. If coolant must be added, allow the engine to cool until the the coolant temperature is below 122°F (50°C).

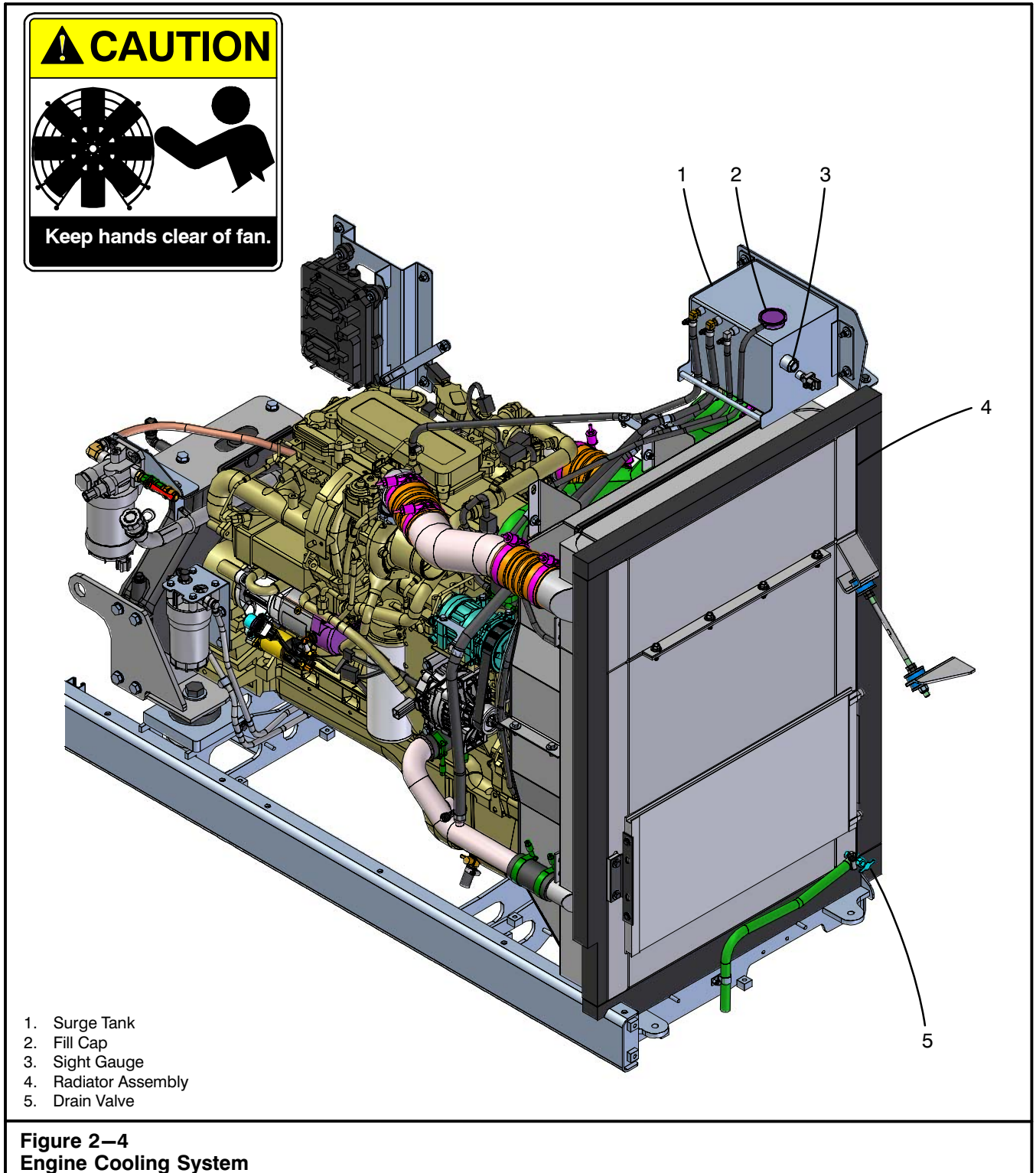
CAUTION

Do not add cold coolant to a hot engine. Engine castings can be damaged. Allow the engine to cool until the coolant temperature is below 122°F (50°C) before adding coolant.

Do not use a sealing additive to stop leaks in the cooling system. This can result in cooling system plugging and inadequate coolant flow, causing the engine to overheat.

If additional coolant must be added, it must be pre-mixed before being added to the system. Since the ability of antifreeze to remove heat from the engine is not as good as water, pouring antifreeze into the system first could contribute to an overheated condition before the liquids are completely mixed.

5. Slowly remove the fill cap. Add coolant, as required, until it is to the "Full-Cold" level in the sight gauge on the side of the surge tank. Use a pre-mixed solution per the engine manufacturer's specification. Refer to engine manufacturer's manual for proper coolant selection.
6. Replace fill cap. Start the engine and let it run until it reaches normal operating temperature. Shut-down the engine and repeat Step 3.



Operator's Manual

Cooling System Coolant Change

Drain, flush, and fill the engine cooling system at the intervals outlined in the engine manufacturer's manual. Use a pre-mixed solution per the engine manufacturer's specification. Refer to engine manufacturer's manual for proper coolant selection.

CAUTION

Protect the environment: Handling and disposing of used antifreeze is subject to federal, state, and local regulations. Use authorized waste disposal facilities, including civic amenity sites and garages providing authorized facilities for the receipt of used antifreeze. If in doubt, contact your local authorities or the EPA for guidance as to proper handling of used antifreeze.

1. Park the crane on a firm level surface. Position the upper directly over the front of the carrier.
2. Engage the travel swing lock and shutdown the engine.
3. Allow the engine to cool until the coolant temperature is below 122°F (50°C).



WARNING

Engine coolant may be hot and could cause burns. Avoid prolonged and repeated skin contact with antifreeze. Such prolonged, repeated contact can cause skin disorders or other bodily injury. Keep out of reach of children.

Coolant is toxic. Keep away from children and pets. If not reused, dispose of in accordance with local environmental regulations.

4. Drain the cooling system by opening the drain valve on the radiator and engine block (Refer to Figure 2–5). Allow the coolant to drain into a suitable container. Properly dispose of used antifreeze. Refer to Figure 2–4.
5. Check for damaged hoses and hose clamps. Hoses must be firm to the feel. If they are soft and spongy they must be replaced. Replace as required. Check the radiator for leaks, damage, and build up of dirt. Clean and replace as required.

6. Close the drain valve on the radiator and engine block (Refer to Figure 2–5).

CAUTION

During filling, air must be vented from the engine coolant passages. Wait 2 to 3 minutes to allow air to be vented. Air trapped in the system may cause damage to the engine.

7. Inspect and clean any debris from the radiator fins.
8. Remove the fill cap from the surge tank.
9. Flush the system as outlined in the engine manufacturer's manual. If the engine is warm, fill slowly to prevent the rapid cooling and distortion of the metal castings.
10. Flush the system as many times as required until the water is clean.
11. Add coolant, as required, until coolant is visible within the sight gauge on the surge tank. Use an extended life coolant (ELC) per the engine manufacturer's specification. Refer to engine manufacturer's manual for proper coolant selection. Do not install the fill cap.

Note: The radiator manufacturer recommends that types and brands of coolant not be inter-mixed because of possible incompatibility.

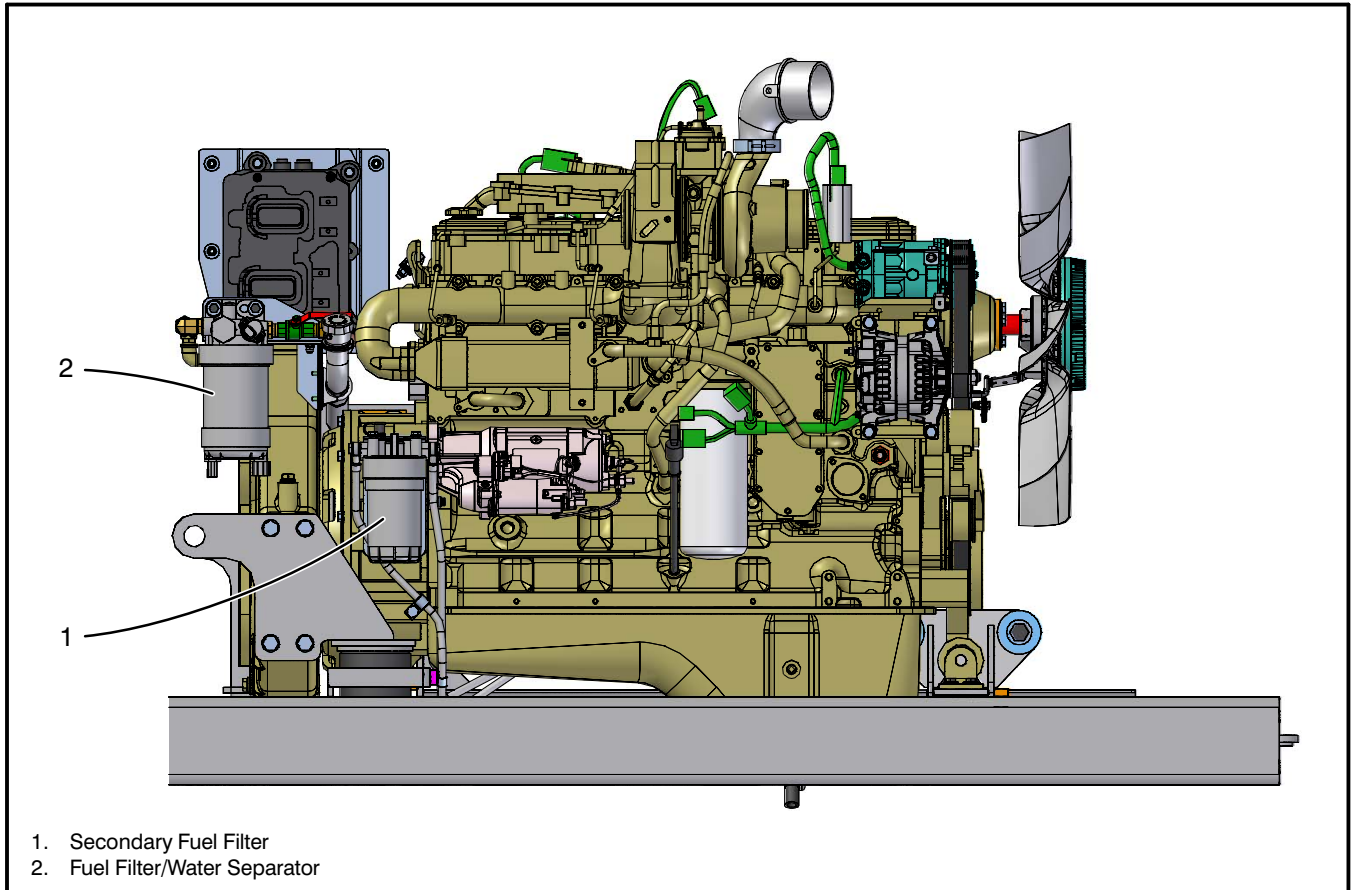
12. Start the engine and let it run at low idle. Increase engine to 1,500 rpm. Run the engine at high idle for approximately 1 minute to purge trapped air from the system. Shutdown the engine.
13. Check the coolant level to ensure that the coolant level has risen at least to the "Full–Cold" level in the sight gauge on the side of the surge tank. Refer to "Cooling System Level Check" in this Section of this Operator's Manual.
14. Install the fill cap on the surge tank.



WARNING

Engine cooling system is pressurized. Do not remove fill cap from the surge tank with a hot engine. Heated coolant spray or steam can cause personal injury. Wait until the engine has cooled before slowly removing fill cap.

15. Start the engine. Check system for leaks and for proper operating temperature.



1. Secondary Fuel Filter
2. Fuel Filter/Water Separator

Figure 2-5
Engine Fuel Filters

Engine Fuel Filters

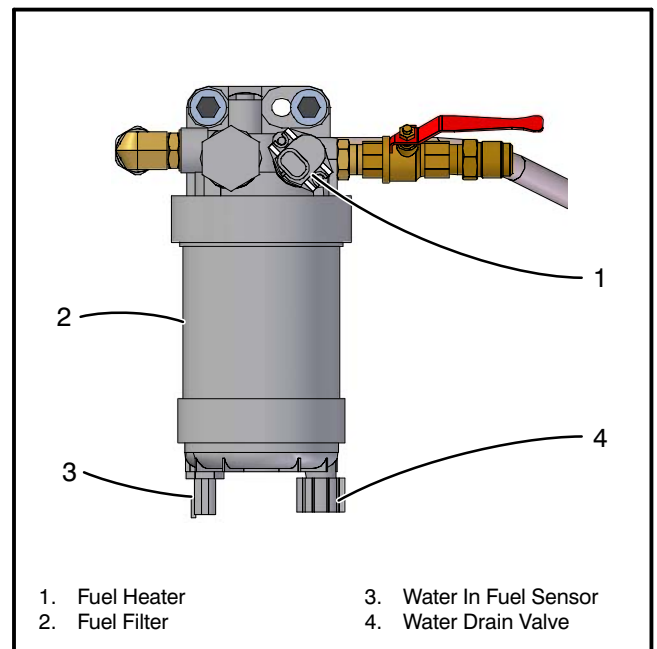
Two spin-on type filters are used, a primary fuel filter/water separator and a secondary fuel filter. (Refer to Figure 2-5.) The function of the filters is to remove water and contaminants from the fuel before they enter the fuel system. Removal of water and contaminants is important for troublefree operation and long life of the fuel system. Water should be drained daily before start-up. Change the filters every 500 hours of operation. Use the following procedures along with Figure 2-6.

Fuel Filter Water Drain

1. Park the crane on a firm level surface. Position the upper directly over the front of the carrier.
2. Engage the travel swing lock and shutdown the engine.

CAUTION

The engine must be shutdown when draining water from the fuel filter to prevent water from being drawn into the fuel system.



1. Fuel Heater
2. Fuel Filter
3. Water In Fuel Sensor
4. Water Drain Valve

Figure 2-6
Engine Fuel Filter/Water Separator

Operator's Manual

3. Place a suitable container under the drain valve. Turn the drain valve counterclockwise approximately 1 and 1/2 to 2 turns and operate the priming pump until draining occurs.
4. Continue draining until clean fuel is visible.

CAUTION

Do not over-tighten the valve. Over-tightening the drain valve can damage the threads.

5. Close the water drain valve.
6. Properly dispose of contaminated fuel.

Fuel Filter/Water Separator Change

1. Park the crane on a firm level surface. Position the upper directly over the front of the carrier.
2. Engage the travel swing lock and shutdown the engine.
3. Disconnect the engine batteries.
4. Clean the area around the filter head.
5. Turn the shutoff valve to the "Closed" position (perpendicular to the valve).
6. Disconnect the wire harness from the fuel heater and the fuel in water sensor.
7. Place a suitable container under the water drain valve. Open the drain valve. Drain all fuel from filter.
8. Remove the filter from the filter head. Ensure the seal ring does not stick to the filter head.
9. Lubricate a new seal ring with clean engine oil. Install the new filter onto the filter head by hand.

CAUTION

To prevent fuel leaks, confirm that the filter is installed tightly but do not over-tighten. Mechanical tightening will damage the filter.

10. Connect the wire harness to the fuel heater and the fuel in water sensor.
11. Turn the shutoff valve to the "Open" position (in line with the valve).
12. Reconnect the engine batteries.

13. Prime the fuel system as follows:
 - a. Turn the ignition key switch to the ON position but do not start the engine. This will cause the ECM to operate the fuel lift pump through a priming cycle which will last at least 30 seconds.
 - b. When the lift pump completes its priming cycle, turn the key to the OFF position for 10 seconds.
 - c. Perform two or three more 30 second lift pump cycles.
14. Start the engine and check for leaks. Slowly increase engine speed to allow air to be purged from the fuel system.
15. Properly dispose of contaminated fuel and filter.

Secondary Fuel Filter Change

1. Park the crane on a firm level surface. Position the upper directly over the front of the carrier.
2. Engage the travel swing lock and shutdown the engine.
3. Clean the area around the filter head.
4. Turn the shutoff valve to the "Closed" position (perpendicular to the valve).
5. Remove the filter from the head.
6. Fill a new filter with clean fuel and thoroughly lubricate the o-ring with clean engine oil.
7. Install new filter on filter head and tighten by hand.

CAUTION

To prevent fuel leaks, confirm that the filter is installed tightly but do not over-tighten. Mechanical tightening will damage the filter.

8. Turn the shutoff valve to the "Open" position (in line with the valve).
9. Prime the fuel system as follows:
 - a. Turn the ignition key switch to the ON position but do not start the engine. This will cause the ECM to operate the fuel lift pump through a priming cycle which will last at least 30 seconds.
 - b. When the lift pump completes its priming cycle, turn the key to the OFF position for 10 seconds.
 - c. Perform two or three more 30 second lift pump cycles.
10. Start the engine and check for leaks. Slowly increase engine speed to allow air to be purged from the fuel system.
11. Properly dispose of contaminated fuel and filter.

Hydraulic Reservoir

The hydraulic reservoir is used to store and supply hydraulic oil needed to operate all hydraulic functions of the crane. The hydraulic reservoir, as shown in Figure 2–7, is equipped with a sight gauge for checking the oil level.

A filter housing is mounted on the top of the tank with a built in pressure gauge. When the pressure gauge reads 25 psi (172kPa), the filter is being bypassed. Drain any water from the hydraulic reservoir, check the oil level, and inspect the contamination indicator daily. Operating the crane with the oil level below the full mark or with the filter element bypassed can lead to hydraulic component failure. Refer to the following procedures when servicing the hydraulic reservoir.

Water Drain

Drain the water from the hydraulic reservoir daily before start-up. Contaminated oil will damage the systems hydraulic components.

1. Relieve any trapped hydraulic system pressure by loosening the filler breather cap, located on the hydraulic reservoir, 1/4 turn until pressure is fully relieved. Refer to Figure 2–7.

WARNING

All trapped hydraulic pressure must be exhausted from the system before removing any plug or cover. A sudden release of hot oil could cause burns or other serious injury.

2. Loosen the water drain plug and allow the water to drain into a suitable container. The water drain plug is slotted and need not be completely removed to drain the water.
3. When a clean flow of hydraulic oil begins to drain from the water drain plug, tighten the plug.
4. Check the oil level in the hydraulic reservoir before beginning operation of the crane. Add oil if necessary. Properly dispose of the contaminated water.

Hydraulic Reservoir Oil Level Check

1. With all hydraulic cylinders fully retracted, park the crane on a firm level surface. Position the transmission shifter to neutral, engage the park brake, and shutdown the engine.
2. With the hydraulic oil cold (approximately 62°F 17°C), check its level through the sight gauge located on the front of the hydraulic reservoir. Refer to Figure 2–7. The proper level must be maintained at all times. Add hydraulic oil as necessary to bring the oil level between the “FULL” and “ADD” marks. Use only Hi Performance Hydraulic Oil or an approved substitute. Do Not Overfill.

Adding Oil To The Hydraulic Reservoir

1. Park the crane on a firm level surface, position the transmission shifter to neutral, engage the park brake, and shutdown the engine.
2. Relieve any trapped hydraulic system pressure by loosening the filler/breather cap, located on the hydraulic reservoir, 1/4 turn until pressure is fully relieved. Refer to Figure 2–7.

WARNING

All trapped hydraulic pressure must be exhausted from the system before removing any plug or cover. A sudden release of hot oil could cause burns or other serious injury.

3. Clean the top of the hydraulic reservoir, the filter housing, and filler breather cap to prevent foreign material from entering the hydraulic system.
4. Remove the filler breather cap.
5. Add oil as required. Check the oil level.
6. Install filler breather cap.

Hydraulic Reservoir Oil Change

The hydraulic reservoir oil should be changed every 2,000 or 4000 hours of operation or seasonally, whichever occurs first. Refer to Hi Performance Hydraulic Oil chart for correct change interval. Change the hydraulic reservoir oil at the end of a working day when any foreign particles will be suspended in the warm oil. If this is not possible, cycle the crane until the oil is warm and proceed as follows:

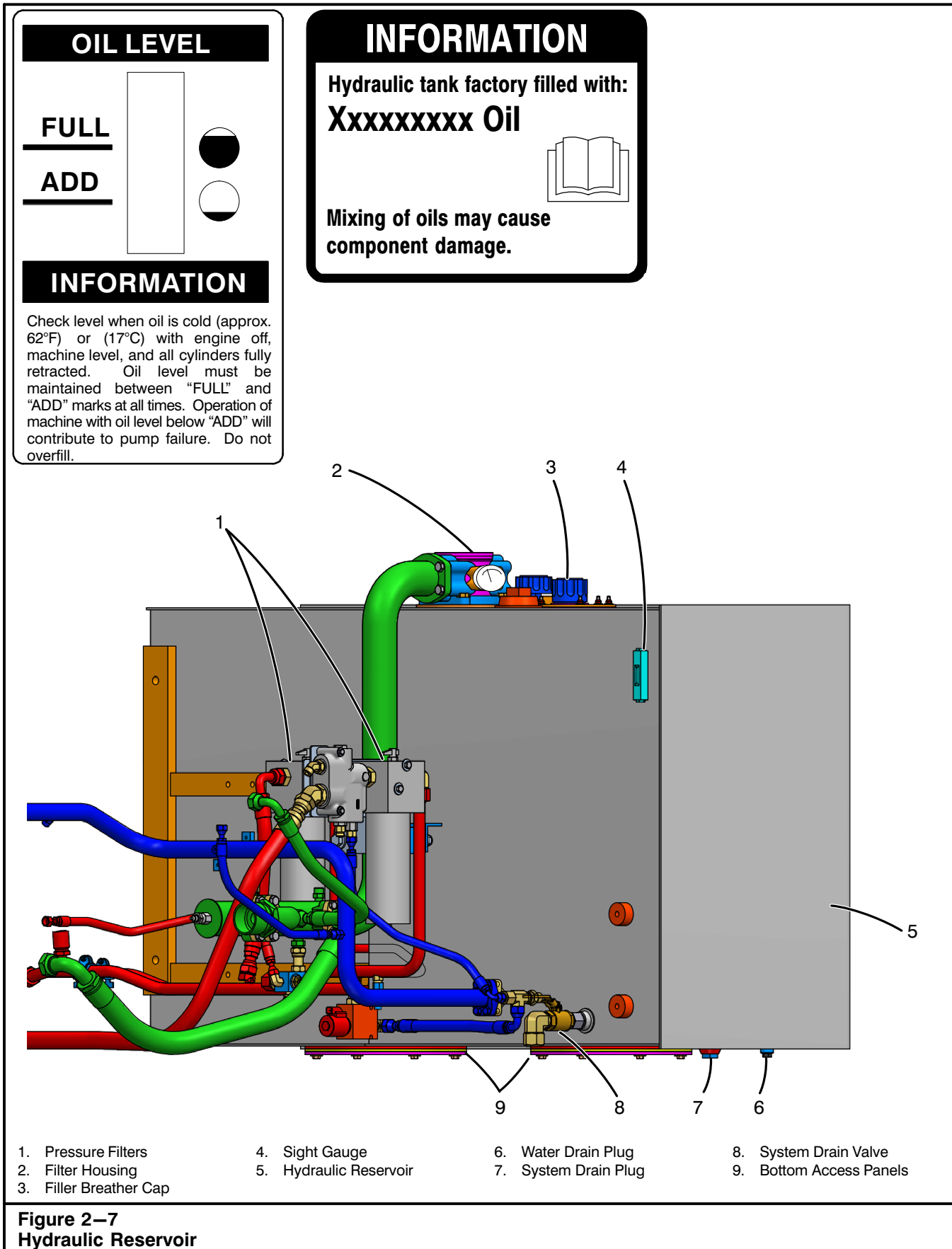
1. With all hydraulic cylinders fully retracted, park the crane on a firm level surface. Position the transmission shifter to neutral, engage the park brake, and shutdown the engine.
2. Relieve any trapped hydraulic system pressure by loosening the filler/breather cap, located on the hydraulic reservoir, 1/4 turn until pressure is fully relieved. Refer to Figure 2–7.

WARNING

All trapped hydraulic pressure must be exhausted from the system before removing any plug or cover. A sudden release of hot oil could cause burns or other serious injury.

3. Thoroughly clean the exterior surface of the hydraulic reservoir to prevent foreign materials from entering the system, once the access panels and filter housing are opened.

Operator's Manual



Operator's Manual

4. Remove the filler breather. Place a suitable container under the drain valve. Refer to the Lubrication Chart to determine the volume of oil to be removed.
5. Turn the system drain valve to the "Open" position (in line with the valve). Drain the hydraulic oil into the container.

Note: All hydraulic oil can not be drained from the reservoir using the system drain valve. The remaining oil can be drained using the water drain plug.

6. Place a suitable container under the water drain plug.
7. Loosen the water drain plug until hydraulic oil begins to drain into the container. The water drain plug is slotted and need not be completely removed to drain the oil.
8. Continue to drain oil until reservoir is empty. Close the water drain plug.



WARNING

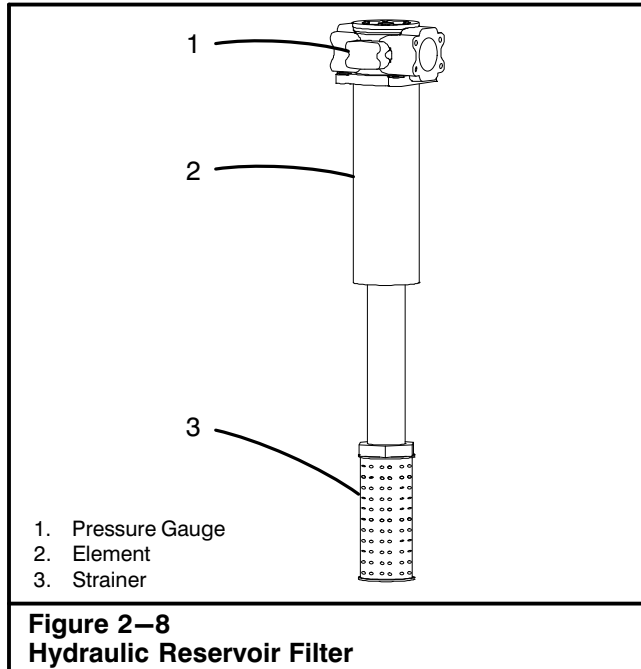
Do not remove the bottom access panel before the hydraulic reservoir has completely drained. A large volume of hot oil may suddenly be released resulting in personal injury and/or property damage. Drain the oil from the hydraulic reservoir before removing the bottom access panel.

9. Remove the bottom access panels and the filter element. Properly dispose of the filter element.
10. Clean any old gasket material off the access panels and hydraulic reservoir.
11. Remove and clean the oil strainer in the bottom of the filter housing.

12. Clean suction strainers inside tank.
13. Clean the interior of the hydraulic reservoir with clean diesel fuel or kerosene.
14. Allow the diesel fuel or kerosene to drain into a suitable container until the hydraulic reservoir is thoroughly drained. Inspect the interior of the hydraulic reservoir for foreign material and wipe clean.
15. Clean and install the system and water drain plugs.
16. Clean the filter housing. Install oil strainer in the bottom of filter housing. Install a new filter element.
17. Install the access panels, using new gaskets.
18. Using clean, uncontaminated oil, fill the reservoir through the filter element with the desired grade of hydraulic oil until it reaches the full mark by the sight plugs.
19. If the grade of hydraulic oil used in the crane is changed, the transmission oil temperature gauge alarm switch must be changed to correspond with the grade of oil being used. The alarm setting can be changed using the controls in the crane control display. Refer to "Setting The Transmission Hydraulic Oil Temperature Alarm" in this Section of this Operator's Manual
20. Install the filter housing cover.
21. Start the engine. Allow the engine to idle several minutes to ensure oil is being cycled properly. Check for any leaks.
22. Check the oil level in the hydraulic reservoir for proper level. Add oil if necessary. Properly dispose of the used oil.

Note: In case of hydraulic system component failure, a more thorough oil change procedure is required. Consult your distributor for this procedure.

Operator's Manual



Hydraulic Reservoir Filter Change

Change hydraulic reservoir filter element after the initial 50 hours of operation and every 500 hours of operation thereafter. Change the filter element immediately if the pressure gauge reads 20 psi (138kPa).

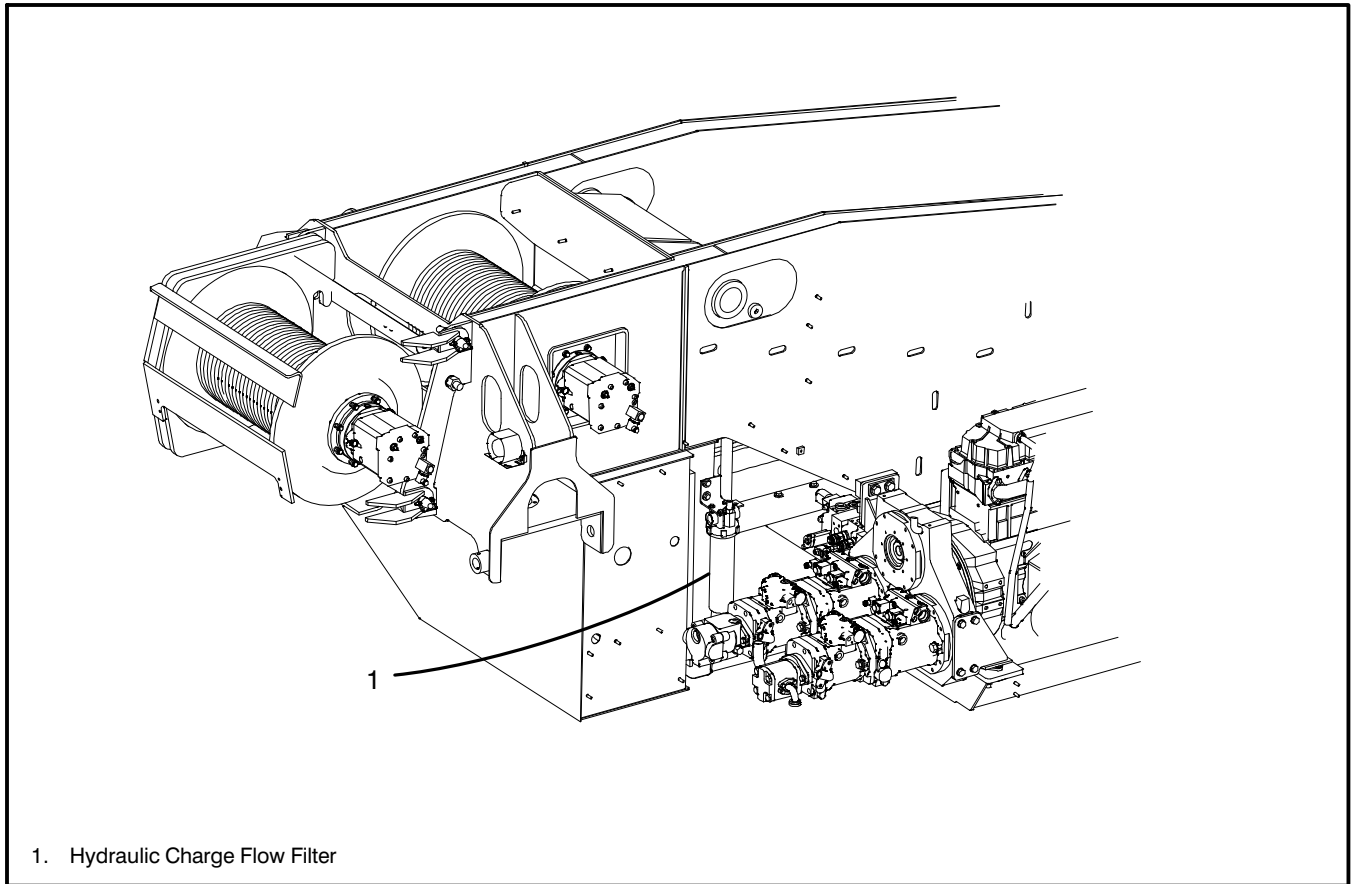
1. Park the crane on a firm level surface, position the transmission shifter to neutral, engage the park brake, and shutdown the engine.
2. Relieve any trapped hydraulic system pressure by loosening the filler breather cap, located on the hydraulic reservoir, 1/4 turn until pressure is fully relieved. Refer to Figure 2–7.



WARNING

All trapped hydraulic pressure must be exhausted from the system before removing any plug or cover. A sudden release of hot oil could cause burns or other serious injury.

3. Clean the top of the hydraulic reservoir, the filter housing, and filter housing cover to prevent foreign material from entering the hydraulic system.
4. Remove the filter housing cover.
5. Remove the filter element and inspect it for contamination. Any dirt or foreign particles on the filter element may indicate excessive system contamination or imminent system component failure. Once the filter has been thoroughly inspected, dispose of it properly.
6. Install new filter element and filter housing cover.
7. Start engine and check the filter housing for leaks.
8. Check the hydraulic reservoir oil level. Add oil if necessary.




1. Hydraulic Charge Flow Filter

Figure 2–9
Hydraulic Charge Flow Filter

Hydraulic Charge Flow Filter Change

Change hydraulic charge flow filter element after the initial 50 hours of operation and every 500 hours of operation thereafter. Change the filter element immediately if the charge filter indicator light on the gauge panel illuminates.

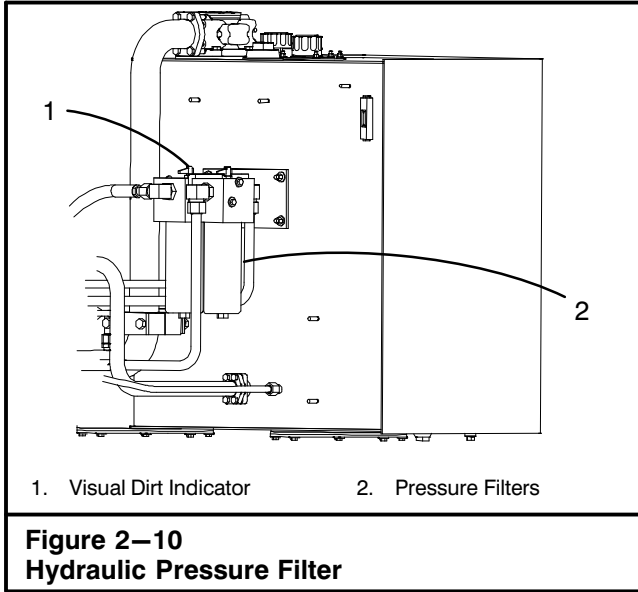
1. Park the crane on a firm level surface, position the transmission shifter to neutral, engage the park brake, and shutdown the engine.
2. Relieve any trapped hydraulic system pressure by loosening the filler/breather cap, located on the hydraulic reservoir, 1/4 turn until pressure is fully relieved. Refer to Figure 2–7.

 **WARNING**

All trapped hydraulic pressure must be exhausted from the system before removing any plug or cover. A sudden release of hot oil could cause burns or other serious injury.

3. Remove the filter element and inspect it for contamination. Any dirt or foreign particles on the filter element may indicate excessive system contamination or imminent system component failure. Once the filter has been thoroughly inspected, dispose of it properly.
4. Install new filter element.
5. Start engine and check the filter housing for leaks.
6. Check the hydraulic reservoir oil level. Add oil if necessary.

Operator's Manual



Hydraulic Pressure Filter Change

Change hydraulic pressure filter elements after the initial 50 hours of operation and every 500 hours of operation thereafter. Change the filter element immediately if the visual dirt indicator is in the “change” or “by-pass” position after the oil has reached operating temperature.

1. Park the crane on a firm level surface, position the transmission shifter to neutral, engage the park brake, and shutdown the engine.

2. Relieve any trapped hydraulic system pressure by loosening the filler/breather cap, located on the hydraulic reservoir, 1/4 turn until pressure is fully relieved. Refer to Figure 2–7.



WARNING

All trapped hydraulic pressure must be exhausted from the system before removing any plug or cover. A sudden release of hot oil could cause burns or other serious injury.

3. Thoroughly clean the exterior surface of the filter housing to prevent foreign materials from entering the system.
4. Remove the filter housing.
5. Remove the filter element and inspect it for contamination. Any dirt or foreign particles on the filter element may indicate excessive system contamination or imminent system component failure. Once the filter has been thoroughly inspected, dispose of it properly.
6. Install the new filter element and the filter housing cover. Manually reset the dirt indicator.
7. Start the engine and check the filter housing for leaks.
8. Check the hydraulic reservoir oil level. Add oil if necessary.

Hydraulic Case Drain Filter Change

Change the hydraulic case drain filter element after the initial 50 hours of operation and every 500 hours of operation thereafter. Change the filter element immediately if the case filter indicator light on the cab control panel illuminates after the oil has reached operating temperature. Locate the case drain filter from the underside of the carrier and behind the front wheels.

1. Park the crane on a firm level surface, position the transmission shifter to neutral, engage the park brake, and shutdown the engine.
2. Relieve any trapped hydraulic system pressure by loosening the filler/breather cap, located on the hydraulic reservoir, 1/4 turn until pressure is fully relieved. Refer to Figure 2–7.

WARNING

All trapped hydraulic pressure must be exhausted from the system before removing any plug or cover. A sudden release of hot oil could cause burns or other serious injury.

3. Close case drain valve.
4. Remove the filter element and inspect it for contamination. Any dirt or foreign particles on the filter element may indicate excessive system contamination or imminent system component failure. Once the filter has been thoroughly inspected, dispose of it properly.

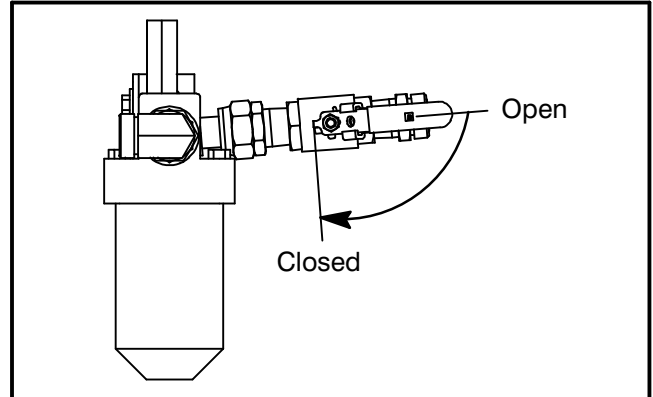


Figure 2–11
Hydraulic Case Drain Filter

5. Install new filter element.
6. Open case drain valve.

WARNING

Ensure the shutoff valve is open after changing case drain filter. Operating the crane with valve closed will damage the wheel motor.

7. Start engine and check the filter housing for leaks.
8. Check the hydraulic reservoir oil level. Add oil if necessary.

Operator's Manual

Setting The Transmission Hydraulic Oil Temperature Alarm

If the grade of hydraulic oil used in the crane is changed, the transmission oil temperature gauge alarm switch must be changed to correspond with the grade of oil being used.



1. From the main working screen, press the menu button.



2. Press the Function Key F1 to bring up the Adjust screen.



3. Press the Up/Down Arrow buttons to scroll to "Transmission Alarm Setting" and press the OK button.



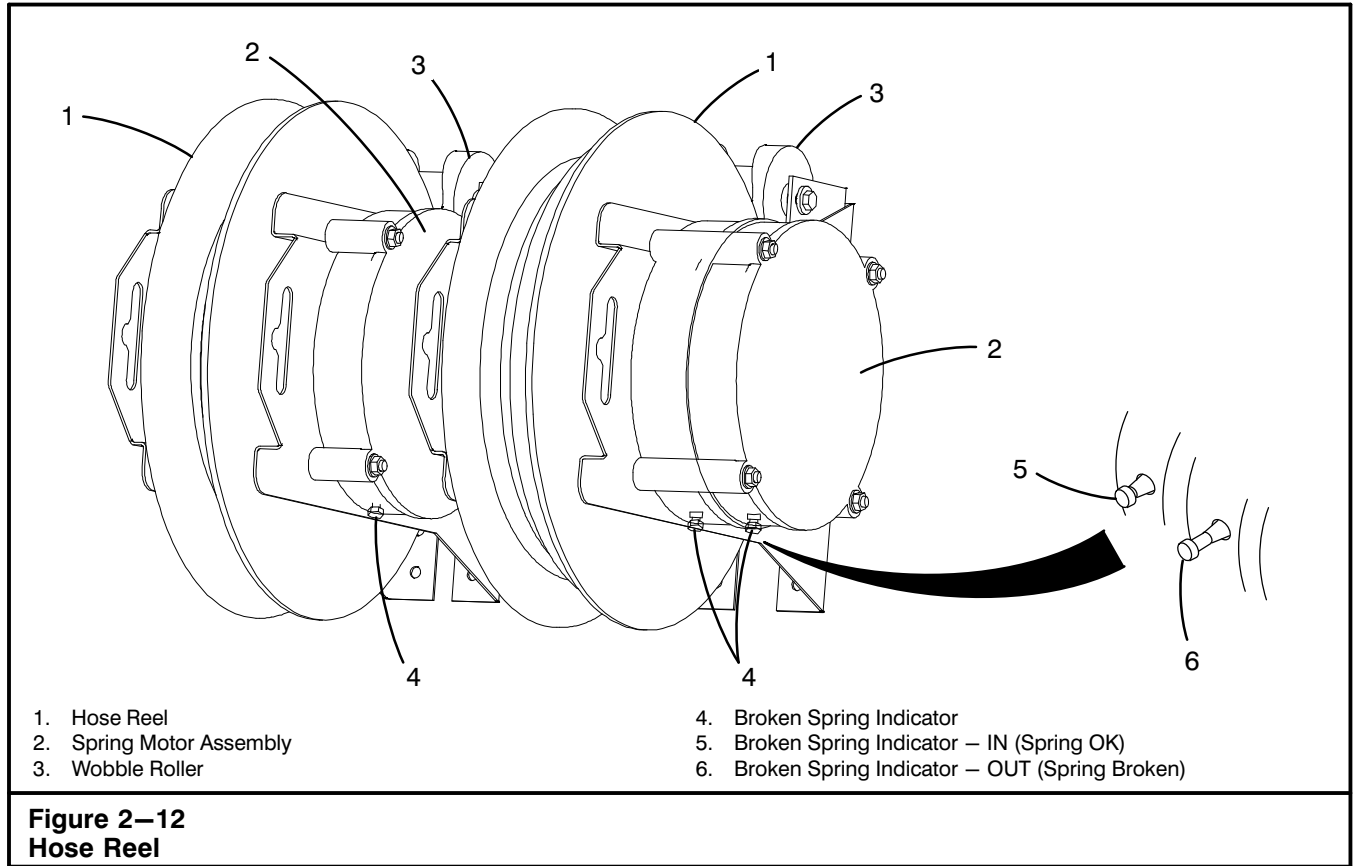
4. Enter your four digit PIN code number and press the OK button.



5. Press the Up/Down Arrow buttons to scroll and highlight the correct grade of oil currently used in the hydraulic reservoir and press the OK button.



6. Press the F1 Main button to return to the Main menu screen. Press the back (←) button to return to the main working screen.



Hose Reel Inspection

This crane is equipped with two hose reels to take-up or spool off the boom extend/retract hoses. The hose reels must be periodically inspected to ensure proper operation. Use the following procedure to inspect the hose reels.

1. Park the crane on a firm level surface, position the transmission shifter to neutral, and engage the park brake
2. Level the crane on fully extended outriggers.
3. Raise the boom to 45° angle. Swing the upper directly over the side of the carrier.
4. Locate the hose reels under the rear of the upper.
5. Periodically inspect hose for wear and check mounting hardware for tightness.
6. Check for broken springs by extending the boom until approximately 2/3 of the hose is off the reel

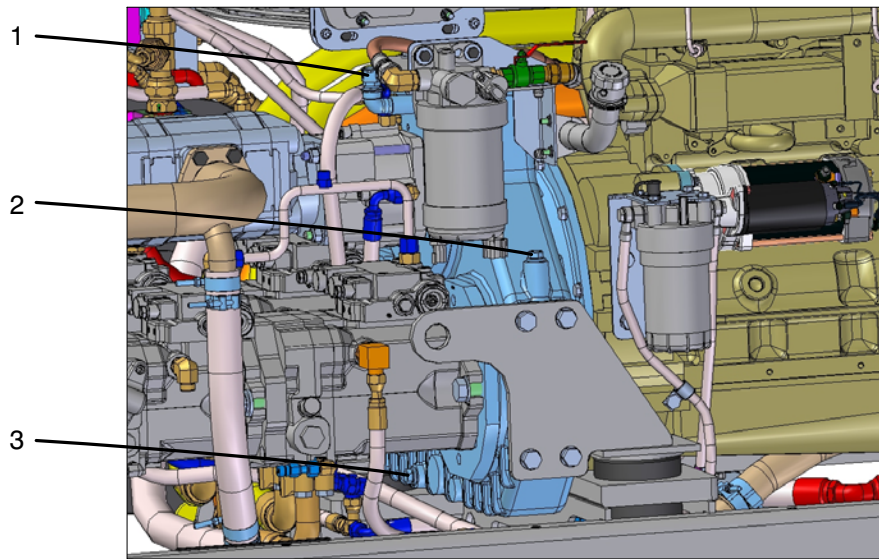
and observing the broken spring indicators on the side of the canisters.

WARNING

Do not attempt to disassemble or remove the spring from the spring motor housing. Removal of the spring could result in personal injury. Clock type springs can be dangerous to handle and internal replacement parts are not available. Replace the spring motor as an entire unit only.

7. If the broken spring indicator is protruding out, the spring motor assembly must be replaced. Refer to the crane's Service Manual for the correct procedure.

Operator's Manual



1. Breather
2. Dipstick
3. Drain Plug

Figure 2–13
Hydraulic Pump Drive

Hydraulic Pump Drive Lubrication

For maximum operating efficiency and service life of the pump drive, check oil level after every 10 hours of operation and visually check for leaks. The oil, in a new or rebuilt pump drive, should be changed after the initial 200 hours of operation. Thereafter, change oil with each 2,000 hours of operation or annually, whichever occurs first. At each oil change, check all seals and thread joints for leaks and tighten as necessary. Refer to the Lubrication Chart for the correct lubricant type. Refer to Figure 2–13.

Pump Drive Oil Level Check

1. Park the crane on a firm level surface, position the transmission shifter to neutral, engage the park brake, and shutdown the engine.
2. Locate the pump drive dipstick on the right side of the engine. Refer to Figure 2–13.
3. Wipe the dipstick area clean. Rotate the dipstick counter-clockwise and remove the dipstick from the filler tube.
4. Wipe all the oil from the dipstick and place it back into the filler tube but do not rotate it in.
5. Remove again and read the oil level on the dipstick. The oil level should be to the full mark on the dipstick.

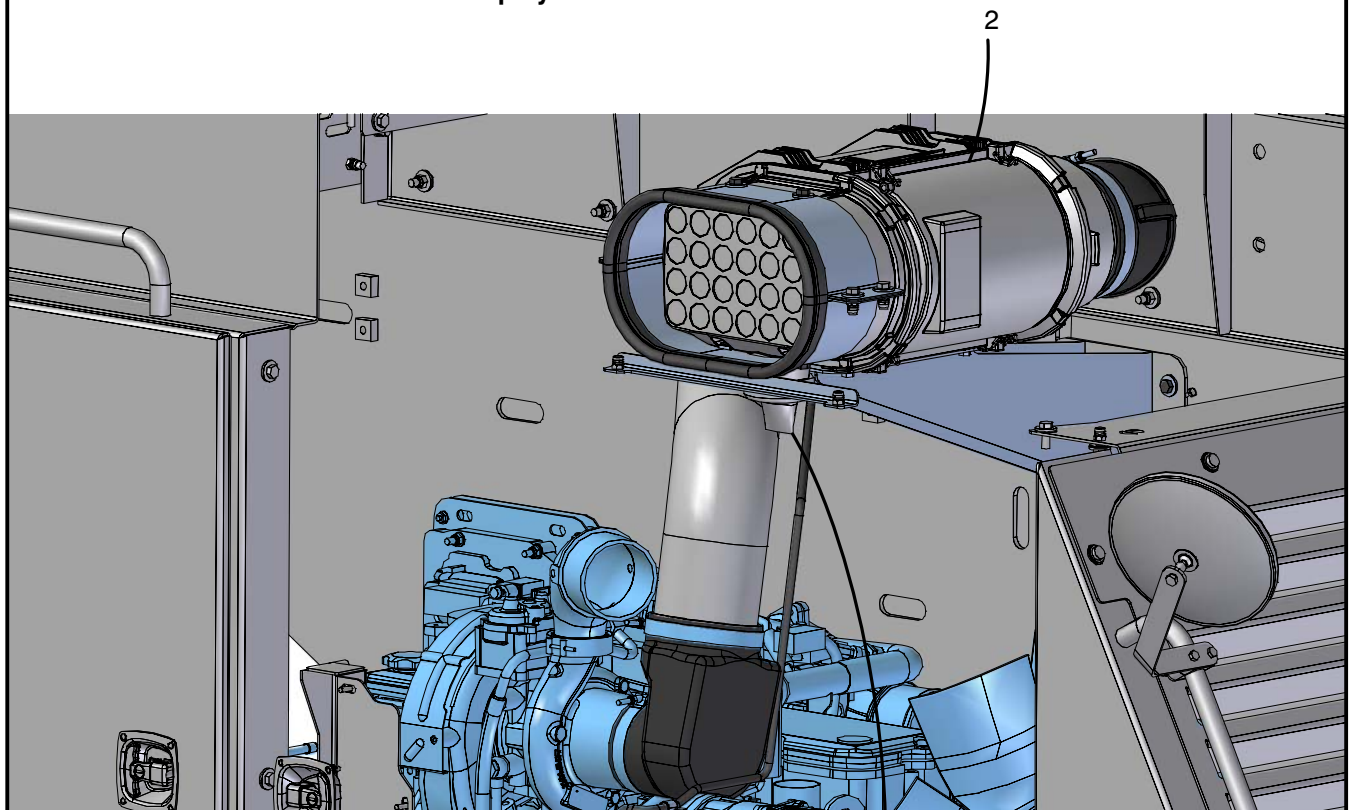
6. Add oil as required through the dipstick filler tube. Use only the oil type specified on the Lubrication Chart. Do not overfill.
7. Once the proper oil level is obtained, install the dipstick in the filler tube and turn the dipstick clockwise until tight.

Pump Drive Oil Change

1. Park the crane on a firm level surface, position the transmission shifter to neutral, and engage park brake.
2. Cycle pump for several minutes, without a load, to agitate and warm the oil within pump drive.
3. Engage the travel swing lock and shutdown the engine. Thoroughly clean the exterior surface of the pump drive around the dipstick and drain plug to prevent contamination from entering the unit. Refer to Figure 2–13.
4. Remove drain plug and allow the oil to drain in a suitable container
5. After the oil has thoroughly drained, remove the dipstick.
6. Clean and install the drain plug.
7. Fill the unit with oil until oil is to the full mark on the dipstick. Refer to Figure 2–13. For the correct grade and quantity of oil, refer to the Lubrication Chart.
8. Clean and install the dipstick. Properly dispose of the used oil.



Crane Control Display



1. Air Filter Indicator Light
2. Air Cleaner Cover
3. Dust Exhaust Valve

Figure 2–14
Engine Air Cleaner And Service Indicator

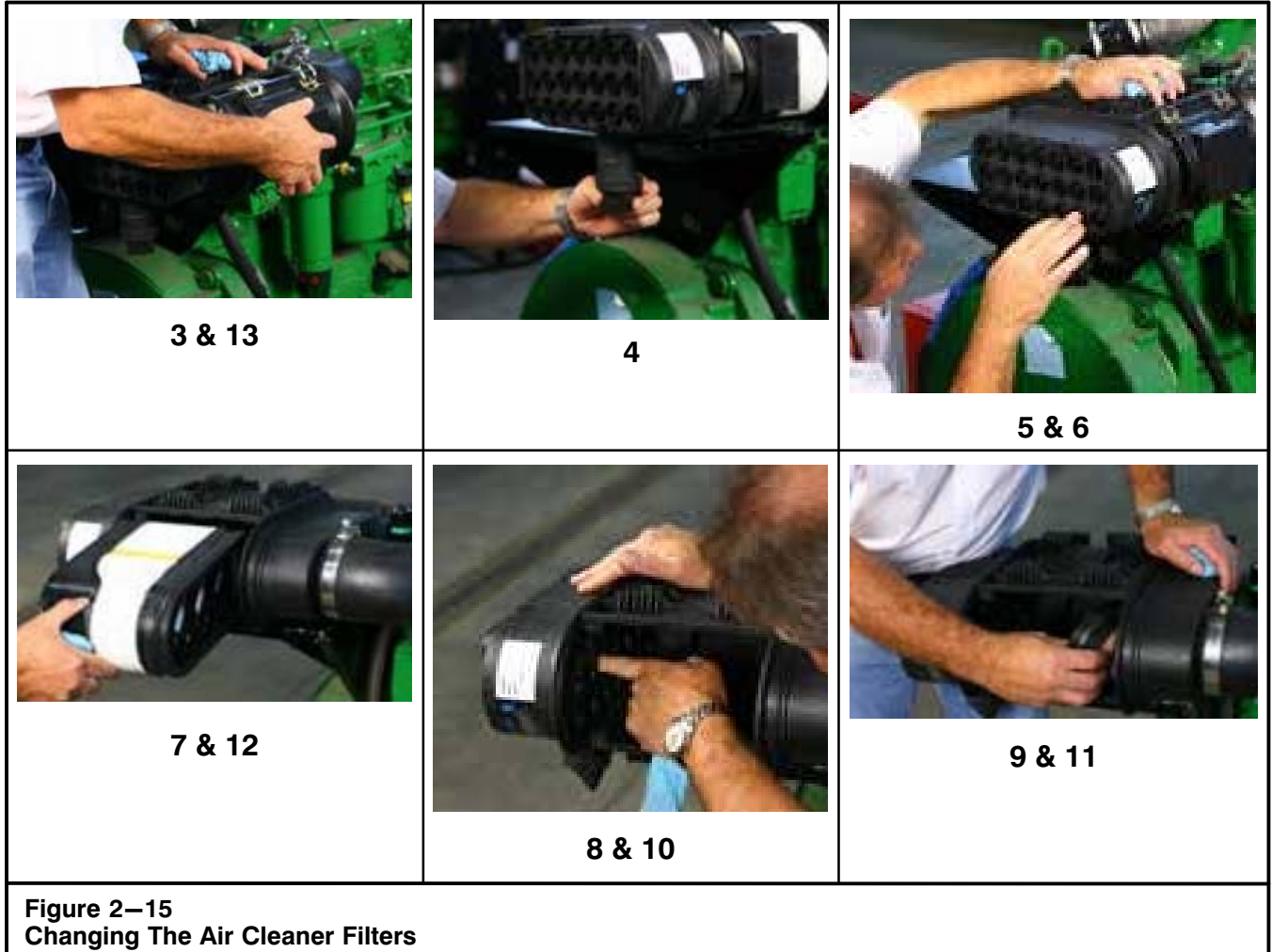
Operator's Manual

Engine Air System Inspection

In addition to servicing the air cleaner, it is also recommended that the engine air system be inspected every 250 hours or 6 months. Inspect the air system pipes, hoses, air compressor and turbocharger systems, as equipped. (Inspect all the pipes and hoses associated with the air compressor, turbocharger, air cleaner, and air intake.) Check for any cracks, corrosion, loose clamps, wear points, leaks, or punctures which can allow contaminants to enter the system and damage air system components and/or the engine. All hoses should be kept free of oil contaminants, both internally and externally. Disassemble and clean as required. Tighten or replace parts as necessary to ensure that the air system does not leak.

Engine Air Cleaner

Variations in job site conditions prevent establishing a set interval for air cleaner servicing. For this reason an indicator light will illuminate on the crane control display to determine the condition of the air cleaner element. Refer to Figure 2–14. Anytime the yellow indicator light illuminates, service the air cleaner immediately. Clean or replace the air cleaner element as often as required. Replace the air cleaner element after it has been cleaned six times or annually, whichever occurs first. Service the engine air cleaner as follows.



Changing The Air Cleaner Filter

1. Park the crane on a firm level surface. Position the upper directly over the front of the carrier and engage the travel swing lock.

Refer to Figure 2–15

2. Unlatch and remove the service cover from the air cleaner body.
3. Inspect the dust exhaust valve for damage. If damaged, replace. Refer to Figure 2–14. If plugged or full of contaminant, check the pre-cleaner tubes, which should be free of contaminant. If plugged or excess contaminant is visible, the pre-cleaner tubes will need to be cleaned.

4. To clean the pre-cleaner tubes, remove the housing service cover and dust exhaust valve and leave the filter installed (to avoid dust from entering the engine air system). Use a low-volume of compressed air to gently clean out the separator tubes. The compressed air can be pushed through both sides of the tubes and from the drop tube where the dust exhaust valve attaches.

WARNING

Do not use a pressure sprayer to clean out the air cleaner housing while it is installed on the crane. Avoid using excessive pressure when spraying out the separator tubes as damage may occur.

Operator's Manual

5. If compressed air is not available or the use of compressed air was not effective due to dried contaminants within the housing, remove the air cleaner from the crane, cover the air intake pipe to prevent contamination. Remove the primary and secondary filters and dust exhaust valve. Use a low pressure water (e.g., garden hose) to clean the tubes and inside of housing. Direct the flow of water through the separator tubes from both ends and repeat as needed to clean out the housing. Spray out the dust exhaust valve port, alternating between it and the separator tubes. Ensure that all internal housing surfaces are dry prior to reinstalling the filters, dust exhaust valve, and unit on the crane.
6. Push down on the service handle to tilt the primary filter to a 5° angle. This will loosen the seal. Then, pull up on the service handle to remove the primary filter from the housing.
7. Remove any excess dirt and wipe out the housing with a damp cloth before servicing the secondary filter. Visually inspect the secondary filter but do not remove it unless it is damaged or due for changing. Verify that the secondary filter is properly seated in the housing. The secondary filter should be replaced every three primary filter changes.
8. To remove the secondary filter, use the plastic handle on the face of the secondary filter. Pull the filter toward the center of the housing and remove it. Ensure that the outlet tube sealing area is clean and undamaged. If the secondary filter is removed and the new filter is not to be installed immediately, cover the seal tube with a cloth so that dirt is not admitted. After removing the secondary filter, wipe the air cleaner housing interior and seal surfaces with a clean, damp cloth.
9. Visually check for cuts, tears, or indentations on the sealing surfaces and the media pack before installation. If any damage is visible, do not install.
10. Insert the secondary filter tab into the positioning slot. Using the plastic handle, slide the filter at an angle into the outlet side and push it in place until the filter seats firmly and evenly within the housing.
11. Slide the primary filter down at approximately a 5° angle until it makes contact with the end of the housing. Rotate the filter toward the outlet section to complete the seal.
12. Place the service cover in position and fasten the latches. If the cover does not seat, remove and recheck the filter position and access cover orientation.

Swing Speed Reducer Lubrication

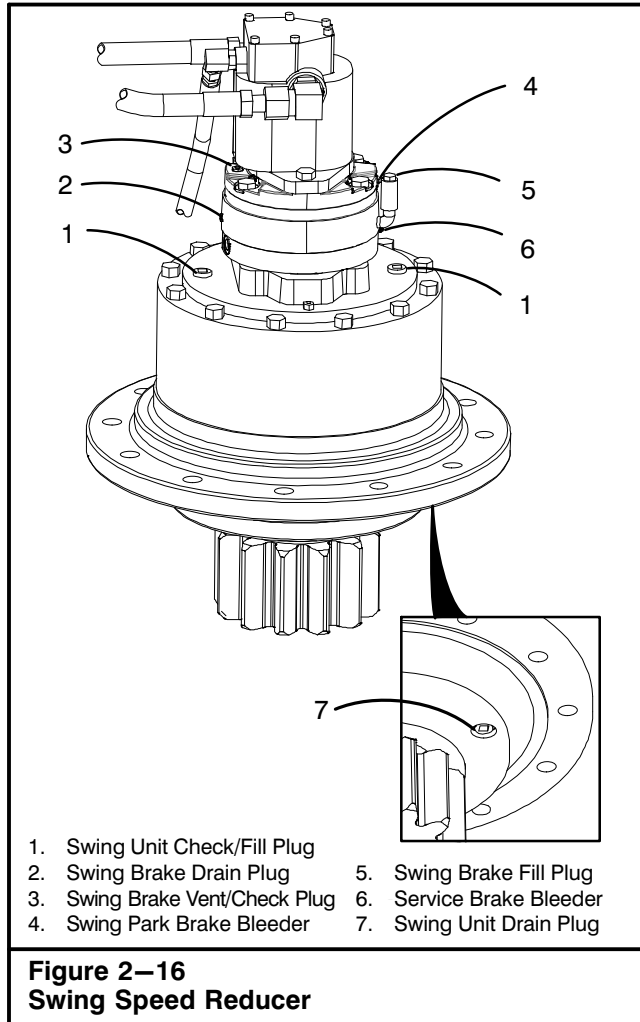
Check the oil level in the swing speed reducer after every 50 hours of operation. The oil in a new swing speed reducer should be changed after the initial 200 hours of operation. Thereafter, change the oil with each 1,000 hours of operation or seasonally, whichever occurs first.

Swing Speed Reducer Oil Level Check

1. Park the crane on a firm level surface, position the transmission shifter to neutral, and engage the park brake.
2. Engage travel swing lock and shutdown engine.
3. Clean the speed reducer around the check/fill plug to prevent contamination from entering the system. Remove the plug. Refer to Figure 2–16.
4. Oil should come to within 0.5 inch (12.7mm) of the bottom of the fill port. Add oil as required to bring the oil to the proper level. Refer to the Lubrication Chart for the correct grade of oil.
5. Clean and install the check/fill plug.

Swing Speed Reducer Oil Change

1. Park the crane on a firm level surface, position the transmission shifter to neutral, and engage the park brake.
2. Level the crane on fully extended outriggers and swing the upper for several minutes, to agitate and warm the oil within the swing speed reducer.
3. Engage the travel swing lock, fully lower the boom, and shutdown the engine.
4. Thoroughly clean the exterior surface of the swing speed reducer around the check/fill and drain plugs to prevent contamination from entering the unit. Refer to Figure 2–16.
5. Remove check/fill and drain plugs and allow the oil to drain into a suitable container. The drain plug is magnetic and should be inspected for large quantities of metal particles. After the initial oil change, this is a sign of damage or extreme wear within the unit, and a complete internal inspection may be necessary.
6. After the oil has thoroughly drained, clean and install the drain plug.
7. Fill the unit with oil through the check/fill hole. Oil should come to within 0.5 inch (12.7mm) of the bottom of the hole. Refer to the Lubrication Chart for the correct grade and quantity of oil.
8. Clean and install the check/fill plug. Properly dispose of the used oil.



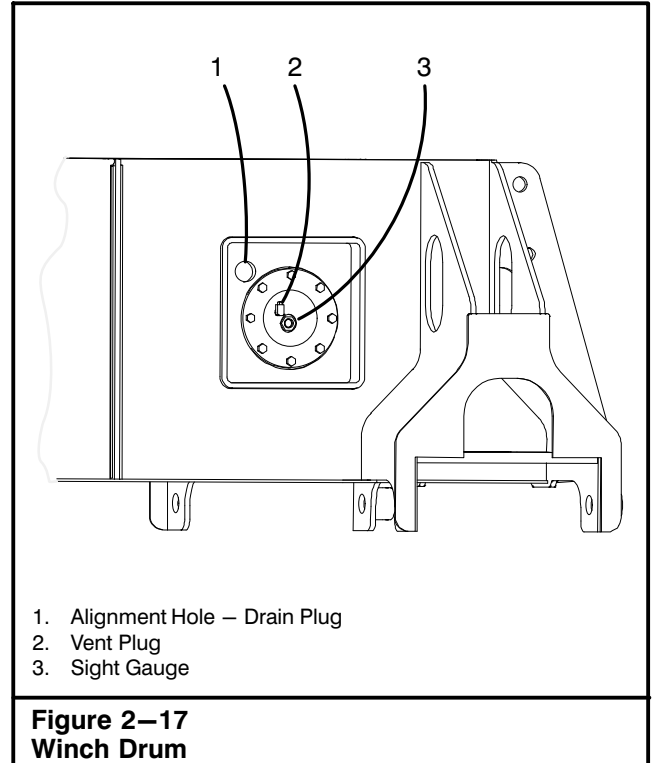
Winch Drum Lubrication

For maximum operating efficiency and service life of the winch drum, check oil level after every 50 hours of operation. The oil, in a new or rebuilt winch drum, should be changed after the initial 100 hours of operation. Thereafter, change oil with each 1,000 hours of operation or seasonally, whichever occurs first.

It is also recommended that every 2,000 hours of operation, the winch should be disassembled and thoroughly inspected for damaged or worn parts. Replace damaged or worn parts as required.

Winch Drum Oil Level Check

1. Park the crane on a firm level surface, position the transmission shifter to neutral, engage the park brake, and shutdown the engine.
2. Oil should be visible in the sight gauge.
3. If necessary add oil as required, until it reaches the proper level. Refer to the Lubrication Chart for the correct grade of oil.

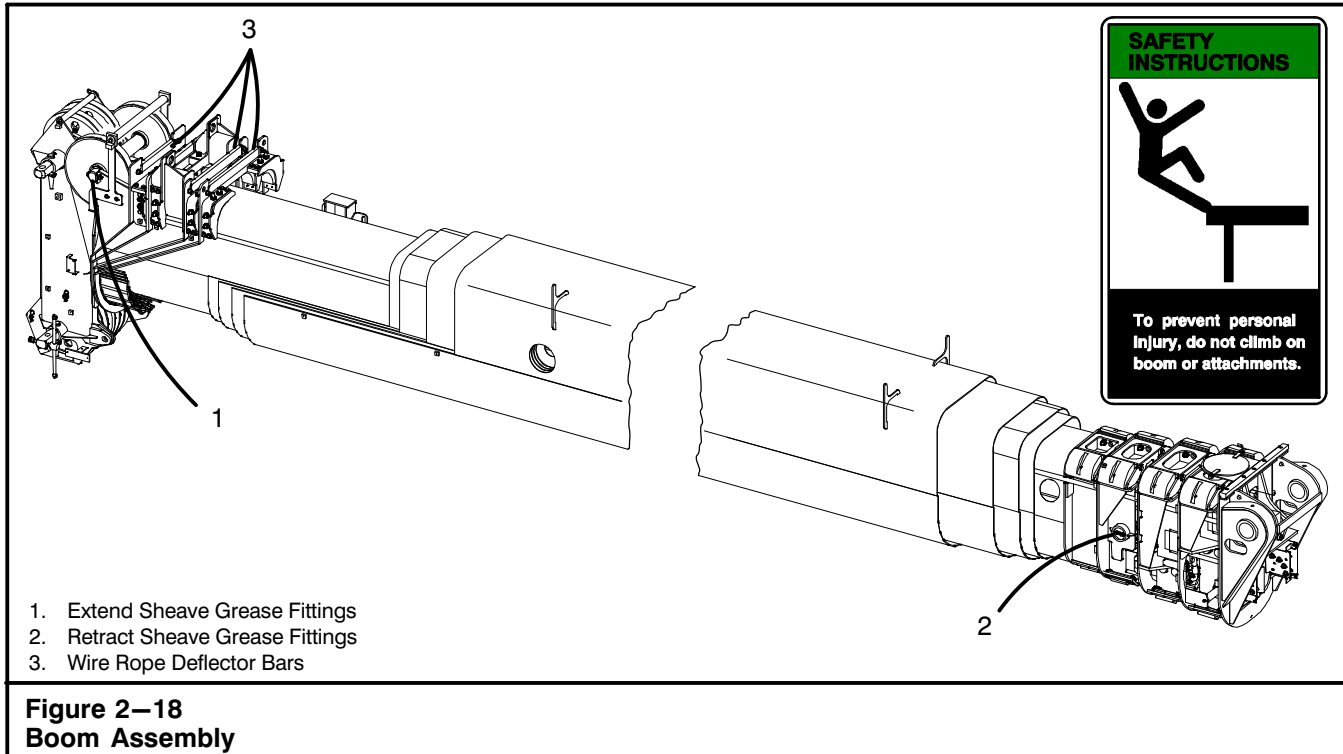


4. Clean and install the check plug.

Winch Drum Oil Change

1. Park the crane on a firm level surface, position the transmission shifter to neutral, engage the park brake, and shutdown the engine.
2. Cycle winch for several minutes, without a load to agitate and warm the oil within winch drum.
3. Rotate winch drum until the drain plug is aligned with the alignment hole in the side support.
4. Thoroughly clean the exterior surface of the winch drum around the vent and drain plugs to prevent contamination from entering the unit. Refer to Figure 2-17.
5. Remove the drain plug.
6. Rotate the drum until the drain hole is at the vertical bottom position. Allow the oil to drain in a suitable container.
7. After the oil has thoroughly drained, rotate the drum until drain hole is aligned with the alignment hole in the side support.
8. Fill the unit with oil through the hole, until oil is visible within the sight gauge. Refer to Figure 2-17. For the correct grade and quantity of oil, refer to the Lubrication Chart.
9. Clean and install the drain plug.
10. Clean and install the vent plug. Properly dispose of the used oil.

Operator's Manual



Boom Inspection And Lubrication

WARNING

To avoid personal injury, do not climb, stand, or walk on the boom or fly. Use a ladder or similar device to reach necessary areas.

Before putting fingers, hands, arms, or tools inside a boom section, ensure the engine is shutdown and operator has properly vacated the cab. Movement of the boom could cause serious injury.

Do not use a crane that has a damaged boom. The structural integrity of the boom is lost and could collapse with any load. Use the crane only after the boom has passed a thorough inspection. Contact your Link-Belt Distributor for the proper inspection procedures.

The boom wear shoes are equipped with teflon inserts that self-lubricate the boom. Therefore, the boom requires no lubrication. However, visually inspect all boom sections daily for damaged or cracked members or welds. If any dents, bends, cracked welds, etc. are found, do not use the crane. Contact your nearest dis-

tributor for repair procedures. Also check for damaged or leaking hoses, fittings, valves, cylinders etc. Repair as necessary. At 250 hour intervals, check all boom wear shoes for proper adjustment. See "Boom Wear Shoe Adjustment" in Section 3 of this Operator's Manual for further details. Inspect the wire rope deflector bar located at the top front of each boom section for wear. Reverse or replace as required.

To prevent movement of the individual boom sections, shutdown the engine and ensure that the operator has vacated the operator's cab before putting your hands or tools inside the boom. Unexpected movement of the boom section could sever fingers, hands, arms, etc.

Lubricate the boom extend and retract sheaves at 50 hour intervals. It is also recommended that every 4,000 hours of operation the boom should be disassembled and the extend and retract wire ropes inspected, lubricated, and/or replaced as required. See "Boom Extend And Retract Wire Rope Inspection And Adjustment" in Section 3 of this Operator's Manual, "Wire Rope Lubrication" found later in this Section of this Operator's Manual, and "Wire Rope Inspection And Replacement Recommendations" in Section 5 of this Operator's Manual.

Lubricate the boom foot pin and boom hoist cylinder pins daily.

Lubricate the boom head sheaves and auxiliary head sheaves if equipped, every 50 hours of operation.

Operator's Manual

Wire Rope Lubrication

Wire rope is like a machine in that it has moving parts which require lubrication. Each time a wire rope bends over a sheave or straightens from a slack position many wires move against each other. Lubrication is necessary to help prevent wear caused by this movement. Lubrication also helps prevent deterioration of wire rope due to rust and corrosion.



WARNING

Rusty wire rope is dangerous since there is no way to determine its remaining strength. Do not use rusty wire rope.

Most wire ropes are lubricated during manufacture, but the lubricant does not last the life of the rope. The lubricant is squeezed out of the rope as it runs over sheaves under tension, or washed off by rain.

For the above reasons, wire rope **MUST BE** periodically lubricated. Crude or used oils and grease should not be used as lubricants because they may be grit or acid laden. Either of these conditions can cause damage to the rope.

No set rule can be given for lubrication frequency. This will depend on the type of conditions under which the rope is used.

A rope used in wet conditions would need to be lubricated more often than one used in dry conditions, to prevent rust and corrosion.

Lubricants used for wire rope lubrication should have the following properties:

1. They must have enough adhesive strength to stay on the rope.
2. They must be able to penetrate between the wires and strands.
3. They must have high film strength.
4. They must resist oxidation.
5. They must remain soft and pliable.

Application Of Wire Rope Lubricant

Wire ropes that have been in service should be cleaned before re-lubricating them. Use a wire brush and compressed air to clean the rope. All possible foreign material and old lubricant should be removed from the rope before re-lubricating it. Use one of the following methods to apply the lubricant.

1. Continuous Bath

Run the rope through a container filled with lubricant. A sheave mounted in the center of the container will hold the rope submerged as it passes through the container. Use swabbing to remove excess lubricant as the rope leaves the container.

2. Dripping

Place a container above a sheave so a spigot can be opened to drip oil on the wire rope as it passes through the sheave groove.

3. Swabbing And Painting

Two fast methods are swabbing the lubricant on with rags or painting it on with a brush.

4. Spraying

Light lubricants may be applied with a spray gun. Aerosol cans of lubricant are also available.

Lattice Fly Inspection And Lubrication

Inspect all parts of the lattice fly daily. Pay particular attention to the chords and lattice. If any dents, bends, cracked welds, etc. are found, do not use the lattice fly. Contact your nearest distributor for repair procedures.

Lubricate the fly head sheaves and deflector sheave(s) every 50 hours of operation.



WARNING

To avoid personal injury, do not climb, stand, or walk on the boom or fly. Use a ladder or similar device to reach necessary areas.

Do not use a fly which has been damaged. The structural integrity of the fly is lost and the attachment could collapse with any load. Use the fly only after it has passed a thorough inspection.

Operator's Manual

Crane Monitoring Systems

Maintenance of the Rated Capacity Limiter and anti-two block system consists of the following daily inspection prior to the first operation:

1. Check that the system is operating normally as described in Section 1 of this Operator's Manual.
2. Check the electrical cables connecting the various parts of the system.
3. Check the insulation on the boom reeling drum cable.
4. Check the boom reeling drum cable for proper tension.
5. Check the anti-two block boom switches for freedom of movement.
6. Check that the anti-two block weights are installed and working properly with the anti-two block switches.
7. Inspect the pressure transducers on the right frame rail of the upper and the connecting hoses for oil leaks.
8. Test that the function limiters activate properly by two blocking the crane. (Do this by manually lifting the anti-two block weight.)

Check the following every 30 days.

1. Check that the displayed boom angle agrees with the measured angle.

2. Check that the displayed radius agrees with the measured operating radius.
3. Check that the displayed boom length agrees with the actual boom length.
4. If a known test weight is available, check that the displayed weight agrees with the test load. The displayed load includes the hookblock and any lifting attachments such as slings, pins, and shackles.
5. If the capacity chart is rated for specific areas e.g. side, front or rear, the system should be checked by swinging the boom into the permitted areas and checking that the Rated Capacity reading agrees with the crane Capacity Chart.



WARNING

Any unusual or erratic system operation must be investigated and corrected immediately. If any problem is found with any of the above inspection steps, the problem must be corrected/repared as soon as possible. If necessary to continue crane operations, refer to "System Inoperative Or Malfunctioning" in Section 1 of this Operator's Manual.

Operator's Manual

Hook Block, Ball, And Swivel Inspection And Maintenance

1. All nuts, setscrews, pins, bolts and retainers should be checked for tightness every 14 to 30 days, depending on the operating conditions and the product involved.
2. Inspect the components carefully at least once a month.

Swivels: Check for excessive gap distance between the rotating parts. Check threaded parts that are installed together to see that they are secure and tight. Check all setscrews to see that they are tight and staked.

Hook Blocks: Check all pins and bolts for tightness, spreading of side plates, weld cracks, sheave wear, bearing wear, spreading of hook, setscrews that are tight and staked. Check that hook latch is operative.

Hook Balls: Check pin, nut, and washer to ensure ball halves are held securely together. Check locating pin for excessive wear. Inspect swivel parts as specified previously. Check that hook latch is operative.

3. If a swivel is constantly overloaded, it will cause damage to the unit. The first sign of damage is often bearing brinelling (dimpling of the bearing races). This condition is determined by spinning the swivel by hand. If the motion is rough, or has a ratchet-like effect, the bearing has been damaged and should be replaced.
4. The distance between the swivel barrel and shank or rotating members are pre-set with a factory clearance of .020–.050 inches (0.5–1.2mm). If this distance increases more than .060 inch (1.5mm) over the above distance, it is a good indication of bearing fatigue and the unit should be removed from service.

Item	Under Intermittent Operating Conditions	Under Continuous Operating Conditions
Swivels, Swivel Overhaul Balls, Swivel Balls	14 days	24 hours
Blocks with Bronze Bushed Sheaves	14 days	8 hours
Blocks with Roller Bearing Sheaves	14 days	24 hours

Chart A – Hook Block, Ball, & Swivel Lubrication Frequency

Item	Frequency	What to Check For	Appropriate Action
Swivels	14 days under continuous operation 30 days under intermittent operation	End play or gap of more than .06 inch (1.5mm) along the axis.	Remove from service immediately.
		Rough turning.	Defective bearing. Remove from service immediately.
		Elongated eye holes, bent clevis pins.	Indicates overload. Remove for repairs.
Sheaves	14 days under continuous operation 30 days under intermittent operation	Misalignment, as evidenced by wobble or uneven groove flange wear.	Indicates severe bearing wear. Remove from service. Check for wear in bronze spacers where used.
		Striations or corrugations in sheave groove.	Result of rope wear. If serious, replace.
Hook Latch	When Used	Missing, off center, bent, broken spring, missing, or defective.	Replace immediately.
Hooks	Daily or When Used	Permanent deformation or stretching.	An indication of overload. If serious, replace. Any suspicion of fractures calls for an immediate investigation and, if necessary, replacement of part.
		Crack or other defects.	Hooks should be tested at least once a year by magnafluxing, x-ray, or other qualified method. Intermittent tests can be conducted by a less accurate oil stain method.

Chart B – Hook Block, Ball & Swivel Inspection Frequency

Operator's Manual

Turntable Bearing Capscrew Torque

Maintaining the proper torque on turntable bearing mounting capscrews is critical. If the bearing has been replaced, the crane undecked, or a turntable bearing capscrew is removed for any reason, the capscrew(s) must be replaced. Reuse of turntable bearing mounting capscrews is not allowed.

CAUTION

All turntable bearing capscrews use Loctite® 571 Pipe Sealant, or equivalent. The sealant or coating is used to protect the threads of the capscrews from rust and corrosion. Unprotected capscrews will not maintain the proper torque. Always use sealant or coating when installing turntable bearing capscrews.

Turntable Bearing Capscrew Inspection Schedule

Capscrews should be inspected and/or torqued after the initial 250 hours of operation of any new crane, if the crane has been undecked, or if any turntable bearing mounting capscrew has been replaced for any reason. Inspect and/or torque capscrews per the Turntable Bearing Capscrew Torque Inspection Schedule, therefore.

Use the minimal applicable torque (2,120 ft lb (2 875Nm) when checking the turntable bearing mounting capscrews. When checking the torque it is acceptable for the capscrew to turn as long as the applicable torque is achieved.. If the applicable torque cannot be achieved, the capscrew must be replaced. Torque newly installed capscrews to the midpoint of the torque range: 2,120–2,335 ft lb (2 875–3 166Nm).

Turntable Bearing Capscrew Torque Inspection Schedule		
Schedule	Interval	Requirements
A	500 Hrs	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Perform an initial torque of the capscrews after the first 250 hours of operation of a new crane, or if the crane has been undecked for any reason, to establish capscrew torque baseline. <p>Note: Use the minimum applicable torque value when checking.</p>
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> After the next 500 hours of operation, if any of the capscrew torques have degraded, tighten capscrews to the proper torque. <p>Note: Use the minimum applicable torque value when checking.</p>
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> If the crane is utilized for duty cycle work, Schedule A must be continuously maintained during duty cycle applications.
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Inspection Schedule A must be maintained until such a time that no capscrews require tightening after 500 hours of operation. Schedule B can then be followed.
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The minimum applicable torque value is acceptable for the turntable bearing capscrew torque inspection.
B	Annually	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> If the capscrew torque has degraded at any annual check, Torque Inspection Schedule A must be followed until such time that no loss of capscrew torque is observed.
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The minimum applicable torque value is acceptable for the turntable bearing capscrew torque inspection.

Hydraulic Hose Assembly Inspection

The frequency of inspection and replacement of hose assemblies should be determined by the operating environment, the potential risk from a hose failure, and past experience of hose failures in the application and environment.

WARNING

Always wear safety glasses when working with or inspecting pressurized hose assemblies. Do not search for leaks by running your hand or finger along a hydraulic hose. Hot hydraulic oil, under high pressure leaking through a small pinhole in a hose, can puncture gloves, your skin, and penetrate several inches (*centimeters*) into soft body tissue causing serious personal injury.

A daily visual inspection is recommended for all hose assemblies in service.

1. Check all hose end fittings for cracks, crushing, corrosion, slippage on the hose, leakage, or any other damage.
2. Check all hoses for cracks, exposed reinforcement, chafing, bulging, loose covers, or any other damage.
3. Check the installation of all hose assemblies for any kinked, crushed, flattened, or twisted hoses.

Replace any damaged hose assemblies, hose end mating fittings, and seals as required.

Paint Maintenance

Knowledgeable equipment owners realize the value of periodic preventative maintenance and responsible care. A regular surface care program should be followed to protect the equipment's paint finish and maintain a like-new appearance. There is no one correct/ultimate procedure since the uniqueness of every machine's operating environment and owner/operator maintenance habits differ. However, it is important to remove surface contaminants before they have time to bond or etch into the paint finish.

The crane has non-skid materials located in certain areas to assist operators and service personnel with safe access/egress to/from the crane. Do not paint or wax non skid materials. Paint or wax will cause the non-skid materials to become slick, reducing their effectiveness for safety while walking on the crane. If any non-skid materials becomes ineffective due to wear, age, or destroyed in any way, it must be replaced.

WARNING

Do not apply paint or wax over non-skid materials. Keep all non-skid materials clean and free of all contaminants. All walking surfaces on the crane should be cleaned to eliminate any contaminants. Paint, wax, or other contaminants will reduce the effectiveness of the materials. Ineffective materials can create unsafe access/egress to/from the crane leading to serious personal injury. Mask off and/or cover non-skid materials prior to painting or waxing areas around any non-skid material(s). Contact your Link-Belt Distributor for information regarding the replacement or repair of any non-skid material(s).

Operator's Manual

Regular Preventative Maintenance

1. Regular washing is the best way to remove surface contaminants.
2. Always use mild cleaners and soaps, and rinse thoroughly after washing. Do not use harsh detergents, such as household laundry detergents, or cleaners that contain phosphates, as they will "burn" the paint, strip off protective coating, diminish the gloss and accelerate the contamination process.
3. Periodic waxing will enhance the luster and protect the paint surface.

If environmental damage to the paint finish is detected (loss of some of its luster due to lack of or inability to maintain as recommended) the paint finish can be restored to near-new appearance by following a simple polishing and waxing procedure.

Polishing And Waxing Procedure

1. Clean surface thoroughly by hand washing or power washing with a mild detergent. Rinse thoroughly with water before buffing.
2. Apply a polishing compound, such as Meguiar's M8432, or equivalent, to a surface area approximately two feet by two feet at a time. Make sure the cleaner is applied liberally to entire area and work on only that area with the buffing wheel.
3. Buff surface with an electric or air buffer at 1000 rpm using a 3M Superbuff polishing pad, or equivalent, with light to medium pressure until a uniform high gloss is obtained. Hand wipe with a clean cloth.
4. After surface has been buffed, apply a quality automotive wax such as Meguiar's M-26 Hi-Tech Yellow Wax, or equivalent, and hand buff until the cloth moves freely. The original luster of coating should be restored.

Table Of Contents

Tire Inspection	3-1
Tire Inflation	3-1
Tire And Rim Safety Instructions	3-2
Tire And Rim Removal And Installation	3-3
Removal	3-3
Installation	3-3
Swing Brake Bleeding	3-5
Travel Swing Lock Adjustment	3-6
360 Degree Swing Lock	3-7
360 Degree Swing Lock Inspection And Adjustment	3-7
Bubble Level Adjustment	3-8
Crane Monitoring System	3-8
Hydraulic System Relief Valve Adjustment	3-9
Preparing the Crane For Checking Relief Pressures	3-9
Relief Valve Pressure Checking Instructions	3-9
Boom Angle Indicator Adjustment	3-15
Emergency Steer Accumulator Pressure Check (If Equipped)	3-16
Accumulator Check/Charging	3-17
Boom Wear Shoe Adjustment	3-19
Boom Extend And Retract Wire Rope Inspection And Adjustment	3-23
Extend/Retract Wire Rope Inspection	3-23
Extend/Retract Wire Rope Adjustment	3-24
First Layer/Third Wrap Calibration (If Equipped)	3-25
Boom Tip Section Anti-Rotation Adjustment	3-26

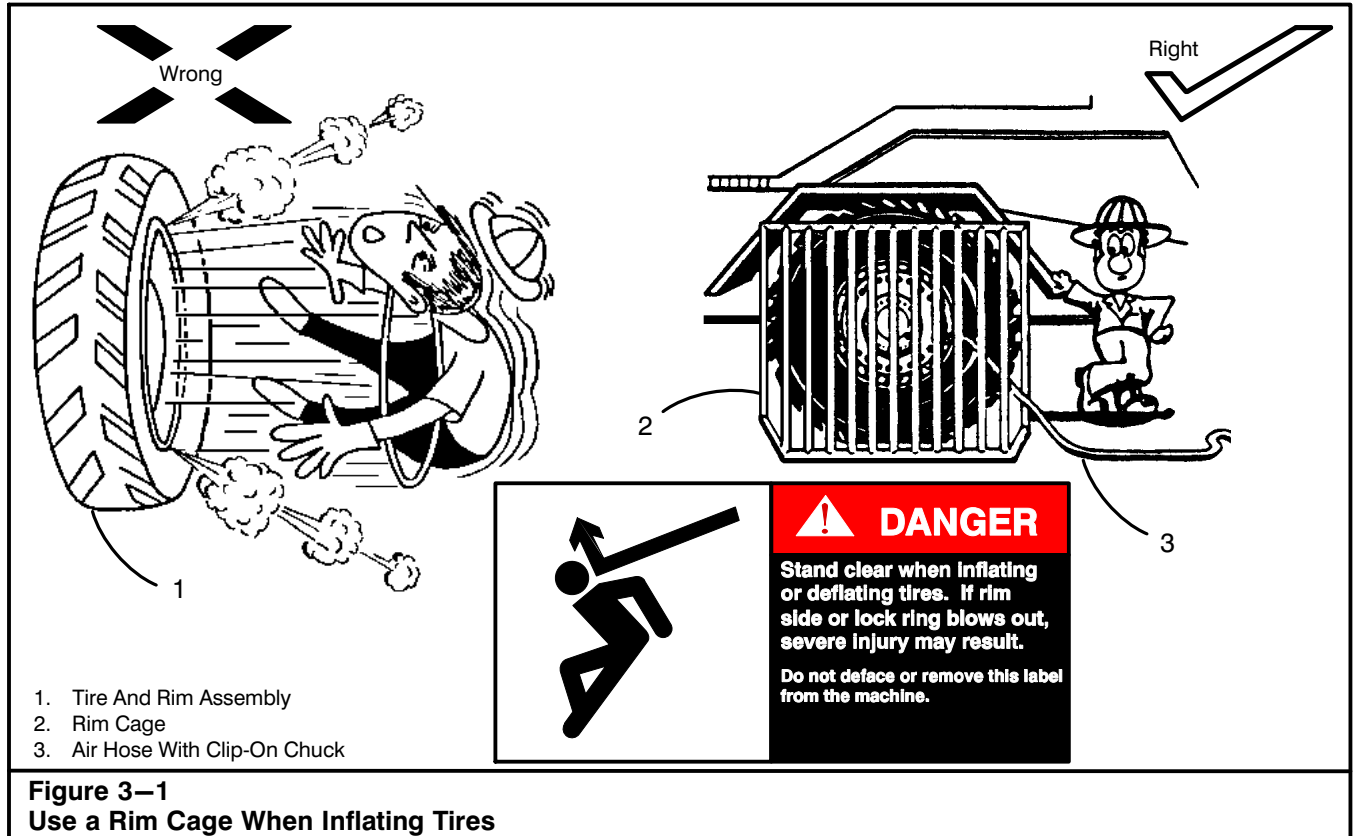


Figure 3-1
Use a Rim Cage When Inflating Tires

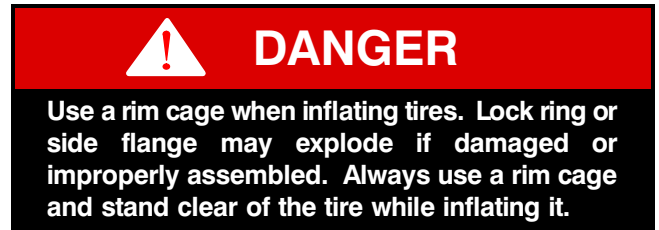
Tire Inspection

Inspect the tire treads daily and remove any debris that may be wedged in the tire grooves. Check for nails, screws, glass, or anything that may penetrate the tire and permit air to leak from the tires. Check the side walls and treads for cuts, bulges, and other damage. If internal damage to any tire is suspected, have it demounted and checked. Make all necessary repairs or replace as required.

When replacing tires, all tires should be of the same manufacturer, size, type, load rating, and construction. Refer to the tire manufacturer and follow all recommendations regarding tire inspection and replacement.

Tire Inflation

Check the tire inflation pressures daily when the tires are cold. Use the Tire Inflation label, on the left side of the hydraulic reservoir or the Tire Inflation chart in the Crane Rating Manual, to determine the correct tire pressure for the type of operation being performed. This label contains recommended tire pressures for different operating conditions. A rim cage should be used when inflating tires to protect the mechanic and any bystanders from the danger of “rim explosion”. Improperly assembled or damaged rim components are subject to explode when tires are inflated. Refer to Figure 3-1.

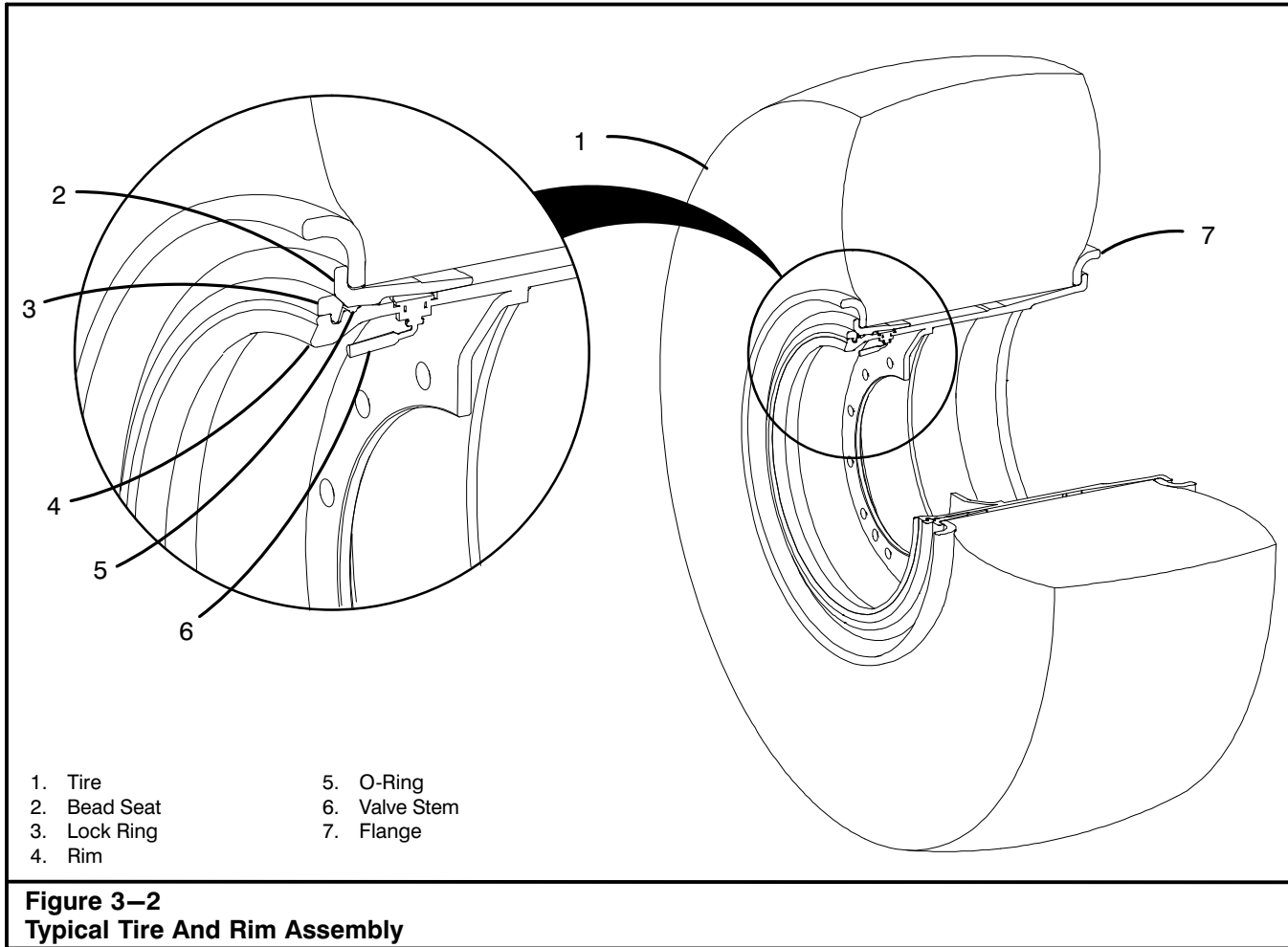


Two categories of inflation pressures are listed on the Tire Inflation label, “Maximum Lifts On Rubber” and “Maximum Speed”. While the crane is at the job site, the tires should be inflated to the pressure listed under “Maximum Lifts On Rubber” as all job site travel is limited to speeds less than 2.5 mph (4km/h). The crane should not be road driven with the tires inflated to “Maximum Lifts On Rubber” pressures.

“Maximum Speed” pressures are for highway travel only. Even with the tires inflated to the “Maximum Speed” pressures, speed is limited to 25 mph (40km/h) with a 30 minute rest period after each 50 miles (80km) of driving or 2 hours of sustained operation, whichever comes first. One hour minimum stop should be observed after each four hours of operation.

Inspect the wheel rims, clamps, nuts, studs, etc., on a weekly basis. If any damage is apparent, repair or replace before operating the crane.

Operator's Manual



DANGER

Servicing any tire and rim assembly can be extremely dangerous. For your protection, read and understand all safety instructions before removing or installing a tire and rim assembly.

Tire And Rim Safety Instructions

1. Always remove the valve cores and exhaust all air pressure from the tire, prior to removing it. Rim components are under extreme pressure and could fly off.
2. Use a rim cage and stand clear when deflating and inflating tires. A damaged or misassembled rim assembly may burst. The operator should stand well away from the potentially explosive force.

3. After deflating the tire, check the valve stem by running a piece of wire through the stem, to ensure it is not clogged and the tire is completely deflated. Ice may form as the air leaves the tire or foreign material may clog the stem.
4. Do not reinflate a tire that has been run flat or extremely under inflated. Demount the tire and inspect it, the rim components, and wheel end for damage. These components may have been damaged or dislocated during the time the tire was under inflated.
5. Clean and inspect parts prior to assembly. Do not use bent, worn, damaged, or rusted parts.
6. When assembling the tire and rim assembly, use only parts of the same type, manufacturer, and correct size. Mismatched parts may appear to fit but when the tire is inflated they may fly apart with explosive force.
7. Always double check to ensure rim components are properly installed before inflating the tire. Misassembled parts could fly off during inflation.

- When inflating a tire, use an air hose with a clip-on chuck and in-line pressure gauge. Ensure the air hose is long enough, to permit the person inflating the tire, to stand clear of the rim cage.
- Inflate the tire to 10 psi (68kPa), and check the rim components for proper fit, before completely inflating. If the assembly is not correct, completely deflate the tire and correct the problem. Do not hammer on an inflated tire and rim assembly. Properly matched and assembled rim components will seat without tapping.
- Once it is determined that the tire and rim are properly assembled, inflate the tire to the pressure listed on the Tire Inflation label located on the left side of the hydraulic reservoir or Tire Inflation chart in the Crane Rating Manual. Do not over inflate the tire.
- Always check rims and wheel ends for damage during normal tire inspection. Early detection of potential component failure may prevent serious injury.
- Do not attempt to rework, weld, heat, or braze any damaged rim components. Heating may weaken the part and result in complete failure of the component and possible personal injury.

Tire And Rim Removal And Installation

Carefully read and understand the Tire And Rim Safety Instructions given earlier in this Section of the Operator's Manual before servicing the tire and rim assemblies.



DANGER

Servicing any tire and rim assembly can be extremely dangerous. For your protection, read and understand all safety instructions before removing or installing a tire and rim assembly.

Removal

- Properly park the crane and engage the park brake. Level the crane on outriggers with all tires clear of the ground. Shutdown the engine.
- Position a rim cage in front of the tire and rim assembly before deflating the tire. Refer to Figure 3-1.



DANGER

Exhaust all air pressure from the tire before removing it. Use a rim cage and stand clear when deflating a tire. Rim components are under extreme pressure and may fly off. Failure to exhaust air pressure, or use a rim cage, could result in a fatal accident.

Refer to Figure 3-2.

- Carefully remove the valve core from the valve stem (6). Allow the air pressure to exhaust from the tire (1). Install the valve core back in the valve stem (6). Remove the rim cage.
- Remove all but four of the lug nuts from the mounting studs. The four remaining lug nuts should be equally spaced around the rim (4).
- Properly support the tire and rim assembly with an appropriate lifting device.
- Remove the remaining lug nuts from the mounting studs.
- Carefully remove the tire and rim assembly from the axle.

Installation

Correct installation and tightening of the lug nuts on a tire and rim assembly is one of the most important operations in tire and rim maintenance. When tire or rim problems occur, incorrect installation and lug nut tightening procedures are usually found to be the cause of the problem. The following procedures must be carefully followed to ensure safe and dependable service. Refer to Figure 3-2.

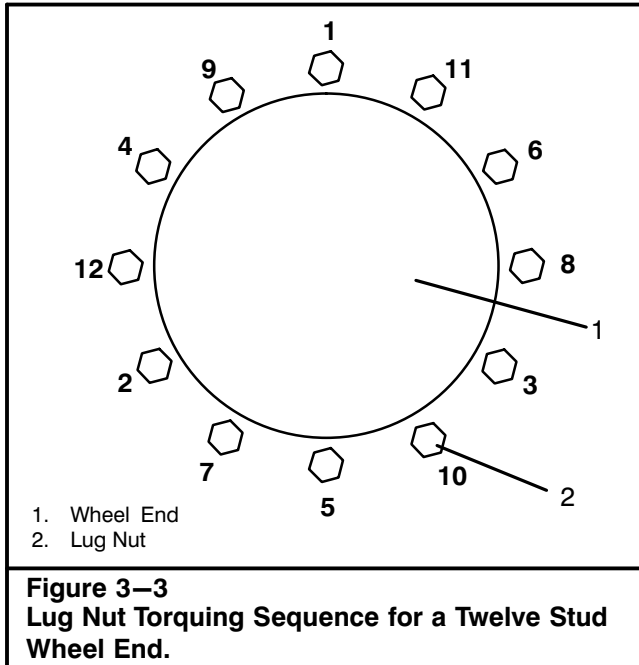
- Check the tire (1) to ensure it is completely deflated. Inspect the flanges (7), bead seat (2), o-ring (5), lock ring (3), and rim (4) for damage and proper assembly.



DANGER

All air pressure must be exhausted from the tire before installing it. An inflated tire may cause improperly assembled rim components to fly off. Failure to deflate the tire could result in a fatal accident.

Operator's Manual



2. Thoroughly clean the mounting surfaces of the rim (4) and axle. Remove any dirt, rust, excess paint, or other foreign materials. Also clean, but do not lubricate, the lug nuts and mounting studs.
3. Properly support the tire and rim assembly with an appropriate lifting device. Lift the tire and rim assembly and carefully position it on the axle.
4. Install the lug nuts on the mounting studs. Tighten the lug nuts evenly to ensure the rim (4) is properly seated on the axle.
5. Tighten the lug nuts to 225 ft lb (305Nm). See Figure 3—3 for the proper torquing sequence.

6. Repeat the proper torquing sequence and tighten the lug nuts to their final recommended torque value of 450–500 ft lb (610–678Nm).

CAUTION

Using improper torque values or torque procedure can cause distortion, slippage, or misalignment of the tire and rim assembly.

7. Properly position a rim cage in front of the tire and rim assembly.



DANGER

Use a rim cage and stand clear when inflating tires. Rim components are under extreme pressure and may fly off. Failure to use a rim cage could result in a fatal accident.

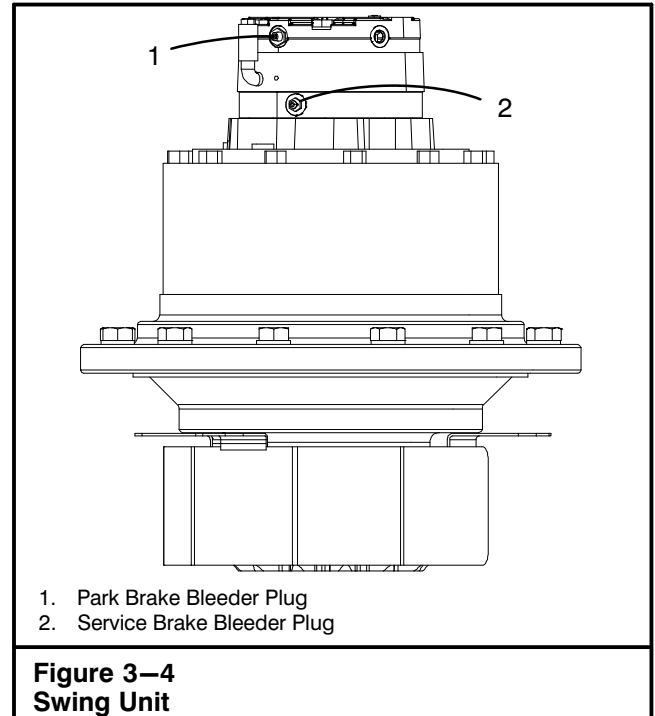
8. Inflate the tire to the pressure specified on the Tire Inflation label located on the left rear fender.
9. Start the engine, fully retract the outrigger jacks and beams, and drive the crane approximately 1 mile (1.6km). Tighten the lug nuts again using the proper torquing sequence (Figure 3—3).

Note: Each time a tire and rim assembly is installed the lug nuts should be retightened to the recommended torque value after each 10 hours of operation for the first 50 hours of operation. Check the lug nut torque every 50 hours of operation thereafter.

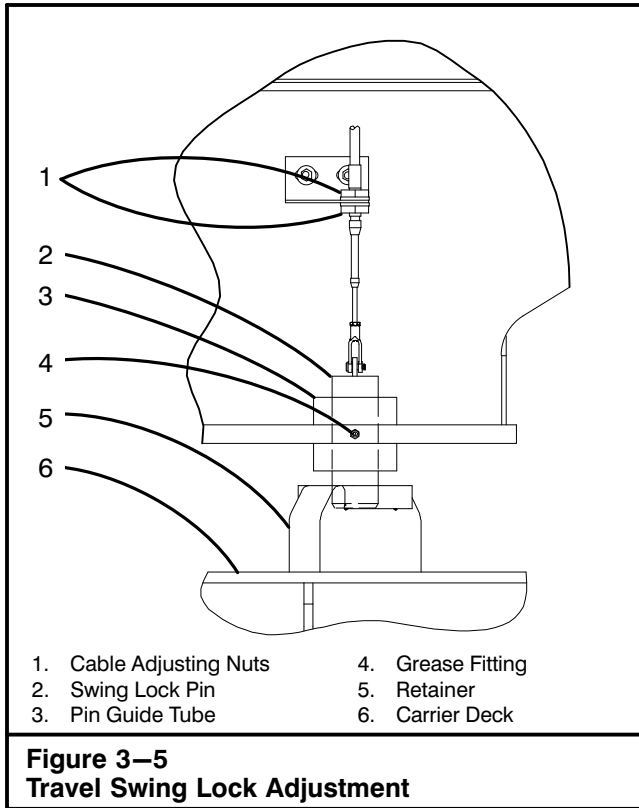
Swing Brake Bleeding

Bleed the swing brake whenever a hydraulic line is removed from the swing unit to remove any air that may have been trapped in the circuit. Use the following procedure to bleed the swing brake.

1. Park the crane on a firm, level surface. Shift the transmission to neutral and engage the park brake.
2. Engage travel swing lock and shutdown engine.
3. Position a suitable container under bleeder plugs.
4. Loosen the park brake bleeder plug. Refer to Figure 3–4. Turn the key switch to the “ON” position but do not start the engine.
5. Operate the swing park brake control switch. Allow the fluid to discharge into the container until no air is present. Tighten the park brake bleeder plug.
6. Turn the key switch to the “OFF” position.
7. Loosen the service brake bleeder plug. Push the swing brake pedal and allow the fluid to discharge into the container until no air is present. Tighten the service brake bleeder plug.
8. Check the hydraulic oil level. Refer to “Hydraulic Reservoir Oil Level Check” in Section 2 of this Operator's Manual.
9. Check the swing brake oil level. Refer to “Swing Brake Lubrication” in Section 2 of this Operator's Manual.
10. Test all swing brake functions before operating the crane.
11. Properly dispose of used oil.



Operator's Manual



Travel Swing Lock Adjustment

The travel swing lock is a two position, positive lock of the upper over the carrier to prevent swinging of the upper. The travel swing lock must be kept in adjustment.

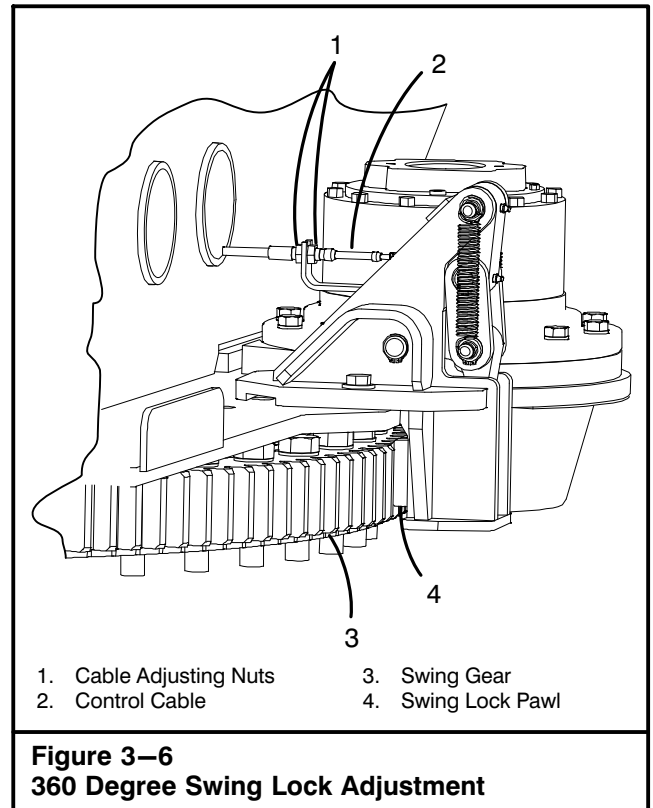
1. Park the crane on a firm level surface, position transmission shifter to neutral, and engage the park brake. Level the crane on outriggers.
2. Check that the travel swing lock is engaged and shutdown engine. Refer to Figure 3–5.
3. Check the engagement of the swing lock pin in the retainer on the carrier deck. The pin should extend completely in the retainer plate.
4. Adjust the stroke of the swing lock as required by using the cable adjusting nuts.
5. Test the swing lock in each working position before operating the crane.

360 Degree Swing Lock

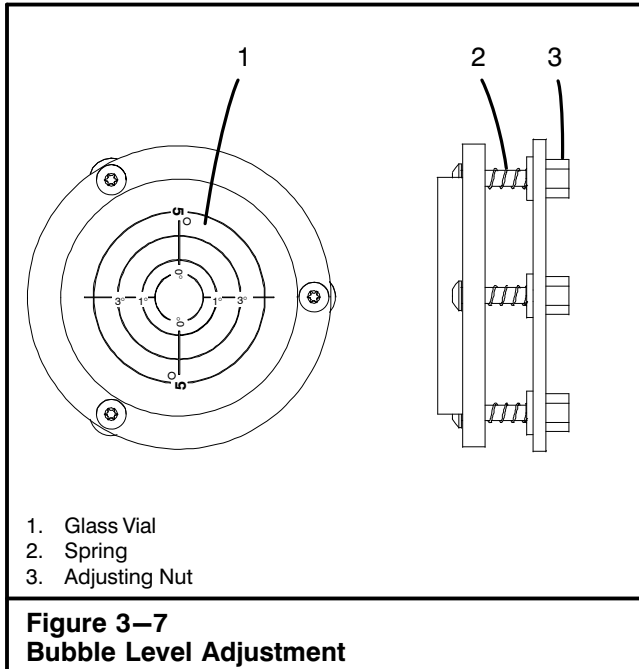
The 360 degree swing lock, if equipped, functions to prevent rotation of the upper over the carrier by engaging a pawl in the external swing gear teeth. For the swing lock to operate properly it must be adjusted correctly.

360 Degree Swing Lock Inspection And Adjustment

1. Park the crane on a firm level surface, position transmission shifter to neutral, and engage the park brake. Level the crane on outriggers.
2. Engage the travel and 360° swing locks. Shut-down the engine.
3. Visually inspect the 360° swing lock pawl. The pawl should be fully engaged with the linkage just over center. Refer to Figure 3–6.
4. If the pawl is not fully engaged and the linkage is not just over center, use the cable adjusting nuts to correctly position it.
5. Tighten the adjusting nuts and test the 360° swing lock before operating the crane.



Operator's Manual



Bubble Level Adjustment

A bubble level, for leveling the crane on outriggers, is mounted in the upper cab on the right side console. It should be checked periodically to ensure proper adjustment.

1. Park the crane on a firm level surface, position transmission shifter to neutral, and engage the park brake.
2. Level the crane on fully extended outriggers. Position the upper over the front of the carrier and engage the travel swing lock. Fully retract the power sections of the boom. Boom down to 0° angle. Ensure the cab is tilted down to its lowest position.

3. Verify the crane is level by placing a carpenter's level across the carrier deck. Check that the crane is level side to side and front to rear. Check levelness with the upper over the rear and over the side of the crane. Adjust the outriggers as necessary.
4. Rotate the adjustment nuts as required until the bubble inside each of the glass vials is centered within the vial. Both bubbles must be centered simultaneously. Refer to Figure 3-7.

Note: Do not flatten out the springs under the bubble level. Loosen rather than overtighten the adjustment nuts to gain the necessary adjustment.

Crane Monitoring System

A properly calibrated Rated Capacity Limiter is critical for safe crane operation. The boom angle and length are crucial factors in determining crane capacities. The Rated Capacity Limiter must be checked for accuracy on a daily basis and calibrated as needed. Refer to "Crane Monitoring System" in Section 2 of this Operator's Manual for the daily check list for the system.

The Rated Capacity Limiter should be calibrated by a qualified technician only. Contact your local Link-Belt Distributor to arrange for a qualified technician to perform the calibration procedures.

Hydraulic System Relief Valve Adjustment

The following instructions pertain to checking and setting all relief valve pressures in the hydraulic system. All cranes are tested and properly adjusted before leaving the factory and should not need checking when first put into operation. Each 250 hours of operation, the relief valve pressure settings should be checked. A drop in relief valve pressure setting may be noticed the first time checked. This is normal and is probably due to lessening of spring tension or stress relief in relief valve parts.

If a new or rebuilt pump is installed, all relief valve pressures must be backed off and reset, as outlined in this Section before putting the crane in operation. The purpose of this is to avoid the possibility of damaging the new pump from over pressurization, if relief valves are set incorrectly. Do not operate the crane over relief pressures for extended periods of time to avoid overheating of hydraulic oil.



DANGER

When it is required to operate the crane during maintenance and/or adjustments, use extreme caution as service personnel may have to work near and/or under moving machinery. Serious personal injury and/or death may result. Always remain in visual and/or verbal contact to ensure the safety of service personnel. Use a signal person if necessary.

CAUTION

Relief valves are provided to protect the hydraulic system. Do not increase relief valve pressures above specifications or hydraulic system damage may occur.

Preparing the Crane For Checking Relief Pressures

1. Park the crane on firm level surface, position transmission shifter to neutral, and engage the park brake.
2. Level the crane on outriggers and operate the hydraulic functions as required to bring the hydraulic oil temperature to its normal operating range. Refer to Section 2 of this Operator's Manual for oil operating temperature ranges.

3. Engage the travel swing lock with the upper directly over the front of the carrier.
4. Fully retract and lower the boom. Shutdown the engine.

Note: Checking relief valve pressures is simplified by using two persons, one in the operator's cab to operate the controls and one to check and adjust the relief valves.

Relief Valve Pressure Checking Instructions

Refer To Figure 3–8 and Figure 3–9 for relief valve and quick disconnect fitting locations.

1. Use a gauge of known accuracy. Have the gauge calibrated if necessary. Use a snubber or gate valve to reduce shock loading in the gauge.
2. Turn the key to the "ON" position but do not start the engine and work the control or switch, for the circuit being checked, back and forth to relieve any trapped hydraulic pressure.



WARNING

All trapped hydraulic pressure must be exhausted from the system before installing a gauge in any quick disconnect. A sudden release of hot oil could cause burns or other serious injury.

3. Install the pressure gauge on the quick disconnect fitting.
4. Refer to the "Hydraulic Pressure Setting" chart to determine the correct pressure setting for the circuit being checked. Also, review the procedure for checking that particular circuit outlined in the chart.
5. Start the engine.
6. If applicable, fully engage the control for the circuit being checked and hold it in that position.
7. With the engine running at the speed specified in the "Hydraulic Pressure Settings" chart, check the gauge for the correct reading, adjust as required.

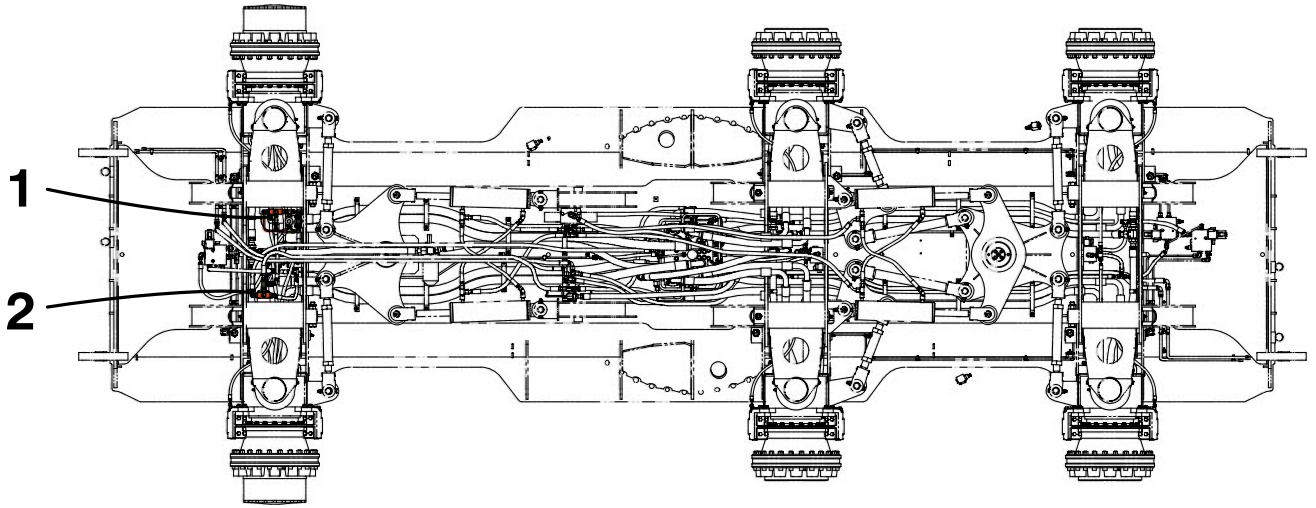
Note: Obtain each final pressure by bringing the pressure up to the proper setting, not by backing down to it.

8. Allow the engine to return to idle before shutting it down.
9. Turn the key to the "ON" position but do not start the engine and work the control or switch, for the circuit being checked, back and forth to relieve any trapped hydraulic pressure before removing pressure gauge from the quick disconnect fitting.

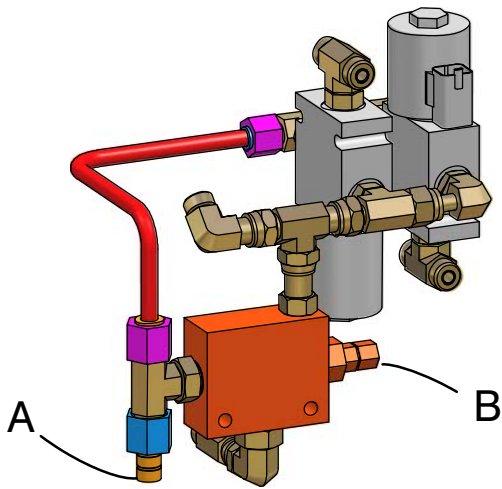
Operator's Manual

Hydraulic Pressure Settings – Carrier				
Relief Valve	Hydraulic Circuit	Quick Disconnect & Adjustment Location	Relief Valve Setting*	Procedure For Setting The Relief Valve
1	Travel Park Brake	Figure 3–8 A & B	350 psi (2 413kPa) ±25 psi (±172kPa)	Engine At Idle.
2	Carrier Charge Circuit	Figure 3–8 C & D	325 psi (2 241kPa) ±25 psi (±172kPa)	Engine At Idle.
*Adjust All Pressures to Within ±50 psi (345kPa) Except Where Noted.				

Carrier Relief Valve Locations (Bottom View)



1



2

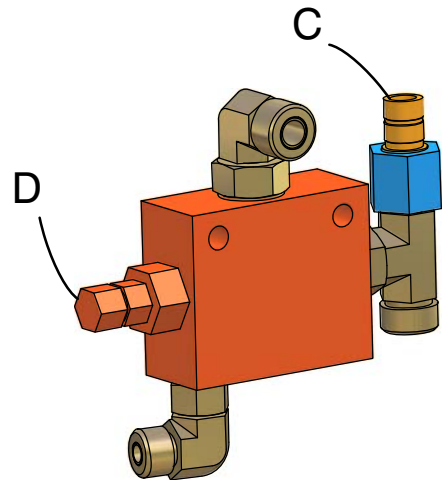


Figure 3-8
Relief Valves – Carrier

Operator's Manual

Hydraulic Pressure Settings – Upper

Relief Valve	Hydraulic Circuit	Quick Disconnect & Adjustment Location	Relief Valve Setting*	Procedure For Setting The Relief Valve
3	Outrigger	Figure 3–9 A & B	3,200 psi (22 064kPa)	Using Gauge Port "A", Adjust Pressure Compensated Pump Relief "B ₁ " to 3,300-3400 psi (22 753–23 443kPa). Fully Retract An Outrigger Beam & Hold. Engine At Idle. Set Relief Valve at "B" to 3,200 psi (22 064kPa). Reset Pressure Compensated Pump Relief "B ₁ " to 3,000 psi (20 685kPa).
4	Pilot Control	Figure 3–9 C & D	575 psi (3 965kPa) ±25 psi (±172kPa)	Engine At Idle.
5	Pump Disconnect (Style 1 If Equipped)	Figure 3–9 E & F	2,500 psi (17 237kPa)	Engine At Idle. Pump Disconnect switch off (If equipped with switch).
6	Travel/Winch Pump Charge Circuit	Figure 3–9 G & H	380 psi ±10 psi (2 620kPa) (69kPa)	Crane on Fully Extended Outriggers. Travel Swing Lock Engaged. Boom Fully Retracted & Over Front. With Engine At Full Throttle, Fully Boom Down & Hold. Set Pressure Reducing Valve (6a) to 625–650 psi (4 309–4 481kPa) at G ₁ Using Gauge Port "H". With Engine at Full Throttle, Fully Boom Down & Hold. Set Relief Valve at (G) to 550–600 psi (3 792–4 137kPa). Reset Pressure Reducing Valve (6a) to 380 ±10 psi (2 620 ±69kPa) With Engine At Idle.
7	Boom Hoist Telescope Retract	Figure 3–9 I & J	4,400 psi (30 338kPa)	Crane on Fully Extended Outriggers. Travel Swing Lock Engaged. Boom Fully Retracted & Over Front. Fully Retract Telescope Cylinder & Hold. Engine At Full Throttle.
	Boom Telescope Extend	Figure 3–9	3,000 psi (20 685kPa)	Crane on Fully Extended Outriggers. Travel Swing Lock Engaged with Boom Over Front. Remove Specific Telescope Line. Plug Line & Work Port. Using Specific Telescope Override Switch, Fully Extend Telescope Cylinder & Hold. Engine At Full Throttle.
	Inner	I & K		
	Center	I & L		
	Outer/Tip	I & M		
8	Steering	Figure 3–9 N	3,000 psi (20 685kPa)	Crane on Fully Extended Outriggers. Engine Full Throttle. Steer Full Right & Hold. Check Pressure—Non Adjustable. Steer Full Left & Hold. Check Pressure—Non Adjustable.
9	Swing	Figure 3–9 O & P	2,200 psi (15 170kPa)	Crane on Fully Extended Outriggers. Travel Swing Lock Engaged. Swing Left & Right & Hold. Engine At Idle.
10	Boom Hoist Lower (If Equipped)	Figure 3–9 Q & R	325 psi ±10 psi (2 241kPa) (±69kPa)	Crane on Fully Extended Outriggers. Swing Park Brake Applied. Boom Fully Retracted & Over Side. Fully Boom Down & Hold. Engine At Idle.

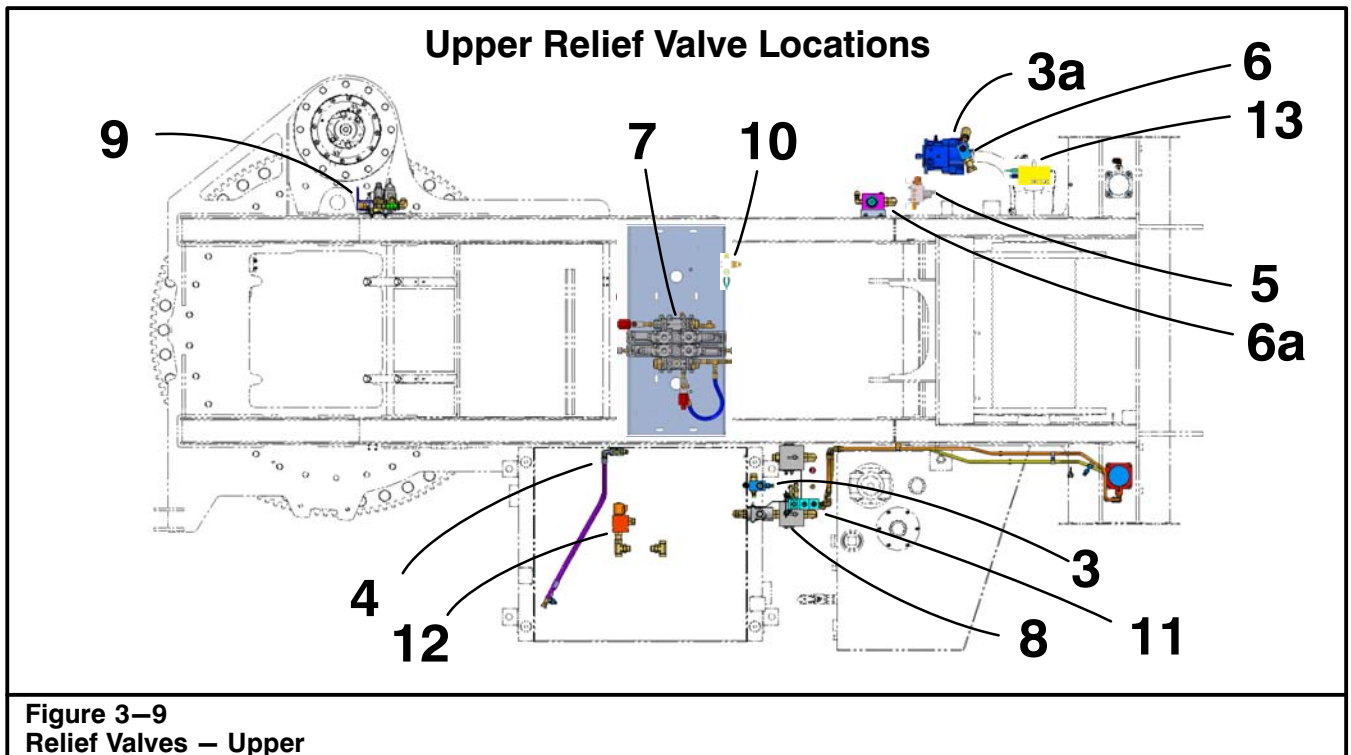
***Adjust All Pressures to Within ±50 psi (345kPa) Except Where Noted.**

Hydraulic Pressure Settings – Upper

Relief Valve	Hydraulic Circuit	Quick Disconnect & Adjustment Location	Relief Valve Setting*	Procedure For Setting The Relief Valve
11	Counterweight Removal (If Equipped)	Figure 3–9 S & T	1,000 psi (6 895kPa)	Crane on Fully Extended Outriggers. Travel Swing Lock Engaged with Boom Over Front. Unpin Counterweight From Upper. Fully Lower Counterweight & Hold. Engine At Idle.
12	Hydraulic Oil Cooler Fan	Figure 3–9 U & V	3,000 psi (20 685kPa)	Crane on Fully Extended Outriggers. Boom Fully Retracted & Over Side. Swing Park Brake Applied. Unplug Proportional Solenoid Relief Valve Engine At Full Throttle.
13	Winch Load Holding Valve	Figure 3–9 W & V	250 psi (1 724kPa)	Adjust with Engine at Idle.

***Adjust All Pressures to Within ± 50 psi (345kPa) Except Where Noted.**

Note: Front and Rear Winch circuits are non-adjustable. To check pressure, remove and plug winch brake line on applicable winch. Upper engine at full throttle, winch down and hold. Read pressure at gauge ports on winch pump(s). Pressure should be 4,135–4,650 psi (28 511–32 062kPa).



Operator's Manual

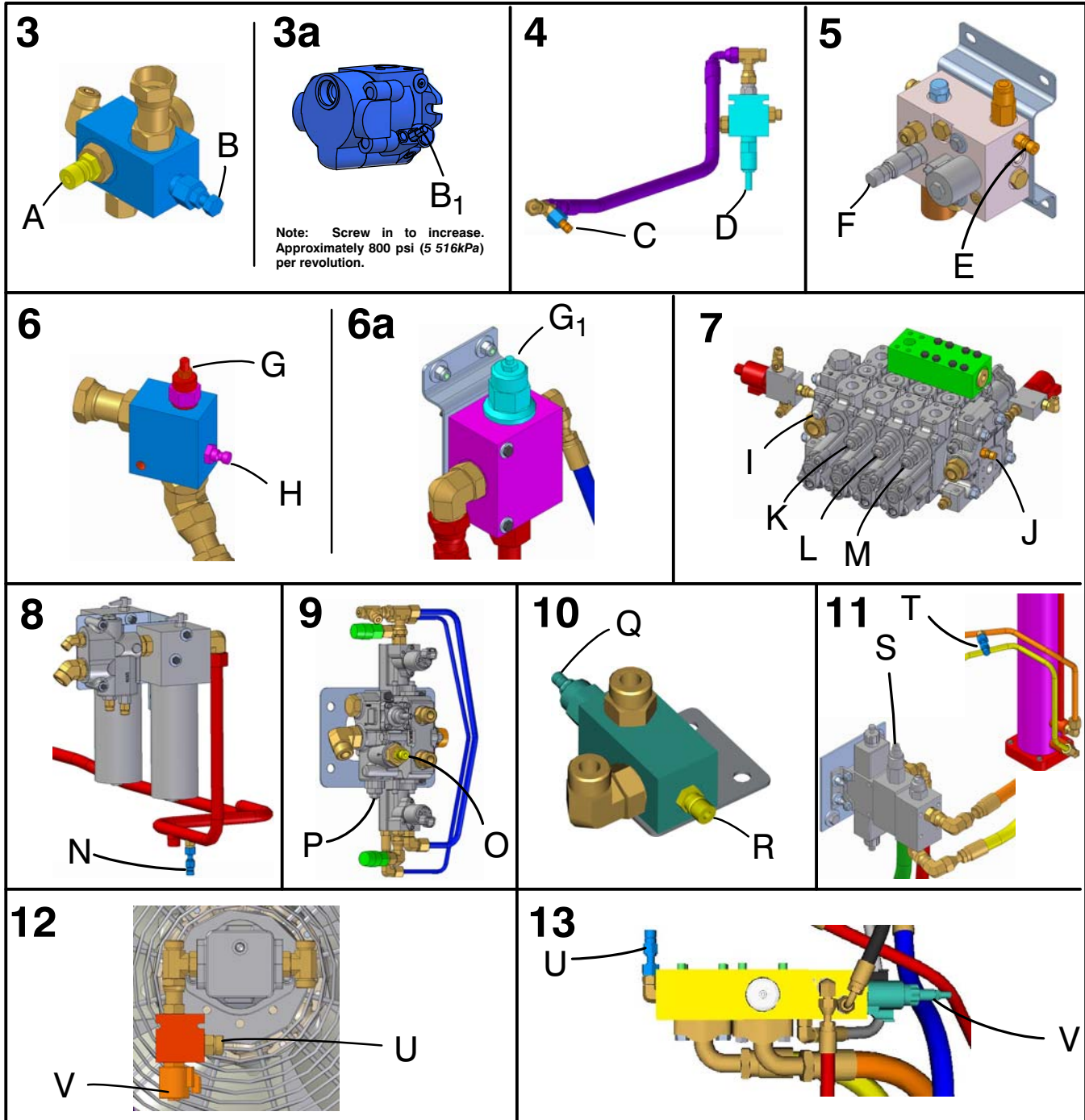
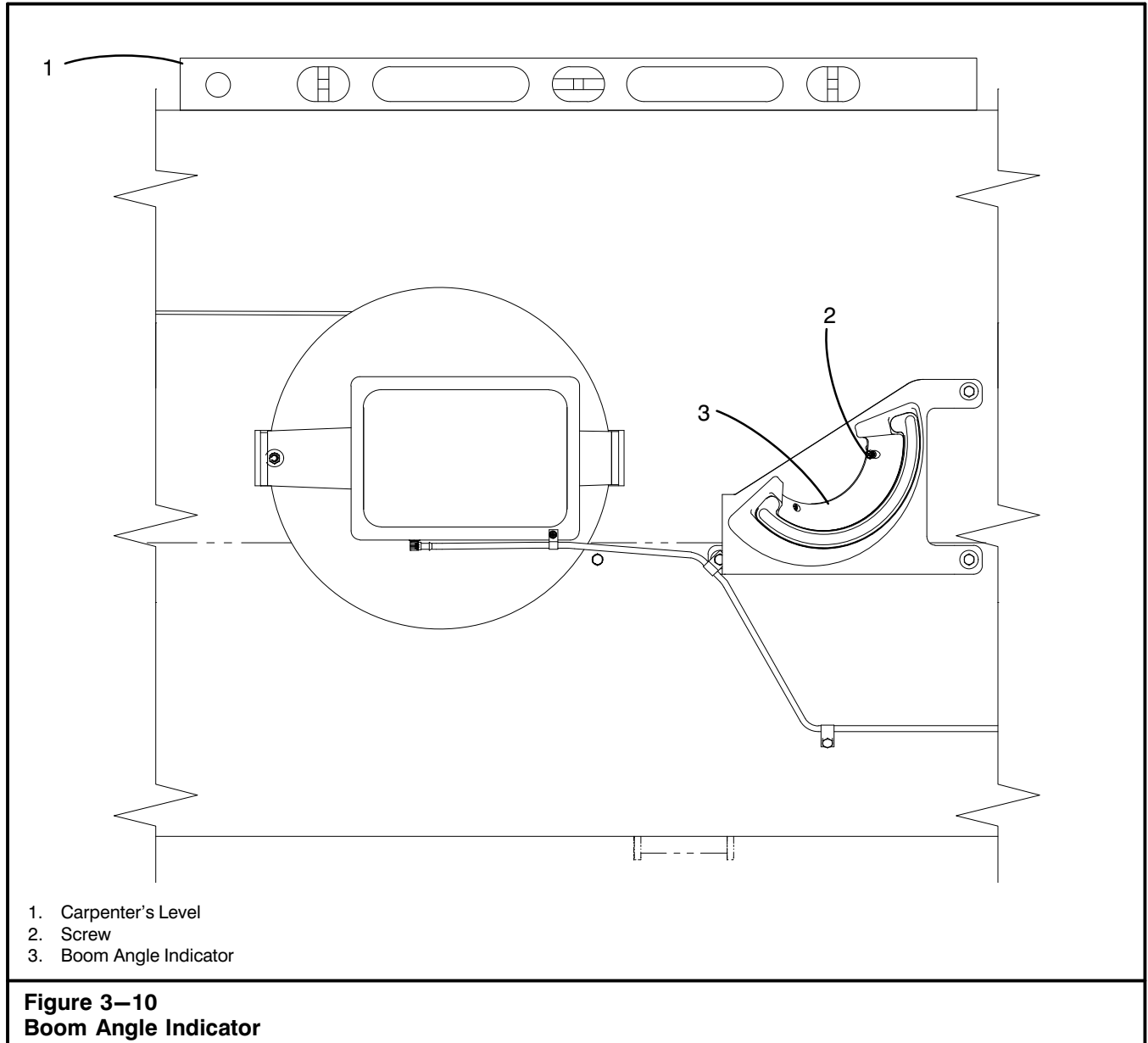


Figure 3-9
Relief Valves – Upper (Continued)



Boom Angle Indicator Adjustment

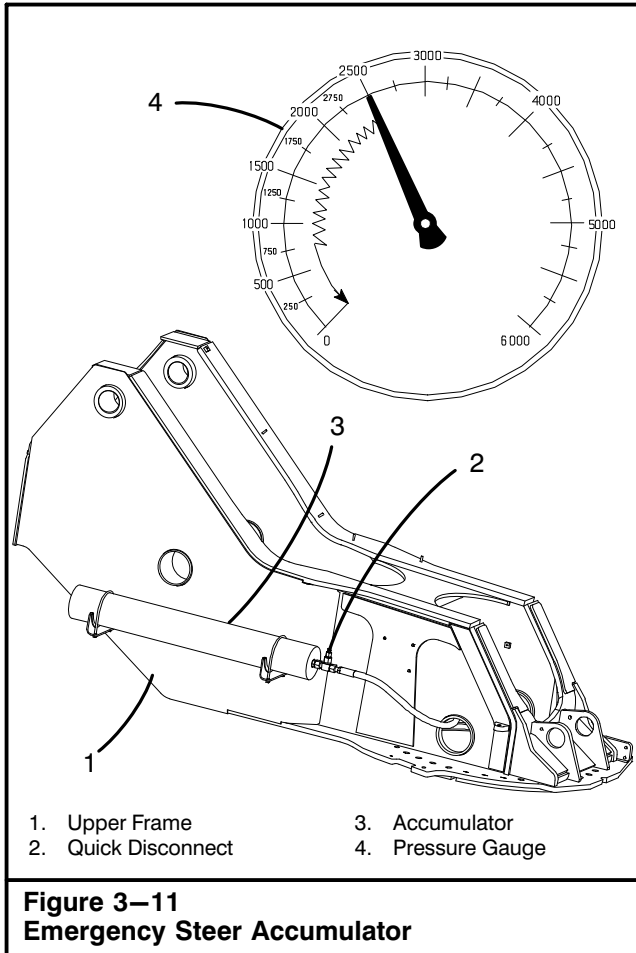
A bubble type boom angle indicator is mounted on the base section of the boom to the right of the operator's cab. Refer to Figure 3–10. It must be adjusted properly and the crane must be level for the unit to accurately indicate boom angles. Check the adjustment of the boom angle indicator daily to ensure its accuracy.

1. Park the crane on a firm level surface, shift the transmission to neutral, and engage the park brake.
2. Level the crane on fully extended outriggers. Position the upper over the front of the carrier and en-

gage the travel swing lock. Fully retract the boom. Boom down to 0° angle.

3. Verify the crane is level by placing a carpenter's level across the front of upper frame. Check levelness with the upper over the rear and over the side of the crane. Adjust the outriggers as necessary.
4. Once the crane is level, verify that the boom is at 0 degrees by placing carpenter's level on top of the boom. Refer to Figure 3–10. Adjust the boom as necessary.
5. If necessary, loosen the screw and adjust the angle indicator until the bubble within the vial is located under the 0 mark. Tighten screw.

Operator's Manual



Emergency Steer Accumulator Pressure Check (If Equipped)

In the event of hydraulic pressure failure the emergency steer accumulator is used to supply the hydraulic steering circuit with enough pressure to allow the operator to negotiate approximately eight 90° turns. The accumulator pressure should be checked at 250 hour intervals to ensure the accumulator is properly pressurized. To check the accumulator pressure use the following procedures along with Figure 3-11.

1. Park crane on firm level surface. Shift the transmission to neutral and apply the park brake.
2. Level the crane on outriggers, position the upper directly over the front of the carrier and engage the travel swing lock.

3. Properly check and adjust the steering relief valve as outlined in “Hydraulic System Relief Valve Adjustment” in this Section of the Operator’s Manual.
4. Shutdown the engine and bleed all pressure from the accumulator by rotating the steering wheel back and forth until no pressure is available to move the wheels.



WARNING

All trapped hydraulic pressure must be exhausted from the system before installing a gauge in any quick disconnect. A sudden release of hot oil could cause burns or other serious injury.

5. Connect the pressure gauge to the quick disconnect on the hydraulic input to the accumulator.

Note: Pressure gauge must be accurate up to 3,000 psi (20 685kPa).

6. Start the engine and align the tires straight ahead. Engage 2-wheel steer.
7. To charge the accumulator, engage the outrigger jack cylinder control switches to the “EXTEND” position and hold until pressure gauge reads 2,500 psi (17 237kPa). The engine should be running at half throttle.
8. Shutdown engine and turn ignition switch to the “ON” position but do not start engine.
9. Turn the steering wheel to full left, then full right, then full left while counting the number of cycles as wheel crosses the straight ahead position.

Note: One full cycle equals center, to full left, to full right, to center.

10. Observe the pressure gauge while accumulator pressure is being steered down. Note the pressure reading at which the accumulator pressure drops off rapidly. This is the accumulator precharge pressure, which should be 750 psi (5171kPa).

Note: One and one half cycles (six 90° turns), minimum should be obtained from a complete accumulator precharge.

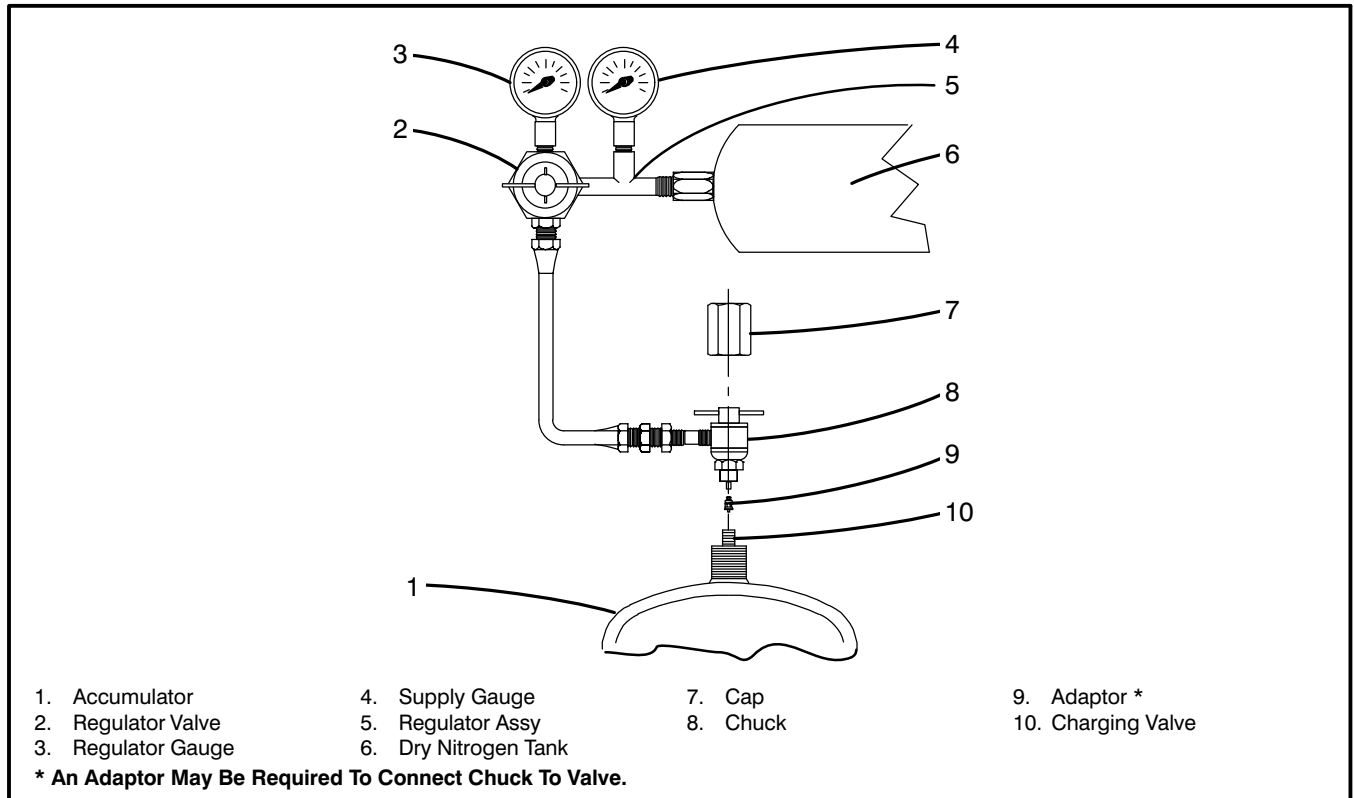


Figure 3-12
Typical Accumulator Charging Regulator Arrangement

Accumulator Check/Charging

The crane may be equipped with up to five accumulators. These accumulators are pressurized with dry nitrogen. The accumulator pressure should be checked at 500 hour intervals to ensure the accumulators is properly pressurized. Small accumulators should be recharged rather than checked as they tend to lose pressure when checked. Charging accumulators should be done at approximately 65–75°F (18.3–23.9°C). The charge pressure tolerance should be +/- 5%.

The accumulators may be checked and/or charged with the unit installed or removed from the crane. If unit must be removed from the crane, refer to the crane Shop Manual for the correct procedure. Use the following procedure to check and/or charge the accumulators.

1. Lower, detach, and secure load, as required.
2. Stabilize the crane for service as follows:
 - a. Park the crane out of the way on a firm and level surface.
 - b. Engage the travel park brake and/or properly block the tires.
 - c. Engage the swing park brake and/or travel swing lock, as required.
 - d. Level the crane on fully extended outriggers.

- e. Fully retract and lower the boom, as required.
3. Shutdown the engine.



WARNING

Solvents and cleaning solutions can be hazardous. Serious personal injury may result from misuse of these products. Read and follow all the manufacturer's recommendations concerning solvents and cleaning solutions.

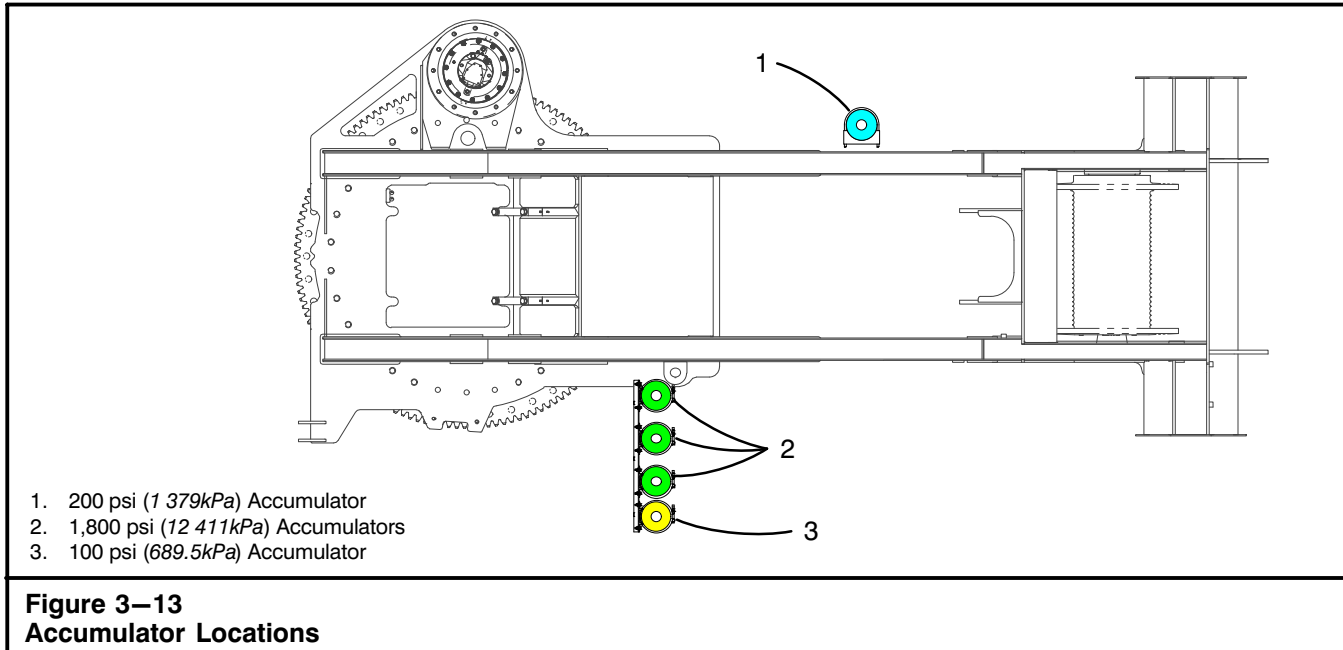
4. Thoroughly clean area to be disassembled with an approved cleaning solvent to prevent contamination from entering the hydraulic oil circuits. Allow the area to air dry.



WARNING

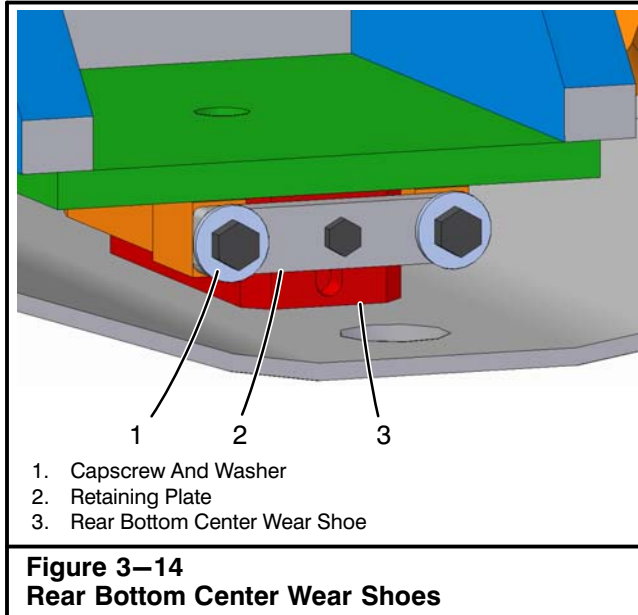
Hydraulic oil is under pressure and may be hot. A sudden release of hot oil could cause burns or other serious injury. Shutdown the engine and exhaust all trapped hydraulic pressure from the system before removing any line or component.

Operator's Manual



5. Relieve the hydraulic system pressure:
 - a. Turn the ignition switch to “ON”, but **DO NOT START THE ENGINE**. Move the function lockout switch to the “OPERATE” position.
 - b. Work the crane control levers and outrigger switches back and forth several times.
 - c. Rotate the steering wheel back and forth repeatedly until steering becomes hard.
 - d. Turn ignition switch to the “OFF” position.
6. Check that all control levers are in the neutral position and move the function lockout switch to the “DISABLE” position.
7. Remove cap (7) from the accumulator (1). Refer to Figure 3–12.
8. Close the regulator valve (2) and the valve on the dry nitrogen tank (6).
9. Connect the regulator assembly (5) to the dry nitrogen tank (6).
10. Open the valve on the dry nitrogen tank (6). The regulator gauge (3) should read 0 psi (0kPa). If required, close the regulator valve (2) to achieve the zero pressure at the regulator gauge (3).
11. Note the reading on the supply gauge (4). The dry nitrogen tank must contain sufficient volume and pressure to charge the accumulator.
12. Connect chuck (8) to the charging valve (10) and turn the t-handle on the chuck clockwise to open the charging valve (10).
13. When charging a new accumulator (1), open the regulator valve (2) slowly until the regulator gauge (3) reads 5 psi (34kPa).
14. Slowly open the regulator valve (2) until the regulator gauge (3) reaches the correct pressure. Refer to Figure 3–13 for accumulator location and pressure.
15. Close the valve on the dry nitrogen tank (6) and turn the t-handle of the chuck (8) counterclockwise to close the charging valve (10).
16. Remove the chuck (8) from the charging valve (10).
17. Inspect the charging valve (10) for leaks. There will be a slight discharge of nitrogen when the chuck (8) is removed.

Note: Allow accumulator to rest 10–15 minutes after charging. This will allow gas temperature to adjust and equalize. Recheck gas pressure and adjust as necessary.
18. Check the charging valve (10) for leaks with soapy water. If leaks are present, repair as required.
19. If no leaks are present, install the cap (7) on the accumulator (1).
20. Check hydraulic reservoir oil level. Add oil as required. Refer to Section 2 of this Operator's Manual for correct type and procedure.
21. Start the engine and let idle for five minutes. Inspect the connections on the hydraulic lines for leaks. Repair if needed.
22. Test all hydraulic functions of the crane for proper operation before placing the crane into service.



Boom Wear Shoe Adjustment

Boom wear shoes are provided as a means of keeping the boom working smoothly. They must be adjusted periodically to prevent excessive deflection of the boom sections. Refer to Figure 3-16.

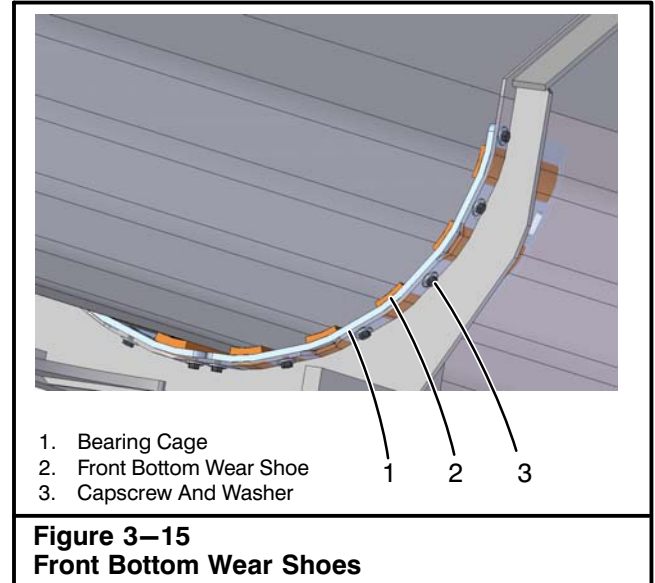
1. Level the crane on fully extended outriggers with all tires clear of the ground. If not already installed, install the 24,000 lb (10 886kg) counterweight. Swing the upper over the front of the carrier and engage the travel swing lock. Lower the boom and extend each boom section as required to gain access to each wear shoe.

! WARNING

To avoid personal injury, do not climb, stand, or walk on the boom. Use a ladder or similar device to reach necessary areas.

Before putting hands or tools inside a boom section, ensure that the operator has vacated the operators cab. Movement of the boom could cause serious injury.

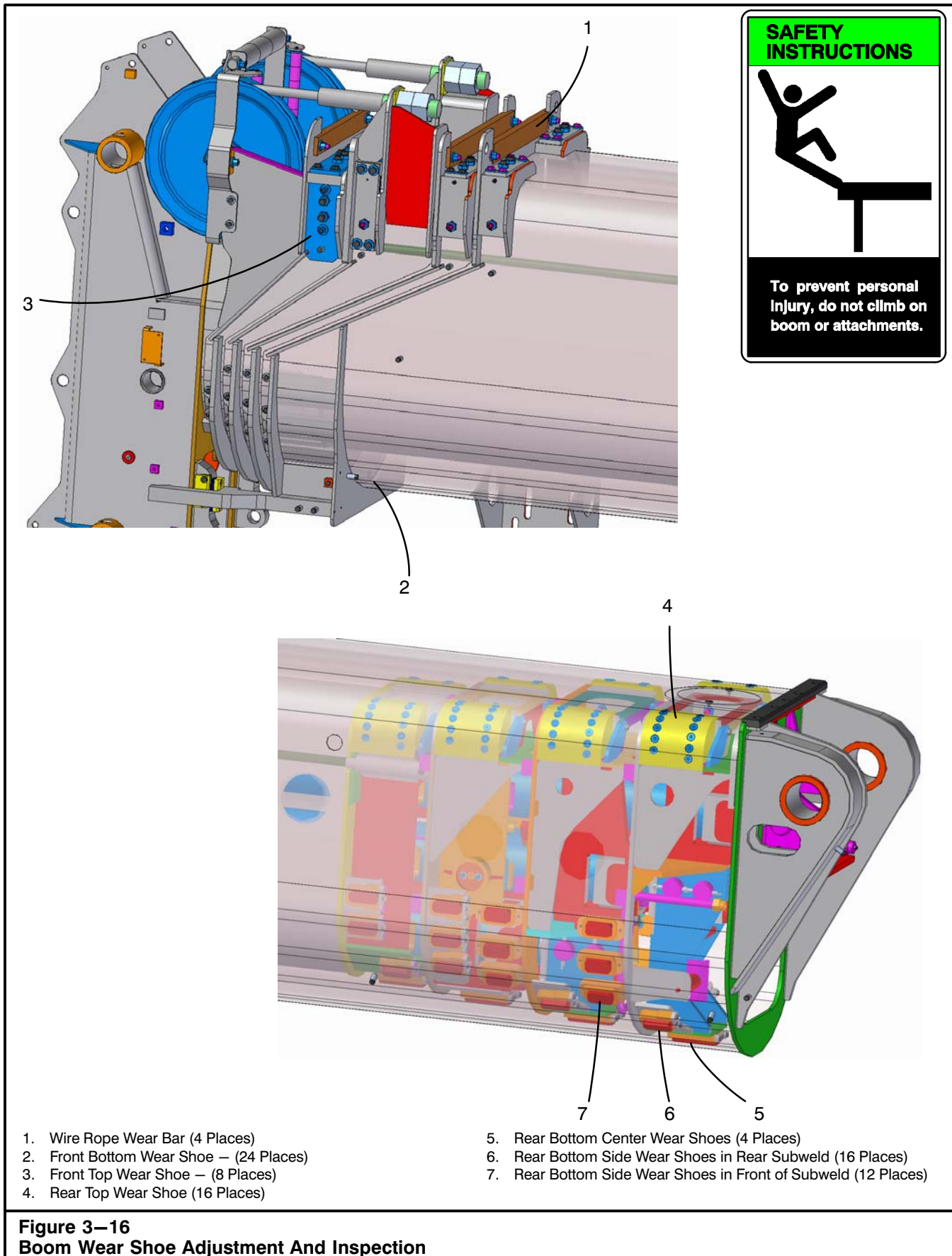
2. Check the thickness of the rear bottom center wear shoes. Refer to Figure 3-14 and Figure 3-16.
 - a. The rear bottom center wear shoes are not adjustable. For inspection or replacement, access to the retaining plates for these wear shoes is gained through holes in the sides of the external boom section when the boom is extended.
 - b. To check the thickness of the wear shoe without removal of the wear shoe, the clearance

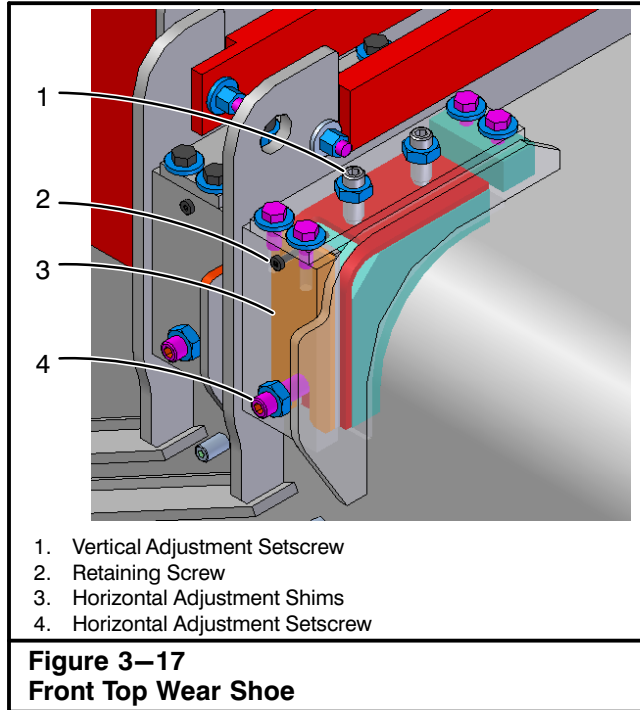


between the external shell and the retaining pocket can be measured. To get an accurate measurement the internal section must be resting on the rear bottom center wear shoe. An appropriate lifting device must be used to lift the front of the internal section to put pressure on the rear bottom center wear shoe.

- Minimum allowable distance is $\frac{1}{4}$ in (6.35mm). The wear shoe must be replaced if the clearance is measured less than this. This can be measured with a gauge made of a stack of shims or other material.
- c. If the wear shoe is removed for inspection, minimum wear shoe thickness is 1.25 in (3.2cm) for the center wear shoes. Wear shoes worn to less than this dimension must be replaced.
 - d. Removal of the rear bottom center wear shoe for all sections is easily done through holes in the sides of the external boom section when the boom is extended.
 - e. If wear shoe was replaced, apply Loctite[®] 242 to the capscrews before installing.
3. Check the thickness of the front bottom wear shoes. The wear shoes are to be replaced when the bottom most wear pads reach a minimum thickness of $\frac{1}{2}$ in (1.3cm). To replace these shoes, extend the internal section out 3 ft, remove the front top wear shoes, lift up on the internal section, remove the capscrews holding the bearing cages, and slide the shoes and bearing cages out of the boom section. The shoes come out the back of the bearing cages for replacement. Reinstall the bearing cages with new shoes and apply Loctite[®] 242 to the capscrews. Lower the internal section back down, reinstall and adjust the front top wear shoes.

Operator's Manual





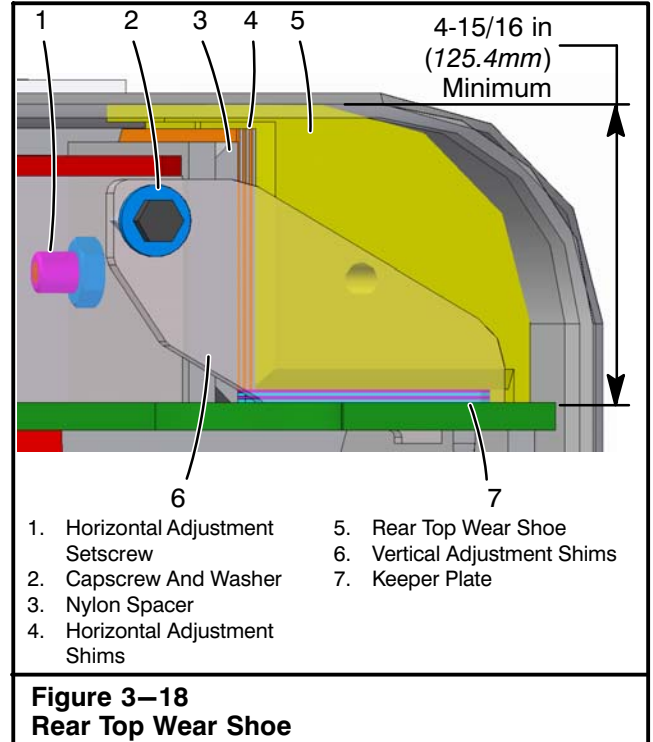
4. Adjust the following wear shoes to ensure the boom is straight and each boom section is centered within the next.
 - a. Front Top Wear Shoes
(Refer Figure 3-16 and Figure 3-17)

1. The front top wear shoes are adjustable in both horizontal and vertical directions. The horizontal adjustment is used to center one boom section inside the other. Measure the clearance between sections on each side and space them equally. The wear shoes should contact the inside section on both sides. No clearance between wear shoe and boom section is required.

Note: The base, inner and center sections have shims for taking the load on the horizontal adjustment.

For base and inner sections, install as many horizontal shims as possible between the wear shoe backer plate and the boom plate. Attach the shims to the boom plate with the retaining screw. Back off the adjustment setscrews one complete turn and torque the jam nuts to 150-175 ft lb (204-237Nm).

On the center section install enough shims to match the height of the setscrews on the wear shoe retainer plate after adjusting. Back off the adjustment setscrews one complete turn and torque the jam nuts to 150-175 ft lb (204-237Nm).



2. Vertical adjustment is used to hold the wear shoe down against the top of the inside boom section. Adjust these so that there is no clearance between wear shoes and boom section. Torque the jam nuts to 150-175 ft lb (204-237Nm).
3. Replace when shoe is worn to 0.375 in (0.95cm) minimum thickness or when adjustment is used up whichever comes first.
- b. Rear Top Wear Shoes
(Refer to Figure 3-16 and Figure 3-18)
 1. There is a pair of rear top wear shoes on the side of each boom section. Adjustment of these wear shoes is accomplished through holes in the side and top of the adjacent boom section. Extend only the boom sections required, and just far enough, until the rear top wear shoe adjustment setscrews are accessible through the hole in the top of the adjacent section. Leave the other inner sections fully retracted at this point.
 2. For proper inspection, the rear top wear shoes must be removed and measured. Access through the sides of the boom and remove the capscrews and washers which secure the rear top wear shoes keeper plates. Remove the keeper plates.
 3. Loosen the jam nuts on the adjustment setscrews and back off the adjustment setscrews and remove shims as needed.

Operator's Manual

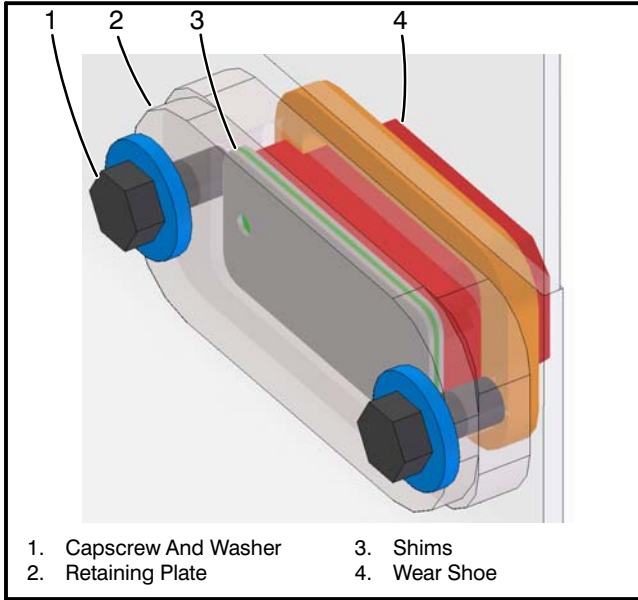


Figure 3-19
Rear Bottom Side Wear Shoe in Front of Subweld

4. Remove and inspect the height of the rear top wear shoes. Minimum wear shoe height is 4-15/16 in (125.4mm). Wear shoes worn to less than this dimension must be replaced.

Note: It will be necessary to lift the extended boom sections, with an appropriate auxiliary lifting device, in order to relieve pressure on the wear shoe for removal and adjustment.

5. Install the rear top wear shoes back into their proper location. Note the orientation of the wear shoes with the large chamfers towards either end. If new wear shoes are being installed, the adjustment setscrews may need to be loosened further and/or horizontal shims removed to allow room for the larger new shoes.
6. Vertical adjustment of the rear top wear shoes is accomplished by installing vertical shims under the wear shoe. Vertical shims should be added so there is no clearance between wear shoe and boom section.
7. Horizontal adjustment of the rear top wear shoes is accomplished with the adjustment setscrews. This adjustment is used to align one section inside another. The straightness of the boom is dependent on this adjustment. Small holes in the sides of the boom sections allow measurements between sections. Set the gap between the sections equal on both sides to ensure boom straightness.

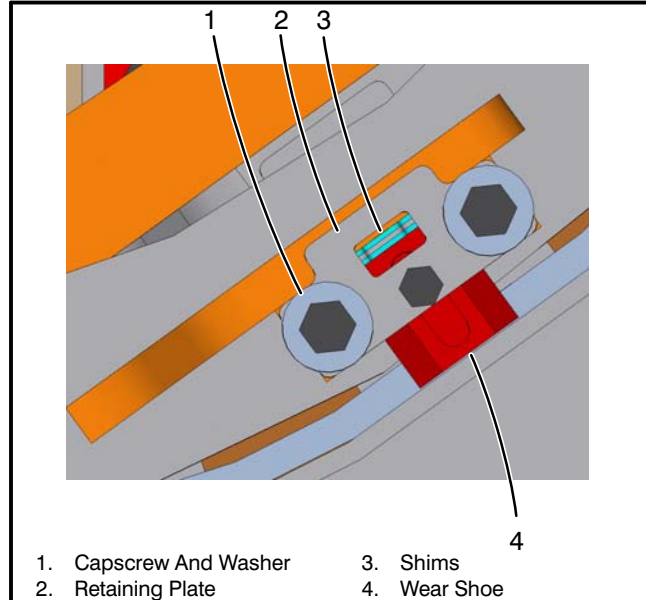


Figure 3-20
Rear Bottom Side Wear Shoe in Rear Subweld

8. Install enough horizontal adjustment shims to fill the gap between the nylon spacer plate and the wear shoes on both sides of the boom. Back off the adjustment setscrews one complete turn and torque the jam nuts to 150-175 ft lb (204-237Nm).
 9. Apply Loctite[®] 242 to the cap screws used to secure the keeper plates.
 10. Install the keeper plates and secure them with the cap screws and washers.
- c. Rear Bottom Side Wear Shoes (Refer to Figure 3-16 and Figure 3-20)
1. The rear bottom side wear shoes are adjustable. Shims should be added to the side wear shoes until the wear shoes are tight against the larger outer section.
 2. For inspection, access to the retaining plates for these wear shoes is gained through holes in the sides of the external boom section when the boom is extended. Some wear shoes are in the rear subweld of the section and some are just in front of it.
 3. For proper inspection, the bottom rear side wear shoes must be removed. Remove the cap screws and washers which secure the retaining plates. Remove the Retaining plates. For wear shoes in front of the rear subwelds a rag or piece of cloth can be put below the wear pads to keep loose parts from falling down into the boom.

Operator's Manual

4. Remove shims and wear shoes to inspect the thickness. Minimum wear shoe thickness is 1.25 in (3.8cm) for the side wear shoes. Wear shoes worn to less than this dimension must be replaced.
 5. Install the rear bottom wear shoes back into their pockets and install shims until the wear shoes are tight against the larger outer section.
 6. Apply Loctite® 242 to the capscrews used to secure the retaining plates.
 7. Install the retaining plates and secure them with the capscrews and washers.
5. After adjusting the boom wear shoes, boom up to a 60° angle and fully extend the boom. Confirm that the boom is straight and the sections are centered within each other.

Note: External effects such as sun and wind on one side of the boom or having the crane out of level can make the boom appear to not be aligned. Negate these effects as much as possible when checking boom straightness. Refer to “Boom Distortion Due To Thermal Effects Of The Sun” in Section 1 of this Operator's Manual.

Boom Extend And Retract Wire Rope Inspection And Adjustment

The boom extend and retract wire ropes must be inspected and the rope anchors torqued periodically to compensate for stretching of the extend and retract wire ropes. Refer to Figure 3–21.



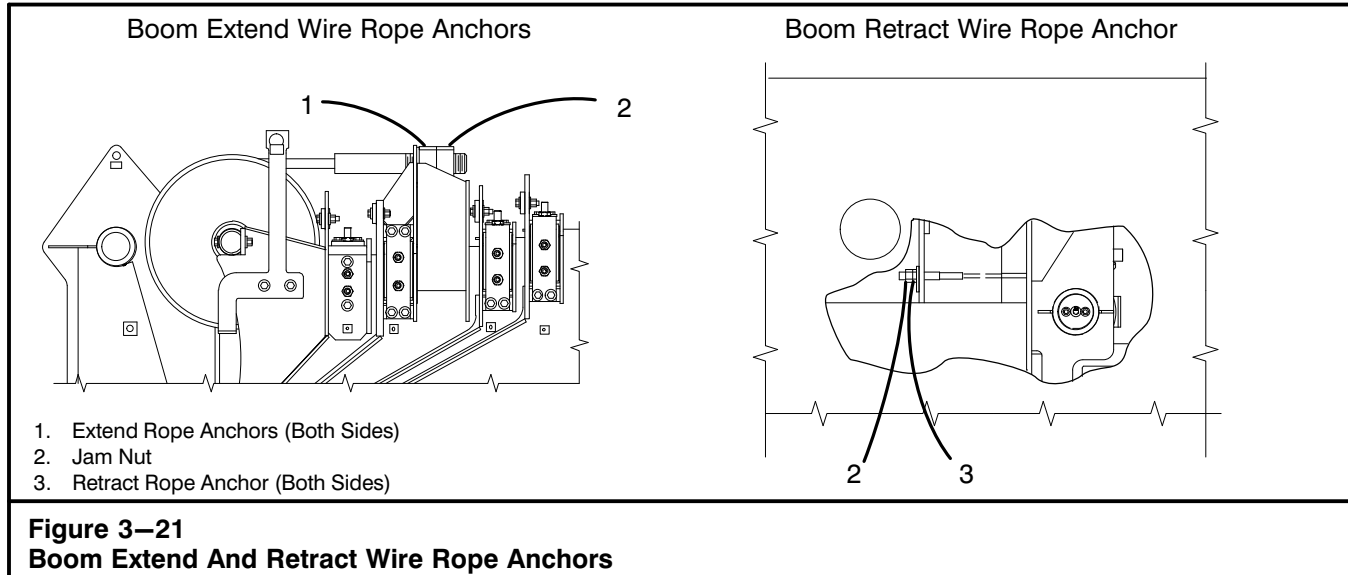
WARNING

To avoid personal injury, do not climb, stand, or walk on the boom. Use a ladder or similar device to reach necessary areas.

Extend/Retract Wire Rope Inspection

1. Level the crane on fully extended outriggers with all tires clear of the ground. If not already installed, install the 24,000 lb (10 886kg) counterweight. Swing the upper over the front of the carrier and engage the travel swing lock.
2. Fully extend the boom in “Amax2” mode. Retract the sections approximately 1 ft (30.5cm) to remove the load from the extend wire ropes and allow them to sag.
3. If the extend wire ropes sag more than 4 in (10.2cm) or if there is a difference of more than 1/2 in (1.3cm) of sag between the left and the right extend wire ropes, the extend wire ropes must be adjusted. Refer to “Extend And Retract Wire Rope Adjustment”.
4. Fully retract the boom. The tip section must touch the stops on the base section and also must have 1/8–3/16 in (3–5mm) gap to the outer section stops.
5. Inspect extend/retract wire rope for wear. Refer to “Wire Rope Inspection And Replacement Recommendations” in Section 5 of this Operator's Manual.
6. Lubricate the extend/retract wire ropes. Refer to “Wire Rope Lubrication” in Section 2 of this Operator's Manual.

Operator's Manual



Extend/Retract Wire Rope Adjustment

1. Level the crane on fully extended outriggers with all tires clear of the ground. If not already installed, install the 24,000 lb (10 886kg) counterweight. Swing the upper over the front of the carrier and engage the travel swing lock.
2. The retract cable is adjusted through access holes in the side plates that line up when the following conditions are met. With the boom mode set to "Amax2", extend the boom out to 85 feet while overriding the T2 section to keep it retracted until the retract cable adjustment nuts are visible in the hole in the side of the outer. To remove tension on the retract cable the last movement of the boom must be extending. Remove the retract shims from the back of the boom head.
3. Tighten the retract cable. The tip will retract 0.1" per turn of the cable nut.
4. Fully retract the boom and check the clearance between the boom head and the outer section stops. The clearance must be 1/8-3/16 in (3-5mm). Repeat steps 2 and 3 until the clearance is to spec. The extend cables may have to be loosened up to get the tip to pull in.
5. Fully retract boom and extend again in "Amax2" mode. Then retract approximately 1 ft (0.3m).
6. Tighten the extend cables at the top front of the center section until there is 1-2 in (2.5-5.1cm) of sag at the center of the rope and equal sag between the left and right ropes.
7. Fully retract boom and verify that the tip section still has 1/8-3/16 in (3-5mm) clearance to outer section.
8. If the tip section gap to outer section is not to spec. then loosen the extend cables slightly and repeat the process of tightening the retract cable and then the extend cables until the tip section gap to the outer section is acceptable when fully retracted and the sag in the extend cables is acceptable.
9. Reinstall retract stop shims as required to fill the space between the base section stops and the dead end lugs on the boom head. Always round up on the number of shims needed to fill the space. Example: If 3.5 shims would fit, put 4 shims in.

Note: A special wrench is provided to aid in the adjustment of the extend wire rope nuts.

First Layer/Third Wrap Calibration (If Equipped)

The crane may be equipped with a first layer/third wrap warning system. This system allows the operator to monitor the wire rope windings on the drum(s). In order for this system to function correctly, it must be properly calibrated using the controls on the Crane Control Display. Refer to Figure 3–23. Calibrate the system anytime wire rope is installed on the winch drum(s) or the live end of the wire rope is wound past the winch drum(s).

Note: When the first layer/third wrap is enabled, first layer and third wrap warning indicators on the calibration screen will illuminate when either of these conditions are met. Warning indicators will also be displayed on the RCL screen.



WARNING

The first layer/third wrap system will not function properly if the live end of the hoist wire rope is wound past the winch drum(s). Wire rope failure may occur. Recalibrate the first layer/third wrap system so that three (3) full wraps of wire rope are maintained on the winch drum(s) at all times during operation.

1. Park the crane on a firm level surface.
2. Set the RCL System to Rigging Mode.



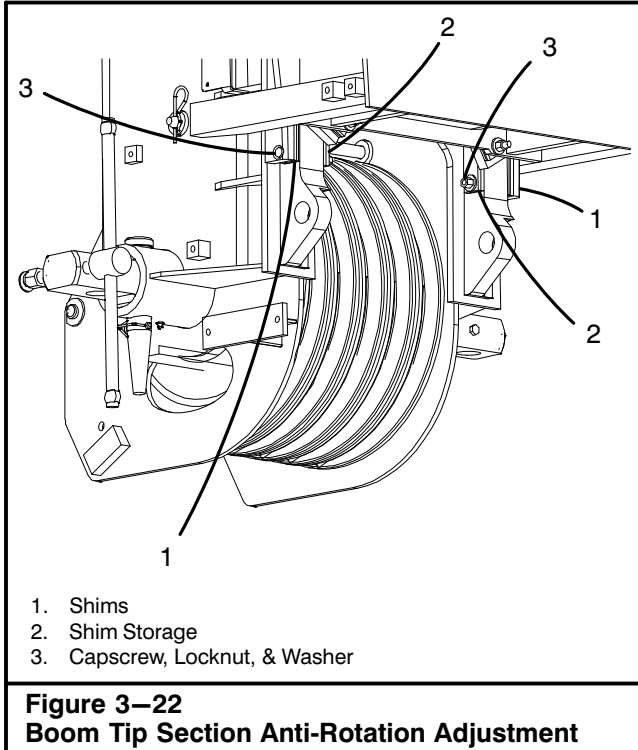
WARNING

The RCL is not operational when in the Rigging Mode. Return the RCL to normal operation before operating the crane.

3. Wind wire rope off the rear drum until only four full wraps are left on the drum. Or if installing wire rope on the drum, properly install the drum wedge to anchor the wire rope to the drum. Refer to “Anchoring Wire Rope To Drum” and “Winding Wire Rope On Drum” in Section 5 of this Operator’s Manual for instructions. Properly wind four full wraps on the drum.
4. Visually verify that four full wraps are on the rear drum before proceeding.
5. From the Main Working Screen, press the Function Key F4 to bring up the First Layer/Third Wrap Calibration Screen. Refer to Figure 3–23.

6. Press and hold the Function Key F3 to calibrate third wrap for the rear drum until a confirmation pop-up window appears.
7. Press Function Key F2 (Yes) to confirm or Function Key F3 (No) to cancel. Blue indicator light illuminates to confirm third wrap for the rear drum is calibrated.
8. Wind wire rope onto the rear drum until the first layer is wound fully onto the drum. Visually verify that one full layer is spooled correctly on the drum before proceeding.
9. Press and hold the Function Key F4 to calibrate first layer for the rear drum until a confirmation pop-up window appears.
10. Press Function Key F2 (Yes) to confirm or Function Key F3 (No) to cancel. Blue indicator light illuminates to confirm first layer for the rear drum is calibrated.
11. Properly wind the remaining wire rope on the rear drum. Refer to “Winding Wire Rope On Drum” in Section 5 of this Operator’s Manual.
12. Wind wire rope off the front drum (if equipped) until only four full wraps are left on the drum. Or if installing wire rope on the drum, properly install the drum wedge to anchor the wire rope to the drum. Refer to “Anchoring Wire Rope To Drum” and “Winding Wire Rope On Drum” in Section 5 of this Operator’s Manual. Properly wind four full wraps on the drum.
13. Visually verify that four full wraps are on the front drum before proceeding.
14. Press and hold the Function Key F1 to calibrate third wrap for the front drum until a confirmation pop-up window appears. Refer to Figure 3–23.
15. Press Function Key F2 (Yes) to confirm or Function Key F3 (No) to cancel. Blue indicator light illuminates to confirm third wrap for the front drum is calibrated.
16. Wind wire rope onto the front drum until the first layer is wound fully onto the drum. Visually verify that one full layer is spooled correctly on the drum before proceeding.
17. Press and hold the Function Key F2 to calibrate first layer for the front drum until a confirmation pop-up window appears.
18. Press Function Key F2 (Yes) to confirm or Function Key F3 (No) to cancel. Blue indicator light illuminates to confirm first layer for the front drum is calibrated.
19. Properly wind the remaining wire rope on the front drum. Refer to “Winding Wire Rope On Drum” in Section 5 of this Operator’s Manual.
20. Return RCL System to the normal operating mode.

Operator's Manual



Boom Tip Section Anti-Rotation Adjustment

Due to the shape of the boom, the boom tip section may have a tendency to rotate during fly erection and storage. To compensate, an anti-rotation adjustment may be required to maintain the tip section in a vertical position. Use the following procedure to periodically check and adjust the boom tip section.

1. Park the crane on a firm level surface, position transmission shifter to neutral, and engage the park brake.
2. Fully retract the boom and place it at 0 degrees.
3. Use shims as required to maintain the tip section in a vertical position. Move shims from inside (storage) to outside or from outside to inside (storage) as required. Refer to Figure 3–22.

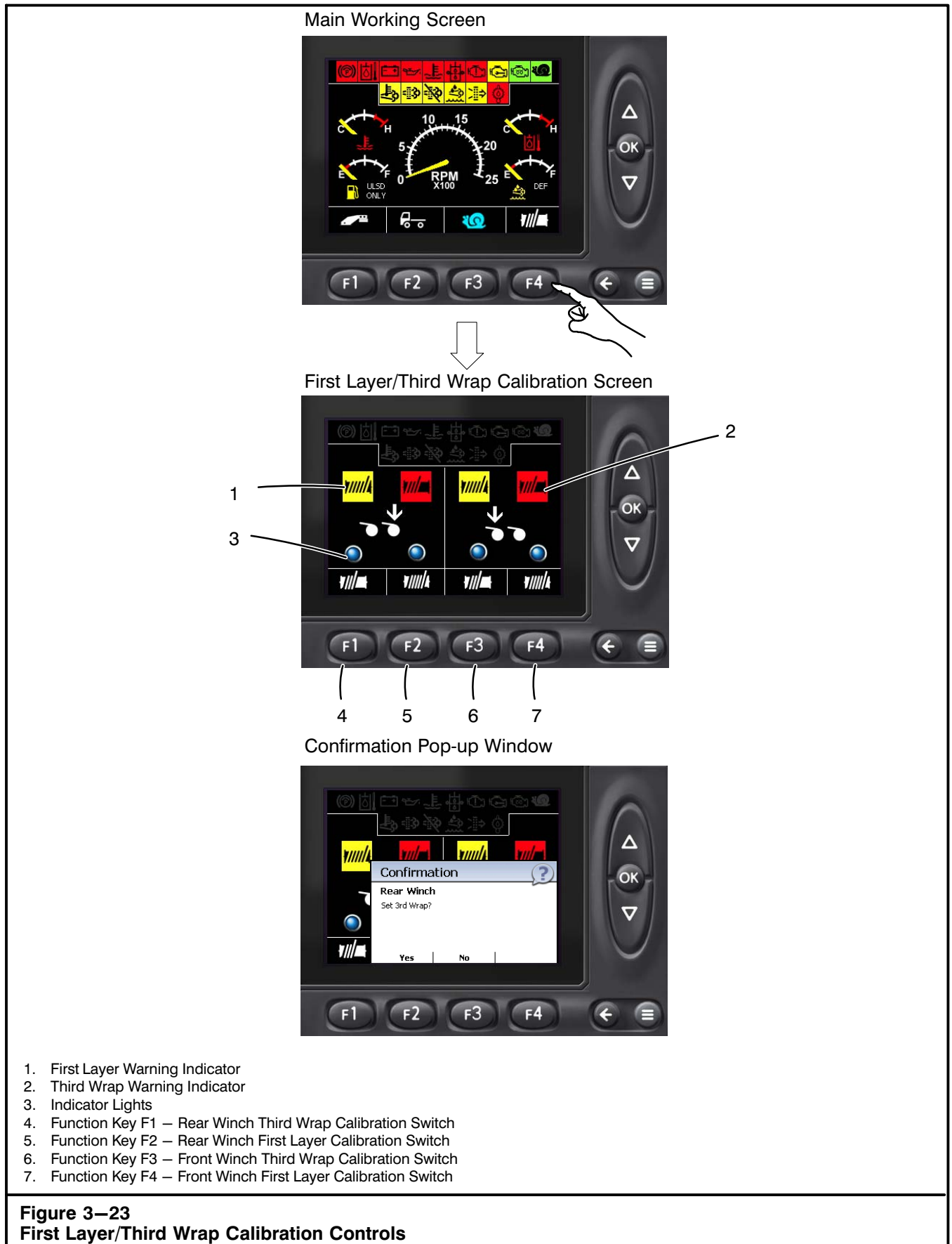
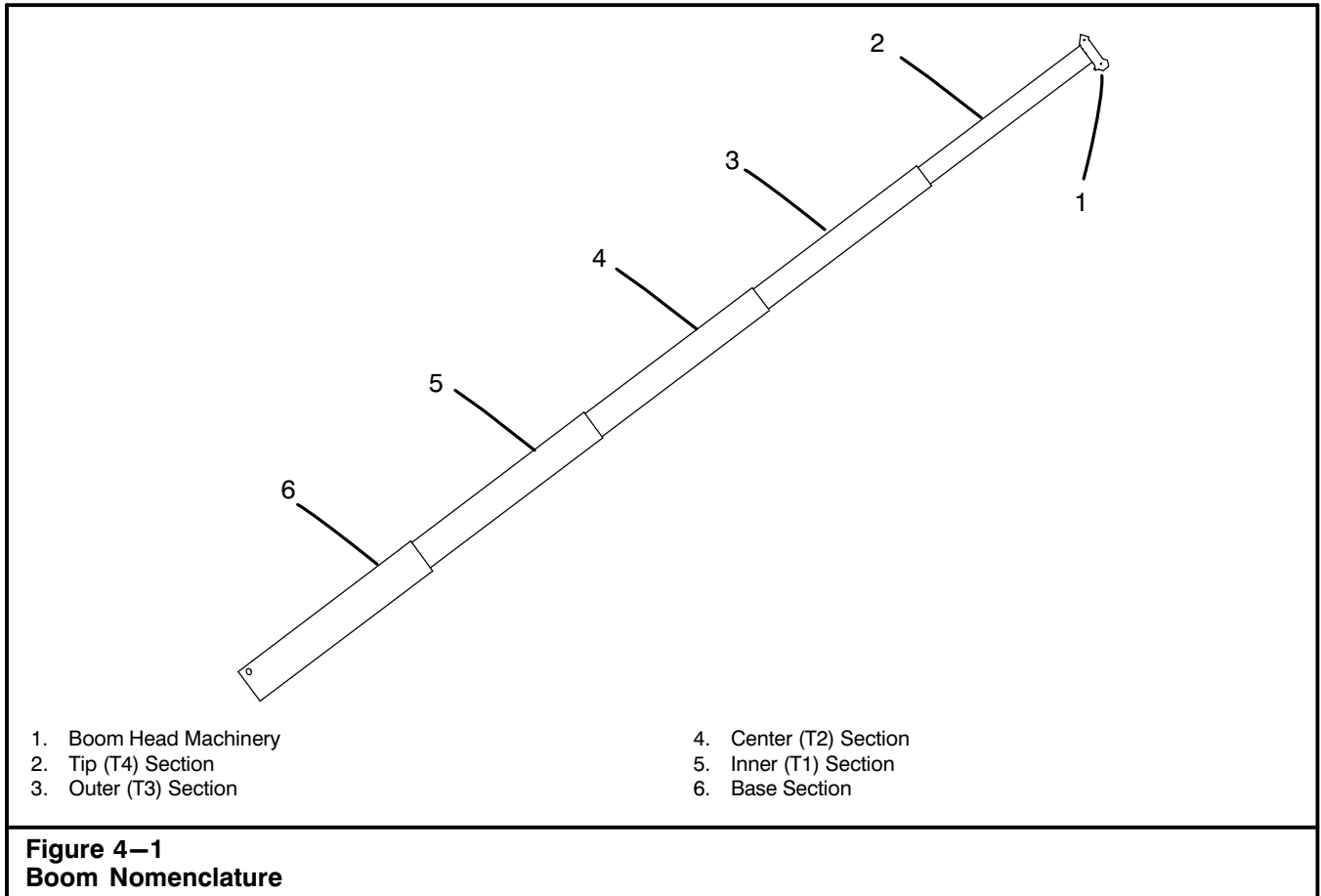


Table Of Contents

Boom	4-1
Adjustable Boom Head Deflector Sheave	4-3
Auxiliary Lifting Sheave	4-4
Installation Of Auxiliary Lifting Sheave	4-5
Removal Of Auxiliary Lifting Sheave	4-6
Offset Lattice Fly	4-6
Safety Instructions	4-6
31-55 ft Offset Lattice Fly	4-8
31-55 ft Offset Lattice Fly Installation	4-8
31-55 ft Offset Lattice Fly Removal	4-11
Changing The 31-55 ft Fly Offset Angle	4-12
Storage Of The 31 ft Fly Base Section From The Erected Position	4-14
Storage Of The 31 ft Fly Base And 24 ft Tip Sections From The Erected Position	4-16
Erection Of The 31 ft Fly Base Section From The Stored Position	4-18
Erection Of The 31 ft Fly Base And 24 ft Tip Sections From The Stored Position	4-22
10 ft, 31-55 ft Offset Lattice Fly	4-25
10 ft, 31-55 ft Offset Lattice Fly Installation	4-25
10 ft, 31-55 ft Offset Lattice Fly Removal	4-29
Changing The 10 ft, 31-55 ft Fly Offset Angle	4-30
Storage Of The 10 ft Fly Base Section From The Erected Position	4-32
Storage Of The 10 ft Fly Base And 21 ft Fly Center Sections From The Erected Position	4-34
Storage Of The 10 ft Fly Base, 21 ft Fly Center, And 24 ft Fly Tip Sections From The Erected Position	4-37
Erection Of The 10 ft Fly Base Section From The Stored Position	4-39
Erection Of The 10 ft Fly Base And 21 ft Fly Center Sections From The Stored Position	4-41
Erection Of The 10 ft Fly Base, 31 ft Fly Center, And 24 ft Fly Tip Sections From The Stored Position	4-44
10 ft Offset Fly Base Panel Lifting	4-47
Fly Extensions	4-48
Safety Instructions	4-48
18 ft (5.5m) Fly Extension Without Sheaves	4-49
18 ft (5.5m) Fly Extension With Lifting Sheave	4-49
Adding Fly Extension(s)	4-50
Removing Fly Extension(s)	4-51

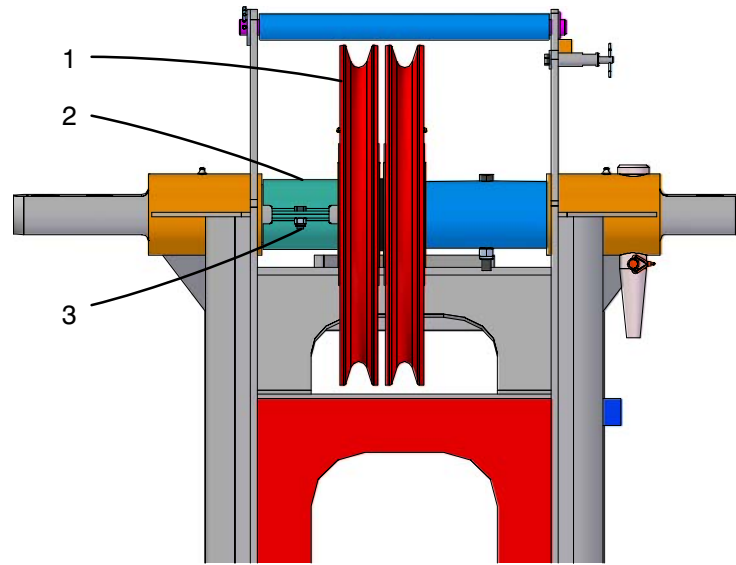


Boom

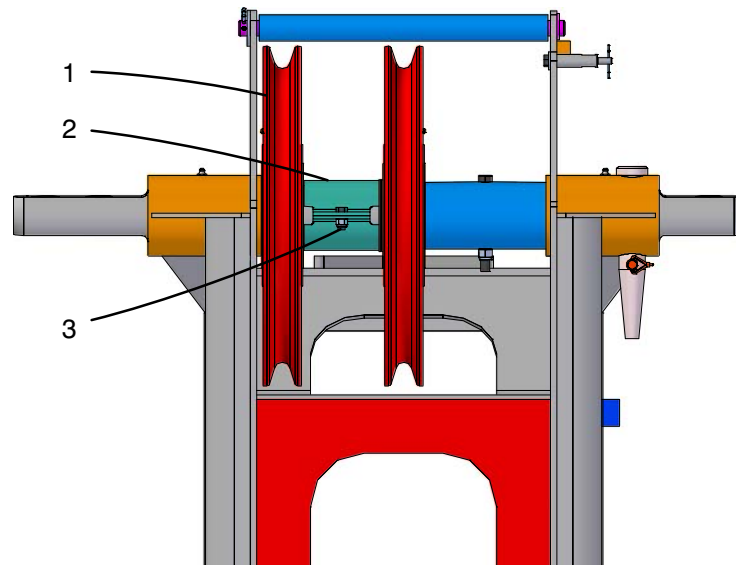
The crane is equipped with a five section full power boom. It consists of five basic parts: a base, inner (T1), center (T2), outer (T3), and a tip (T4) section. Refer to Figure 4–1. The base section is connected to the upper revolving frame. The boom is raised and lowered by the boom hoist cylinder.

The telescoping feature of the boom sections is operated through the use of three hydraulic cylinders and a cable sheave mechanism which are an integral part of the boom assembly. The T1, T2, T3, and T4 sections of the boom are “power sections”. Power sections can be extended or retracted to any desired length using the boom telescope control in the operator’s cab. Refer to Section 1 of this Operator’s Manual for complete operating instructions.

Operator's Manual



Center Position



Far Right Position

1. Adjustable Right Deflector Sheave
2. Split Spacer
3. Capscrew And Locknut

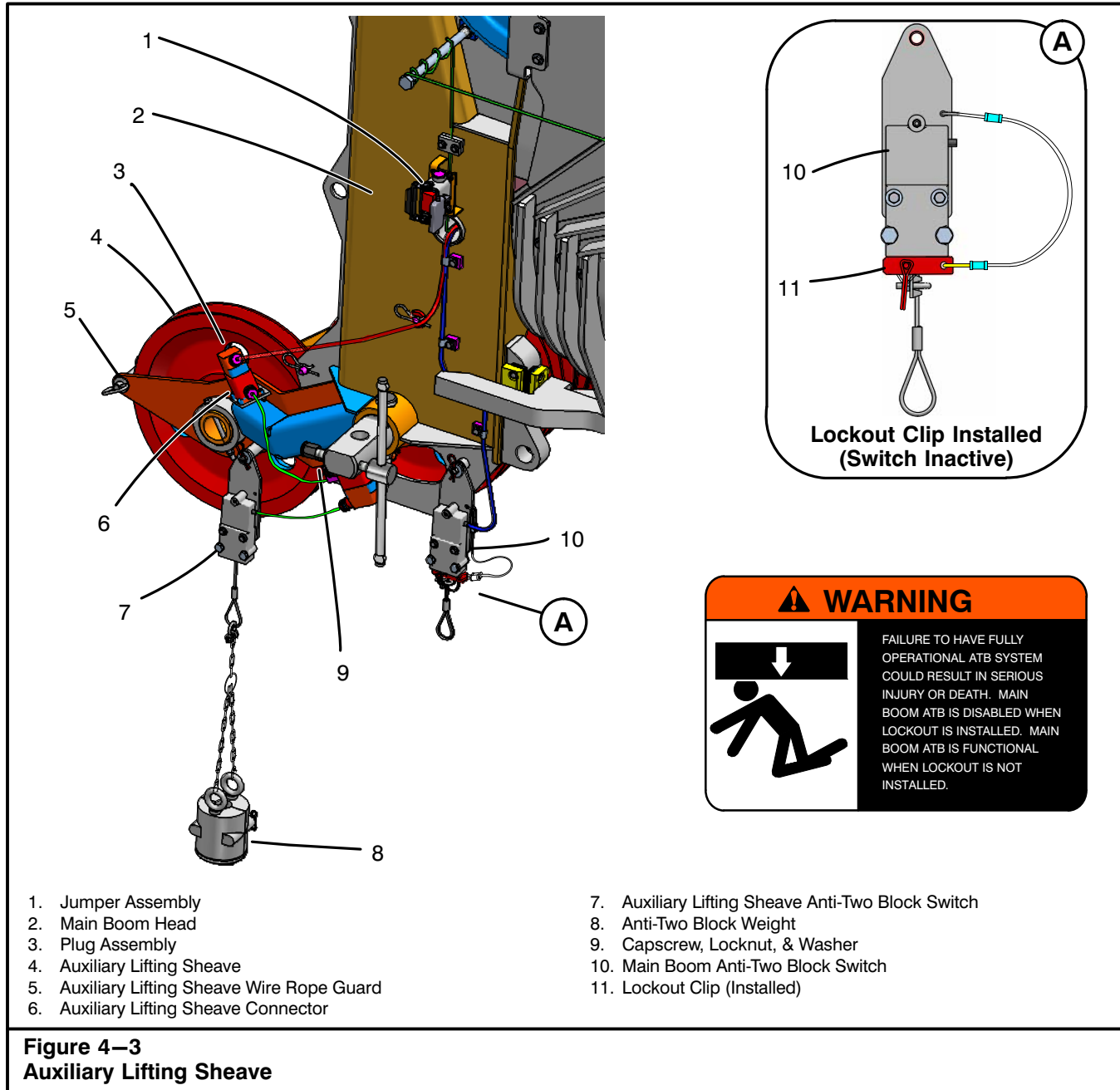
**Figure 4-2
Adjustable Boom Head Deflector Sheave**

Adjustable Boom Head Deflector Sheave

The position of the right deflector sheave on the boom head machinery is adjustable. Refer to Figure 4–2. The purpose is to keep the wire rope(s) as near the center of the boom as possible to reduce side pull on the boom.

In general the sheave should be kept in the position nearest the center of the boom. If more than 6 parts of line are reeved on the main boom head, the top right sheave can be moved to the right side of the boom head by removing the capscrew and locknut from the split spacer on the top head shaft. Slide the sheave to the right and then install the split spacer between the sheaves. Secure split spacer with the capscrew and locknut.

Operator's Manual



Auxiliary Lifting Sheave

The auxiliary lifting sheave connects to the boom head machinery. It is used for reeving winch wire rope for the second winch drum. Once installed, it may be left in place without interfering with installation, erection, or storage of other boom attachments.

WARNING

The auxiliary lifting sheave adds weight to the boom which must be considered in lifting capacities. When making lifts from the boom or fly with the auxiliary lifting sheave installed, refer to the Crane Rating Manual for the appropriate deductions from lifting capacities.

Operator's Manual

Installation Of Auxiliary Lifting Sheave

1. Park the crane on a firm, level surface. Fully retract the boom and position the upper directly over the front of the lower. Engage the travel swing lock.
2. Boom down and/or extend the boom as required, to ease access to the boom head machinery.
3. Adequately support the auxiliary lifting sheave with an appropriate lifting device. It weighs approximately 120 lb (54kg). Position the auxiliary lifting sheave frame under the boom head machinery cross shaft. Align the holes in the auxiliary lifting sheave frame with the lugs in the main boom and install capscrews, locknuts, and washers. Refer to Figure 4-3.



WARNING

To avoid personal injury, do not climb, stand, or walk on the boom. Use a ladder or similar device as required to reach necessary areas.

4. Remove the wire rope guards from the boom deflector sheaves and the auxiliary lifting sheave. Reeve the winch wire rope on the center boom deflector sheave, then over the head sheave on the auxiliary lifting sheave. Install all wire rope guards.

CAUTION

All wire rope guards must be in proper position during operation.

5. Disconnect plug assembly from jumper assembly on the main boom head and connect it to the auxiliary lifting sheave connector.
6. Install the anti-two block weight to the auxiliary lifting sheave anti-two block switch.
7. Properly install lockout clip on the main boom anti-two block switch weight cable.

Note: When the lockout clip is installed, the anti-two block switch is inactive.

When both main boom and auxiliary sheave are reeved for operation, the lockout clip must be removed and properly stored and an anti-two block weight must be suspended from each anti-two block switch.

8. Check the Crane Rating Manual in the operator's cab for necessary deductions with the auxiliary lifting sheave installed before continuing operations.
9. Properly set the Rated Capacity Limiter to the correct crane configuration. Refer to Section 1 of this Operator's Manual.



WARNING

When making lifts from the 10 ft (3.05m) fly at 2° offset and 70 degree boom angle or higher, 2 parts of line is the maximum with the auxiliary sheave erected. Wire rope may contact auxiliary lifting sheave. Auxiliary lifting sheave may be removed to eliminate the possible interference. A warning will be shown on the RCL display if the configuration can result in wire rope contacting the auxiliary lifting sheave.



WARNING

The auxiliary lifting sheave adds weight to the boom which must be considered in lifting capacities. When making lifts from the boom or fly with the auxiliary lifting sheave installed, refer to the Crane Rating Manual for the appropriate deductions from lifting capacities.

Operator's Manual

Removal Of Auxiliary Lifting Sheave

1. Park the crane on a firm, level surface. Fully retract the boom and position the upper directly over the front or rear of the lower. Engage the travel swing lock.
2. Boom down and/or extend the boom as required to ease access to the boom head machinery.



WARNING

To avoid personal injury, do not climb, stand, or walk on the boom. Use a ladder or similar device as required to reach necessary areas.

3. Disconnect the plug assembly from the auxiliary lifting sheave and connect it to the jumper assembly on the main boom head. Refer to Figure 4–3.
4. Remove the lockout clip from the main boom head anti-two block switch weight cable.
5. Remove the anti-two block weight from the auxiliary lifting sheave and install it on the main boom anti-two block switch.

6. Remove the wire rope guard from the auxiliary lifting sheave. Remove the winch wire rope and install the auxiliary lifting sheave wire rope guard for storage.
7. Adequately support the auxiliary lifting sheave. It weighs approximately 120 lb (54kg). Remove the capscrews, locknuts, and washers. Remove the auxiliary lifting sheave.
8. Properly store the auxiliary lifting sheave, the capscrews, locknuts, and washers, and the winch wire rope which was used on the auxiliary lifting sheave.

Offset Lattice Fly

The crane may be equipped with a 31–55 ft offset lattice fly or a 10 ft, 31–55 ft offset lattice fly. See “31–55 ft Offset Lattice Fly” or “10 ft, 31–55 ft Offset Lattice Fly” in this Section of this Operator's Manual for instructions on these arrangements.

Safety Instructions

The following points must be observed while performing any fly assembly or disassembly:

1. Read and understand the instructions in this Operator's Manual before attempting to assemble or disassemble the fly.

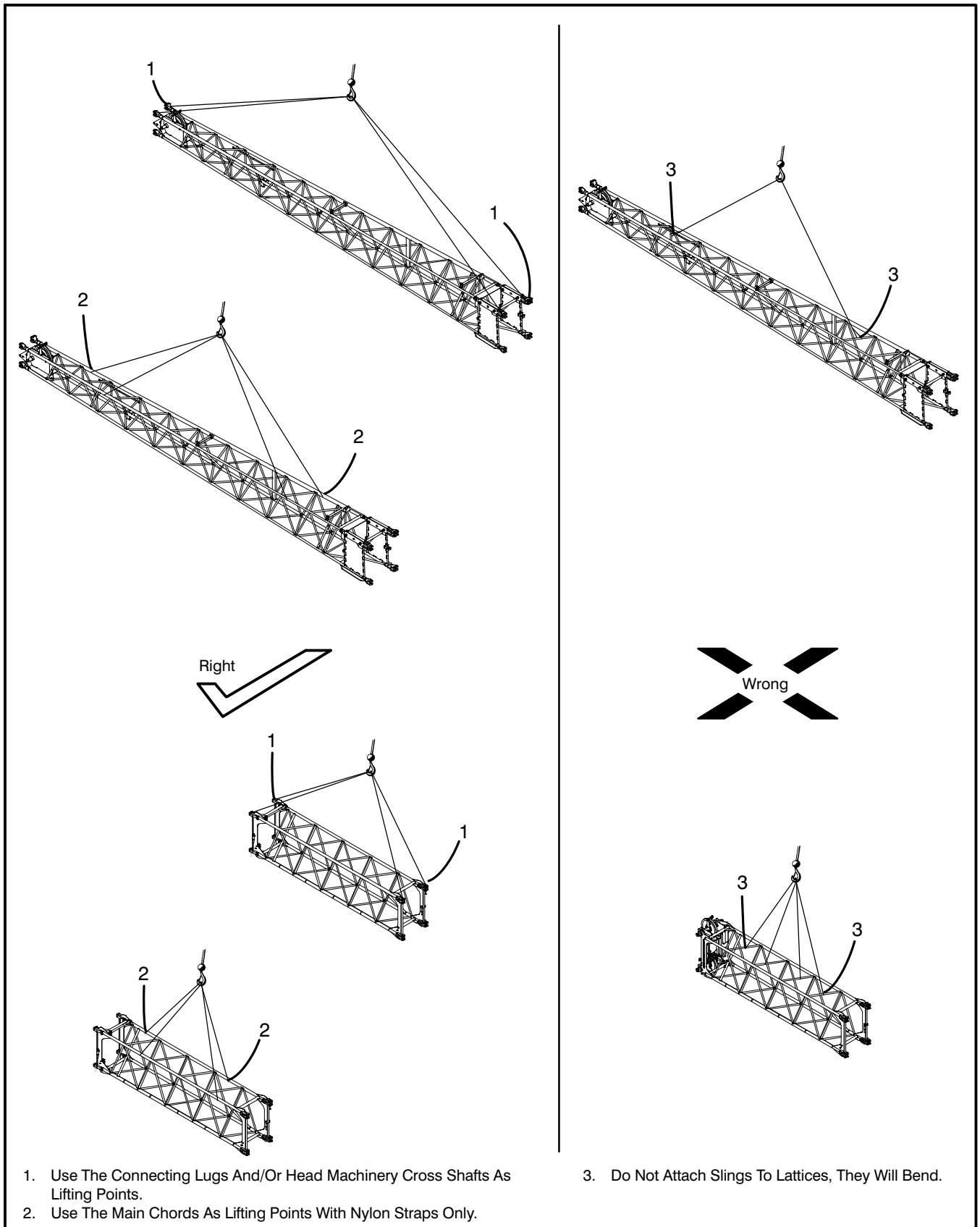


Figure 4-4
Handling The Fly Sections.

Operator's Manual

2. Do not stand inside, on top, or under the fly at any time while assembling, storing, erecting, or disassembling the fly.
3. To avoid personal injury, do not climb, stand, or walk on the fly. Use a ladder or similar device to reach necessary areas.
4. Use care handling the fly section(s) when loading, transporting, and unloading. Damage that occurs during these operations can go undetected and could result in failure of the attachment, once subjected to loading. Do not attach slings to the lattices, when lifting the fly, as they will bend. It is recommended that the connecting lugs and/or fly head machinery cross shaft(s) be used as the lifting points. However, it is permissible to attach nylon straps around all four main chords. Refer to Figure 4–4.
5. Each individual fly section must be adequately supported before attempting to disassemble the fly. Removing the connecting pins from the fly before it is supported, may allow the fly to fall.
6. Fully retract the boom and position it to 0° angle before swinging any fly section(s) around to the side of the boom/fly sections during fly erection and/or fly storage. Fly and/or boom damage could occur.
7. Use a hand line to control fly section(s) swing while swinging fly section(s) during erection and storage procedures.
8. The fly adaptor lug and offset connecting pins must be in the 2° offset position to install, remove, erect, or store, the offset fly.
9. Before operating or traveling the crane, ensure all fly connecting pins and storage mechanisms are properly installed. The fly could fall causing serious personal injury, and/or major fly and/or boom damage.
10. Stay clear of pinch points when aligning fly section connecting points. Never place your fingers in connecting pin holes.
11. Fully assemble the fly before installing it on the boom.

31–55 ft Offset Lattice Fly

The crane may be equipped with either a one or two piece offset lattice fly. The offset lattice fly, as shown in Figure 4–6, connects to the main boom head. It can be used in one of four offset positions: 2°, 15°, 30°, or 45°. The fly extends the boom length for greater heights. The tip section of the fly extends its overall length from 31 ft (9.4m) to 55 ft (16.8m). Once installed, the offset lattice fly can be stored on the right side of the boom base section.

31–55 ft Offset Lattice Fly Installation

1. Park crane on a firm level surface, shift the transmission to neutral, and apply the park brake.
2. Level the crane on fully or intermediate extended outriggers with all tires clear of the ground.

3. Position the upper directly over the front of the carrier and engage the travel swing lock.
4. Extend the boom approximately 97 ft (29.5) and lower hook ball to the ground. Fully retract the boom. This will allow enough hoist rope to reeve over the fly.



WARNING

Install the offset fly with the crane level on fully or intermediate extended outriggers, all tires clear of the ground, the upper directly over the front of the carrier, and the travel swing lock engaged.

The fly adaptor lug and offset connecting pins must be in the 2° offset position to remove, install, store, or erect the offset fly.

Refer to the Crane Rating Manual for the maximum boom length the fly can be raised/lowered to/from the ground.

Failure to do the above could result in the personal injury and/or the crane tipping.

5. Check that the fly adaptor lug and offset connecting pins are installed in the 2° offset position. Refer to Figure 4–7.
6. Pin the fly base and tip together on secure blocking. Refer to Figure 4–5. The fly base section weighs approximately 2,566 lb (1 164kg) and the fly tip section approximately 810 lb (367kg).

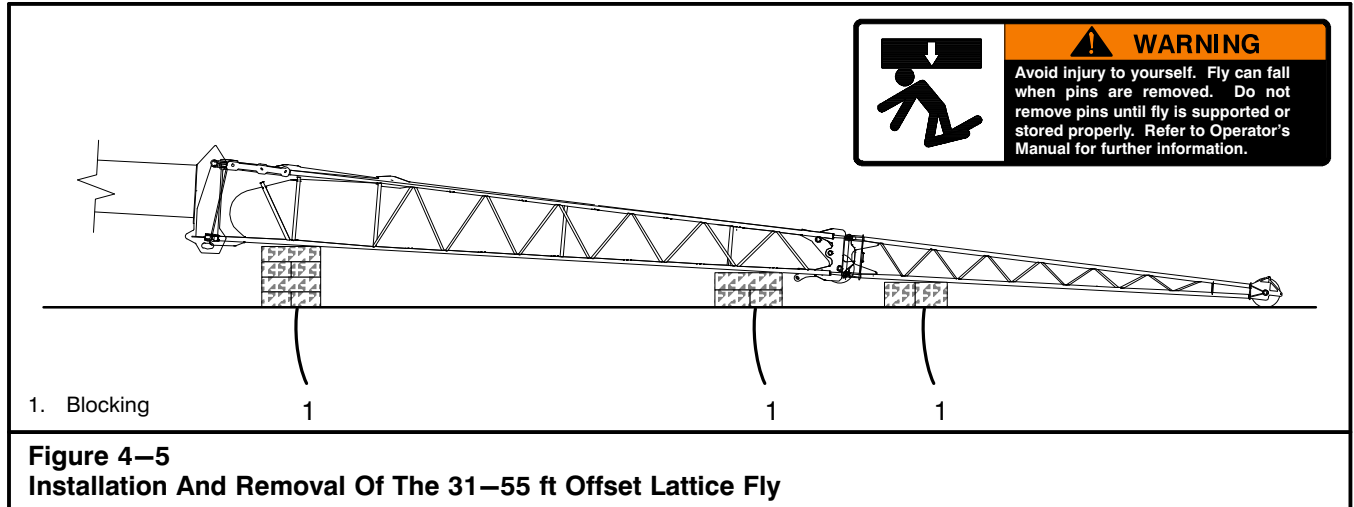
Note: Fly base section may be installed by itself if desired.



WARNING

To avoid personal injury, do not climb, stand, or walk on the boom or fly. Use a ladder or similar device as required to reach necessary areas.

7. Remove the winch wire rope from the main boom head machinery or the auxiliary lifting sheave, whichever is to be used on the fly, and lay it aside to prevent damage to it during installation of the fly.
8. Lower the boom and extend it to the fly. Slowly raise or lower the boom to engage the fly lugs with the boom head machinery cross shafts.
9. Remove the four fly connecting pins from the storage rings at the rear of the fly base section. Refer to Figure 4–6. Install all four pins to connect the fly lugs to the boom head machinery cross shafts on the right side of the boom. Refer to Right Side Fly Base Connecting Pin Label, refer to Figure 4–10. (Install the pins with the head on top and keeper on the bottom.) Install the pin keepers.



10. Remove the two fly connecting pins from the boom head machinery cross shafts on the left side of the boom head. Refer to Left Side Fly Base Connecting Pin Label, Figure 4-11 and Figure 4-6. Install the top pin to connect the fly lug to the boom head machinery cross shaft on the left side of the boom head. Turn the t-handle as required to push and align the bottom left fly lug and the bottom boom head machinery cross shaft. Install the bottom left fly connecting pin. (Install the pins with the head on top and keeper on the bottom.) Install the pin keepers. Back off the t-handle until at least a 1/2 in (1.3cm) clearance from the fly lug is obtained.

WARNING

All fly tip and base connecting pins must be properly installed before operating the crane with the fly erected. Damage to the fly and/or personal injury could occur if all connecting pins are not properly installed.

11. Remove the wire rope guards from the fly base deflector sheave and boom head deflector sheaves. Reeve the winch wire rope over the boom deflector sheave, then over the fly base deflector sheave.
12. Remove the wire rope guard(s) from the fly base and/or fly tip head sheaves. Reeve the winch wire rope over the appropriate sheave(s) and install all wire rope guard(s).

CAUTION

All wire rope guards must be in proper position during operation.

13. Properly connect the anti-two block system as follows:

- a. Disconnect plug assembly from jumper assembly on the main boom head and connect it to the offset lattice fly base section connector. Refer to Figure 4-3. Ensure all necessary anti-two block harness connections are made to the appropriate section(s).
- b. Install the anti-two block weight on the appropriate offset lattice fly anti-two block switch.
- c. Properly install lockout clip on the main boom anti-two block switch weight cable.

Note: When the lockout clip is installed, the anti-two block switch is inactive.

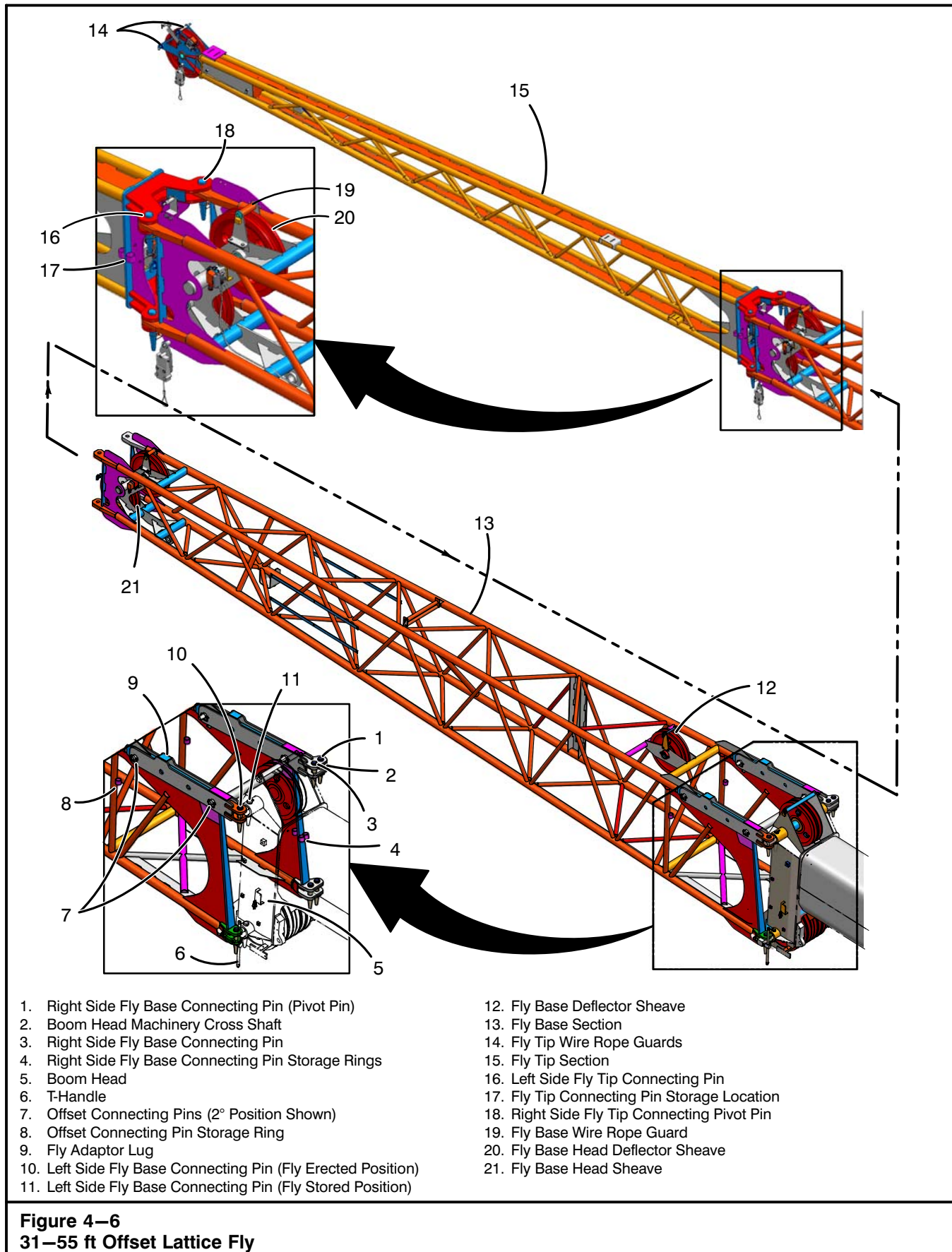
When both main boom and fly are reeved for operation, the lockout clip must be removed and properly stored and an anti-two block weight must be suspended from each anti-two block switch.

14. Properly set the Rated Capacity Limiter to the correct crane configuration. Refer to Section 1 of this Operator's Manual.
15. Check the Crane Rating Manual for necessary capacity deductions with the fly installed before continuing operations.

WARNING

The fly adds weight to the boom which must be considered in lifting capacities when the fly is erected. When making lifts from the boom or auxiliary lifting sheave with the fly erected, refer to the Crane Rating Manual for the appropriate deductions from lifting capacities. Use the offset lattice fly only when the crane is level on fully or intermediate extended outriggers with all tires clear of the ground.

Operator's Manual



31–55 ft Offset Lattice Fly Removal

1. Park crane on a firm level surface, shift the transmission to neutral, and apply the park brake.
2. Level the crane on fully or intermediate extended outriggers with all tires clear of the ground.
3. Position the upper directly over the front of the carrier and engage the travel swing lock.



WARNING

Remove the offset fly with the crane level on fully or intermediate extended outriggers, all tires clear of the ground, the upper directly over the front of the carrier, and the travel swing lock engaged.

The fly adaptor lug and offset connecting pins must be in the 2° offset position to remove, install, store, or erect the offset fly.

Refer to the Crane Rating Manual for the maximum boom length the fly can be raised/lowered to/from the ground.

Failure to do the above could result in the personal injury and/or the crane tipping.

4. If the fly is not in the erected position, erect it per “Erection Of The 31 ft Fly Base Section From The Stored Position” or “Erection Of The 31 ft Fly Base And 24 ft Tip Sections From The Stored Position” as applicable, in this Section of this Operator’s Manual.
5. Check that the fly adaptor lug and offset connecting pins are installed in the 2° offset position. Refer to Figure 4–7. If necessary, change the fly offset to the 2° position. Refer to “Changing The 31–55 ft Fly Offset Angle” in this Section of this Operator’s Manual for detailed instructions.
6. Boom down fully.



WARNING

To avoid personal injury, do not climb, stand, or walk on the boom or fly. Use a ladder or similar device as required to reach necessary areas.

7. Properly change the anti-two block system connections as follows:
 - a. Remove the lockout clip from the main boom anti-two block switch weight cable. Refer to Figure 4–3. Ensure all necessary anti-two block harness connections have been disconnected.

- b. Remove the anti-two block weight from the offset lattice fly and install it on the main boom head anti-two block switch.
 - c. Remove the plug assembly from the offset lattice fly base and connect it to the jumper assembly on the main boom head.
8. Remove all fly base and/or tip wire rope guards as applicable. Remove boom head and fly deflector sheave wire rope guards and lay the winch wire rope aside to prevent damage to it during removal of the fly.
 9. Install all fly base and tip wire rope guards for storage. Install the boom head and deflector sheave wire rope guards for storage.
 10. Extend the boom until the fly tip head sheave or fly base head sheave, as applicable rests on the ground.
 11. Securely block up the fly section(s) to support it (them). Refer to Figure 4–5. The fly base section weighs approximately 2,566 lb (1 164kg) and the fly tip section approximately 810 lb (367kg).



WARNING

Use extreme care when removing the tapered fly connecting pins. They could pop out suddenly causing serious personal injury.

12. Remove the six fly connecting pins and store four of the pins and keepers in the storage rings at the rear of the fly. Install the remaining two pins and keepers in the storage holes on the left side of the boom head machinery cross shafts to prevent the shafts from rotating. Refer to Figure 4–6.

Note: If only the fly tip section is to be removed, remove the connecting pins from the fly tip lugs only.

13. Retract the boom away from the fly or the fly base away from the fly tip, as applicable.
14. Properly reeve or secure the winch wire rope which was used on the fly.
15. Properly set the Rated Capacity Limiter to the correct crane configuration. Refer to Section 1 of this Operator’s Manual.
16. Properly store fly section(s) to prevent damage to it (them).

Operator's Manual

Changing The 31–55 ft Fly Offset Angle

1. Park crane on a firm level surface, shift the transmission to neutral, and apply the park brake.
2. Level the crane on fully or intermediate extended outriggers with all tires clear of the ground.
3. Position the upper directly over the front of the carrier and engage the travel swing lock.



WARNING

Change the fly offset angle with the crane level on fully or intermediate extended outriggers with all tires clear of the ground, the upper directly over the front of the carrier, and the travel swing lock engaged.

Refer to the Crane Rating Manual for the maximum boom length the fly can be raised/lowered to/from the ground.

Failure to do the above could result in personal injury and/or the crane tipping.

4. If the fly is not in the erected position, erect it per “Erection Of The 31 ft Fly Base Section From The Stored Position” or “Erection Of The 31 ft Fly Base And 24 ft Tip Sections From The Stored Position” as applicable, in this Section of this Operator's Manual.

CAUTION

Do not extend the boom or boom down to the point of over stressing the fly section. Structural damage to the fly could occur if care is not taken. Use a signal person to aid the operator in lowering the fly head sheave to the ground.

5. Carefully extend and/or lower the boom until the fly tip head sheave or fly base head sheave, as applicable, is resting on the ground. Use a signal person to alert the operator when the sheave is resting on the ground.

Note: If the crane is not equipped with the fly tip section or the fly tip section is not erected, lower or extend the boom until the fly base head sheave is resting on the ground.



WARNING

To avoid personal injury, do not climb, stand, or walk on the boom or fly. Use a ladder or similar device as required to reach necessary areas.

6. Remove the offset connecting pins from the fly adaptor lugs as required.
7. Install the offset connecting pins in the correct location for the desired offset angle. Use the information label, on the offset lattice fly, to determine the correct offset connecting pin locations for the desired offset angle of the fly. Refer to Figure 4–7.
8. Confirm that the offset connecting pins are properly located on both sides of the fly and ensure that the keeper pins are securely installed.
9. Slowly boom up to allow the fly section to adjust itself to the desired offset angle.
10. Properly set the Rated Capacity Limiter to the correct crane configuration before continuing operations. Refer to Section 1 of this Operator's Manual.
11. Check the Crane Rating Manual for necessary capacity deductions with the fly installed before continuing operations.



WARNING

The fly adds weight to the boom which must be considered in lifting capacities when the fly is erected. When making lifts from the boom or auxiliary lifting sheave with the fly erected, refer to the Crane Rating Manual for the appropriate deductions from lifting capacities. Use the offset lattice fly only when the crane is level on fully or intermediate extended outriggers with all tires clear of the ground.

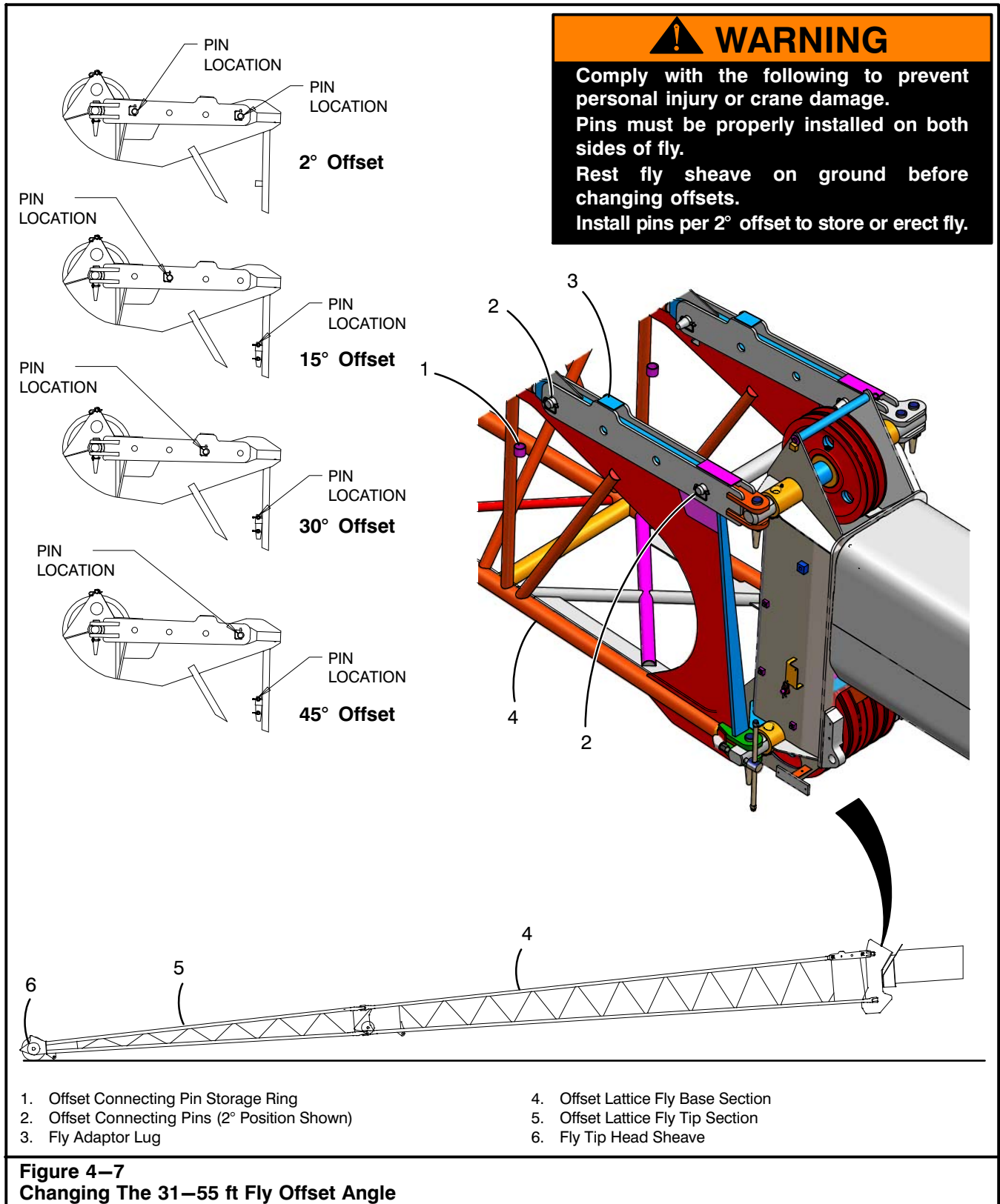


Figure 4–7
Changing The 31–55 ft Fly Offset Angle

Operator's Manual

Storage Of The 31 ft Fly Base Section From The Erected Position

1. Park crane on a firm level surface, shift the transmission to neutral, and apply the park brake.
2. Level the crane on fully or intermediate extended outriggers with all tires clear of the ground.
3. Position the upper directly over the front of the carrier and engage the travel swing lock.

WARNING

Store the offset fly with the crane level on fully or intermediate extended outriggers, all tires clear of the ground, the upper directly over the front of the carrier, and the travel swing lock engaged.

The fly adaptor lug and offset connecting pins must be in the 2° offset position to remove, install, store, or erect the offset fly.

Refer to the Crane Rating Manual for the maximum boom length the fly can be raised/lowered to/from the ground.

Failure to do the above could result in personal injury and/or the crane tipping.

4. Check that the fly adaptor lug and offset connecting pins (2) are installed in the 2° offset position. Refer to Figure 4–7. If necessary change the fly offset to the 2° position. Refer to “Changing The 31–55 ft Fly Offset Angle” in this Section of this Operator's Manual for detailed instructions.
5. Position the boom above 50° boom angle and fully retract the boom.
6. Lower the boom to 0° boom angle.

WARNING

To avoid personal injury, do not climb, stand, or walk on the boom or fly. Use a ladder or similar device as required to reach necessary areas.

7. Properly change the anti-two block system connections as follows:
 - a. Remove the plug assembly from the offset lattice fly base and connect it to the jumper assembly on the main boom head. Refer to Figure 4–3. Ensure all necessary anti-two block harness connections have been disconnected.
 - b. Remove the lockout clip from main boom head anti-two block switch weight cable.

- c. Remove the anti-two block weight from the fly base section and install it on the main boom anti-two block switch.
8. Remove wire rope guards from fly base head sheaves, fly base deflector sheave, the boom head sheave and boom deflector sheave. Refer to Figure 4–6. Remove the winch wire rope and lay it aside. Install all wire rope guards at all sheaves for storage.
9. Properly store winch wire rope which was used on fly.
10. Attach a hand line to the tip of the fly base.

WARNING

Do not remove fly connecting pivot pins on the right side of the boom until the fly is pinned to the storage brackets. The fly could fall causing crane damage and/or personal injury.

Use extreme care when removing the tapered fly connecting pins. They could pop out suddenly causing personal injury.

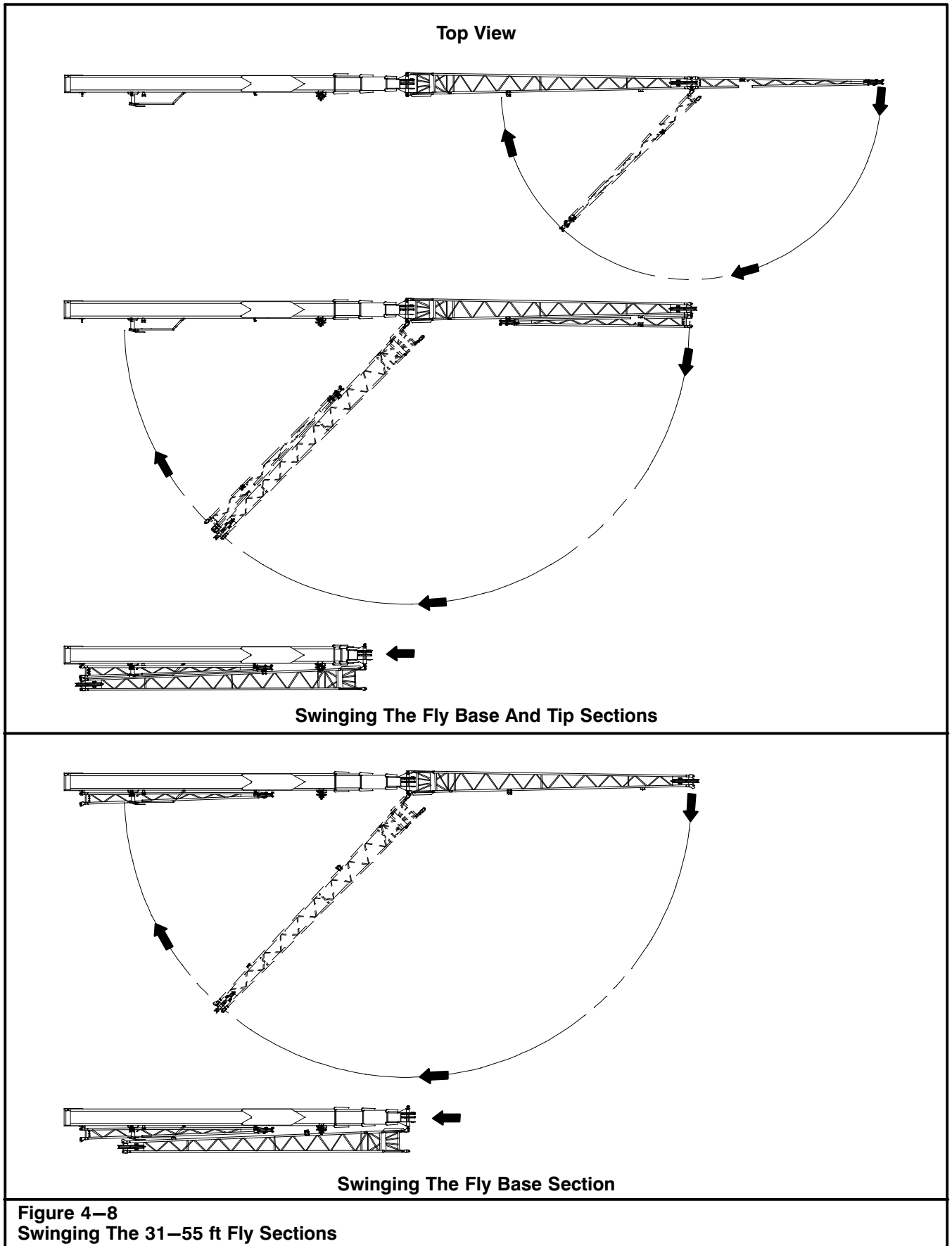
11. Remove the bottom left fly base connecting pin on the left side of the fly using the t-handle to assist in relieving the load on the pin. Back off the t-handle until at least a 1/2 in (1.3cm) clearance from the fly lug is obtained. Remove the top left fly base connecting pin. Store connecting pins in the storage holes (11) on the boom head machinery cross shafts (2) on the left side of the boom to prevent the shafts from rotating. Refer to Figure 4–6.
12. Remove the inside bottom right fly base connecting pin on the right side of the fly. Refer to Figure 4–6. To reduce loading and ease pin removal, push the fly slightly right or left. Remove the inside top right fly base connecting pin on the right side of the fly. To reduce loading and ease pin removal push the fly slightly left or right. Store the two pins and keepers in the storage rings (4) on the rear of the fly base section (13).
13. Ensure the boom is fully retract and positioned at 0° angle.

CAUTION

Fully retract the boom before swinging the fly. Failure to do so could cause fly and/or boom damage.

WARNING

Use a hand line to control fly swing. The fly could swing rapidly. Keep all personnel clear of swing path to avoid personal injury.



Operator's Manual

14. Slowly swing the fly base section around to the right side of the boom. Slowly boom up to 50°. Refer to Figure 4–8.
15. Using the boom override switch, extend the inner boom section until the fly can swing completely against the storage bracket.
16. Slowly fully retract the boom while maintaining 50° boom angle to slide the storage lug on the rear of the fly base into the slot on the rear fly storage bracket (10). Refer to Figure 4–12. At the same time, the bullet lug and the square lug on the front fly storage bracket (14) should engage through the holes on the rear of the fly base. Also if the fly tip section is stored on the boom, the fly base and fly tip lugs must engage.
17. Boom down low enough to reach retaining pins. Pull and rotate retaining pin to the engaged position (4). Refer to Figure 4–13. Push retaining pin to engage the pin through the square lug on the front storage bracket.
18. Install two right side fly base pins to attach the fly base to the fly tip lugs.

WARNING

Do not remove the fly connecting pivot pins on the right side of the boom until the fly is pinned to the storage brackets. The fly could fall causing crane damage and/or personal injury.

19. Remove two fly base connecting pivot pins (1) from the right side of the boom. Refer to Figure 4–6. Store pins and keepers in storage rings (4) on the rear of the fly base section (13).
20. Remove and store the hand line from the tip of the fly base section.

CAUTION

Before operating or traveling the crane ensure the right side fly connecting pins are properly stored in their storage rings, and the left side connecting pins are stored in their storage holes in the boom head cross shafts. Damage could result to the fly and/or boom if fly connecting pins are not properly stored.

21. Properly set the Rated Capacity Limiter to the correct crane configuration. Refer to Section 1 of this Operator's Manual.
22. Check the Crane Rating Manual for lifting capacities with the fly in the stored position before continuing operations.

Storage Of The 31 ft Fly Base And 24 ft Tip Sections From The Erected Position

1. Park crane on a firm level surface, shift the transmission to neutral, and apply the park brake.
2. Level the crane on fully or intermediate extended outriggers with all tires clear of the ground.
3. Position the upper directly over the front of the carrier and engage the travel swing lock.

WARNING

Store the offset fly with the crane level on fully or intermediate extended outriggers, all tires clear of the ground, the upper directly over the front of the carrier, and the travel swing lock engaged.

The fly adaptor lug and offset connecting pins must be in the 2° offset position to remove, install, store, or erect the offset fly.

Refer to the Crane Rating Manual for the maximum boom length the fly can be raised/lowered to/from the ground.

Failure to do the above could result in personal injury and/or the crane tipping.

4. Check that the fly adaptor lug and offset connecting pins (2) are installed in the 2° offset position. Refer to Figure 4–7. If necessary change the fly offset to the 2° position. Refer to “Changing The 31–55 ft Fly Offset Angle ” in this Section of this Operator's Manual for detailed instructions.
5. Position the boom above 50° boom angle and fully retract the boom.
6. Lower the boom to 0° boom angle.

WARNING

To avoid personal injury, do not climb, stand, or walk on the boom or fly. Use a ladder or similar device as required to reach necessary areas.

7. Properly change the anti-two block system connections as follows:
 - a. Remove the plug assembly from the offset lattice fly base and connect it to the jumper assembly on the main boom head. Refer to Figure 4–3. Ensure all necessary anti-two block harness connections have been disconnected.
 - b. Remove the lockout clip from main boom head anti-two block switch weight cable.
 - c. Remove the anti-two block weight from the fly tip section and install it on the main boom anti-two block switch.

Operator's Manual

8. Remove wire rope guards from fly tip head sheave, fly base head deflector sheave, fly base deflector sheave, the boom head sheave, and boom deflector sheave. Refer to Figure 4–6. Remove the winch wire rope and lay it aside. Install all wire rope guards at all sheaves for storage.
9. Properly store winch wire rope which was used on fly.
10. Attach a hand line to the tip of the fly tip section.

WARNING

Do not remove fly tip connecting pivot pins on the right side of the fly until the fly is pinned to the storage brackets. Fly tip could fall causing major crane damage and/or serious personal injury.

Use extreme care when removing the tapered fly connecting pins. They could pop out suddenly causing personal injury.

11. Remove the bottom and then the top fly tip connecting pins (16) on the left side of the fly tip section (15). Refer to Figure 4–6. To ease pin removal, relieve the loading on the pins by pushing the fly tip from side to side. Store pins and keepers in the storage location (17) on the rear of the fly tip section.
12. Ensure the boom is fully retracted and at 0° boom angle.

CAUTION

Fully retract the boom before swinging the fly. Failure to do so could cause fly and/or boom damage.

WARNING

Use a hand line to control fly swing. The fly could swing rapidly. Keep all personnel clear of swing path to avoid personal injury.

13. Using the hand line attached to the fly tip section, slowly swing the fly tip section around to the right side of the fly base section. Refer to Figure 4–8.
14. Align the storage bracket on the fly tip section with the storage bracket on the fly base section. Refer to Figure 4–13. Install the hitch pin (2) through the storage brackets and secure the hitch pin.

WARNING

Do not remove fly base connecting pivot pins on the right side of the boom until the fly is pinned to the storage brackets. Fly could fall causing major crane damage and/or serious personal injury.

Use extreme care when removing the tapered fly connecting pins. They could pop out suddenly causing personal injury.

15. Remove the hand line from the tip of the fly tip and attach it to the tip of the fly base.
16. Remove the bottom left fly base connecting pin on the left side of the fly using the t-handle to assist in relieving the load on the pin. Back off the t-handle until at least a 1/2 in (1.3cm) clearance from the fly lug is obtained. Remove the top left fly base connecting pin. Store connecting pins in the storage holes (11) on the boom head machinery cross shafts (2) on the left side of the boom to prevent the shafts from rotating. Refer to Figure 4–6.
17. Remove the inside bottom right fly base connecting pin on the right side of the fly. To reduce loading and ease pin removal, push the fly slightly right or left. Refer to Figure 4–6. Remove the inside top right fly base connecting pin on the right side of the fly. To reduce loading and ease pin removal push the fly slightly left or right. Store the two pins and keepers in the storage rings (4) on the rear of the fly base section (13).
18. Fully retract the boom and position it to 0° angle.

CAUTION

Fully retract the boom before swinging the fly. Failure to do so could cause fly and/or boom damage.

WARNING

Use a hand line to control fly swing. The fly could swing rapidly. Keep all personnel clear of swing path to avoid personal injury.

19. Using the hand line attached to the fly base section, slowly swing the fly base section around to the right side of the boom. Slowly boom up to 50°. Refer to Figure 4–8.

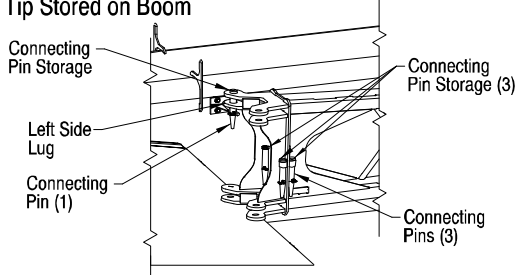
Operator's Manual

⚠ WARNING

Comply with the following to prevent personal injury or machine damage.

Stored Fly Tip: (shown)
Install one pin in top left side lug closest to boom.
Install other 3 pins in storage.
Refer to operator's manual for detailed instructions.

Fly Tip Stored on Boom



The diagram shows a side view of the crane boom and fly tip assembly. Labels include: 'Connecting Pin Storage' (top left), 'Left Side Lug' (middle left), 'Connecting Pin (1)' (bottom left), 'Connecting Pin Storage (3)' (top right), and 'Connecting Pins (3)' (bottom right). Lines connect these labels to the corresponding parts in the diagram.

**Figure 4-9
Fly Tip Storage Label**

20. Using the boom override switch, extend the inner boom section until the fly can swing completely against the storage bracket.
21. Slowly fully retract the boom while maintaining 50° boom angle to slide the storage lug on the rear of the fly base into the slot on the rear fly storage bracket (10). Refer to Figure 4-12. At the same time, the bullet lug and the square lug on the front fly storage bracket (14) should engage through the holes on the rear of the fly base.
22. Boom down low enough to reach retaining pins. Pull and rotate retaining pin to the engaged position (4). Refer to Figure 4-13. Push retaining pin to engage the pin through the square lug on the front storage bracket.

⚠ WARNING

Do not remove fly base connecting pivot pins on the right side of the boom until the fly is pinned to the storage brackets. Fly could fall causing crane damage and/or personal injury.

23. Remove two fly base connecting pivot pins (1) from the right side of the boom. Refer to Figure 4-6. Store pins and keepers in storage rings (4) on the rear of the fly base section (13).
24. Store one pin in the top left fly tip connecting lug storage hole on the rear of the fly tip section. Refer to Fly Tip Storage Label, Figure 4-9 and Figure 4-12. Install the other pins in their storage locations.
25. Remove and store the hand line from the tip of the fly base section.

CAUTION

Before operating or traveling the crane ensure the right side fly connecting pins are properly stored in their storage rings, and the left side connecting pins are stored in their storage holes in the boom head cross shafts. Damage could result to the fly and/or boom if fly connecting pins are not properly stored.

26. Properly set the Rated Capacity Limiter to the correct crane configuration. Refer to Section 1 of this Operator's Manual.
27. Check the Crane Rating Manual for lifting capacities with the fly in the stored position before continuing operations.

Erection Of The 31 ft Fly Base Section From The Stored Position

1. Park crane on a firm level surface, shift the transmission to neutral, and apply the park brake.
2. Level the crane on fully or intermediate extended outriggers with all tires clear of the ground.
3. Position the upper directly over the front of the carrier and engage the travel swing lock.

⚠ WARNING

Erect the offset fly with the crane level on fully or intermediate extended outriggers, all tires clear of the ground, the upper directly over the front of the carrier, and the travel swing lock engaged.

The fly adaptor lug and offset connecting pins must be in the 2° offset position to remove, install, store, or erect the offset fly.

Refer to the Crane Rating Manual for the maximum boom length the fly can be raised/lowered to/from the ground.

Failure to do the above could result in the personal injury and/or the crane tipping.

4. If the fly tip is stored on the boom, check that the fly tip connecting pins are in the stored position. Refer to Fly Tip Storage Label, Figure 4-9 and Figure 4-12. Ensure the two connecting pins are removed from the pivot holes in the fly tip section so the fly tip is not connected to the fly base section.
5. Check that the fly adaptor lug and offset connecting pins (2) are installed in the 2° offset position. Refer to Figure 4-7.

Operator's Manual

6. Position the boom above 50° boom angle. Extend the boom to at least 62 ft (19m) and lower the hook ball, to be used on the fly, to the ground. This will allow enough wire rope length to ease reeving of the fly.
7. Fully retract the boom to engage the fly lugs with the boom head machinery cross shafts on the right side of the boom. Fully lower the boom.

WARNING

To avoid personal injury, do not climb, stand, or walk on the boom or fly. Use a ladder or similar device as required to reach necessary areas.

8. Remove two fly connecting pins from the storage rings on the rear of the fly base section. Install them through the fly base pivot lugs (15) on the right side of the boom. Refer to Figure 4–12. (Install the pins with the head on top and the keeper on the bottom.) Install the pin keepers.
9. Remove the winch wire rope from the boom head machinery or the auxiliary lifting sheave, whichever is to be used on the fly, and lay it aside to prevent damage to it during erection of the fly.

WARNING

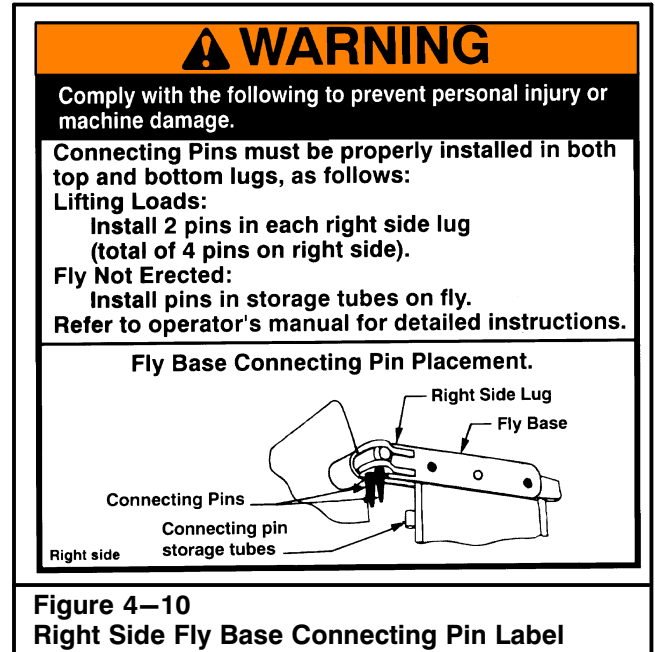
Check that the fly base connecting pins are installed in the pivot holes before disconnecting the fly from the storage brackets. The fly could fall causing crane damage and/or personal injury.

10. Pull the retaining pin (4) to disengage the pin from the square lug on the front storage bracket. Refer to Figure 4–13. Rotate and release the retaining pin to lock it in the disengaged position (5).

WARNING

Use a hand line to control fly swing. The fly could swing rapidly. Keep all personnel clear of swing path to avoid personal injury.

11. Attach a hand line to the tip of the fly base and boom up to 20°. Using the boom override switch, slowly extend the inner boom section approximately 2–2.5 ft (0.61–0.76m) to slide the fly off the storage brackets.



CAUTION

Do not extend boom more than 2.5 ft (0.76m).
Damage to the fly may occur.

CAUTION

Fully retract the boom before swinging the fly.
Failure to do so could cause fly and/or boom damage.

12. Slowly boom down to allow the fly to swing out slightly from the storage brackets and then fully retract the boom.
13. Continue to lower the boom to 0° angle. Use the hand line attached to the fly base to swing the fly base around the boom head until the fly lugs engage with the boom head machinery cross shafts on the left side of the boom. Refer to Figure 4–8.
14. Remove the two connecting pins from the storage rings (11) on the rear of the fly base section and install them in the boom head machinery cross shafts (20) on the right side of the boom. Refer to Right Side Fly Base Connecting Pin Label, Figure 4–10 and Figure 4–12. Install the inside top right pin first. Swing the fly base to the left or right to get the pin to drop in the hole. Install the inside bottom right pin. Swing the fly base to the right or left to get the pin to drop in the hole. (Install the pins with the head on top and the keeper on the bottom.) Install the pin keepers.

Operator's Manual

⚠ WARNING

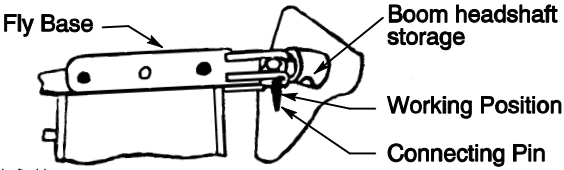
Comply with the following to prevent personal injury or machine damage.

Connecting Pins must be properly installed in both top and bottom lugs, as follows:

Lifting Loads:
Install pins in working position (as shown).
Verify pin placement on opposite side of boom before lifting loads.

Fly Not Erected: Install pins in boom headshaft storage to prevent headshafts from turning.
Refer to operator's manual for detailed instructions.

Fly Base Connecting Pin Placement.



Left side

**Figure 4–11
Left Side Fly Base Connecting Pin Label**

15. Remove the two fly connecting pins from the storage location (21) on the boom head machinery cross shafts on the left side of the boom. Refer to Left Side Fly Base Connecting Pin Label, Figure 4–11 and Figure 4–12. Install one left side fly base connecting pin (18) through the top fly lug on the left side of the boom. Turn the t-handle to push and align the bottom left fly lug and the bottom boom head machinery cross shaft. Install the bottom left fly connecting pin. (Install the pins with the head on top and the keeper on the bottom.) Install the pin keepers. Back off the t-handle until at least a 1/2 in (1.3cm) clearance from the fly lug is obtained.

⚠ WARNING

All six fly base connecting pins must be properly installed before operating the crane with the fly base erected. Damage to the fly base and/or personal injury could occur if all connecting pins are not properly installed.

16. Remove the wire rope guard from the fly base head and deflector sheaves. Refer to Figure 4–6. Reeve the winch wire rope on the boom deflector sheave then over the fly deflector and head sheaves. Install all wire rope guards.

CAUTION

All wire rope guards must be in proper position during operation.

17. Properly change the anti-two block system connections as follows:
- Disconnect the plug assembly from the jumper assembly on main boom head and connect it to the fly base section. Refer to Figure 4–3. Ensure all necessary anti-two block harness connections have been made.
 - Install the anti-two block weight on the fly base section anti-two block switch.
 - Properly install lockout clip on main boom head anti-two block switch cable.

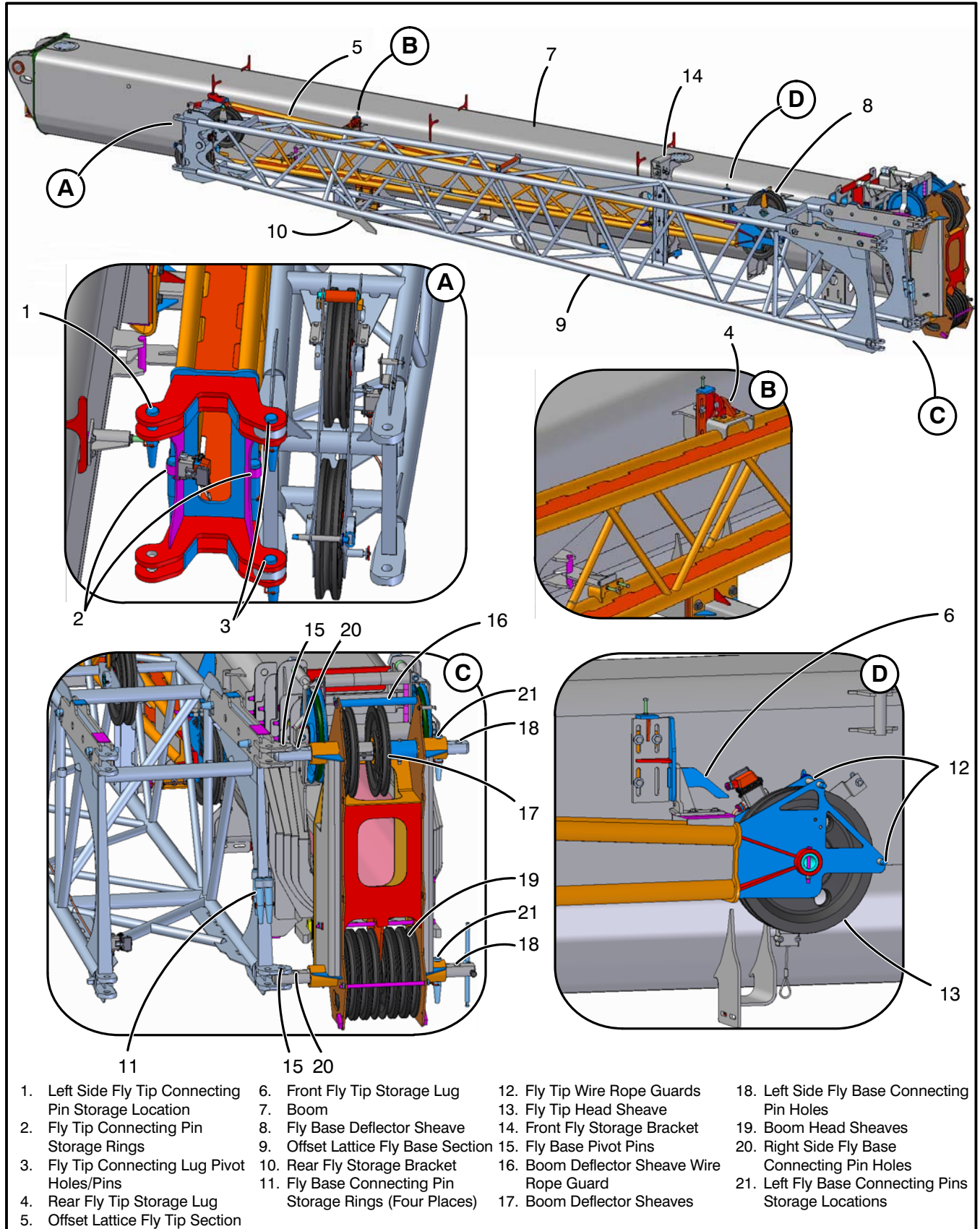
Note: When the lockout clip is installed, the anti-two block switch is inactive.

When both main boom and fly are reeved for operation, the lockout clip must be removed and properly stored and an anti-two block weight must be suspended from each anti-two block switch.

18. Remove and store the hand line from the tip of the fly base section.
19. Properly set the Rated Capacity Limiter to the correct crane configuration. Refer to Section 1 of this Operator's Manual.
20. Check the Crane Rating Manual for lifting capacities with the fly installed before continuing operations.

⚠ WARNING

The fly adds weight to the boom which must be considered in lifting capacities when the fly is erected. When making lifts from the boom or auxiliary lifting sheave with the fly erected, refer to the Crane Rating Manual for the appropriate deductions from lifting capacities. Use the offset lattice fly only when the crane is level on fully or intermediate extended outriggers with all tires clear of the ground.



- | | | | |
|--|---|---|---|
| 1. Left Side Fly Tip Connecting Pin Storage Location | 6. Front Fly Tip Storage Lug | 12. Fly Tip Wire Rope Guards | 18. Left Side Fly Base Connecting Pin Holes |
| 2. Fly Tip Connecting Pin Storage Rings | 7. Boom | 13. Fly Tip Head Sheave | 19. Boom Head Sheaves |
| 3. Fly Tip Connecting Lug Pivot Holes/Pins | 8. Fly Base Deflector Sheave | 14. Front Fly Storage Bracket | 20. Right Side Fly Base Connecting Pin Holes |
| 4. Rear Fly Tip Storage Lug | 9. Offset Lattice Fly Base Section | 15. Fly Base Pivot Pins | 21. Left Fly Base Connecting Pins Storage Locations |
| 5. Offset Lattice Fly Tip Section | 10. Rear Fly Storage Bracket | 16. Boom Deflector Sheave Wire Rope Guard | |
| | 11. Fly Base Connecting Pin Storage Rings (Four Places) | 17. Boom Deflector Sheaves | |

Figure 4-12
31-55 ft Fly Erection And Storage

Operator's Manual

Erection Of The 31 ft Fly Base And 24 ft Tip Sections From The Stored Position

1. Park crane on a firm level surface, shift the transmission to neutral, and apply the park brake.
2. Level the crane on fully or intermediate extended outriggers with all tires clear of the ground.
3. Position the upper directly over the front of the carrier and engage the travel swing lock.



WARNING

Erect the offset fly with the crane level on fully or intermediate extended outriggers, all tires clear of the ground, the upper directly over the front of the carrier, and the travel swing lock engaged.

The fly adaptor lug and offset connecting pins must be in the 2° offset position to remove, install, store, or erect the offset fly.

Refer to the Crane Rating Manual for the maximum boom length the fly can be raised/lowered to/from the ground.

Failure to do the above could result in the personal injury and/or the crane tipping.

4. Check that the fly adaptor lug and offset connecting pins (2) are installed in the 2° offset position. Refer to Figure 4–7.
5. Position the boom above 50° boom angle. Extend the boom to at least 86 ft (26m) and lower the hook ball, to be used on the fly, to the ground. This will allow enough wire rope length to ease reeving of the fly.
6. Fully retract the boom to engage the fly lugs with the boom head machinery cross shafts on the right side of the boom. Fully lower the boom.



WARNING

To avoid personal injury, do not climb, stand, or walk on the boom or fly. Use a ladder or similar device as required to reach necessary areas.

7. Remove two fly connecting pins from the storage rings (11) on the rear of the fly base section. Install them through the fly base pivot lugs (15) on the right side of the boom. Refer to Figure 4–12. (Install the pins with the head on top and the keeper on the bottom.) Install the pin keepers.

8. Ensure the two right side fly tip connecting pins are installed through the fly tip connecting pivot lugs (3) to connect the fly base and fly tip. (Install the pins with the head on top and the keeper on the bottom.) Install the pin keepers. Remove the connecting pin and keeper from the top fly tip connecting lug (1) on the left side of the fly tip section. Refer to Figure 4–12.
9. Remove the winch wire rope from the boom head machinery or the auxiliary lifting sheave, whichever is to be used on the fly, and lay it aside to prevent damage to it during erection of the fly.
10. Check that the hitch pin (2) is installed through the lugs on the fly tip and base sections. Refer to Figure 4–13.



WARNING

Check that the fly base and tip connecting pins are installed in the pivot holes before disconnecting the fly from the storage brackets. Also check that the hitch pin is installed through the lugs on the fly tip and base sections. The fly could fall causing crane damage and/or personal injury.

11. Pull the retaining pin (4) to disengage the pin from the square lug on the front storage bracket. Refer to Figure 4–13. Rotate and release the retaining pin to lock it in the disengaged position (5).



WARNING

Use a hand line to control fly swing. The fly could swing rapidly. Keep all personnel clear of swing path to avoid personal injury.

12. Attach a hand line to the tip of the fly base and boom up to 20°. Using the boom override switch, slowly extend the inner boom section approximately 2–2.5 ft (0.61–0.76m) to slide the fly off the storage brackets.

CAUTION

Do not extend boom more than 2.5 ft (0.76m). Damage to the fly may occur.

13. Slowly boom down to allow the fly to swing slightly out from the storage brackets and then fully retract the boom.

CAUTION

Fully retract the boom before swinging the fly. Failure to do so could cause fly and/or boom damage.

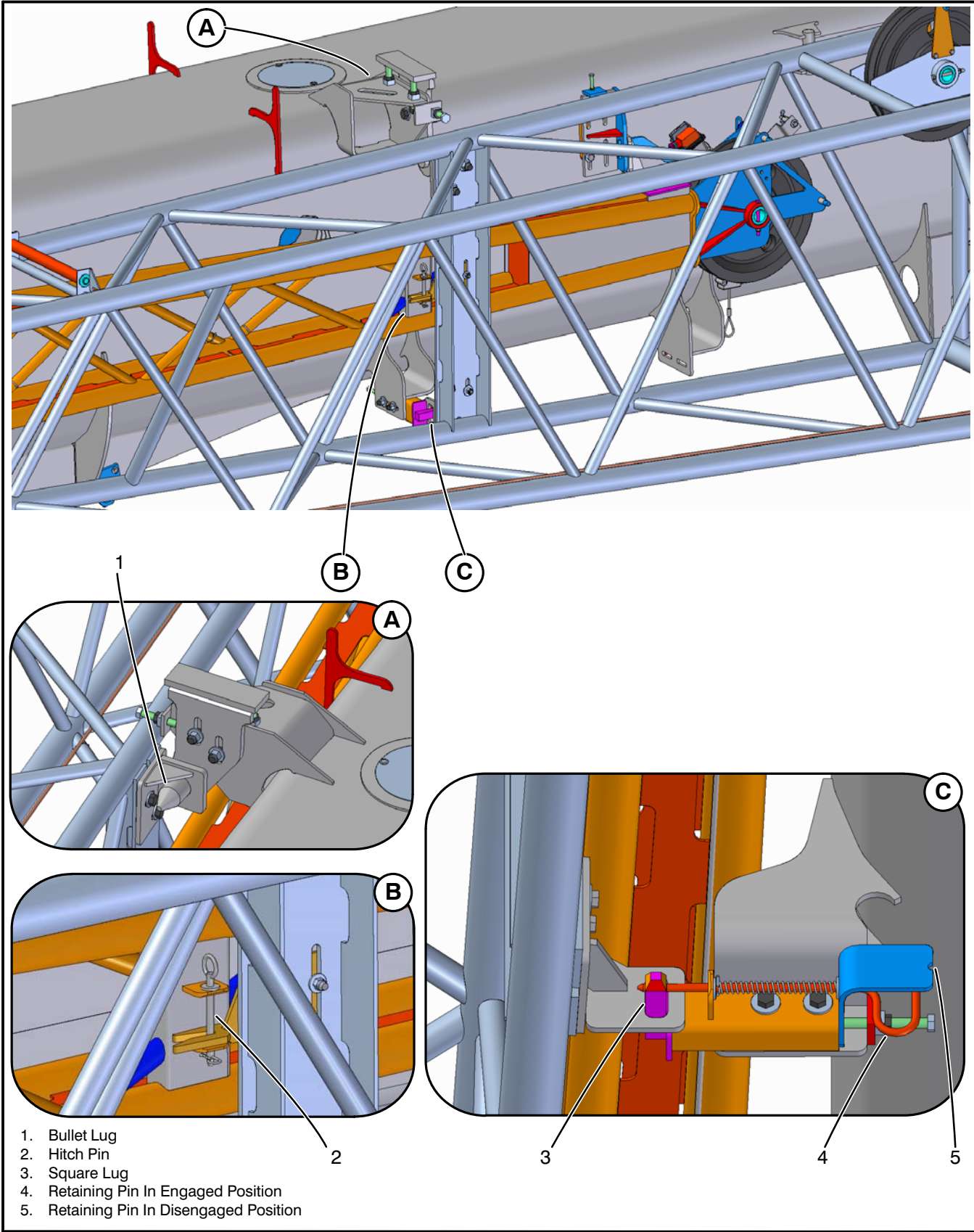


Figure 4-13
Front Storage Bracket

Operator's Manual

14. Continue to lower the boom to 0° angle. Use the hand line attached to the fly base to swing the fly base and tip around the boom head until the fly base lugs engage with the boom head machinery cross shafts on the left side of the boom. Refer to Figure 4–8.
15. Remove the two connecting pins from the storage rings (11) on the rear of the fly base section and install them in the boom head machinery cross shafts (20) on the right side of the boom. Refer to Right Side Fly Base Connecting Pin Label, Figure 4–10 and Figure 4–12. Install the inside top right pin first. Swing the fly base to the left or right to get the pin to drop in the hole. Install the inside bottom right pin. Swing the fly base to the right or left to get the pin to drop in the hole. (Install the pins with the head on top and the keeper on the bottom.) Install the pin keepers.
16. Remove the two fly connecting pins from the storage location (21) on the boom head machinery cross shafts on the left side of the boom. Refer to Left Side Fly Base Connecting Pin Label, Figure 4–11 and Figure 4–12. Install one left side fly base connecting pin (18) through the top fly lug on the left side of the boom. Turn the t-handle to push and align the bottom left fly lug and the bottom boom head machinery cross shaft. Install the bottom left fly connecting pin. (Install the pins with the head on top and the keeper on the bottom.) Install the pin keepers. Back off the t-handle until at least a 1/2 in (1.3cm) clearance from the fly lug is obtained.

WARNING

All six fly base connecting pins must be properly installed before operating the crane with the fly base erected. Damage to the fly base and/or personal injury could occur if all connecting pins are not properly installed.

17. Remove the hand line from the tip of the fly base section and attach it to the tip of the fly tip section. Remove the hitch pin which connects the fly tip section to the fly base section. Refer to Figure 4–13. Store the hitch pin back in the lug on the fly tip section once it is erected.

WARNING

Use a hand line to control fly swing. The fly could swing rapidly. Keep all personnel clear of swing path to avoid personal injury.

18. Ensure the boom is fully retracted. Use the hand line attached to the fly tip section and slowly swing the fly tip section around the fly base section until the fly tip lugs engage with the fly base lugs on the left side of the fly.
19. Remove the left side fly tip connecting pins from the storage rings on the rear of the fly tip section. Install them through the fly tip connecting lugs on the left side of the fly. Install the top left pin and then the bottom left. (Install the pins with the head on top and the keeper on the bottom.) Install the pin keepers.

WARNING

All four fly tip connecting pins must be properly installed before operating the crane with the fly tip erected. Damage to the fly and/or personal injury could occur if all connecting pins are not properly installed.

20. Remove the wire rope guards from the fly base head and deflector sheaves and fly tip head sheave. Refer to Figure 4–6. Reeve the winch wire rope on the boom deflector sheave then over the fly base deflector and head sheaves and fly tip head sheave. Install all wire rope guards.

CAUTION

All wire rope guards must be in proper position during operation.

Operator's Manual

21. Properly change the anti-two block system connections as follows:
 - a. Disconnect the plug assembly from the jumper assembly on main boom head and connect it to the fly base section. Refer to Figure 4–3. Ensure all necessary anti-two block harness connections have been made.
 - b. Install the anti-two block weight on the fly tip section anti-two block switch.
 - c. Properly install lockout clip on main boom head anti-two block switch cable.

Note: When the lockout clip is installed, the anti-two block switch is inactive.

When both main boom and fly are reeved for operation, the lockout clip must be removed and properly stored and an anti-two block weight must be suspended from each anti-two block switch.

22. Remove and store the hand line from the tip of the fly tip section.
23. Properly set the Rated Capacity Limiter to the correct crane configuration. Refer to Section 1 of this Operator's Manual.
24. Check the Crane Rating Manual for lifting capacities with the fly installed before continuing operations.



WARNING

The fly adds weight to the boom which must be considered in lifting capacities when the fly is erected. When making lifts from the boom or auxiliary lifting sheave with the fly erected, refer to the Crane Rating Manual for the appropriate deductions from lifting capacities. Use the offset lattice fly only when the crane is level on fully or intermediate extended outriggers with all tires clear of the ground.

10 ft, 31–55 ft Offset Lattice Fly

The crane may be equipped with either a one, two, or three piece offset lattice fly. The offset lattice fly section, as shown in Figure 4–15, connects to the main boom head. It can be used in one of four offset positions: 2°, 15°, 30°, or 45°. The fly extends the boom length for greater heights. The fly center section extends the fly from 10 ft (3.0m) to 31 ft (9.4m). The tip section of the fly extends its overall length from 31 ft (9.4m) to 55 ft (16.8m). Once installed, the offset lattice fly section(s) can be stored on the right side of the boom base section.

10 ft, 31–55 ft Offset Lattice Fly Installation

1. Park crane on a firm level surface, shift the transmission to neutral, and apply the park brake.
2. Level the crane on fully or intermediate extended outriggers with all tires clear of the ground.
3. Position the upper directly over the front of the carrier and engage the travel swing lock.



WARNING

Install the offset fly with the crane level on fully or intermediate extended outriggers, all tires clear of the ground, the upper directly over the front of the carrier, and the travel swing lock engaged.

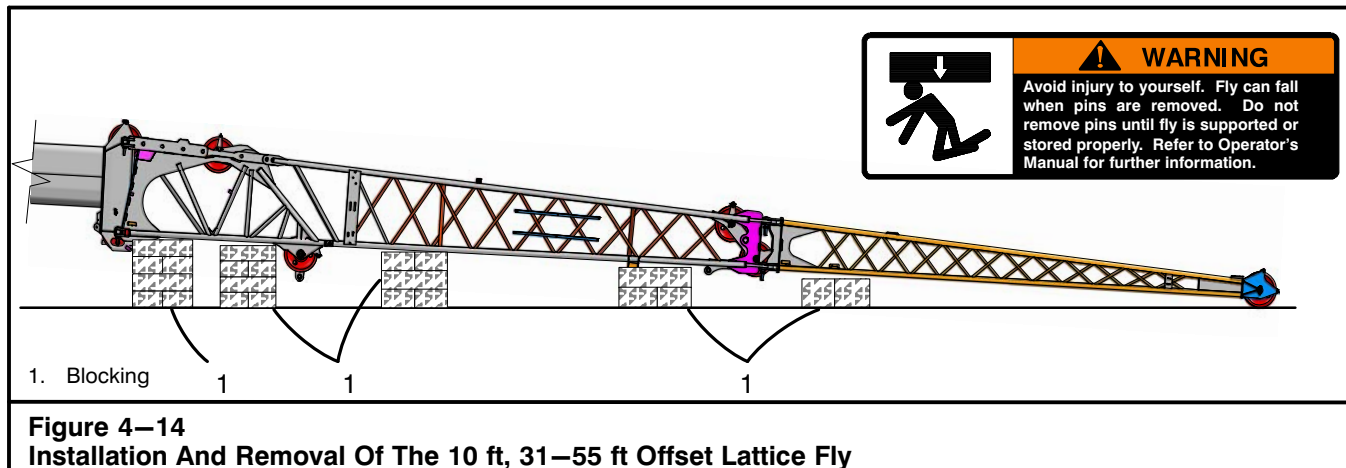
The fly adaptor lug and offset connecting pins must be in the 2° offset position to remove, install, store, or erect the offset fly.

Refer to the Crane Rating Manual for the maximum boom length the fly can be raised/lowered to/from the ground.

Failure to do the above could result in the personal injury and/or the crane tipping.

4. Extend the boom approximately 97 ft (29.5) and lower hook ball to the ground. Fully retract the boom. This will allow enough hoist rope to reeve over the fly.

Operator's Manual



5. Check that the fly adaptor lug and offset connecting pins are installed in the 2° offset position. Refer to Figure 4-16.
6. Pin the fly base, fly center, and fly tip together on secure blocking. Refer to Figure 4-14. The fly base section weighs approximately 1,496 lb (679kg), the fly center section approximately 1,171 lb (531kg), and the fly tip section approximately 810 lb (367kg).

Note: The fly base section connects to the fly center with two connecting pins at the top and two connecting hitch pins at the bottom.

Note: Fly base may be installed without the fly center section and/or the fly base and fly center sections may be installed without the fly tip section, if desired.

9. Remove the four fly connecting pins from the storage rings at the right rear of the fly base section. Refer to Right Side Fly Base Connecting Pin Label, Figure 4-10 and Figure 4-15. Install all four pins to connect the fly lugs to the boom head machinery cross shafts on the right side of the boom. (Install the pins with the head on top and keeper on the bottom. Install the pin keepers.
10. Remove the two fly connecting pins from the boom head machinery cross shafts on the left side of the boom head. Refer to Left Side Fly Base Connecting Pin Label, Figure 4-11 and Figure 4-15. Install the top pin to connect the fly lug to the boom head machinery cross shaft on the left side of the boom head. Turn the t-handle as required to push and align the bottom left fly lug and the bottom boom head machinery cross shaft. Install the bottom left fly connecting pin. (Install the pins with the head on top and keeper on the bottom.) Install the pin keepers. Back off the t-handle until at least a 1/2 in (1.3cm) clearance from the fly lug is obtained.

WARNING

To avoid personal injury, do not climb, stand, or walk on the boom or fly. Use a ladder or similar device as required to reach necessary areas.

7. Remove the winch wire rope from the main boom head machinery or the auxiliary lifting sheave, whichever is to be used on the fly, and lay it aside to prevent damage to it during installation of the fly.
8. Lower the boom and extend it to the fly. Slowly raise or lower the boom to engage the fly lugs with the boom head machinery cross shafts.

WARNING

All fly tip, center, and base connecting pins must be properly installed before operating the crane with the fly erected. Personal Injury and/or damage to the fly and/or boom could occur if all connecting pins are not properly installed.

Operator's Manual

11. Remove the wire rope guards from the fly base and boom head deflector sheaves. Reeve the winch wire rope over the boom deflector sheave, then on the fly base deflector sheave.
12. Remove the wire rope guards from the fly base deflector, fly center, or fly tip head sheaves, as applicable. Reeve the winch wire rope over the appropriate deflector and head sheave(s) as applicable and install all wire rope guards.

CAUTION

All wire rope guards must be in proper position during operation.

13. Properly change anti-two block system connections as follows:
 - a. Disconnect the plug assembly from the jumper assembly on main boom head and connect it to the fly base section. Refer to Figure 4–3. Ensure all necessary anti-two block harness connections have been made.
 - b. Install the anti-two block weight on the appropriate fly section anti-two block switch.

- c. Properly install lockout clip on main boom head anti-two block switch cable.

Note: When the lockout clip is installed, the anti-two block switch is inactive.

When both main boom and fly are reeved for operation, the lockout clip must be removed and properly stored and an anti-two block weight must be suspended from each anti-two block switch.

14. Properly set the Rated Capacity Limiter to the correct crane configuration. Refer to Section 1 of this Operator's Manual.
15. Check the Crane Rating Manual for necessary capacity deductions with the fly installed before continuing operations.



WARNING

The fly adds weight to the boom which must be considered in lifting capacities when the fly is erected. When making lifts from the boom or auxiliary lifting sheave with the fly erected, refer to the Crane Rating Manual for the appropriate deductions from lifting capacities. Use the offset lattice fly only when the crane is level on fully or intermediate extended outriggers with all tires clear of the ground.

Operator's Manual

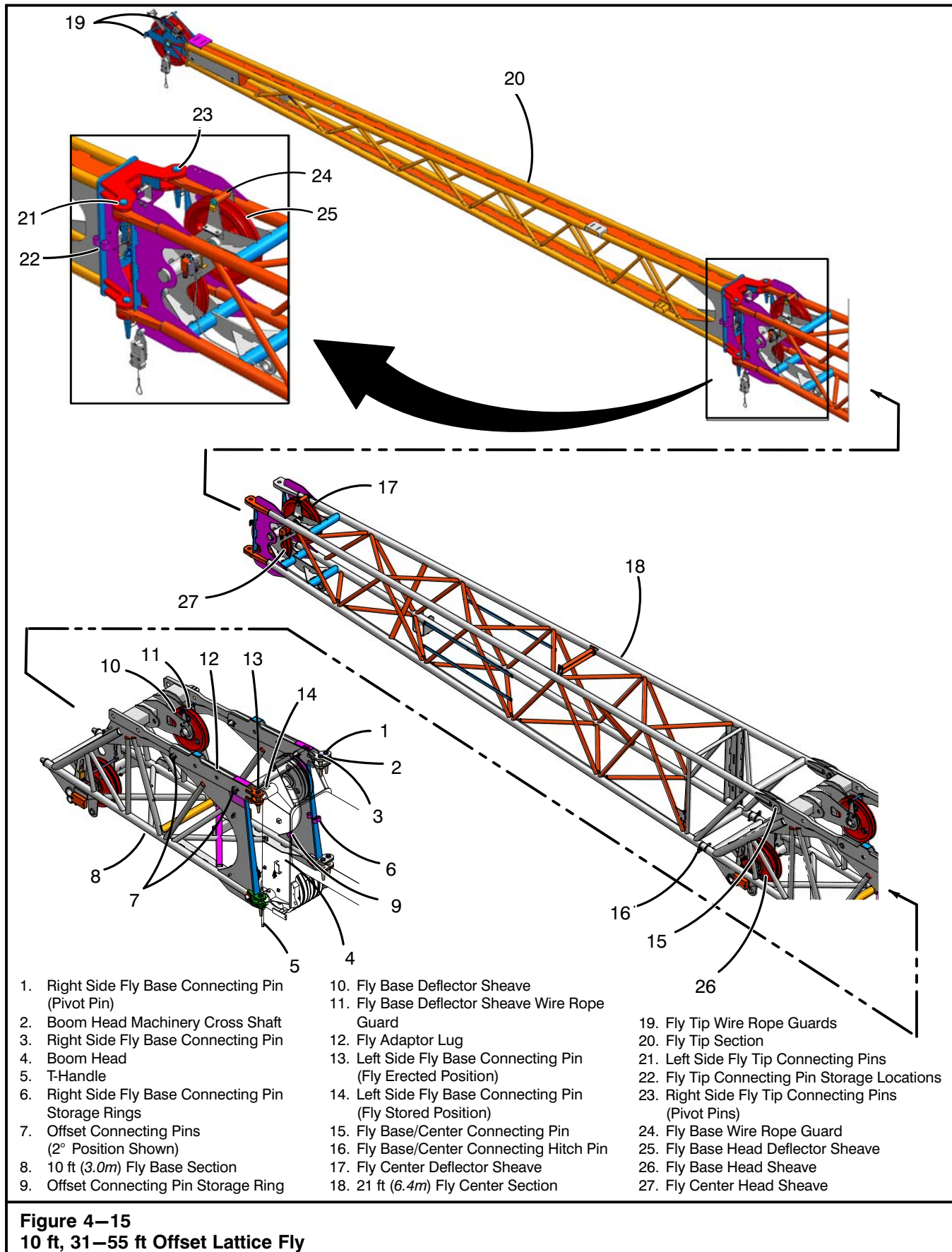


Figure 4-15
10 ft, 31-55 ft Offset Lattice Fly

10 ft, 31–55 ft Offset Lattice Fly Removal

1. Park crane on a firm level surface, shift the transmission to neutral, and apply the park brake.
2. Level the crane on fully or intermediate extended outriggers with all tires clear of the ground.
3. Position the upper directly over the front of the carrier and engage the travel swing lock.



WARNING

Remove the offset fly with the crane level on fully or intermediate extended outriggers, all tires clear of the ground, the upper directly over the front of the carrier, and the travel swing lock engaged.

The fly adaptor lug and offset connecting pins must be in the 2° offset position to remove, install, store, or erect the offset fly.

Refer to the Crane Rating Manual for the maximum boom length the fly can be raised/lowered to/from the ground.

Failure to do the above could result in the personal injury and/or the crane tipping.

4. If the fly is not in the erected position, erect it per “Erection Of The 10 ft Fly Base From The Stored Position”, “Erection Of The 10 ft Fly Base And 21 ft Fly Center Sections From The Stored Position”, or “Erection Of The 10 ft Fly Base, 21 ft Fly Center And 24 ft Fly Tip Sections From The Stored Position”, as applicable, in this Section of this Operator's Manual.
5. Check that the fly adaptor lug and offset connecting pins are installed in the 2° offset position. Refer to Figure 4–16. If necessary, change the fly offset to the 2° position. Refer to “Changing The 10 ft, 31–55 ft Fly Offset Angle ” in this Section of this Operator's Manual for detailed instructions.
6. Boom down fully.



WARNING

To avoid personal injury, do not climb, stand, or walk on the boom or fly. Use a ladder or similar device as required to reach necessary areas.

7. Properly change the anti-two block system connections as follows:
 - a. Remove lockout clip on the main boom head anti-two block switch cable. Refer to Figure 4–3.

- b. Remove the anti-two block weight from the offset lattice fly and install it on the main boom head anti-two block switch.
 - c. Remove the plug assembly from the offset lattice fly and connect it to the jumper assembly on the main boom head. Ensure all necessary anti-two block connections are disconnected.
8. Remove all fly base, fly center, and/or fly tip wire rope guards, as applicable. Remove boom head and deflector sheave wire rope guards and lay the winch wire rope aside to prevent damage to it during removal of the fly.
 9. Install all fly base, fly center, and fly tip wire rope guards at the deflector and head sheaves for storage, as applicable. Install the boom head and deflector sheave wire rope guards.
 10. Extend the boom until the fly tip sheave, fly center sheave, or fly base sheave, as applicable, rests on the ground.
 11. Securely block up the fly section(s) to support it (them). Refer to Figure 4–14. The fly base section weighs approximately 1,496 lb (679kg), the fly center section approximately 1,171 lb (531kg), and the fly tip section approximately 810 lb (367kg).



WARNING

Use extreme care when removing the tapered fly connecting pins. They could pop out suddenly causing serious personal injury.

12. Remove the six fly connecting pins and store four of the pins and keepers in the storage rings at the rear of the fly. Install the remaining two pins and keepers in the storage holes on the left side of the boom head machinery cross shafts to prevent the shafts from rotating. Refer to Figure 4–15.

Note: If only the fly tip section is to be removed, remove the connecting pins from the fly tip lugs only. If only the fly tip and fly center sections are to be removed, remove the connecting pins and connecting hitch pins from the fly center lugs only.

13. Retract the boom away from the fly, the fly base away from the fly center, or the fly center away from the fly tip, as applicable.
14. Properly reeve or secure the winch wire rope which was used on the fly.
15. Properly set the Rated Capacity Limiter to the correct crane configuration. Refer to Section 1 of this Operator's Manual.
16. Properly store fly section(s) to prevent damage to it (them).

Operator's Manual

Changing The 10 ft, 31–55 ft Fly Offset Angle

1. Park crane on a firm level surface, shift the transmission to neutral, and apply the park brake.
2. Level the crane on fully or intermediate extended outriggers with all tires clear of the ground.
3. Position the upper directly over the front of the carrier and engage the travel swing lock.



WARNING

Change the fly offset angle with the crane level on fully or intermediate extended outriggers with all tires clear of the ground, the upper directly over the front of the carrier, and the travel swing lock engaged.

Refer to the Crane Rating Manual for the maximum boom length the fly can be raised/lowered to/from the ground.

Failure to do the above could result in personal injury and/or the crane tipping.

4. If the fly is not in the erected position, erect it per “Erection Of The 10 ft Fly Base From The Stored Position”, “Erection Of The 10 ft Fly Base And 21 ft Fly Center Sections From The Stored Position”, or “Erection Of The 10 ft Fly Base, 21 ft Fly Center And 24 ft Fly Tip Sections From The Stored Position”, as applicable, in this Section of this Operator's Manual.

CAUTION

Do not extend the boom or boom down to the point of over stressing the fly section. Structural damage to the fly could occur if care is not taken. Use a signal person to aid the operator in lowering the fly head sheave to the ground.

5. Carefully extend and/or lower the boom until the fly tip, fly center, or fly base head sheave, as applicable is resting on the ground. Use a signal person to alert the operator when the sheave is resting on the ground.



WARNING

To avoid personal injury, do not climb, stand, or walk on the boom or fly. Use a ladder or similar device as required to reach necessary areas.

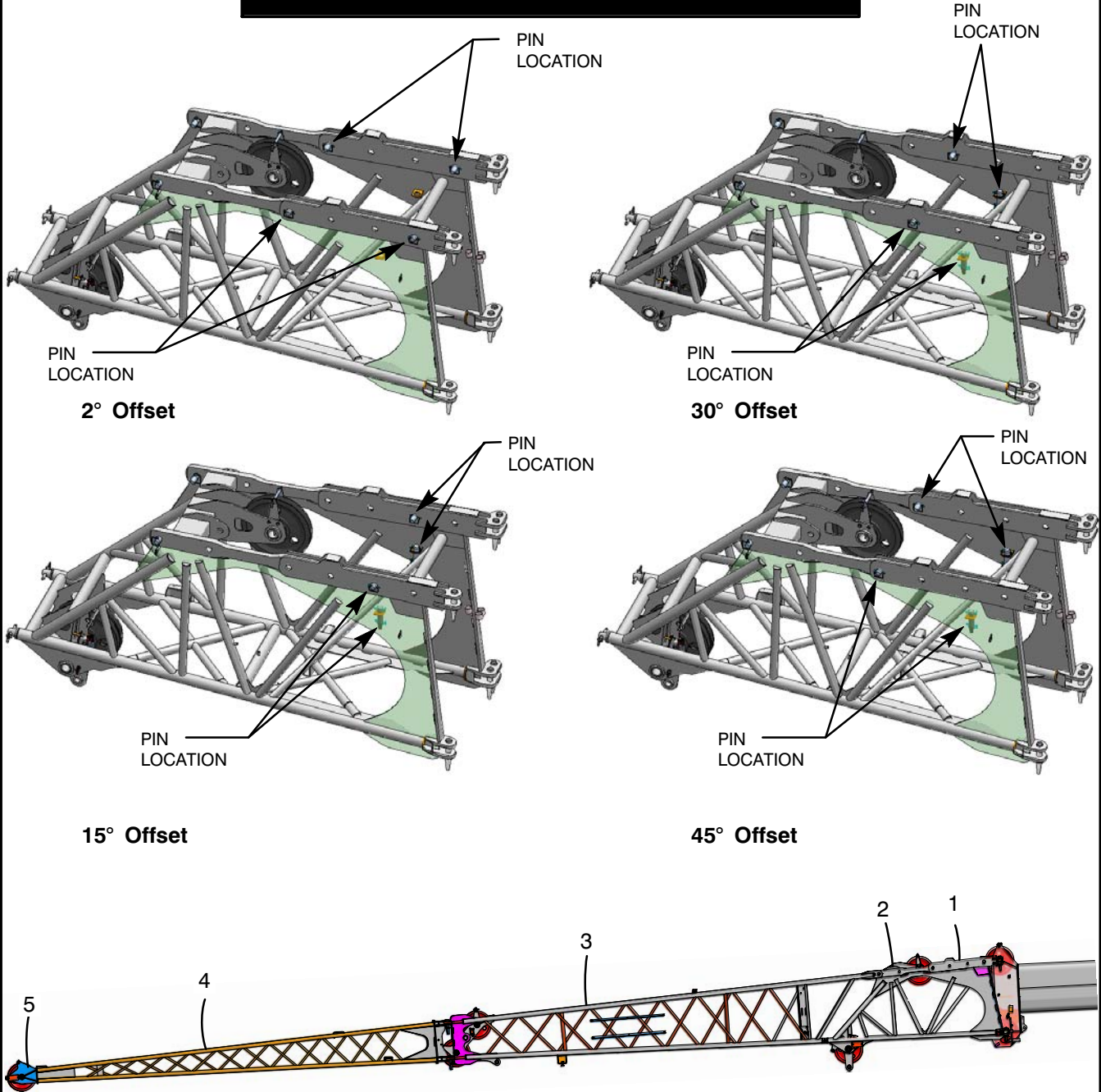
6. Remove the offset connecting pins from the fly adaptor lugs as required.
7. Install the offset connecting pins in the correct location for the desired offset angle. Use the information label, on the offset lattice fly, to determine the correct offset connecting pin locations for the desired offset angle of the fly. Refer to Figure 4–16.
8. Confirm that the offset connecting pins are properly located on both sides of the fly and ensure that the keeper pins are securely installed.
9. Slowly boom up to allow the fly section to adjust itself to the desired offset angle.
10. Properly set the Rated Capacity Limiter to the correct crane configuration before continuing operations. Refer to Section 1 of this Operator's Manual.
11. Check the Crane Rating Manual, in the operator's cab, for deductions to the lifting capacities with the fly installed before continuing operations.



WARNING

The fly adds weight to the boom which must be considered in lifting capacities when the fly is erected. When making lifts from the boom or auxiliary lifting sheave with the fly erected, refer to the Crane Rating Manual for the appropriate deductions from lifting capacities. Use the offset lattice fly only when the crane is level on fully or intermediate extended outriggers with all tires clear of the ground.

WARNING
 Comply with the following to prevent personal injury or crane damage.
 Pins must be properly installed on both sides of fly.
 Rest fly sheave on ground before changing offsets.
 Install pins per 2° offset to store or erect fly.



- 1. Fly Adaptor Lug
- 2. 10 ft Offset Lattice Fly Base Section
- 3. 21 ft Offset Lattice Fly Center Section
- 4. 24 ft Offset Lattice Fly Tip Section
- 5. Fly Tip Head Sheave

Figure 4-16
 Changing The 10 ft, 31-55 ft Fly Offset Angle

Operator's Manual

Storage Of The 10 ft Fly Base Section From The Erected Position

1. Park crane on a firm level surface, shift the transmission to neutral, and apply the park brake.
2. Level the crane on fully or intermediate extended outriggers with all tires clear of the ground.
3. Position the upper directly over the front of the carrier and engage the travel swing lock.

WARNING

Store the offset fly with the crane level on fully or intermediate extended outriggers, all tires clear of the ground, the upper directly over the front of the carrier, and the travel swing lock engaged.

The fly adaptor lug and offset connecting pins must be in the 2° offset position to remove, install, store, or erect the offset fly.

Refer to the Crane Rating Manual for the maximum boom length the fly can be raised/lowered to/from the ground.

Failure to do the above could result in personal injury and/or the crane tipping.

4. Check that the offset connecting pins are installed in the 2° offset position. Refer to Figure 4–16. If necessary change the fly offset to the 2° position. Refer to “Changing The 10 ft, 31–55 ft Fly Offset Angle” in this Section of this Operator's Manual for detailed instructions.
5. Position the boom above 50° boom angle and fully retract the boom.
6. Lower the boom to 0° boom angle.

WARNING

To avoid personal injury, do not climb, stand, or walk on the boom or fly. Use a ladder or similar device as required to reach necessary areas.

7. Properly change the anti-two block system connections as follows:
 - a. Disconnect plug assembly from fly base and connect it to the jumper assembly on the main boom head. Refer to Figure 4–3. Ensure all necessary anti-two block connections are disconnected.
 - b. Remove lockout clip on the main boom head anti-two block switch cable.
 - c. Remove the anti-two block weight from the fly base section and install it on the main boom anti-two block switch.

8. Remove wire rope guards from fly base head sheave, fly base deflector sheave, the boom head sheave and boom deflector sheave. Refer to Figure 4–15. Remove the winch wire rope and lay it aside. Install wire rope guards at all sheaves for storage.
9. Properly store winch wire rope which was used on fly.
10. Attach a hand line to the tip of the fly base.

WARNING

Do not remove fly connecting pivot pins on the right side of the boom until the fly is pinned to the storage brackets. Fly could fall causing crane damage and/or personal injury.

Use extreme care when removing the tapered fly connecting pins. They could pop out suddenly causing personal injury.

11. Remove the bottom left fly base connecting pin on the left side of the fly using the t-handle to assist in relieving the load on the pin. Back off the t-handle until at least a 1/2 in (1.3cm) clearance from the fly lug is obtained. Remove the top left fly base connecting pin. Store connecting pins in the storage holes on the boom head machinery cross shafts (25) on the left side of the boom to prevent the shafts from rotating. Refer to Figure 4–17.
12. Remove the inside bottom right fly base connecting pin on the right side of the fly. To reduce loading and ease pin removal, push the fly slightly right or left. Refer to Figure 4–15. Remove the inside top right fly base connecting pin on the right side of the fly. To reduce loading and ease pin removal push the fly slightly left or right. Store the two pins and keepers in the storage rings (6) on the right rear of the fly base section (8).
13. Fully retract the boom and position it to 0° angle.

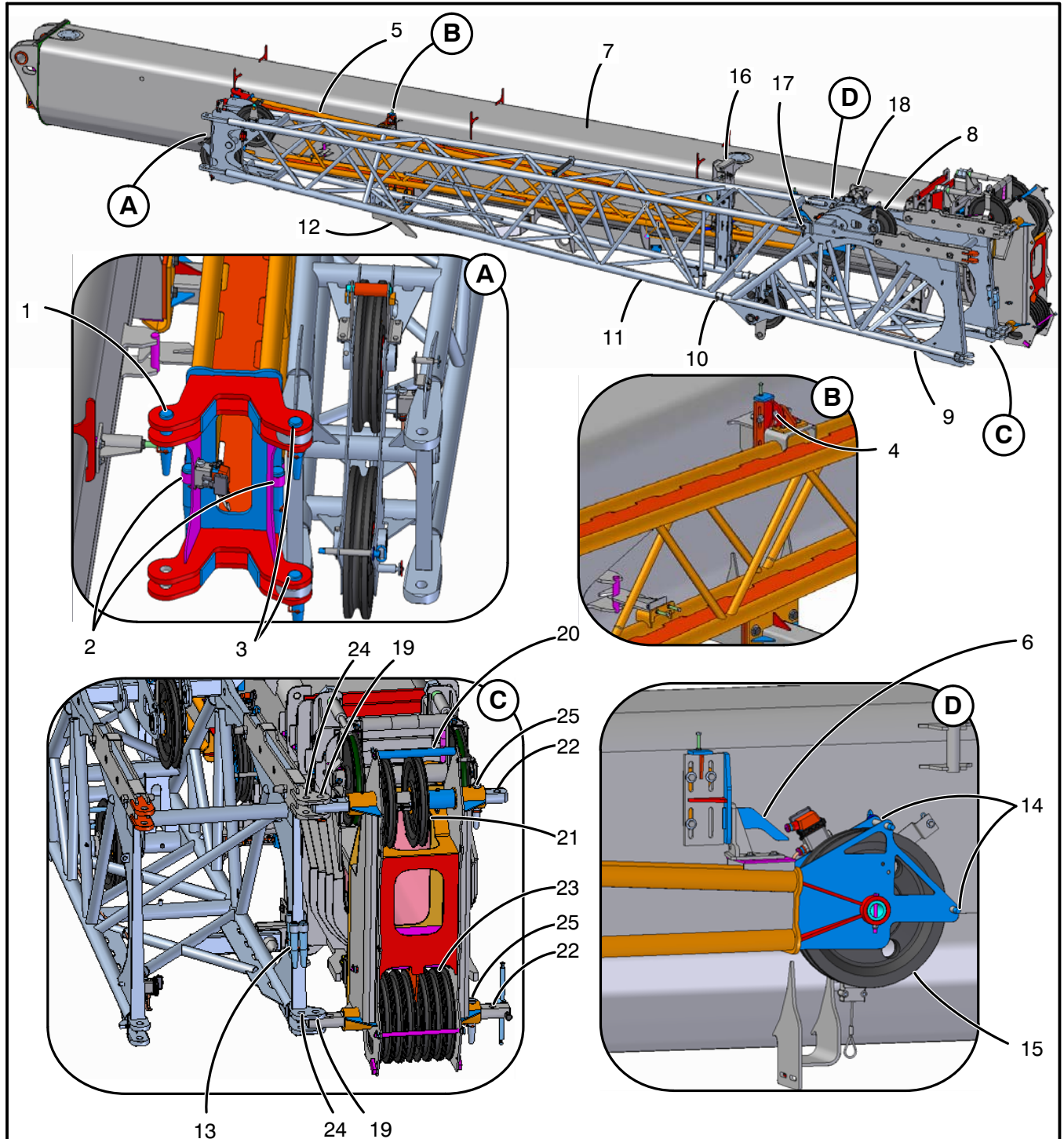
CAUTION

Fully retract the boom before swinging the fly. Failure to do so could cause fly and/or boom damage.

WARNING

Use a hand line to control fly swing. The fly could swing rapidly. Keep all personnel clear of swing path to avoid personal injury.

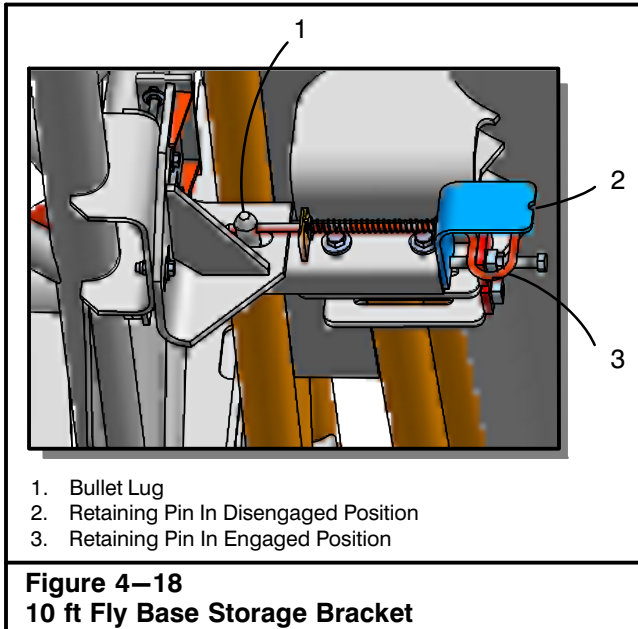
14. Use the hand line attached to the fly base section and slowly swing the fly base section around to the right side of the boom. Slowly boom up to 50°. Refer to Figure 4–8.



- | | | | |
|--|--|---|--|
| 1. Left Side Fly Tip Connecting Pin Storage Location | 8. 10 ft Fly Base Deflector Sheave | 14. Fly Tip Wire Rope Guards | 21. Boom Deflector Sheave |
| 2. Fly Tip Connecting Pin Storage Rings | 9. 10 ft Fly Base Section | 15. Fly Tip Head Sheave | 22. Left Side Fly Base Connecting Pin Hole |
| 3. Fly Tip Lug Pivot Holes/Pins | 10. Fly Base/Center Connecting Hitch Pin | 16. Fly Center Storage Bracket | 23. Boom Head Sheave |
| 4. Rear Fly Tip Storage Lug | 11. 21 ft Fly Center Section | 17. Fly Base/Center Connecting Pin | 24. Right Side Fly Base Connecting Pin Hole |
| 5. Offset Lattice Fly Tip Section | 12. Rear Fly Storage Bracket | 18. Fly Base Storage Bracket | 25. Left Side Fly Base Connecting Pins (Fly Stored Position) |
| 7. Boom | 13. Fly Base/Center Connecting Storage Rings (Four Places) | 19. Fly Base Pivot Pins | |
| | | 20. Boom Deflector Sheave Wire Rope Guard | |

Figure 4-17
10 ft, 31-55 ft Offset Fly Erection And Storage

Operator's Manual



15. Using the boom override switch, extend the inner boom section until the fly can swing completely against the storage bracket.
16. Slowly fully retract the boom while maintaining 50° boom angle to engage the bullet lug on the 10 ft fly base storage bracket. Refer to Figure 4-17.

Note: If the fly center section is stored on the boom, ensure top and bottom chords engage. Secure base section to center section with two connecting pins at the top and two connecting hitch pins at the bottom.

17. Boom down low enough to reach retaining pins. Pull and rotate retaining pin (3). Refer to Figure 4-18. Push retaining pin to engage the pin through the bullet lug on the 10 ft fly base storage bracket.

WARNING

Do not remove fly base connecting pivot pins on the right side of the boom until the fly is pinned to the storage brackets. Fly could fall causing crane damage and/or personal injury.

18. Remove two fly base connecting pivot pins (1) from the right side of the boom. Refer to Figure 4-15. Store pins and keepers in storage rings (6) on the rear of the fly base section (8).

CAUTION

Before operating or traveling the crane ensure the right side fly connecting pins are properly stored in their storage rings, and the left side connecting pins are stored in their storage holes in the boom head cross shafts. Damage could result to the fly and/or boom if fly connecting pins are not properly stored.

19. Remove and store the hand line from the tip of the fly base section.
20. Properly set the Rated Capacity Limiter to the correct crane configuration. Refer to Section 1 of this Operator's Manual.
21. Check the Crane Rating Manual for lifting capacities with the fly in the stored position before continuing operations.

Storage Of The 10 ft Fly Base And 21 ft Fly Center Sections From The Erected Position

1. Park crane on a firm level surface, shift the transmission to neutral, and apply the park brake.
2. Level the crane on fully or intermediate extended outriggers with all tires clear of the ground.
3. Position the upper directly over the front of the carrier and engage the travel swing lock.

WARNING

Store the offset fly with the crane level on fully or intermediate extended outriggers, all tires clear of the ground, the upper directly over the front of the carrier, and the travel swing lock engaged.

The fly adaptor lug and offset connecting pins must be in the 2° offset position to remove, install, store, or erect the offset fly.

Refer to the Crane Rating Manual for the maximum boom length the fly can be raised/lowered to/from the ground.

Failure to do the above could result in personal injury and/or the crane tipping.

4. Check that the offset connecting pins are installed in the 2° offset position. Refer to Figure 4-16. If necessary change the fly offset to the 2° position. Refer to "Changing The 10 ft, 31-55 ft Fly Offset Angle" in this Section of this Operator's Manual for detailed instructions.

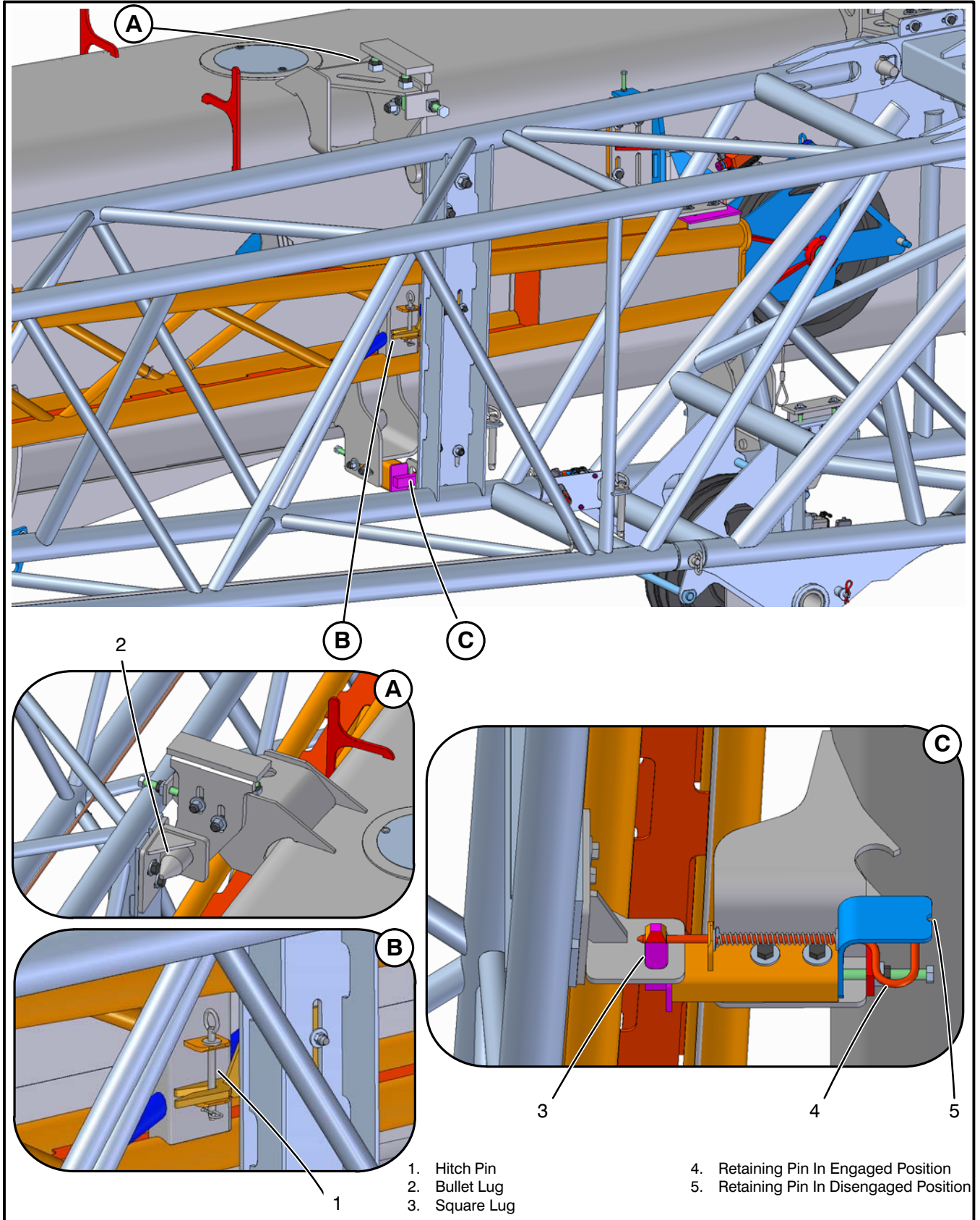


Figure 4-19
10 ft, 31-55 ft Fly Center Storage Bracket

- 1. Hitch Pin
- 2. Bullet Lug
- 3. Square Lug
- 4. Retaining Pin In Engaged Position
- 5. Retaining Pin In Disengaged Position

Operator's Manual

5. Position the boom above 50° boom angle and fully retract the boom.
6. Lower the boom to 0° boom angle.

WARNING

To avoid personal injury, do not climb, stand, or walk on the boom or fly. Use a ladder or similar device as required to reach necessary areas.

7. Properly change the anti-two block system connections as follows:
 - a. Disconnect plug assembly from fly base and connect it to the jumper assembly on the main boom head. Refer to Figure 4–3. Ensure all necessary anti-two block connections are disconnected.
 - b. Remove lockout clip on the main boom head anti-two block switch cable.
 - c. Remove the anti-two block weight from the fly base section and install it on the main boom anti-two block switch.
8. Remove wire rope guards from fly center head sheaves, fly base deflector sheave, the boom head sheave and boom deflector sheave. Refer to Figure 4–15. Remove the winch wire rope and lay it aside. Install wire rope guards at all sheaves for storage.
9. Properly store the winch wire rope which was used on the fly.
10. Attach a hand line to the tip of the fly center section.

WARNING

Do not remove fly connecting pivot pins on the right side of the boom until the fly is pinned to the storage brackets. Fly could fall causing crane damage and/or personal injury.

Use extreme care when removing the tapered fly connecting pins. They could pop out suddenly causing personal injury.

11. Remove the bottom left fly base connecting pin on the left side of the fly using the t-handle to assist in relieving the load on the pin. Refer to Figure 4–15. Back off the t-handle until at least a 1/2 in (1.3cm) clearance from the fly lug is obtained. Remove the top left fly base connecting pin. Store connecting pins in the storage holes (14) on the boom head machinery cross shafts (2) on the left side of the boom to prevent the shafts from rotating.

12. Remove the inside bottom right fly base connecting pin on the right side of the fly. To reduce loading and ease pin removal, push the fly slightly right or left. Refer to Figure 4–15. Remove the inside top right fly base connecting pin on the right side of the fly. To reduce loading and ease pin removal push the fly slightly left or right. Store the two pins and keepers in the storage rings (6) on the right rear of the fly base section (8).

13. Fully retract the boom and position it to 0° angle.

CAUTION

Fully retract the boom before swinging the fly. Failure to do so could cause fly and/or boom damage.

WARNING

Use a hand line to control fly swing. The fly could swing rapidly. Keep all personnel clear of swing path to avoid personal injury.

14. Use the hand line attached to the fly center section and slowly swing the fly base and center sections around to the right side of the boom. Slowly boom up to 50°. Refer to Figure 4–8.
15. Using the boom override switch, extend the inner boom section until the fly can swing completely against the storage bracket.
16. Slowly fully retract the boom while maintaining 50° boom angle to slide the storage lug on the rear of the fly center into the slot on the rear storage bracket (12). Refer to Figure 4–17. At the same time, the bullet lug and the square lug on the fly center storage bracket should engage through the holes on the rear of the fly center section. Refer to Figure 4–19. Also the bullet lug on the fly base storage bracket on the boom base section should engage the fly base storage bracket on the fly base section. Refer to Figure 4–18. Also, if the fly tip is stored on the boom, the tip and center sections must engage.
17. Boom down low enough to reach retaining pins. Pull and rotate the fly center retaining pin (4). Refer to Figure 4–19. Push retaining pin to engage the pin through the square lug on the front storage bracket. Pull and rotate the fly base retaining pin (3). Refer to Figure 4–18. Push retaining pin to engage the pin through the bullet lug on the 10 ft fly base storage bracket.
18. Install two right side fly tip connecting pins to connect the fly center to the fly tip section.



WARNING

Do not remove fly base connecting pivot pins on the right side of the boom until the fly is pinned to the storage brackets. Fly could fall causing crane damage and/or personal injury.

19. If the fly tip is stored on the side of the boom, install the hitch pin (1) through the storage bracket on the fly tip section and the storage bracket on the fly center section and secure the hitch pin. Refer to Figure 4–19.
20. Remove two fly base connecting pivot pins (1) from the right side of the boom. Refer to Figure 4–15. Store pins and keepers in storage rings (6) on the rear of the fly base section (8).

CAUTION

Before operating or traveling the crane ensure the right side fly connecting pins are properly stored in their storage rings, and the left side connecting pins are stored in their storage holes in the boom head cross shafts. Damage could result to the fly and/or boom if fly connecting pins are not properly stored.

21. Remove and store the hand line from the tip of the fly base section.
22. Properly set the Rated Capacity Limiter to the correct crane configuration. Refer to Section 1 of this Operator's Manual.
23. Check the Crane Rating Manual for lifting capacities with the fly in the stored position before continuing operations.

Storage Of The 10 ft Fly Base, 21 ft Fly Center, And 24 ft Fly Tip Sections From The Erected Position

1. Park crane on a firm level surface, shift the transmission to neutral, and apply the park brake.
2. Level the crane on fully or intermediate extended outriggers with all tires clear of the ground.
3. Position the upper directly over the front of the carrier and engage the travel swing lock.



WARNING

Store the offset fly with the crane level on fully or intermediate extended outriggers, all tires clear of the ground, the upper directly over the front of the carrier, and the travel swing lock engaged.

The fly adaptor lug and offset connecting pins must be in the 2° offset position to remove, install, store, or erect the offset fly.

Refer to the Crane Rating Manual for the maximum boom length the fly can be raised/lowered to/from the ground.

Failure to do the above could result in personal injury and/or the crane tipping.

4. Check that the offset connecting pins (2) are installed in the 2° offset position. Refer to Figure 4–16. If necessary change the fly offset to the 2° position. Refer to "Changing The 10 ft, 31–55 ft Fly Offset Angle" in this Section of this Operator's Manual for detailed instructions.
5. Position the boom above 50° boom angle and fully retract the boom.
6. Lower the boom to 0° boom angle.



WARNING

To avoid personal injury, do not climb, stand, or walk on the boom or fly. Use a ladder or similar device as required to reach necessary areas.

7. Properly change the anti-two block system connections as follows:
 - a. Disconnect plug assembly from fly base and connect it to the jumper assembly on the main boom head. Refer to Figure 4–3. Ensure all necessary anti-two block connections are disconnected.
 - b. Remove lockout clip on the main boom head anti-two block switch cable.
 - c. Remove the anti-two block weight from the fly section and install it on the main boom anti-two block switch.
8. Remove wire rope guards from fly tip head sheave, fly center deflector sheave, fly base deflector sheave, boom head sheaves, and boom deflector sheave. Refer to Figure 4–15. Remove the winch wire rope and lay it aside. Install wire rope guards at all sheaves for storage.

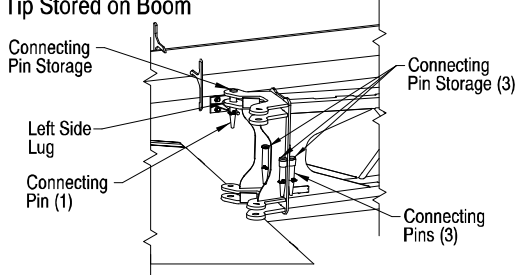
Operator's Manual

⚠ WARNING

Comply with the following to prevent personal injury or machine damage.

Stored Fly Tip: (shown)
Install one pin in top left side lug closest to boom.
Install other 3 pins in storage.
Refer to operator's manual for detailed instructions.

Fly Tip Stored on Boom



**Figure 4–20
Fly Tip Storage Label**

9. Properly store the winch wire rope which was used on the fly.
10. Attach a hand line to the tip of the fly tip section.

⚠ WARNING

Do not remove fly connecting pivot pins on the right side of the boom until the fly is pinned to the storage brackets. Fly could fall causing crane damage and/or personal injury.

Use extreme care when removing the tapered fly connecting pins. They could pop out suddenly causing personal injury.

11. Remove the bottom and then the top fly tip connecting pins (21) on the left side of the fly tip section (20). Refer to Figure 4–15. To ease pin removal, relieve the loading on the pins by pushing the fly tip from side to side. Store pins and keepers in the storage location (22) on the rear of the fly tip section.
12. Ensure the boom is fully retracted.

CAUTION

Fully retract the boom before swinging the fly. Failure to do so could cause fly and/or boom damage.

⚠ WARNING

Use a hand line to control fly swing. The fly could swing rapidly. Keep all personnel clear of swing path to avoid personal injury.

13. Using the hand line attached to the fly tip section, slowly swing the fly tip section around to the right side of the fly center section. Refer to Figure 4–8.
14. Align the storage bracket on the fly tip section with the storage bracket on the fly center section. Refer to Figure 4–19. Install the hitch pin (1) through the storage brackets and secure the hitch pin.

⚠ WARNING

Do not remove fly connecting pivot pins on the right side of the boom until the fly is pinned to the storage brackets. Fly could fall causing crane damage and/or personal injury.

Use extreme care when removing the tapered fly connecting pins. They could pop out suddenly causing personal injury.

15. Remove the bottom left fly base connecting pin on the left side of the fly using the t-handle to assist in relieving the load on the pin. Back off the t-handle until at least a 1/2 in (1.3cm) clearance from the fly lug is obtained. Remove the top left fly base connecting pin. Store connecting pins in the storage holes (14) on the boom head machinery cross shafts (2) on the left side of the boom to prevent the shafts from rotating. Refer to Figure 4–15.
16. Remove the hand line from the tip of the fly tip section and attach it to the tip of the fly center section.
17. Remove the inside bottom right fly base connecting pin on the right side of the fly. To reduce loading and ease pin removal, push the fly slightly right or left. Refer to Figure 4–15. Remove the inside top right fly base connecting pin on the right side of the fly. To reduce loading and ease pin removal push the fly slightly left or right. Store the two pins and keepers in the storage rings (6) on the right rear of the fly base section (8).
18. Fully retract the boom and position it to 0° angle.

CAUTION

Fully retract the boom before swinging the fly. Failure to do so could cause fly and/or boom damage.

⚠ WARNING

Use a hand line to control fly swing. The fly could swing rapidly. Keep all personnel clear of swing path to avoid personal injury.

19. Use the hand line attached to the center section and slowly swing the fly base and center sections around to the right side of the boom. Slowly boom up to 50°. Refer to Figure 4–8.
20. Using the boom override switch, extend the inner boom section until the fly can swing completely against the storage bracket.
21. Slowly fully retract the boom while maintaining 50° boom angle to slide the storage lug on the rear of the fly center into the slot on the rear storage bracket (12). Refer to Figure 4–17. At the same time, the bullet lug and the square lug on the fly center storage bracket should engage through the holes on the rear of the fly center section. Refer to Figure 4–19. Also the bullet lug on the fly base storage bracket on the boom base section should engage the fly base storage bracket on the fly base section. Refer to Figure 4–18.
22. Boom down low enough to reach retaining pins. Pull and rotate the fly center retaining pin (4). Refer to Figure 4–19. Push retaining pin to engage the pin through the square lug on the fly center storage bracket. Pull and rotate the 10 ft fly base retaining pin (3). Refer to Figure 4–18. Push retaining pin to engage the pin through the bullet lug on the 10 ft fly base storage bracket.
24. Install a fly tip connecting pin (1) in the top left fly tip connecting lug. Refer to Figure 4–17 and Fly Tip Storage Label, Figure 4–20.
25. Remove and store the hand line from the tip of the fly center section.
26. Properly set the Rated Capacity Limiter to the correct crane configuration. Refer to Section 1 of this Operator's Manual.
27. Check the Crane Rating Manual for lifting capacities with the fly in the stored position before continuing operations.

Erection Of The 10 ft Fly Base Section From The Stored Position

1. Park crane on a firm level surface, shift the transmission to neutral, and apply the park brake.
2. Level the crane on fully or intermediate extended outriggers with all tires clear of the ground.
3. Position the upper directly over the front of the carrier and engage the travel swing lock.

WARNING

Do not remove fly base connecting pivot pins on the right side of the boom until the fly is pinned to the storage brackets. Fly could fall causing crane damage and/or personal injury.

23. Remove two fly base connecting pivot pins (19) from the right side of the boom. Refer to Figure 4–17. Store pins and keepers in storage rings (13) on the rear of the 10 ft fly base section (9).

CAUTION

Before operating or traveling the crane ensure the right side fly connecting pins are properly stored in their storage rings, and the left side connecting pins are stored in their storage holes in the boom head cross shafts. Damage could result to the fly and/or boom if fly connecting pins are not properly stored.

WARNING

Erect the offset fly with the crane level on fully or intermediate extended outriggers, all tires clear of the ground, the upper directly over the front of the carrier, and the travel swing lock engaged.

The fly adaptor lug and offset connecting pins must be in the 2° offset position to remove, install, store, or erect the offset fly.

Refer to the Crane Rating Manual for the maximum boom length the fly can be raised/lowered to/from the ground.

Failure to do the above could result in the personal injury and/or the crane tipping.

Operator's Manual

- If the fly center and/or the fly tip sections are stored on the boom, check that the fly center and/or fly tip section connecting pins are in the stored position. Refer to Figure 4–17, Figure 4–19, and Figure 4–20.
- Check that the offset connecting pins (2) are installed in the 2° offset position. Refer to Figure 4–16. If necessary change the fly offset to the 2° position. Refer to “Changing The 10 ft, 31–55 ft Fly Offset Angle ” in this Section of this Operator's Manual for detailed instructions.
- Position the boom above 50° boom angle. Extend the boom to at least 62 ft (19m) and lower the hook ball, to be used on the fly, to the ground. This will allow enough wire rope length to ease reeving of the fly.
- Fully retract the boom to engage the fly lugs with the boom head machinery cross shafts on the right side of the boom. Fully lower the boom.

WARNING

To avoid personal injury, do not climb, stand, or walk on the boom or fly. Use a ladder or similar device as required to reach necessary areas.

- Remove two fly connecting pins from the storage rings on the rear of the fly base section. Install them through the fly base pivot lugs (19) on the right side of the boom. Refer to Figure 4–17. (Install the pins with the head on top and the keeper on the bottom.) Install the pin keepers.
- Remove the winch wire rope from the boom head machinery or the auxiliary lifting sheave whichever is to be used on the fly and lay it aside to prevent damage to it during erection of the fly.

WARNING

Check that the fly base connecting pins are installed in the pivot holes before disconnecting the fly from the storage brackets. The fly could fall causing crane damage and/or personal injury.

- Pull the retaining pin to disengage the pin from the bullet lug on the 10 ft fly base storage bracket. Refer to Figure 4–18. Rotate and release the retaining pin to lock it in the disengaged position.

Note: If fly center section is stored on the boom, remove two connecting pins from the top of the center section and two connecting hitch pins from the bottom of the center section that connects the base section to the center section.

- Attach a hand line to the tip of the 10 ft fly base and boom up to 20°.
- Using the boom override switch, slowly extend the inner boom section approximately 1–1.5 ft (0.3–0.46m) to slide the 10 ft fly base off the storage brackets.

CAUTION

Do not extend boom more than 1.5 ft (0.46m). Damage to the fly and/or boom may occur.

- Slowly boom down to allow the fly base to swing out slightly from the storage bracket and then fully retract the boom.

CAUTION

Fully retract the boom before swinging the fly. Failure to do so could cause fly and/or boom damage.

WARNING

Use a hand line to control fly swing. The fly could swing rapidly. Keep all personnel clear of swing path to avoid personal injury.

- Continue to lower the boom to 0° angle. Use the hand line attached to the fly base and swing the fly base around the boom head until the fly base lugs engage with the boom head machinery cross shafts on the left side of the boom. Refer to Figure 4–8.
- Remove the two connecting pins from the storage rings (13) on the rear of the fly base section and install them in the boom head machinery cross shafts (24) on the right side of the boom. Refer to Figure 4–17. Install the inside top right pin first. Swing the fly base to the left or right to get the pin to drop in the hole. Install the inside bottom right pin. Swing the fly base to the right or left to get the pin to drop in the hole. (Install the pins with the head on top and the keeper on the bottom.) Install the pin keepers.

Operator's Manual

16. Remove the two fly connecting pins from the storage location (25) on the boom head machinery cross shafts on the left side of the boom. Refer to Figure 4–17. Install one left side fly base connecting pin through the top fly lug on the left side of the boom. Turn the t-handle to push and align the bottom left fly lug and the bottom boom head machinery cross shaft. Install the bottom left fly connecting pin. (Install the pins with the head on top and the keeper on the bottom.) Install the pin keepers. Back off the t-handle until at least a 1/2 in (1.3cm) clearance from the fly lug is obtained.

WARNING

All six fly base connecting pins must be properly installed before operating the crane with the fly base erected. Damage to the fly base and/or personal injury could occur if all connecting pins are not properly installed.

17. Remove the wire rope guard from the fly base head and deflector sheaves. Refer to Figure 4–17. Reeve the winch wire rope on the boom deflector sheave then over the fly base deflector and head sheaves. Install all wire rope guards.

CAUTION

All wire rope guards must be in proper position during operation.

18. Properly change the anti-two block system connections as follows:
 - a. Disconnect the plug assembly from the jumper assembly on main boom head and connect it to the fly base section. Refer to Figure 4–3. Ensure all the necessary anti-two block harness connections are made.
 - b. Install the anti-two block weight on the offset fly base section.
 - c. Properly install lockout clip on main boom head anti-two block switch cable.

Note: When the lockout clip is installed, the anti-two block switch is inactive.

When both main boom and fly are reeved for operation, the lockout clip must be removed and properly stored and an anti-two block weight must be suspended from each anti-two block switch.

19. Remove and store the hand line from the tip of the fly base section.
20. Properly set the Rated Capacity Limiter to the correct crane configuration. Refer to Section 1 of this Operator's Manual.
21. Check the Crane Rating Manual for lifting capacities with the fly installed before continuing operations.

WARNING

When making lifts from the 10 ft (3.05m) fly at 2° offset and 70 degree boom angle or higher, 2 parts of line is the maximum with the auxiliary sheave erected. Wire rope may contact auxiliary lifting sheave. Auxiliary lifting sheave may be removed to eliminate the possible interference. A warning will be shown on the RCL display if the configuration can result in wire rope contacting the auxiliary lifting sheave.

WARNING

The fly adds weight to the boom which must be considered in lifting capacities when the fly is erected. When making lifts from the boom or auxiliary lifting sheave with the fly erected, refer to the Crane Rating Manual for the appropriate deductions from lifting capacities. Use the offset lattice fly only when the crane is level on fully or intermediate extended outriggers with all tires clear of the ground.

Erection Of The 10 ft Fly Base And 21 ft Fly Center Sections From The Stored Position

1. Park crane on a firm level surface, shift the transmission to neutral, and apply the park brake.
2. Level the crane on fully or intermediate extended outriggers with all tires clear of the ground.
3. Position the upper directly over the front of the carrier and engage the travel swing lock.

Operator's Manual



WARNING

Erect the offset fly with the crane level on fully or intermediate extended outriggers, all tires clear of the ground, the upper directly over the front of the carrier, and the travel swing lock engaged.

The fly adaptor lug and offset connecting pins must be in the 2° offset position to remove, install, store, or erect the offset fly.

Refer to the Crane Rating Manual for the maximum boom length the fly can be raised/lowered to/from the ground.

Failure to do the above could result in the personal injury and/or the crane tipping.

4. Check that the offset connecting pins (2) are installed in the 2° offset position. Refer to Figure 4–16. If necessary change the fly offset to the 2° position. Refer to “Changing The 10 ft, 31–55 ft Fly Offset Angle ” in this Section of this Operator's Manual for detailed instructions.
5. Check that the fly tip connecting pins are in the stored position. Refer to Figure 4–17.
6. Position the boom above 50° boom angle. Extend the boom to at least 75 ft (23m) and lower the hook ball, to be used on the fly, to the ground. This will allow enough wire rope length to ease reeving of the fly.
7. Fully retract the boom to engage the fly lugs with the boom head machinery cross shafts on the right side of the boom. Fully lower the boom.



WARNING

To avoid personal injury, do not climb, stand, or walk on the boom or fly. Use a ladder or similar device as required to reach necessary areas.

8. Remove two fly connecting pins from the storage rings on the rear of the fly base section. Install them through the fly pivot lugs (19) on the right side of the boom. Refer to Figure 4–17. (Install the pins with the head on top and the keeper on the bottom.) Install the pin keepers.
9. Remove the winch wire rope from the boom head machinery or the auxiliary lifting sheave, whichever is to be used on the fly, and lay it aside to prevent damage to it during erection of the fly.



WARNING

Check that the fly base connecting pins are installed in the pivot holes before disconnecting the fly from the storage brackets. The fly could fall causing crane damage and/or personal injury.

10. Pull the retaining pin to disengage the pin from the bullet lug on the 10 ft fly base storage bracket. Refer to Figure 4–18. Rotate and release the retaining pin to lock it in the disengaged position.
11. Pull the retaining pin to disengage the pin from the square lug on the fly center storage bracket. Refer to Figure 4–19. Rotate and release the retaining pin to lock it in the disengaged position.

Note: Check that all four pins connecting the base section to the center section (two connecting pins and two connecting hitch pins) are installed and secured.

12. Remove the two fly tip connecting pins (3) from the fly tip lug pivot holes. Refer to Figure 4–17. Ensure the top left side fly tip connecting pin is in the proper storage location (1) Figure 4–17. Check that the remaining 3 fly tip section connecting pins are properly stored in the storage rings (3).
13. Attach a hand line to the tip of the fly center section.
14. Fully retract the boom and boom up to 20°. Using the boom override switch, slowly extend the inner boom section approximately 2–2.5 ft (0.61–0.76m) to slide the fly base and center sections off the storage brackets.

CAUTION

Do not extend boom more than 2.5 ft (0.76m). Damage to the fly and/or boom may occur.

15. Slowly boom down to allow the fly base and center sections to swing out slightly from the storage bracket and then fully retract the boom.

CAUTION

Fully retract the boom before swinging the fly. Failure to do so could cause fly and/or boom damage.

Operator's Manual



WARNING

Use a hand line to control fly swing. The fly could swing rapidly. Keep all personnel clear of swing path to avoid personal injury.

16. Continue to lower the boom to 0° angle. Use the hand line attached to the fly center section to swing the fly base and center sections around the boom head until the fly lugs engage with the boom head machinery cross shafts on the left side of the boom. Refer to Figure 4–8.
17. Remove the two connecting pins from the storage rings (13) on the rear of the fly base section and install them in the boom head machinery cross shafts (24) on the right side of the boom. Refer to Right Side Fly Base Connecting Pin Label, Figure 4–10 and Figure 4–17. Install the inside top right pin first. Swing the fly base to the left or right to get the pin to drop in the hole. Install the inside bottom right pin. Swing the fly base to the right or left to get the pin to drop in the hole. (Install the pins with the head on top and the keeper on the bottom.) Install the pin keepers.
18. Remove the two fly connecting pins from the storage location (25) on the boom head machinery cross shafts on the left side of the boom. Refer to Left Side Fly Base Connecting Pin Label, Figure 4–11 and Figure 4–17. Install one left side fly base connecting pin through the top fly lug on the left side of the boom. Turn the t-handle to push and align the bottom left fly lug and the bottom boom head machinery cross shaft. Install the bottom left fly connecting pin. (Install the pins with the head on top and the keeper on the bottom.) Install the pin keepers. Back off the t-handle until at least a 1/2 in (1.3cm) clearance from the fly lug is obtained.



WARNING

All six fly base connecting pins must be properly installed before operating the crane with the fly base erected. Damage to the fly base and/or personal injury could occur if all connecting pins are not properly installed.

19. Remove the wire rope guard from the fly base deflector sheave and fly center head sheave. Refer to Figure 4–15. Reeve the winch wire rope on the boom deflector sheave then over the fly base deflector and fly center section head sheaves. Install all wire rope guards.

CAUTION

All wire rope guards must be in proper position during operation.

20. Properly change the anti-two block system connections as follows:
 - a. Disconnect the plug assembly from the jumper assembly on main boom head and connect it to the fly base section. Refer to Figure 4–3. Ensure all the necessary anti-two block harness connections are made.
 - b. Install the anti-two block weight on the offset fly base section.
 - c. Properly install lockout clip on main boom head anti-two block switch cable.

Note: When the lockout clip is installed, the anti-two block switch is inactive.

When both main boom and fly are reeved for operation, the lockout clip must be removed and properly stored and an anti-two block weight must be suspended from each anti-two block switch.

21. Remove and store the hand line from the tip of the fly center section.
22. Properly set the Rated Capacity Limiter to the correct crane configuration. Refer to Section 1 of this Operator's Manual.
23. Check the Crane Rating Manual for lifting capacities with the fly installed before continuing operations.



WARNING

The fly adds weight to the boom which must be considered in lifting capacities when the fly is erected. When making lifts from the boom or auxiliary lifting sheave with the fly erected, refer to the Crane Rating Manual for the appropriate deductions from lifting capacities. Use the offset lattice fly only when the crane is level on fully or intermediate extended outriggers with all tires clear of the ground.

Operator's Manual

Erection Of The 10 ft Fly Base, 31 ft Fly Center, And 24 ft Fly Tip Sections From The Stored Position

1. Park crane on a firm level surface, shift the transmission to neutral, and apply the park brake.
2. Level the crane on fully or intermediate extended outriggers with all tires clear of the ground.
3. Position the upper directly over the front of the carrier and engage the travel swing lock.



WARNING

Erect the offset fly with the crane level on fully or intermediate extended outriggers, all tires clear of the ground, the upper directly over the front of the carrier, and the travel swing lock engaged.

The fly adaptor lug and offset connecting pins must be in the 2° offset position to remove, install, store, or erect the offset fly.

Refer to the Crane Rating Manual for the maximum boom length the fly can be raised/lowered to/from the ground.

Failure to do the above could result in the personal injury and/or the crane tipping.

4. Check that the offset connecting pins (2) are installed in the 2° offset position. Refer to Figure 4–16. If necessary change the fly offset to the 2° position. Refer to “Changing The 10 ft, 31–55 ft Fly Offset Angle ” in this Section of this Operator's Manual for detailed instructions.
5. Position the boom above 50° boom angle. Extend the boom to at least 86 ft (26m) and lower the hook ball. to be used on the fly, to the ground. This will allow enough wire rope length to ease reeving of the fly.
6. Fully retract the boom to engage the fly lugs with the boom head machinery cross shafts on the right side of the boom. Fully lower the boom.



WARNING

To avoid personal injury, do not climb, stand, or walk on the boom or fly. Use a ladder or similar device as required to reach necessary areas.

7. Remove two fly connecting pins from the storage rings (13) on the rear of the fly base section. Install them through the fly base pivot lugs (19) on the right side of the boom. Refer to Figure 4–17. (Install the pins with the head on top and the keeper on the bottom.) Install the pin keepers.
8. Remove the connecting pin and keeper from the left top fly tip connecting lug (1) on the left side of the fly tip section. Refer to Figure 4–17. Ensure two connecting pins are installed through the fly tip pivot lugs (3). (Install the pins with the head on top and the keeper on the bottom.) Install the pin keepers.
9. Remove the winch wire rope from the boom head machinery or the auxiliary lifting sheave, whichever is to be used on the fly, and lay it aside to prevent damage to it during erection of the fly.
10. Check that the hitch pin (1) is installed through the lugs on the fly tip and fly center sections. Refer to Figure 4–19.

Note: Check that all four pins connecting the base section to the center section (two connecting pins and two connecting hitch pins) are installed and secured.



WARNING

Check that the fly base and tip connecting pins are installed in the pivot holes before disconnecting the fly from the storage brackets. Also check that the hitch pin is installed through the lugs on the fly tip and base sections. The fly could fall causing crane damage and/or personal injury.

11. Pull the retaining pin (3) to disengage the pin from the bullet lug on the 10 ft fly base storage bracket. Refer to Figure 4–18. Rotate and release the retaining pin to lock it in the disengaged position (2).
12. Pull the retaining pin (4) to disengage the pin from the square lug on the fly center storage bracket. Refer to Figure 4–19. Rotate and release the retaining pin to lock it in the disengaged position (5).
13. Attach a hand line to the tip of the fly center section.
14. Fully retract the boom and boom up to 20°. Using the boom override switch, slowly extend the inner boom section approximately 2–2.5 ft (0.61–0.76m) to slide the fly tip, fly center, and fly base off the storage brackets.

CAUTION

Do not extend boom more than 2.5 ft (0.46m). Damage to the fly and/or boom may occur.

15. Slowly boom down to allow the fly to swing slightly out from the storage brackets and then fully retract the boom.

CAUTION

Fully retract the boom before swinging the fly. Failure to do so could cause fly and/or boom damage.



WARNING

Use a hand line to control fly swing. The fly could swing rapidly. Keep all personnel clear of swing path to avoid personal injury.

16. Continue to lower the boom to 0° angle. Use the hand line attached to the fly center section to swing the fly base, center, and tip around the boom head until the fly base lugs engage with the boom head machinery cross shafts on the left side of the boom. Refer to Figure 4–8.
17. Remove the two connecting pins from the storage rings (13) on the rear of the fly base section and install them in the boom head machinery cross shafts (24) on the right side of the boom. Refer to Right Side Fly Base Connecting Pin Label, Figure 4–10 and Figure 4–17. Install the inside top right pin first. Swing the fly base to the left or right to get the pin to drop in the hole. Install the inside bottom right pin. Swing the fly base to the right or left to get the pin to drop in the hole. (Install the pins with the head on top and the keeper on the bottom.) Install the pin keepers.
18. Remove the two fly connecting pins from the storage location (25) on the boom head machinery cross shafts on the left side of the boom. Refer to Left Side Fly Base Connecting Pin Label, Figure 4–11 and Figure 4–17. Install one pin through the top fly lug (22) on the left side of the boom. Turn the t-handle to push and align the bottom left fly lug and the bottom boom head machinery cross shaft. Install the bottom left fly connecting pin. (Install the pins with the head on top and the keeper on the bottom.) Install the pin keepers. Back off the t-handle until at least a 1/2 in (1.3cm) clearance from the fly lug is obtained.



WARNING

All six fly base connecting pins must be properly installed before operating the crane with the fly base erected. Damage to the fly and/or personal injury could occur if all connecting pins are not properly installed.

19. Remove the hand line from the tip of the fly center section and attach it to the tip of the fly tip section. Remove the hitch pin which connects the fly tip section to the fly center section. Refer to Figure 4–19. Store the hitch pin back in the lug on the fly tip section once it is erected.
20. Ensure the boom is fully retracted and at 0° angle.

CAUTION

Fully retract the boom before swinging the fly. Failure to do so could cause fly and/or boom damage.



WARNING

Use a hand line to control fly swing. The fly could swing rapidly. Keep all personnel clear of swing path to avoid personal injury.

21. Use the hand line attached to the fly tip section and slowly swing the fly tip section around the fly center section until the fly tip lugs engage with the fly center lugs on the left side of the fly center section.
22. Remove the fly tip connecting pins from the storage holes on the rear of the fly tip section. Install them through the fly tip connecting lugs on the left side of the fly. Install the inside top left pin first. Swing the fly tip to the left or right to get the pin to drop in the hole. Install the inside bottom left pin. Swing the fly tip to the right or left to get the pin to drop in the hole. (Install the pins with the head on top and the keeper on the bottom.) Install the pin keepers.



WARNING

All four fly tip connecting pins must be properly installed before operating the crane with the fly tip erected. Serious personal injury or damage to the fly and/or boom could occur if all connecting pins are not properly installed.

Operator's Manual

23. Remove the wire rope guards from the fly base deflector sheave, fly center deflector sheave, and fly tip head sheaves. Refer to Figure 4–15. Reeve the winch wire rope on the boom deflector sheave then over the fly base and fly center deflector sheaves, and fly tip head sheave. Install all wire rope guards.

CAUTION

All wire rope guards must be in proper position during operation.

24. Properly change the anti-two block system connections as follows:
- Disconnect the plug assembly from the jumper assembly on main boom head and connect it to the fly base section. Refer to Figure 4–3. Ensure all the necessary anti-two block harness connections are made.
 - Install the anti-two block weight on the appropriate fly section.

- Properly install lockout clip on main boom head anti-two block switch cable.

Note: When the lockout clip is installed, the anti-two block switch is inactive.

When both main boom and fly are reeved for operation, the lockout clip must be removed and properly stored and an anti-two block weight must be suspended from each anti-two block switch.

- Remove and store the hand line from the tip of the fly tip section.
- Properly set the Rated Capacity Limiter to the correct crane configuration. Refer to Section 1 of this Operator's Manual.
- Check the Crane Rating Manual for lifting capacities with the fly installed before continuing operations.



WARNING

The fly adds weight to the boom which must be considered in lifting capacities when the fly is erected. When making lifts from the boom or auxiliary lifting sheave with the fly erected, refer to the Crane Rating Manual for the appropriate deductions from lifting capacities. Use the offset lattice fly only when the crane is level on fully or intermediate extended outriggers with all tires clear of the ground.

10 ft Offset Fly Base Panel Lifting

The 10 ft offset fly base can be used for pre-cast panel lifting applications, as well as general lifting applications. During the panel lifting applications, a single load is allowed on both the main boom and 10 ft offset fly base hoist lines at the same time provided that all panel lifting guidelines are adhered to.

Before making any lifts with the 10 ft offset fly base, refer to the Crane Rating Manual to ensure the load is within the rated capacity for the 10 ft offset fly base.

The 10 ft offset fly base adds weight to the boom which must be considered in the lifting capacities. When making lifts from the main boom hoist line with the 10 ft offset fly base installed, refer to the Crane Rating Manual for the appropriate deductions from lifting capacities.



WARNING

Do not simultaneously lift separate loads with the 10 ft offset fly base and the main boom. Lifting two loads at the same time may cause boom failure leading to major equipment damage and/or serious personal injury.

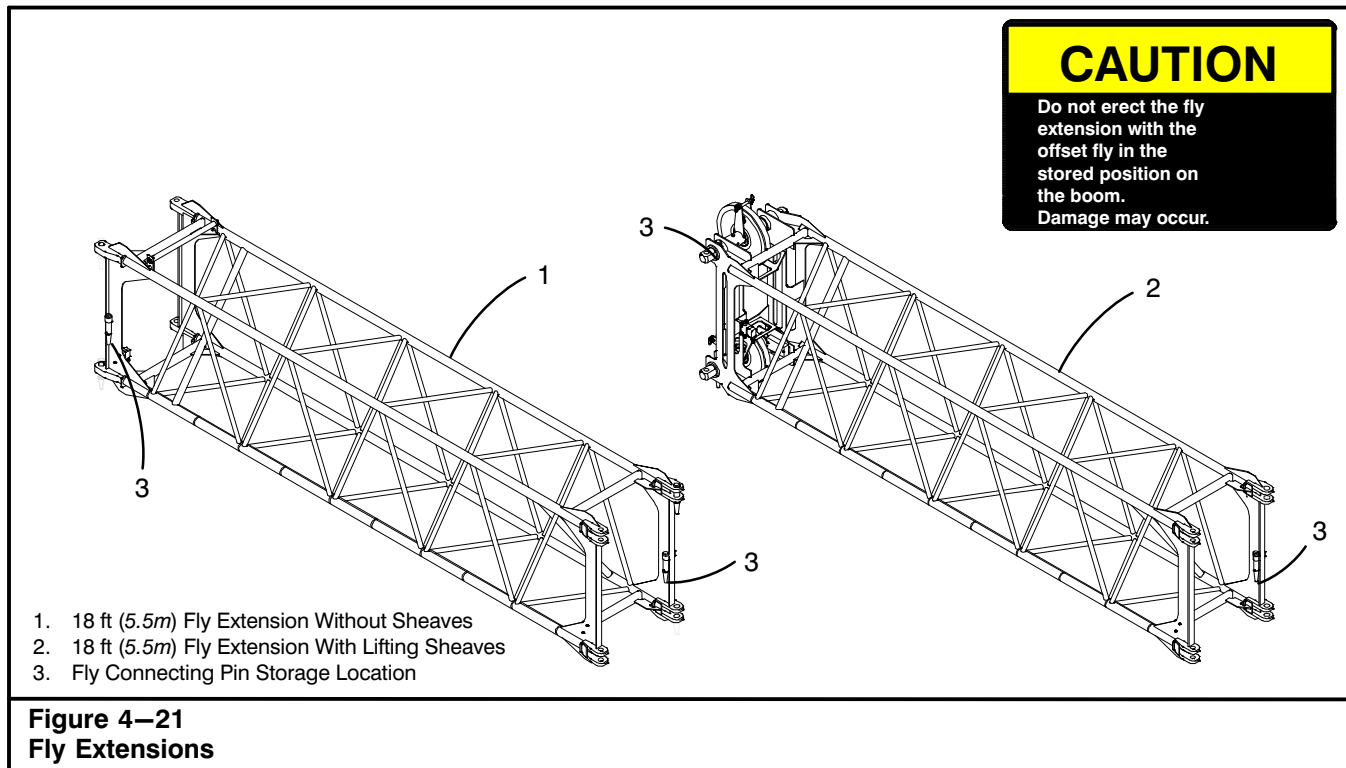
In the panel lifting application, if both the main boom and 10 ft offset fly base hooks are attached to a single panel, this is considered one load.

Panel Lifting Guidelines

Certain guidelines must be followed when using 10 ft offset fly base in panel lifting applications. The following are the guidelines that must be followed unless otherwise stated in the Crane Operator's or Crane Rating Manual:

1. A single panel with two hooks (main boom and 10 ft offset fly base hooks) attached is considered one load for this application.
2. Follow all 10 ft offset fly base notes for General Operation listed in the Crane Rating Manual.
3. The Rated Capacity Limiter (RCL) and anti-two block (ATB) systems shall remain fully functional at all times. Select the 10 ft offset fly base as the hook being used. The RCL will display approximately the total load lifted (the sum of the two lines) and will also display the 10 ft offset fly base load radius and rated capacity.
4. The total load on both hooks (the sum of the two lines), including hook blocks, hook balls, slings, and rigging, etc. must not exceed the allowable lifting capacity of the main boom or the 10 ft offset fly base, whichever is less. (The main boom capacity in this condition will be the main boom rated load less the deduct for "10 ft offset fly base erected but not used" to account for the 10 ft offset fly base and its load handling equipment.)
5. Lifting and placement of panels with two hooks is more complex than typical lift crane service. The crane operator and rigging personnel shall be experienced with and qualified for two hook panel lifting and placement applications.
6. Load shift while lifting with two hooks may be more unpredictable than typical single hook lift work. Extra precautions must be taken to avoid accidents. A qualified person on the ground shall be designated as the primary signal person.
7. When rigging two hooks on a panel, each hook or rigging device shall be capable of handling the entire weight of the panel being lifted.
8. Both load lines must remain in the vertical plane of the crane boom (no side load). The panel being lifted must also be in the same vertical plane as the crane boom.
9. The off-lead angle of the wire rope from true vertical must be minimized when initially lifting a panel with two hooks. The head height of the boom shall be a minimum of three times the horizontal distance between the two hook points on the panel being lifted.

Operator's Manual



Fly Extensions

If the crane is equipped with an offset lattice fly, up to two extensions are available to extend the overall fly length from 55 ft (16.7m) to 73 ft (22.2m) or 91 ft (27.7m). These extensions pin between the boom head and fly base section. The fly base section must be removed from the crane before adding or removing the fly extension(s). Refer to Figure 4-21.

CAUTION

Do not erect the fly extension(s) with the offset fly in the stored position on the boom. Major boom/fly damage may occur.



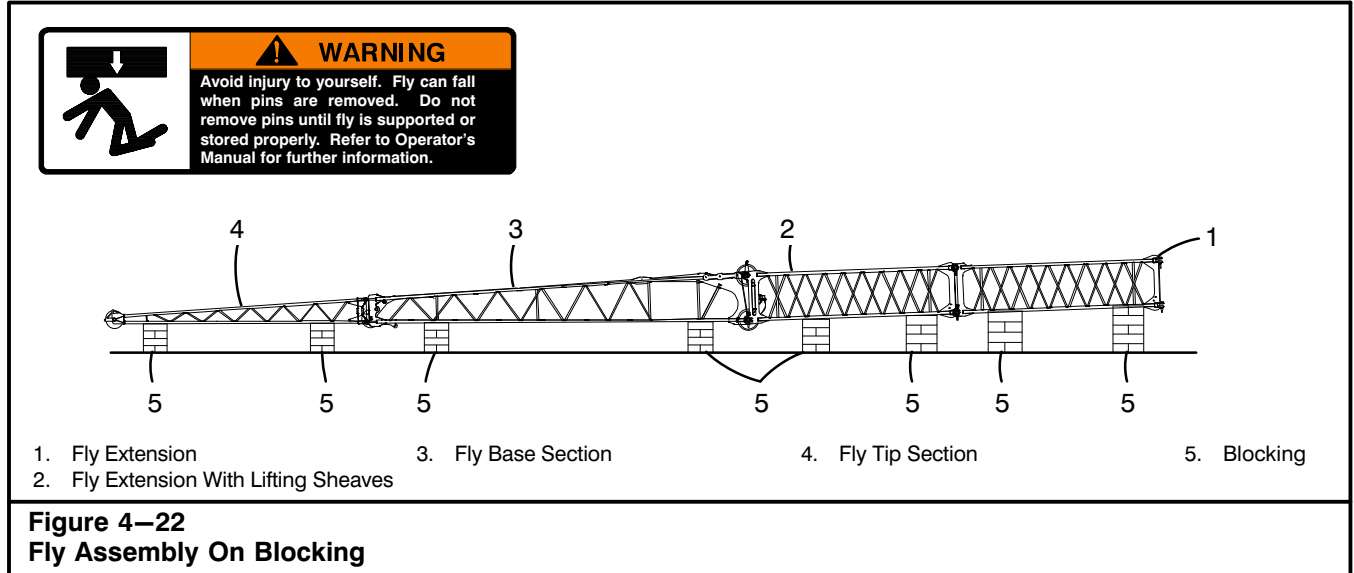
DANGER

To avoid serious injury, carefully read and understand all safety instructions outlined in this Operator's Manual. Failure to follow these instructions could result in serious personal injury or death.

Safety Instructions

The following points must be observed while performing any fly assembly or disassembly:

1. Read and understand the instructions outlined in this Operator's Manual before attempting to assemble or disassemble the fly.
2. Do not stand inside, on top, or under the fly at any time while assembling or disassembling the fly.
3. To avoid personal injury, do not climb, stand, or walk on the fly. Use a ladder or similar device to reach necessary areas.
4. Use care handling the fly or fly extension(s) when loading, transporting, and unloading. Damage that occurs during these operations can go undetected and could result in failure of the attachment, once subjected to loading. Do not attach slings to the lattices, when lifting the fly or fly extensions, as they will bend. It is recommended that the connecting lugs and/or head machinery cross shaft be used as the lifting points. However, it is permissible to attach nylon straps around all four main chords.
5. Each individual fly section must be adequately supported before attempting to disassemble the fly. Removing the connecting pins from the fly before it is supported, may allow the fly to fall.
6. Stay clear of pinch points when aligning fly section connecting points. Never place your fingers in connecting pin holes.
7. Fully assemble the fly before installing it on the boom.

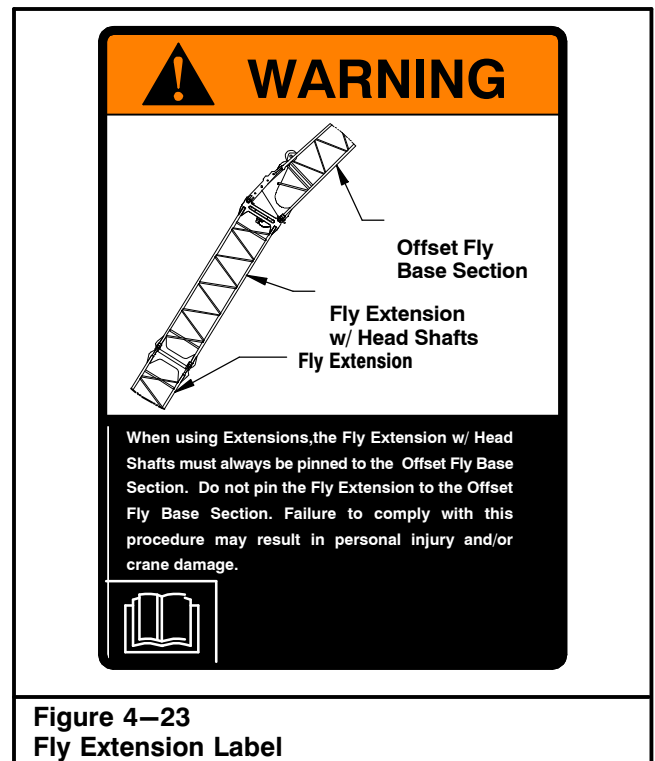


18 ft (5.5m) Fly Extension Without Sheaves

The 18 ft (5.5m) fly extension without sheaves must be pinned between the boom head and the 18 ft (5.5m) fly extension with lifting sheaves to obtain a 91 ft (27.7m) fly. A deflector roller is located on top of the fly extension. The fly extension without sheaves weighs approximately 973 lb (441kg). Refer to Figure 4-21 and Figure 4-24.

18 ft (5.5m) Fly Extension With Lifting Sheave

The 18 ft (5.5m) fly extension with lifting sheaves must be pinned between the boom head and the 31 ft (9.4m) offset fly to obtain a 73 ft (22.2m) fly or between the 18 ft (5.5m) fly extension without sheaves and the 31 ft (9.4m) offset fly to obtain 91 ft (27.7m) fly. The 18 ft (5.5m) fly extension with lifting sheaves can also be used alone when pinned to the boom head. The 18 ft (5.5m) fly extension with lifting sheaves weighs approximately 1,324 lb (600.6kg). Refer to Figure 4-21 and Figure 4-24.



Operator's Manual

FLY ARRANGEMENTS								
Fly		Components Required					Figure #	Detail
		10' Fly Base	21' Fly Center	31' Fly Base	24' Fly Tip	18' Fly Ext W/Lift Sheave		
31–55' Fly	31'			●			Figure 4–24	A
	55'			●	●		Figure 4–24	B
	73'			●	●	●	Figure 4–24	C
	91'			●	●	●	●	Figure 4–24
10', 31–55' Fly	10'	●					Figure 4–25	F
	31'	●	●				Figure 4–25	G
	55'	●	●		●		Figure 4–25	H
	73'	●	●		●	●	Figure 4–25	I
	91'	●	●		●	●	●	Figure 4–25
Extension Only	18' w/Lift Sheave					●	Figure 4–26	K

Adding Fly Extension(s)

The fly base section must be removed from the crane before adding or removing fly extension(s). Remove the fly base and/or tip sections and place adequate blocking under each end of the section(s) before removing any connecting pin. Refer to the instructions in this Section of this Operator's Manual for proper removal and installation procedures.

Note: Before installing the 18 ft (5.5m) fly extension(s), change the boom mode to Standard.

CAUTION

Do not erect the fly extension(s) with the offset fly in the stored position on the boom. Major boom/fly damage may occur.



WARNING

Properly remove the fly sections and extensions from the crane before attempting to modify the length. Do not place any part of your body under the fly when it is being assembled or disassembled. Removing any connecting pins from the fly before it is properly supported may allow the fly to jackknife and injure someone. Adequately support each end of each section before attempting to lengthen or shorten the fly.

1. Erect the fly. Refer to the correct procedure in this Section of this Operator's Manual.

Operator's Manual



WARNING

Properly remove the fly sections and extensions from the crane before attempting to modify the length. Do not place any part of your body under the fly when it is being assembled or disassembled. Removing any connecting pins from the fly before it is properly supported may allow the fly to jackknife and injure someone. Adequately support each end of each section before attempting to lengthen or shorten the fly.

2. Check that the offset connecting pins (2) are installed in the 2° offset position. Refer to Figure 4–16. If necessary change the fly offset to the 2° position. Refer to “Changing The 10 ft, 31–55 ft Fly Offset Angle ” in this Section of this Operator's Manual for detailed instructions.
3. Extend the boom to a length that is greater than the length of extension(s) to be added.
4. Set the fly on secure blocking. Remove the fly connecting pins from the boom head.
5. Retract the boom away from fly.
6. Position blocking and assemble the fly extension(s) to the fly base section or boom head. Install all the connecting pins. Install the pins with the head on top and the keeper on the bottom. Install the pin keepers. When installing the fly base section to the 18 ft (5.5m) fly extension with lifting sheave, remove fly extension connecting pins from the top and bottom extension head machinery cross shafts and install them in the fly base lugs on the left side of the fly extension. When not using the fly base section, return the left side connecting pins to the 18 ft (5.5m) fly extension with lifting sheave top and bottom head machinery cross shafts to prevent shafts from turning.

7. Extend the boom into the extension lugs. Install all four connecting pins through the front fly base lugs. Install the pins with the head on top and the keeper on the bottom. Install the pin keepers.

Removing Fly Extension(s)



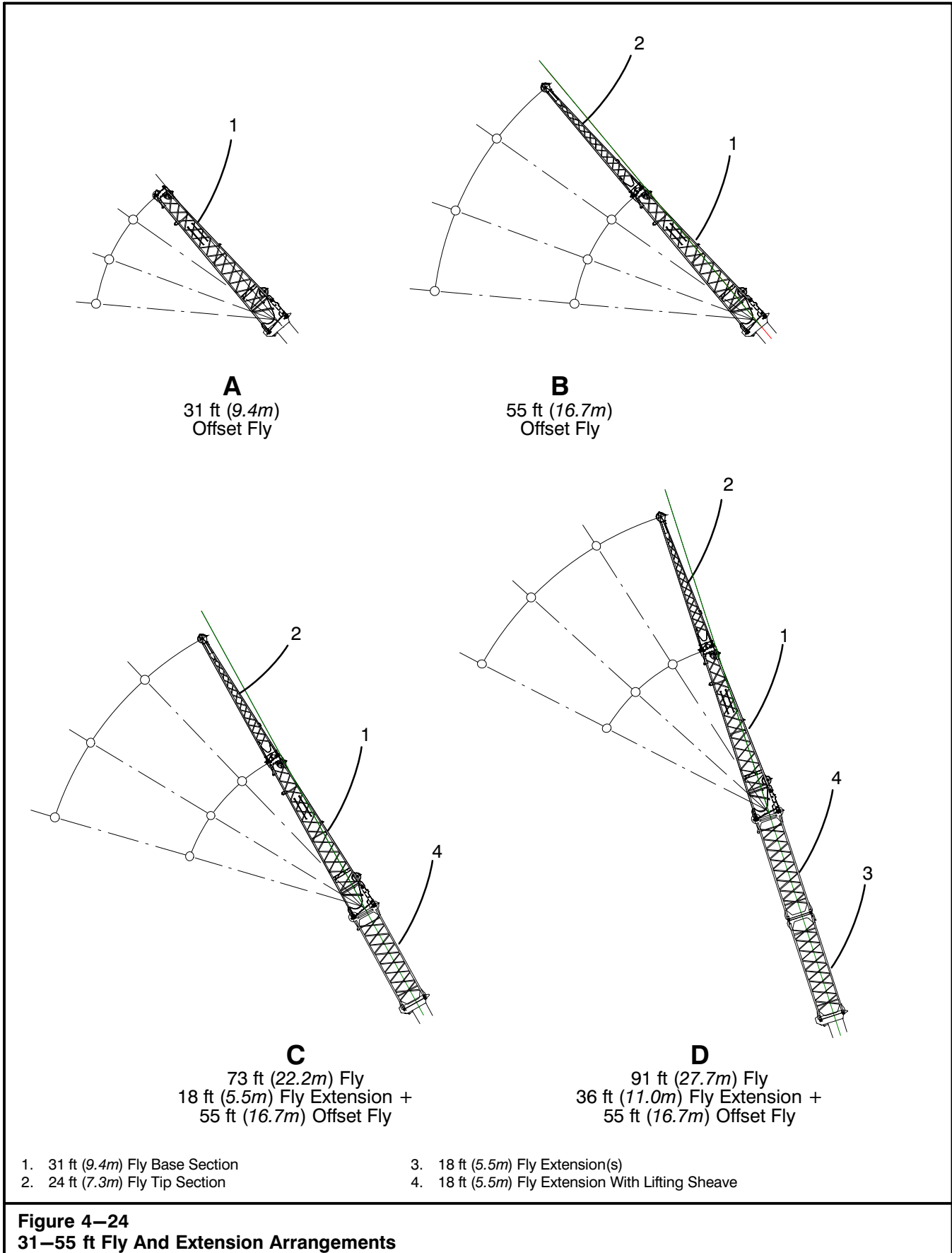
WARNING

Properly remove the fly sections and extensions from the crane before attempting to modify the length. Do not place any part of your body under the fly when it is being assembled or disassembled. Removing any connecting pins from the fly before it is properly supported may allow the fly to jackknife and injure someone. Adequately support each end of each section before attempting to lengthen or shorten the fly.

1. Extend the boom and lower the fly and extension(s) onto secure blocking. Remove the extension(s) connecting pins and disassemble the fly sections.
2. Re-pin the desired fly sections. Install the pins with the head on top and the keeper on the bottom. Install the pin keepers.
3. Slowly raise or lower the boom to engage the fly lugs.
4. Install all connecting pins through the boom head machinery cross shafts. Install the pins with the head on top and the keeper on the bottom. Install the pin keepers.

Note: If removing all fly extensions and fly sections, install the top and bottom left side fly extension/fly base connecting pins in the storage position on the boom head machinery cross shafts to prevent shafts from turning.

Operator's Manual



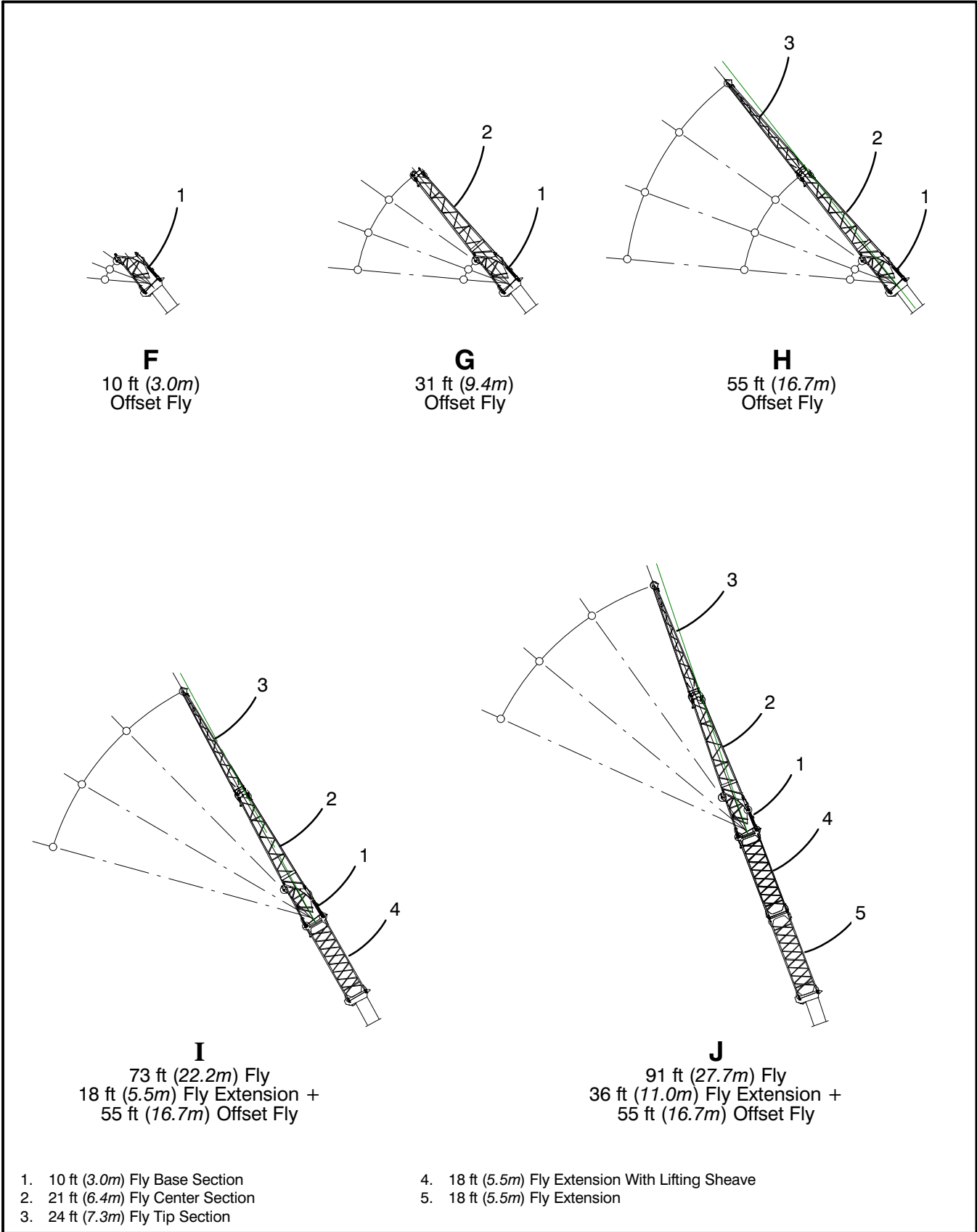


Figure 4-25
10 ft, 31-55 ft Fly And Extension Arrangements

Operator's Manual



K
18 ft (5.5m) Fly Extension With Lifting Sheaves

1. 18 ft (5.5m) Fly Extension With Lifting Sheaves

Figure 4–26
Fly Extension Arrangements

Operator's Manual

Table Of Contents

Crane Rating Manual And Serial Number	5-1
Wire Rope Capacity Chart	5-1
Wire Rope Specifications	5-1
Wire Rope Diameter	5-1
Wire Rope Inspection And Replacement Recommendations	5-3
Wire Rope Inspection	5-4
Wire Rope Replacement	5-4
Wire Rope Installation	5-4
Winch Roller Adjustment	5-5
Uncoiling Wire Rope	5-6
Anchoring Wire Rope To Drum	5-6
Winding Wire Rope On Drum	5-7
Wire Rope Reeving	5-7
Sockets And Wedges	5-8
Socket And Wedge – Without Extended Wedge	5-9
Socket And Wedge Assembly – With Extended Wedge	5-11
Wire Rope Break-In	5-12
Single Part Line Hoisting	5-13
Rotation Resistant Wire Rope	5-14
Rotation Resistant Wire Rope Inspection	5-14
Hook Ball Usage With Rotation Resistant Wire Rope	5-15
Non-Swivel Usage	5-15
Swivel Usage	5-15
Wire Rope Sockets With Clips	5-15
Wire Rope Clip Installation	5-16
Cutting Wire Rope	5-16
Event Data Recording	5-20
Event Data Recorder	5-20
Data And Recording Privacy	5-20
Crane Specifications	5-21
Boom, Attachments, and Upper Structure	5-21
Boom	5-21

Operator's Manual

Operator's Cab and Controls	5-21
Swing	5-23
Electrical	5-23
Load Hoist System	5-24
Engine	5-24
Drive System	5-25
Fuel Tank	5-25
Hydraulic System	5-25
Pump Drive	5-25
Counterweight	5-25
Carrier	5-25
General	5-25
Outriggers	5-26
Steering and Wheel Drive Motors	5-26
Suspension	5-26
Tires and Wheels	5-26
Brakes	5-26
Electrical	5-26
Carrier Speeds and Gradeability	5-26
Hydraulic System	5-26
Axle Loads – Imperial	5-27
Axle Loads – Metric	5-28
Transport Configuration and Weights	5-29
General Dimensions	5-29

Operator's Manual

Crane Rating Manual And Serial Number

The Crane Rating Manual is located in the lower right interior of the operator's cab. The Crane Rating Manual has the crane serial number on it. The serial number is also stamped on the top right side of the carrier frame and on the right side of the upper frame just below the boom hoist cylinder lug. The serial number must be used with any correspondence with the factory concerning parts or warranty. The Crane Rating Manual also lists the maximum allowable lifting capacities for the crane. The Crane Rating Manual should be checked for the proper lifting capacities before making any lifts.

If the Crane Rating Manual becomes lost, damaged, or unreadable, it must be replaced before operating the crane. Information contained in the Crane Rating Manual is important and failure to follow the information it contains could result in an accident. A replacement Crane Rating Manual can be ordered through your Link-Belt Distributor.



WARNING

The Crane Rating Manual in the crane is the only authorized listing of lifting capacities for the crane. It supercedes any other printed literature which lists lifting capacities. It alone is to be used for determining crane capacities.

Wire Rope Capacity Chart

The Wire Rope Capacity chart gives the maximum lifting capacities based on wire rope strength. A typical example is shown in Figure 5-1. The actual chart is in the Crane Rating Manual. It lists the maximum load that should be lifted with different sizes and types of wire rope. The weights shown are based on wire rope strength alone. Exceeding these load weights may result in wire rope damage or failure.

Before making a lift, compare the weight being lifted (remember to add the weight of the hook block, hook ball, slings, and riggings to the actual load weight) with the Wire Rope Capacity chart in the Crane Rating Manual. Check the chart for the number of parts of line required to make the lift. Use at least that number of parts of line to make the lift. When making a lift with more parts of line than is needed to make the lift, remember to add the weight of the extra wire rope required to reeve the extra parts of line, to the actual load weight. The extra parts of line act as additional load weight. Refer to the Wire Rope Capacity chart in the Crane Rating Manual for the weight of the wire rope.



WARNING

Do not exceed the capacities listed for wire rope strength or crane capacity, whichever is less, when making a lift. Serious personal injury or major crane damage may result.

Wire Rope Specifications

The specifications for the wire rope used on this crane are on the Wire Rope Capacity chart in the Crane Rating Manual. Refer to Figure 5-1 for a typical example. Always refer to the Wire Rope Capacity chart in the Crane Rating Manual when ordering replacement wire rope.

Wire Rope Diameter

In standard practice, the nominal diameter of wire rope is the minimum acceptable diameter. It is always made larger, not smaller, than the nominal diameter according to the allowable tolerances shown in the following chart:

Nominal Wire Rope Diameter	Allowable Limits	
Thru 1/8" (3.2mm)	-0	+8%
Over 1/8" (3.2mm) thru 3/16" (4.8mm)	-0	+7%
Over 3/16" (4.8mm) thru 5/16" (8.0mm)	-0	+6%
Over 5/16" (8.0mm) and larger	-0	+5%

Wear and stress tend to reduce the diameter. It should be measured periodically and replaced if the size is below the nominal size of the wire rope being used as shown in the chart on page 5-4. It should always be measured across the largest diameter that will fit inside a true circle. Refer to Figure 5-2.

Operator's Manual

Maximum Lifting Capacities Based on Wire Rope Strength				
Parts of Line	7/8"	7/8"	7/8"	Winch Line Pull Fifth Layer
	Type CC	Type ZB	Type YB	
1	22,880	20,920	21,920	18,108
2	45,760	41,840	43,840	36,216
3	68,640	62,760	65,760	54,324
4	91,520	83,680	87,680	72,432
5	114,400	104,600	109,600	90,540
6	137,280	125,520	131,520	108,648
7	160,160	146,440	153,440	126,756
8	183,040	167,360	175,360	144,864
9	205,920	188,280	197,280	162,972
10	228,800	209,200	219,200	181,080
11	251,680	230,120	241,120	199,188
12	274,560	251,040	263,040	217,296
13	297,440	271,960	284,960	235,404
14	320,320	292,880	306,880	253,512
15	343,200	313,800	328,800	271,620
Rope Weight (lb/ft)	1.6	1.5	1.7	
Link-Belt Type	Description			
CC	35 X 7, Category 1, E.E.I.P.S., Right Lang Lay			
ZB	35 X 7, Category 1, E.E.I.P.S., Right Lang Lay			
YB	34 X 7 (6/1) Category 1, E.E.I.P.S., Right Lang Lay			

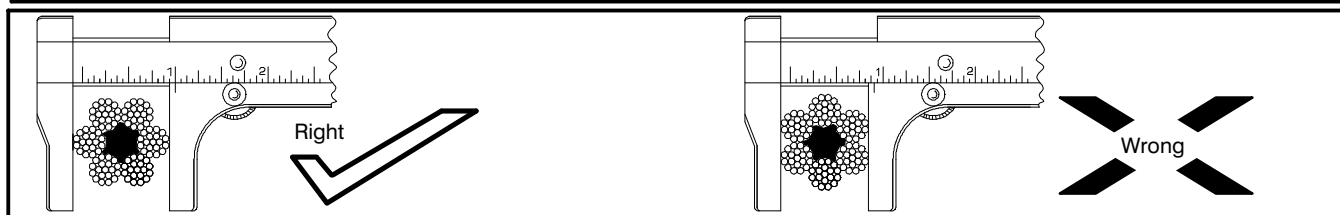
Notes:

1. Capacities shown are in pounds and working loads must not exceed the ratings on the capacity charts in this Crane Rating Manual.
2. Capacity deducts for auxiliary lifting devices do not apply for wire rope strength capacities.
3. Special reeving, using the auxiliary sheave, is required when using more than 12 parts of line. Special equipment is required for greater than 14 parts of line.
4. Consult Operator's Manual for wire rope inspection procedures, single part of line applications, and reeving diagrams.
5. If the wire rope single line pull is greater than the fifth layer winch line pull, the winch could stall when lifting rated loads. It is recommended that the fifth layer winch line pull be used to calculate the required parts of line to make lifts.

Note: The Wire Rope Capacity chart depicted above is shown as an example only. Use the official Wire Rope Capacity chart in the Crane Rating Manual. Use it to determine the correct parts of line required for the given wire rope type and diameter.

Note: Always refer to the crane's Parts Manual when ordering wire rope.

**Figure 5-1
Typical Wire Rope Capacity Chart (Example Only)**



**Figure 5-2
Measuring Wire Rope Diameter**

WIRE ROPE INSPECTION REPORT

Crane S/N _____ Owned By _____ Crane Location _____

Date of Inspection _____ Rope Application _____ Rope Description _____

Manufacturer's Ident. No. _____ Applicable Standards _____

Criteria for Removal	1										
Location on Rope	Measured Diameter	Broken Wires		Excessive Wear	End Attachments			Rope Damage	Sheave Condition	Drum Condition	Rope Lay Measurement
		In 1 Rope Lay	In 1 strand of 1 Lay		Broken Wires	Corrosion of Rope	Fitting Condition				

Signature: _____

Figure 5—3
Typical Wire Rope Inspection Report

Wire Rope Inspection And Replacement Recommendations

The three basic reasons for deterioration of wire rope are abrasion, corrosion, and damage caused by fatigue bending, crushing, kinking, and forces or abuse acting against the wire rope during normal usage.

When wire rope is replaced, use the type specified on the Wire Rope Capacity chart in the Crane Rating Manual. Cranes are designed to use a specific type and size of wire rope. Using wire ropes other than those recommended, may result in short life or even failure of the wire rope.

According to ASME standards, all wire ropes in active service **MUST BE** visually inspected daily. A qualified, trained person should be appointed to conduct the inspection. Also on a monthly basis, that person is required to inspect all wire ropes and keep a dated, written record noting any damage and recording when wire ropes are replaced.

These inspections should be done to determine the degree of deterioration of the wire rope at any given section (refer to the following on wire rope replacement). This will determine the suitability of the wire rope for continued service. A sample inspection report is shown in Figure 5—3. (It can be reproduced and used if desired.)

Operator's Manual

Wire Rope Inspection

Any of the following are reasons to question wire rope safety:

1. More than one broken wire in any one strand should be cause for caution. Breaks that occur on the worn crowns of the outside wires usually indicate normal deterioration. Breaks that occur in the valleys between strands can indicate an abnormal condition, possibly fatigue and breakage of other wires that are not readily visible. One or more valley breaks should be cause for replacement.
2. Wire breaks generally occur in those portions of wire rope which pass over sheaves, wind onto drums, or receive mechanical abuse. Breaks that occur near attached fittings are likely to result from fatiguing stresses concentrated in these localized sections. Breaks of the latter type should be cause for replacement of the wire rope or renewal of the attachment to eliminate the locally fatigued area. When running wire ropes over nylon sheaves, inspect the wire rope where it travels over the sheaves. Inspect for a loss of diameter and then bend the wire rope to inspect the internal wires for breaks and wear.
3. Heavy wear, or broken wires, may occur in sections under equalizer sheaves or other sheaves where wire rope travel is limited, or in contact with saddles. Particular care should be taken to inspect wire rope at these points. If wire rope wear is detected at these locations, these wear points can be shifted by removing the wire rope from the drum and cutting a 20 ft (6.1m) section off at the drum end. This may assist in extending the wire rope life.
4. Wire rope stretch is generally greatest during initial stages of operation when the strands are becoming adjusted and seated. This is accompanied by some reduction in wire rope diameter.
5. Time for wire rope replacement is indicated by the extent of abrasion, scrubbing, and peening on the outside wires, broken wires, evidence of pitting or severe corrosion, kink damage, or other mechanical abuse resulting in distortion of the wire rope structure.
6. Sheaves, guards, guides, drums, flanges, and other surfaces contacted by wire rope during operation should be examined at the time of inspections. Any condition harmful to the wire rope in use at the time should be corrected. The same equipment and particularly sheave and drum grooves should be inspected and placed in proper condition before a new wire rope is installed.

Wire Rope Replacement

Any of the following are reasons for wire rope replacement:

1. In running wire ropes, six randomly distributed broken wires in one wire rope lay, or three broken wires in one strand in one wire rope lay.

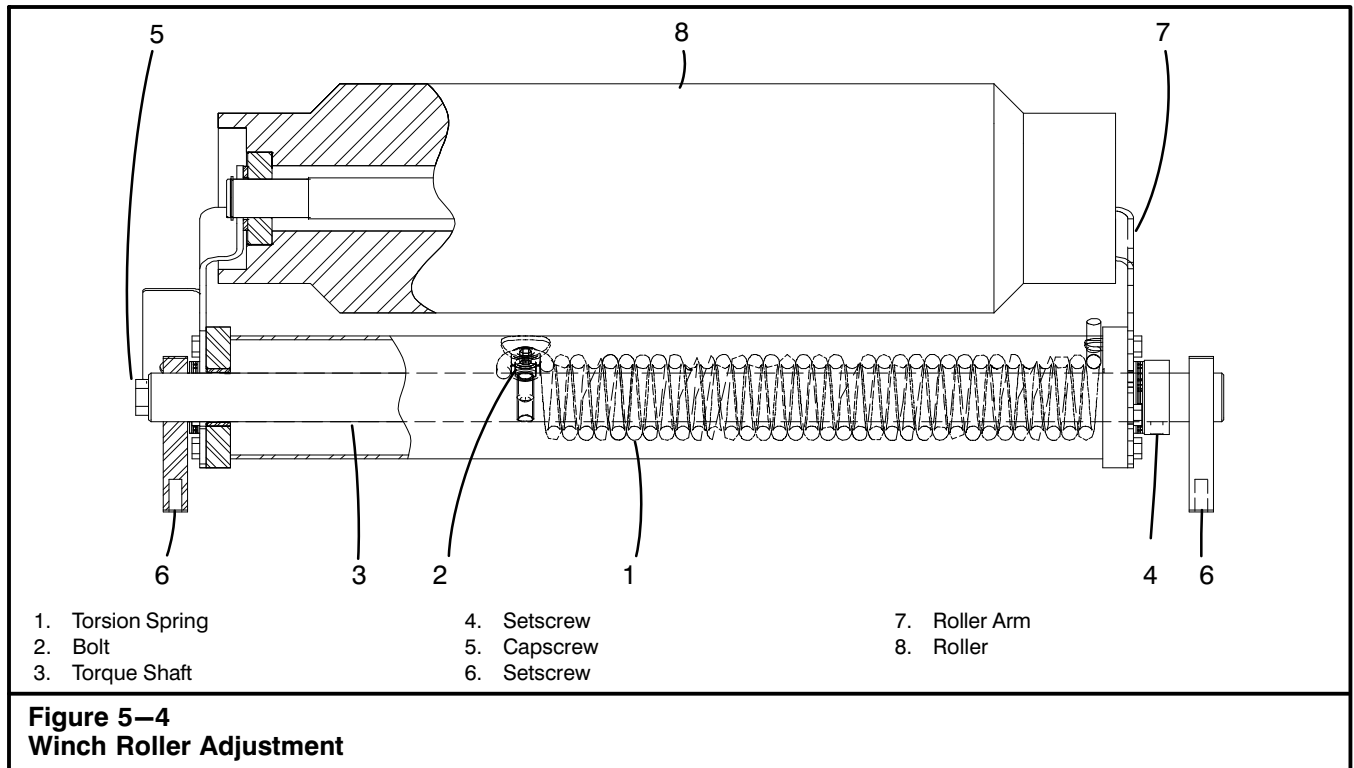
For rotation resistant wire ropes, two randomly distributed broken wires in six wire rope diameters, or four randomly distributed broken wires in thirty wire rope diameters.
2. In pendants or standing wire ropes, evidence of more than two broken wires in one lay in sections beyond end connections or more than one broken wire in one wire rope lay at end connection.
3. One outer wire broken at the contact point with the core of the wire rope which has worked its way out of the wire rope structure and protrudes or loops out from the wire rope structure.
4. Abrasion, scrubbing, or peening causing loss of more than 1/3 the original diameter of individual wires.
5. Evidence of wire rope deterioration from corrosion.
6. Kinking, crushing, "bird caging", or other damage resulting in distortion of the wire rope structure.
7. Evidence of any heat damage.
8. Marked reduction in diameter indicates deterioration of the core resulting in lack of proper support for the load carrying strands. Excessive wire rope stretch or elongation may also be an indication of internal deterioration. Reduction from nominal diameter or more than:

Reduction of	Nominal Wire Rope Diameters
1/64" (.4mm)	up to and including 5/16" (8mm)
1/32" (.79mm)	over 5/16" (9.5mm) to 1/2" (13mm)
3/64" (1.2mm)	over 1/2" (13 mm) to 3/4" (19mm)
1/16" (1.6mm)	over 3/4" (19mm) to 1-1/8" (29mm)
3/32" (2.4mm)	over 1-1/8" (29mm)

9. Noticeable rusting or development of broken wires in the area of connections.

Wire Rope Installation

When installing wire rope, the primary concern is getting the wire rope onto the drum without trapping any twist that may have been induced during handling. Use the following procedures to install the wire rope on the crane.



Winch Roller Adjustment

Before installing wire rope on the drum, adjust the drum roller. Refer to Figure 5-4.

1. Check that the roller is centered between the drum flanges. If not, loosen setscrews, center roller, and tighten setscrews.



WARNING

Do not attempt to service winch roller before properly relieving torsion spring tension. If proper directions are not followed, the torsion spring could rapidly and forcefully uncoil. This may result in serious personal injury and component damage. Always release tension on torsion spring before attempting any winch roller repair.

2. Properly release torsion spring tension as follows. This procedure is greatly simplified by using two service technicians. (One to hold the breaker bar/wrench, the other to loosen and tighten setscrews.)
 - a. Ensure capscrew is tightened securely in torque shaft.
 - b. Using a breaker bar or long handle wrench, hold tension on torsion spring while loosening the setscrews on both ends of torque shaft.

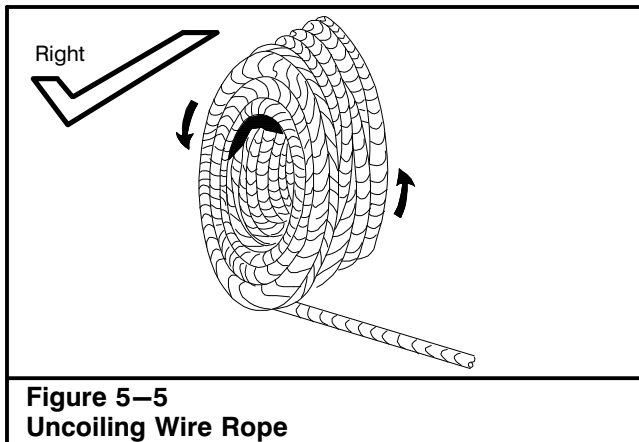
- c. Allow torque shaft to rotate counterclockwise, as far as possible while maintaining control of the torque shaft, then securely tighten setscrews.
 - d. Reposition breaker bar or wrench on capscrew.
 - e. Repeat Steps b through d until tension is fully relieved from torsion spring.
3. Turn the capscrew, which will rotate the torque shaft, until the bolt through the torque shaft contacts the torsion spring.

CAUTION

Do not overtighten the spring. Damage to the wire rope may occur.

4. With the roller arms resting against the stops and the bolt through the torque shaft just contacting the torsion spring, rotate the torque shaft one complete turn (360°) to preload the torsion spring. The torque required to turn the shaft 360° is approximately 105 ft lb (142Nm).
5. Tighten setscrews. The roller should roll freely when the drum rotates.

Operator's Manual

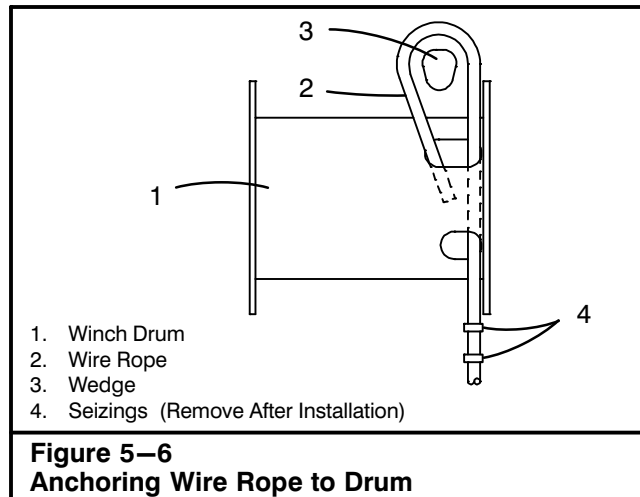


Uncoiling Wire Rope

1. To avoid twists, unreel the entire wire rope on the ground in line with the boom deflector sheave and drum. Set the reel up horizontally so it can rotate as the wire rope is reeled off. Refer to Figure 5-5. Reel the wire rope off slowly, so the reel won't tend to "throw" the wire rope off. If the new wire rope cannot be laid out on the ground, further steps are necessary:
 - a. Mount the reel on a shaft through flange holes and on jack stands, making sure the reel is set to be unreeled over the top. Do not allow the reel to "free-wheel". Brake the reel by applying pressure to a flange. Do not apply braking pressure to the wire rope on the reel or pass wire rope between blocks of wood or other material.
2. Reeve the wire rope over the boom deflector sheave and anchor it to the drum.

Note: When replacing wire rope, the sheaves and grooves in drums should be checked for wear or damage and replaced if necessary. Damaged, worn, or undersized sheaves will damage the wire rope. On older equipment, remember that new wire rope is usually larger in diameter than the worn wire rope it replaces. The sheave grooves may be worn to the smaller diameter of the old wire rope.

A new wire rope should be broken in by running it slowly through its working cycle for a short period under a light load. Refer to "Wire Rope Break-In" in this Section of this Operator's Manual.



Anchoring Wire Rope To Drum

CAUTION

The ends of type ZB wire rope must be fuse welded. Failure to do so may cause the core to slip and/or the strands to loosen causing major wire rope damage.

Attach two seizings (hose clamps are an effective and efficient alternative if traditional seizings are not available) about 24 inches (609.6mm) from the end with a 3 inch (76.2mm) space between them. Refer to Figure 5-6. The seizings will prevent any looseness of the outer strands from traveling up the wire rope during installation. Insert the free end of the wire rope into the small opening of the anchor pocket. Loop the wire rope and push the free end about 3/4 of the way back through the pocket. Install the wedge, then pull the slack out of the wire rope. Remove the seizings after the wire rope is secured in the drum. Keep tension on the wire rope to prevent the wire rope from becoming slack and forming loops or kinks and also to allow uniform winding on the drum. It is important that original wire rope lay is maintained at all times.

Winding Wire Rope On Drum

Proper winding of the first layer of wire rope on a multiple wrap drum is important. If the first layer is properly wound, succeeding layers will be easier to control.

This is especially important on ungrooved drums. When starting new wire rope on such drums, drive each wrap of the first layer lightly with a wooden mallet so each wrap barely contacts the preceding one. Keep tension on the wire rope to prevent the wire rope from becoming slack and forming loops or kinks and also to allow uniform winding on the drum. It is important that original wire rope lay is maintained at all times.

It's important to apply a tensioning load while spooling the wire rope on the drum. (If not, the lower layers may be loose enough that the upper layers become wedged into the lower layers under load, which can cause major damage the wire rope.) The tensioning load should range from 1 to 2% of the wire rope's nominal strength.

Wire Rope Reeving

Hook blocks should be reeved correctly so they hang straight and do not cause excessive wear on the wire rope and sheaves. Refer to Figure 5–7.



WARNING

To avoid personal injury, do not climb, stand, or walk on the boom or fly. Use a ladder or similar device to reach necessary areas when reeving the crane.

Only if certain criteria are met, a swivel hook ball may be used with rotation resistant wire rope. Refer to "Hook Ball Usage With Rotation Resistant Wire Rope" in this Operator's Manual.

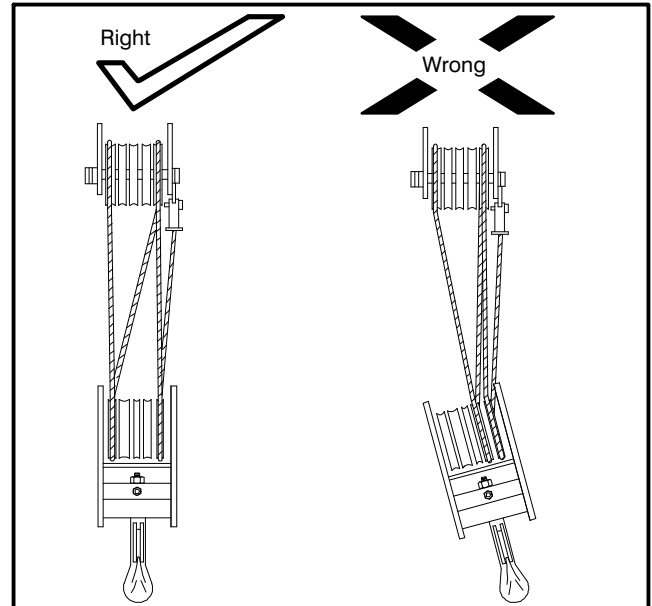


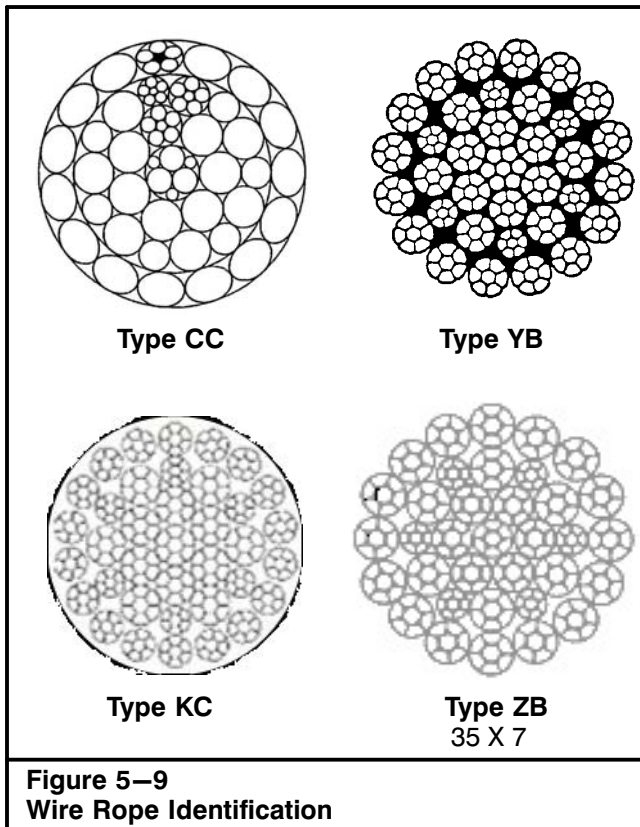
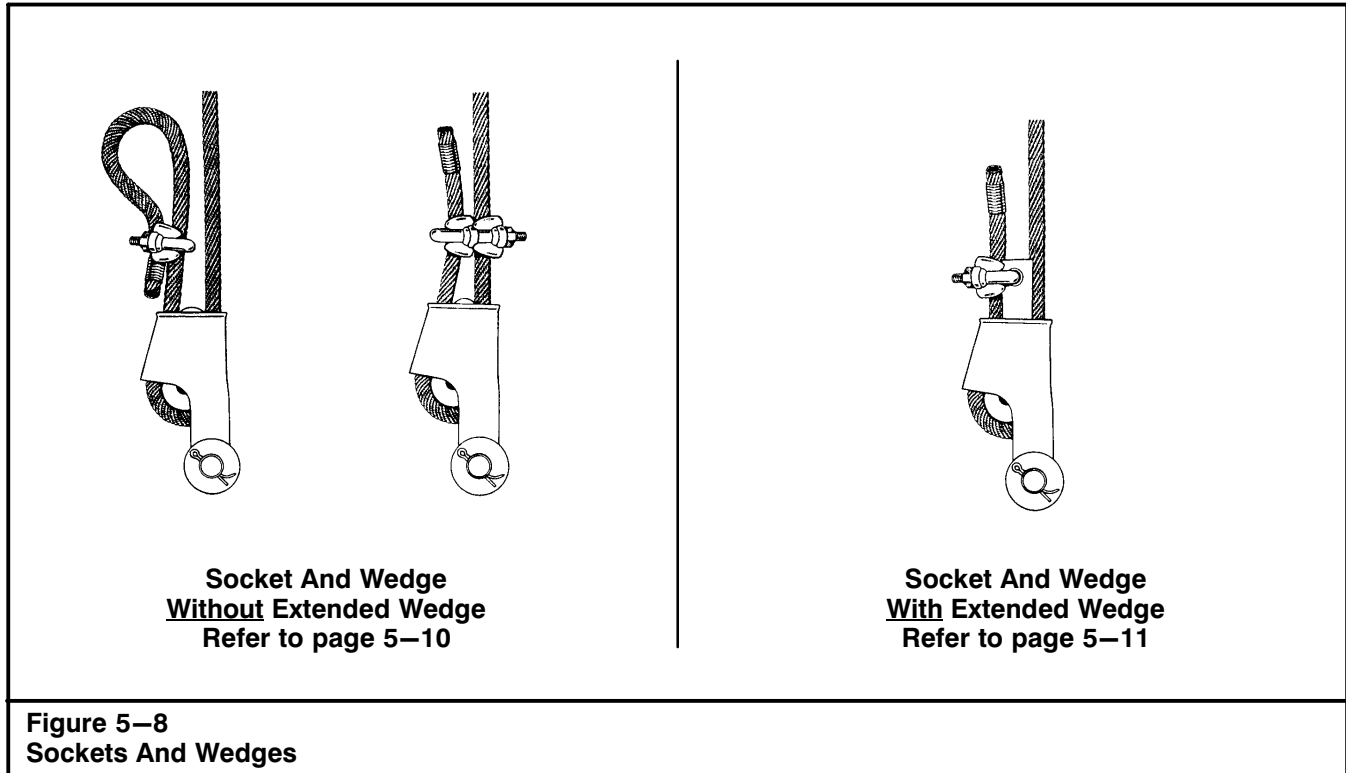
Figure 5–7
Hook Block Reeving

The crane can use multiple parts of line when reeving the main winch, depending on the lift being made and the number of sheaves available. When reeving the main winch, odd parts of line dead end at the hook block and even parts dead end at the boom head. The auxiliary lifting sheave may be reeved with either one or two parts of line. The fly section may be reeved with two parts of line for better line control and the 10 ft fly base can be reeved with up to four parts of line. Figure 5–21 gives the proper reeving for various parts of line. The reeving patterns illustrated must be used at all times. To determine how many parts of line to use for a particular lift, check the Wire Rope Capacity chart and the Winch Performance chart in the Crane Rating Manual.

Note: Do not use a swivel at the dead end of multi-part reeving.

Note: Wire rope guards must always be used during operations. They must be pinned in place to prevent wire rope from jumping off the sheaves.

Operator's Manual



Sockets And Wedges

This crane may be equipped with either of two styles of sockets and wedges. One style socket uses a “terminator” extended wedge and the other does not. The wedges for each style are installed differently. Refer to Figure 5-8 to determine which style your crane has and where to find the appropriate information for use and installation.



WARNING

Do not interchange sockets and wedges. Loads may slip or fall if socket and wedge are not properly matched. Use a “terminator” wedge with a socket for a “terminator” wedge and a non-“terminator” wedge with a non-“terminator” socket.

Wire Rope, Wedge and Socket Compatibility					
Wedge	Socket				
	S-421	S-421-T	US-422	US-422-T	J7Y0002 US-8 422
S-412-W	YES	NO	NO	NO	NO
S-421-TW	NO	YES	NO	NO	NO
US-422	NO	NO	YES	NO	NO
US-422-TW	NO	NO	NO	YES	NO
J7Y0002 S-422-T	NO	NO	NO	NO	YES

NOTE: Check socket and wedge assemblies to ensure they comply to this chart and that the wire rope size marked on them matches the wire rope size installed on the crane.

Figure 5–10
Wire Rope, Wedge and Socket Compatibility

Socket And Wedge – Without Extended Wedge

Sockets and wedges shipped from the factory are identified with size and type or pair identification. Refer to Figure 5–18. Use the proper wedge for the proper wire rope socket. Refer to Figure 5–10. A socket or wedge may be identified for two or more sizes of wire rope. The size on the socket and wedge must correspond with the size of wire rope being used. Refer to Figure 5–11.


WARNING

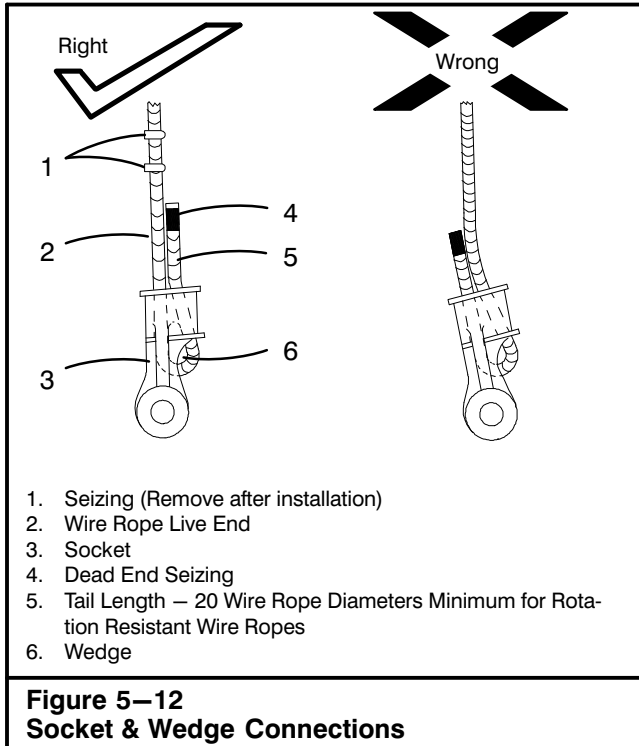
Do not interchange sockets and wedges. Loads may slip or fall if socket and wedge are not properly matched. Use a “terminator” wedge with a socket for a “terminator” wedge and a non-“terminator” wedge with a non-“terminator” socket.

For This Wire Rope Diameter	Use This Socket and Wedge
5/8 in or 0.62 in	5/8 in or 0.62 in
3/4 in or 0.75 in	3/4 in or 0.75 in
7/8 in or 0.88 in	7/8 in or 0.88 in
16 mm	5/8 in or 0.62 in
19 mm	3/4 in or 0.75 in
20 mm	3/4 in or 0.75 in
22 mm	7/8 in or 0.88 in
26 mm	1 in or 1.00 in
28 mm	1 1/8 in or 1.12 in

Figure 5–11
Socket and Wedge Per Wire Rope Diameter

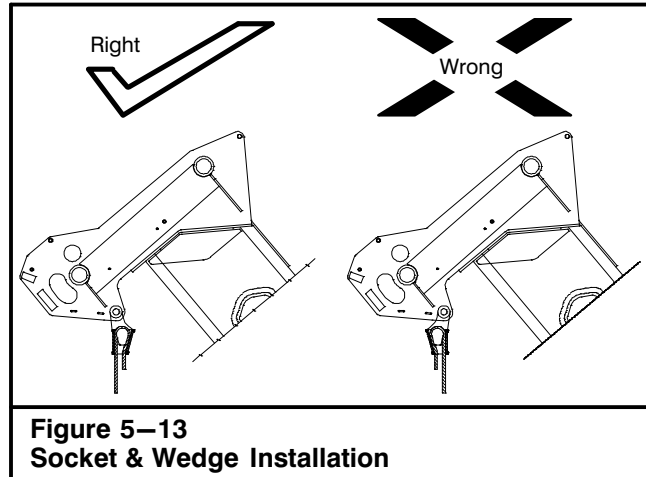
The correct and incorrect methods of attaching a socket and wedge to wire rope are shown in Figure 5–12. The dead end of the wire rope must always be on the sloped portion of the socket. The load line must be in a straight line pull with the eye of the socket. If the wire rope is installed wrong as shown in Figure 5–12, a permanent set will develop at the point where the wire rope enters the socket. This permanent set will weaken the wire rope and accelerate wear at this point.

Operator's Manual



Before installing category 1 wire rope into a socket or wedge attach two seizings (hose clamps are an effective and efficient alternative if traditional seizings are not available) approximately 3–4 ft (0.9–1.2 m) from the end with a 3 in (76.2 mm) space between them. Refer to Figure 5–12.

The dead end must also be seized and a minimum tail length of 20 wire rope diameters (18" for 7/8" wire rope) for rotation resistant wire ropes is required. Refer to Figure 5–12. The seizings will help prevent core slippage and any looseness of the outer strands from traveling up the wire rope during installation while still allowing the wire rope strands to be free to adjust. Remove seizings from the live end after wire rope is securely installed into the socket.



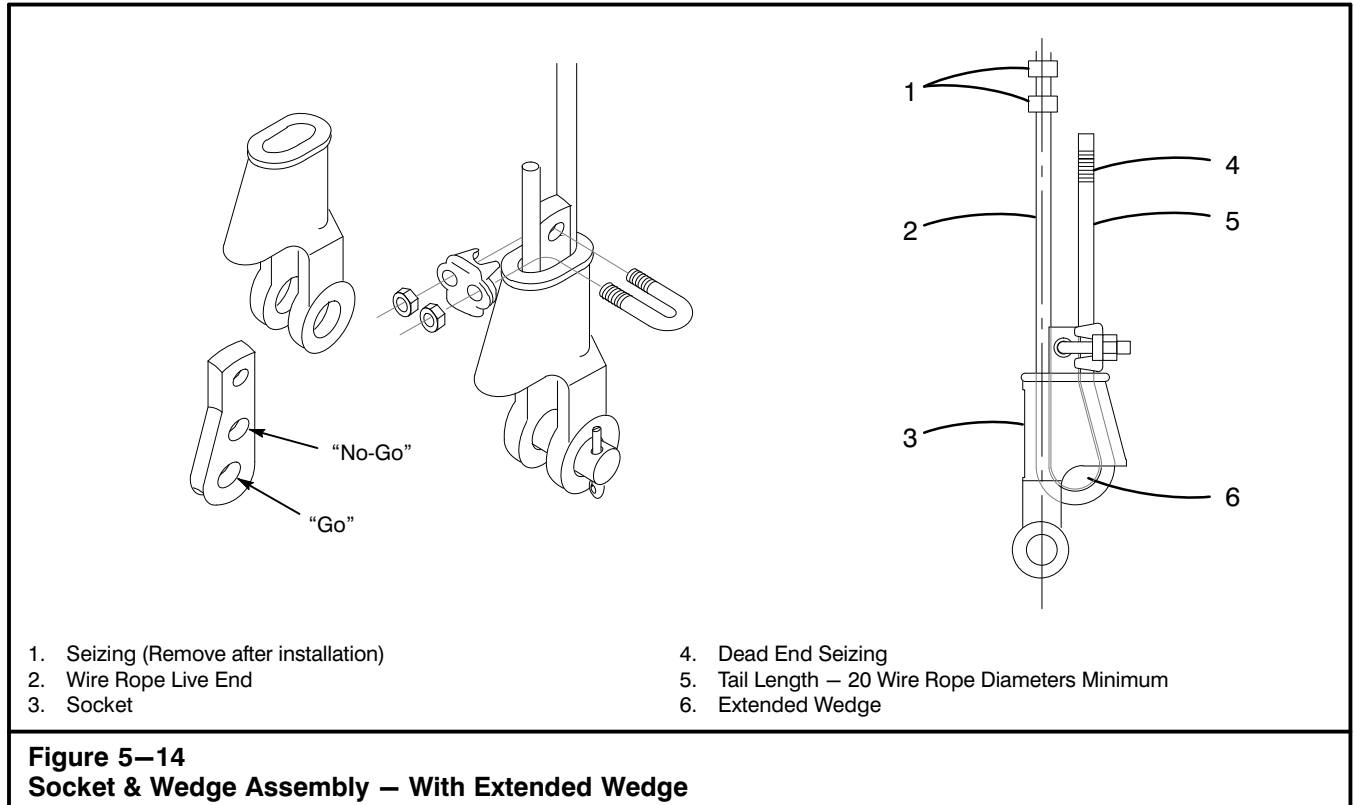
Note: Refer to Figure 5–9 to identify which type of wire rope is installed on the crane.

CAUTION

The ends of type ZB wire rope must be fuse welded and the tail length of the dead end must be a minimum of 20 wire rope diameters [15" (38cm) for 3/4" (19mm) wire rope]. Failure to do so may cause the core to slip and/or the strands to loosen causing major wire rope damage.

When anchoring the socket to the boom head, make sure the flat face is facing out as shown in Figure 5–13. If socket is not installed correctly structural damage to the boom head may occur.

It is recommended that the wire rope socket and wedge connection be reestablished on an annual basis. This can be accomplished by cutting the wire rope 6 in (0.15m) above the socket and wedge connection. See "Cutting Wire Rope" in this Section of this Operator's Manual. Install the socket and wedge connection as shown in Figure 5–12.



Socket And Wedge Assembly – With Extended Wedge

WARNING

Use the proper size wedge with a wire rope socket or drum. The use of an incorrect size, type, or brand of wedge in a socket or drum is dangerous as it may not hold. Wedges and sockets shipped from the factory are identified with size and type identification. A drum or socket may be identified for two or more sizes of wire rope and a wedge for one or two. The size on the drum, socket, and wedge must correspond with the size of wire rope being used.

WARNING

Do not interchange sockets and wedges. Loads may slip or fall if socket and wedge are not properly matched. Use a “terminator” wedge with a socket for a “terminator” wedge and a non-“terminator” wedge with a non-“terminator” socket.

The correct and incorrect methods of attaching a socket and wedge to wire rope are shown in Figure 5–14 and Figure 5–15. The dead end of the wire rope must always be on the sloped portion of the socket. The load line must be in a straight line pull with the eye of the socket. If the wire rope is installed wrong as shown in Figure 5–15, a permanent set will develop at the point where the wire rope enters the socket. This permanent set will weaken the wire rope and accelerate wear at this point.

Sockets and wedges shipped from the factory are identified with size and type or pair identification. Refer to Figure 5–18. Use the proper wedge for the proper wire rope socket. Refer to Figure 5–10. A socket or wedge may be identified for two or more sizes of wire rope. The size on the socket and wedge must correspond with the size of wire rope being used. Refer to Figure 5–11. The wedge also has a “go”/“no-go” feature cast into the wedge to assist in determining the proper size wire rope that can be used with that particular socket and wedge. Refer to Figure 5–14. The proper size wire rope is determined when: 1) the wire rope passes through the “go” hole in the wedge, and 2) the wire rope does not pass through the “no-go” hole in the wedge. The part number may also be identified on the socket and wedge. Refer to the Parts Manual for confirmation. If there is any doubt as to the mating of the socket and wedge, contact your Link-Belt Distributor.

Operator's Manual

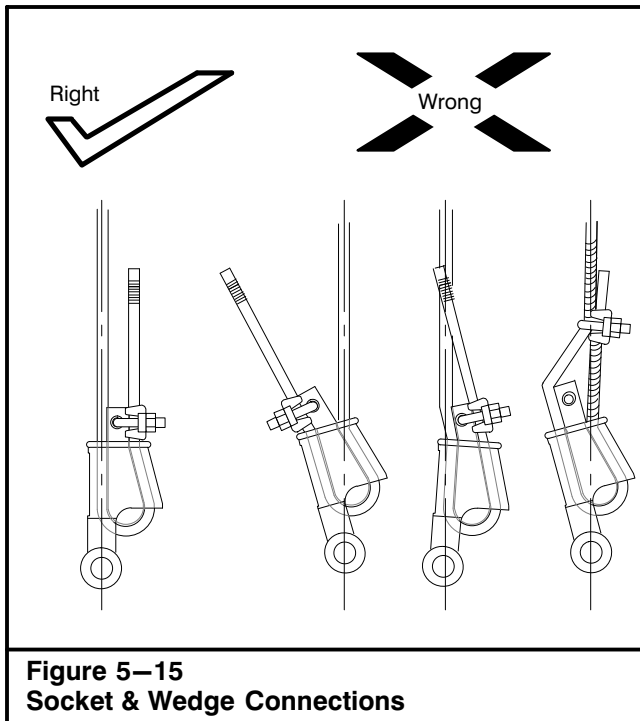


Figure 5-15
Socket & Wedge Connections

Before installing category 1 wire rope into a socket or wedge attach two seizings (hose clamps are an effective and efficient alternative if traditional seizings are not available) approximately 3–4 ft (0.9–1.2 m) from the end with a 3 in (76.2 mm) space between them. Refer to Figure 5-14.

The dead end must also be seized and a minimum tail length of 20 wire rope diameters (18" for 7/8" wire rope) for rotation resistant wire ropes is required. Refer to Figure 5-14. The seizings will help prevent core slippage and any looseness of the outer strands from traveling up the wire rope during installation while still allowing the wire rope strands to be free to adjust. Remove seizings from the live end after wire rope is securely installed into the socket.

Note: Refer to Figure 5-9 to identify which type of wire rope is installed on the crane.

Use a hammer to seat the wedge and wire rope into the socket before applying first load. Lift the first load a few inches (*centimeters*) from the ground to fully seat the wedge and wire rope in the socket. This load should be of equal or greater weight than loads expected in use.

Secure the dead end section of the wire rope by installing the clip through the wedge as shown in Figure 5-14. Tighten the nuts on the clip to the recommended torque as shown on the table in Figure 5-19.

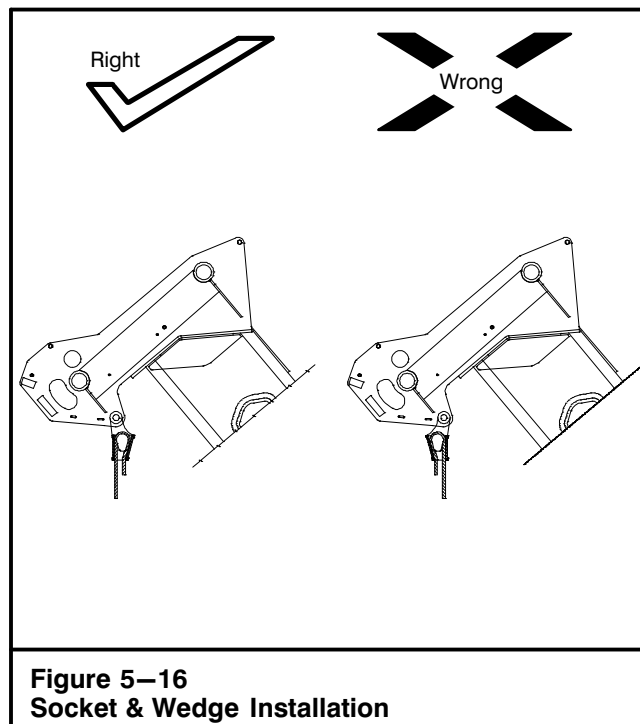


Figure 5-16
Socket & Wedge Installation

When anchoring the socket to the boom head, make sure the flat face is facing out as shown in Figure 5-16. If socket is not installed correctly structural damage to the boom head may occur.

It is recommended that the wire rope socket and wedge connection be reestablished on an annual basis. This can be accomplished by cutting the wire rope 6 in (0.15m) above the socket and wedge connection. See "Cutting Wire Rope" in this Section of this Operator's Manual. Install the socket and wedge connection as shown in Figure 5-15.

Wire Rope Break-In

After the wire rope has been installed and the ends secured in the correct manner, the new wire rope must be run through a break-in period. This allows the component parts of the new wire rope to gradually adjust itself to actual operating conditions.

1. Level the crane on fully extended outriggers with all tires clear of the ground. Swing the upper over the front of the carrier and engage the travel swing lock.
2. Fully raise and fully extend the boom. Attach a light load at the hook and raise it a few inches off the ground. Allow to stand for several minutes.
3. Run the wire rope through a cycle of operation at very slow speeds. During this trial operation, a very close watch should be kept on all working parts—sheaves, drums, rollers, etc. to make certain that the wire rope runs freely, and without any possible obstructions as it makes its way through the system.

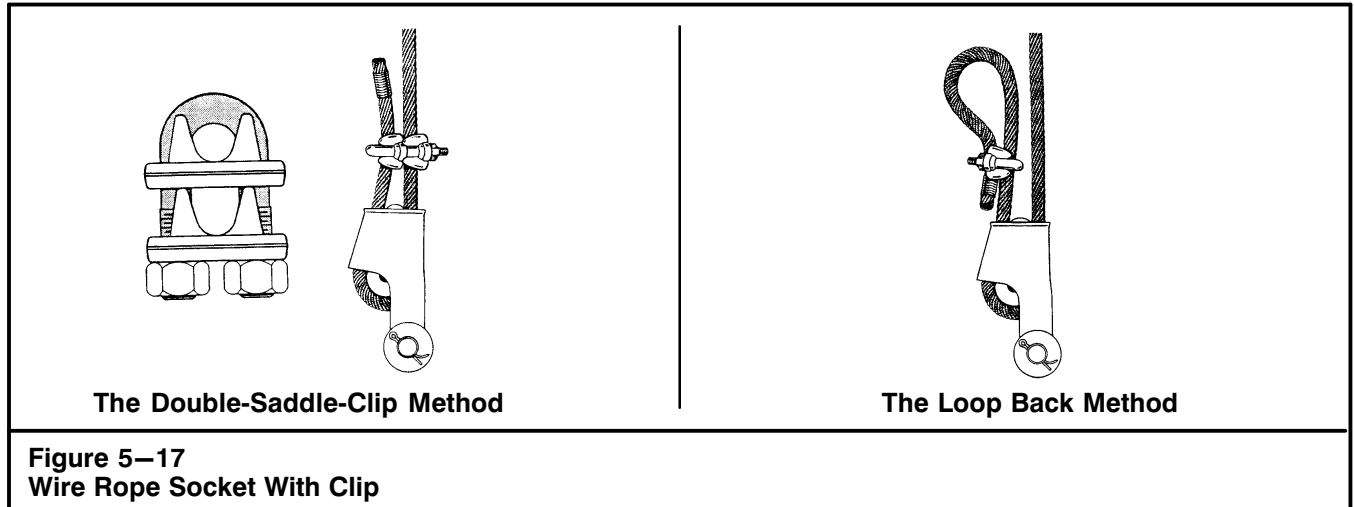


Figure 5-17
Wire Rope Socket With Clip

Note: Run these loads with reeving that places the loads on the hook block with all wire rope off the drum except the last three wraps. If this is not possible, alternate methods must be used to assure proper tensioning of wire rope on the drum.

4. If no problems appear in running the wire rope, repeat procedure with an increased load.

Single Part Line Hoisting

Rotation-resistant or category 1 wire ropes are recommended for single part of line applications. This is of utmost importance for long fall hoist line applications. Link-Belt type “KC”, “YB”, CC, and “ZB” are examples of wire ropes recommended for single part hoisting. See the Wire Rope Capacity Chart in the Crane Rating Manual for the specific types of rotation resistant wire rope recommended for your crane.

The use of non-rotation resistant wire rope is **not** recommended for long falls of single part of line hoisting since the wire rope and load may spin. If the crane operator allows either the load or the wire rope to rotate, the crane or wire rope can be damaged. The anti-two block weight may also become entangled with the wire rope and could damage the anti-two block system, wire rope, and/or head machinery.

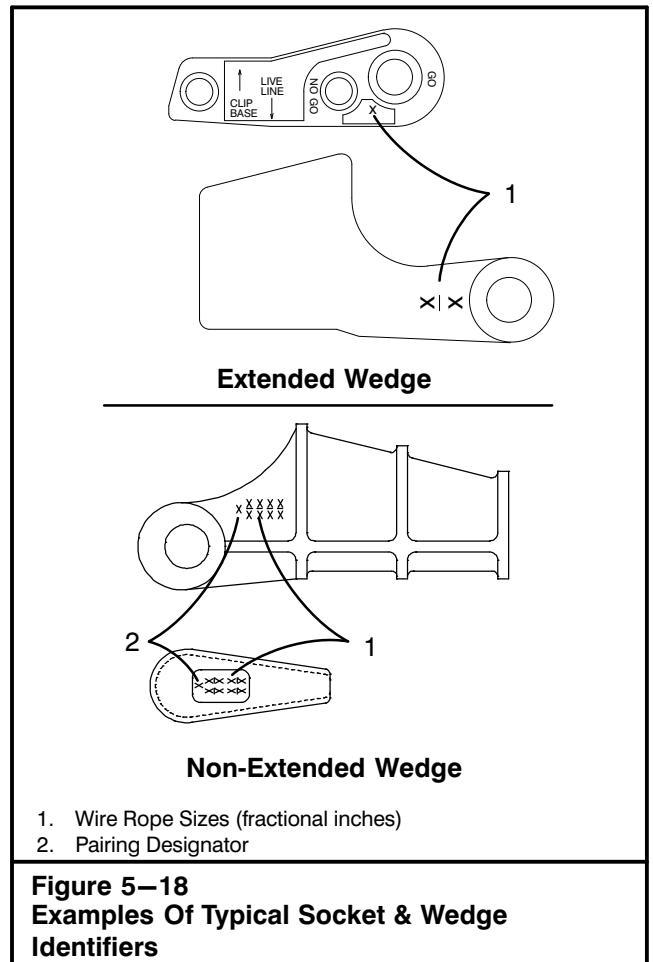


Figure 5-18
Examples Of Typical Socket & Wedge Identifiers

Operator's Manual

Clip Size		Minimum No. of Clips	Amount Of Wire Rope To Turn Back*		Torque	
Inches	mm		Inches	mm	ft lb	Nm
1/4	3.2	2	3-1/4	82.5	---	---
3/16	4.7	2	3-3/4	95.2	---	---
1/4	6.3	2	4-3/4	120.6	15	20.0
5/16	7.9	2	5-1/4	133.3	30	40.7
3/8	9.5	2	6-1/2	165.1	45	60.1
7/16	11.1	2	7	177.8	65	86.8
1/2	12.7	3	11-1/2	292.1	65	86.8
9/16	14.3	3	12	304.8	95	126.9
5/8	15.9	3	12	304.8	95	126.9
3/4	19.0	4	18	457.2	130	173.6
7/8	22.2	4	18	457.2	130	173.6

* If a greater number of clips are used than shown in this table, the amount of wire rope turnback should be increased proportionally.

Figure 5–19
Wire Rope Clip Application Recommendation

Rotation Resistant Wire Rope

The rotation resistant characteristic is achieved by laying the outer strands around an independent wire rope that is wound in the opposite direction. When the wire rope has tension on it, opposing rotational forces are created between the core and outer strands. If a swivel hook ball is utilized with rotation resistant wire rope, the wire rope is allowed to twist. The outer strands unwind and get longer while the inner core is forced to rotate in the same direction and shortens in length. As a result of this treatment, the inner core sees a disproportionately greater load, and core damage may occur due to shock loading or overloading. A rotating load on an unrestrained, non-swivel hook ball without a tagline, affects the internal loading of the wire rope in this manner. This practice, or any other which allows the wire rope to rotate while in service, leads to unbalanced loading between the inner and outer layer of strands, which may result in core failure. Wire rope manufacturer's testing has shown that rotation resistant wire rope utilized with a swivel hook ball has reduced the breaking strength by as much as 50% if excessive rotation occurs.

Rotation Resistant Wire Rope Inspection

For rotation resistant wire rope, refer to "Wire Rope Inspection" and "Wire Rope Replacement" in this Section of this Operator's Manual and the following information.

Marked reduction in diameter indicates deterioration of the core resulting in lack of proper support for the load carrying strands. Excessive wire rope stretch or elongation may also be an indication of internal deterioration. Major concerns and replacement recommendations include:

1. Loss of wire rope diameter (in excess of those listed in the table in the "Wire Rope Replacement" in this Section of this Operator's Manual), abnormal lengthening of wire rope lay, or protrusion of wires between the outer strands.
2. Two randomly distributed broken wires in 6 wire rope diameters, or 4 randomly distributed broken wires in 30 wire rope diameters.

Hook Ball Usage With Rotation Resistant Wire Rope

Non-Swivel Usage

A non-swivel hook ball in conjunction with a tagline or other device to control load spin should be used when the crane is equipped with rotation resistant wire rope not classified as category 1. This is to avoid unrestrained rotation of the wire rope.

Swivel Usage

A swivel hook ball can be used with rotation resistant wire rope if:

1. The wire rope is not shock loaded or overloaded.
2. Wire rope working strength is reduced to maintain original design factors.
3. The wire rope is inspected frequently as outlined above and as per "Wire Rope Inspection And Replacement Recommendations" in this Section of this Operator's Manual.

Wire Rope Sockets With Clips

Some codes require the use of a wire rope clip in conjunction with a socket and wedge connection. Figure 5-17 illustrates some typical methods of clip installation with sockets. In some cases, particularly in wrecking ball work, there is a chance that the wedge can loosen, releasing the socket from the wire rope. This could be caused by the banging action and alternate loading and unloading of the wire rope that occurs during this type work.



WARNING

Regularly inspect the integrity of the wire rope at the point of exit at the dead end side. High velocity spin of wire rope when loading and unloading can cause the wire rope to flip-flop, fatigue, and finally break off.

The use of wire rope clips with a socket and wedge connection can weaken the connection if done improperly. Do not attach the dead end of the wire rope to the live side with the clip as this will seriously weaken the connection. The clip may ultimately take the load and may deform or break the wire rope.

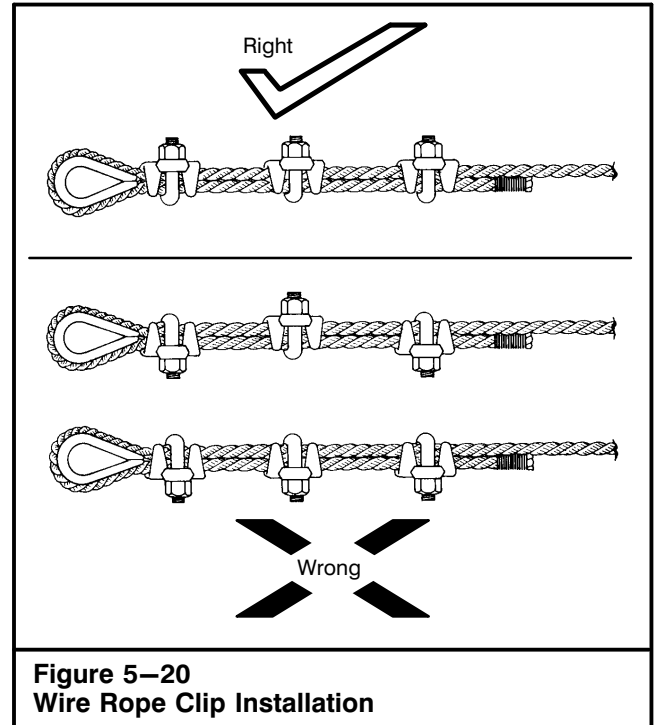


Figure 5-20
Wire Rope Clip Installation

If using the loop back method, the loop formed must not be allowed to enter the wedge, or the connection will be weakened. The tail length of the dead end must be a minimum of 20 wire rope diameters [17.5" (44cm) for 7/8" (2.2cm) wire rope].

CAUTION

The ends of type ZB wire rope must be fuse welded and the tail length of the dead end must be a minimum of 20 wire rope diameters [15" (38cm) for 3/4" (19mm) wire rope]. Failure to do so may cause the core to slip and/or the strands to loosen causing major wire rope damage.

Operator's Manual

Wire Rope Clip Installation

The correct method of installing wire rope clips is shown in Figure 5–20. The u-bolt must always be over the short end of the wire rope and the base must always contact the long end.

Clips should NOT be staggered, that is u-bolt of one clip over short end and u-bolt of next clip over long end. This practice will not only distort the wire rope excessively, but will prevent maximum strength of this type fastening. Placing all clips with the u-bolt over the long end of the wire rope will damage strands and result in an unsafe condition.

The distance between clips should be not less than six times the wire rope diameter. In relation to size of wire rope, the minimum number of clips recommended for safe connections is given in Figure 5–19.

CAUTION

Apply the initial load and retighten nuts to the recommended torque. Wire rope can stretch and reduce in diameter when loads are applied. Inspect periodically and retighten as required.

Cutting Wire Rope

CAUTION

The ends of type ZB wire rope must be fuse welded. Failure to do so may cause the core to slip and/or the strands to loosen causing major wire rope damage.

When wire rope is to be cut, seizings should be placed on each side of the point where the wire rope is to be cut, to keep the strands in place. On preformed wire rope such as type RB, one seizing on each side of the cut is enough. On non-preformed wire rope less than 7/8 inch (23mm) diameter such as type ZB, two seizings are recommended. On non-preformed wire rope over 7/8 inch (23mm) diameter, three seizings are recommended. Original wire rope lay must be maintained at all times.

Three Basic methods of cutting wire rope are recommended:

1. Abrasive cutting tools.
2. Shearing tools. (Wire cutters on small wire rope, a wire rope cutter and hammer for larger wire ropes.)
3. Oxy/acetylene fuel torch.

Operator's Manual

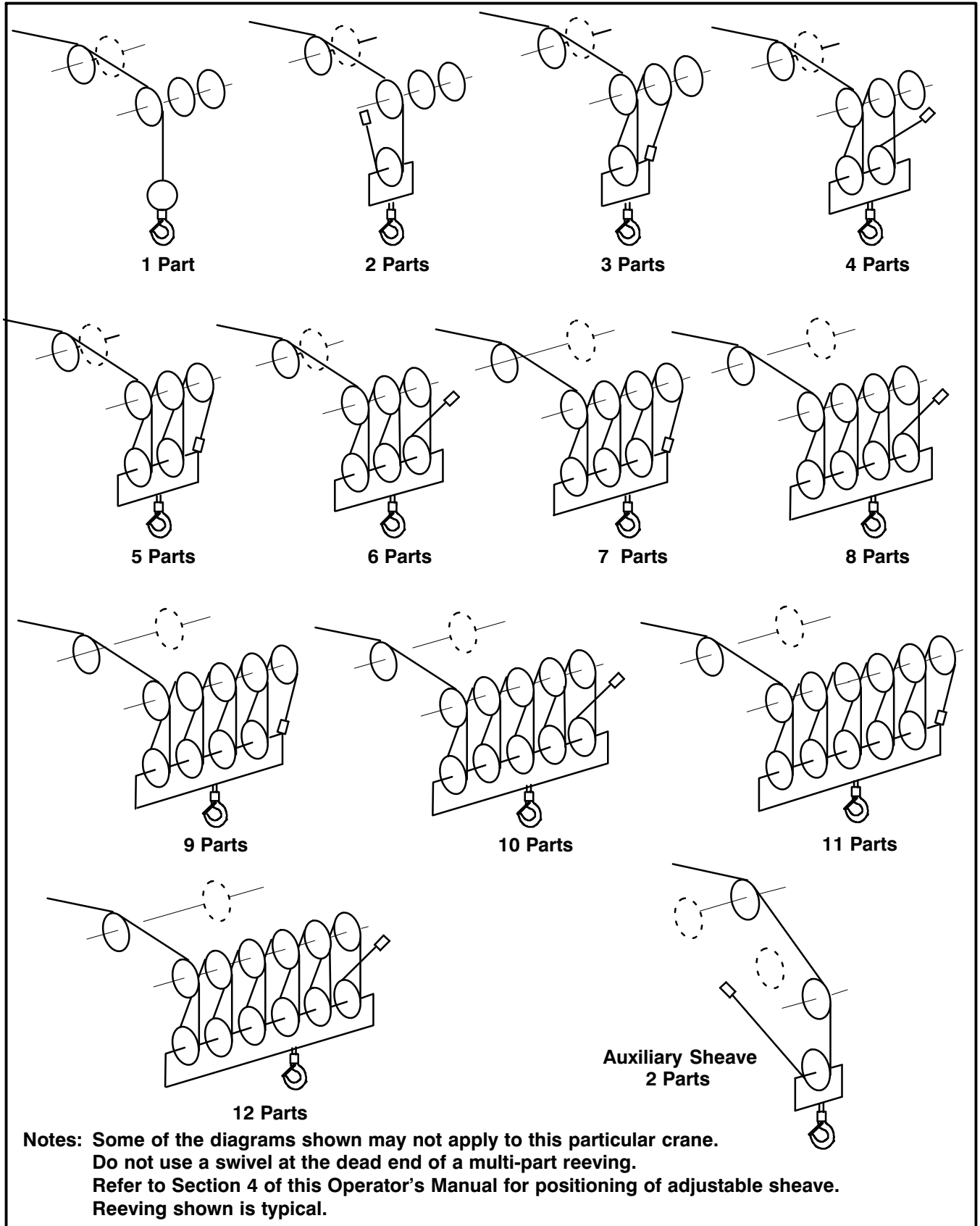
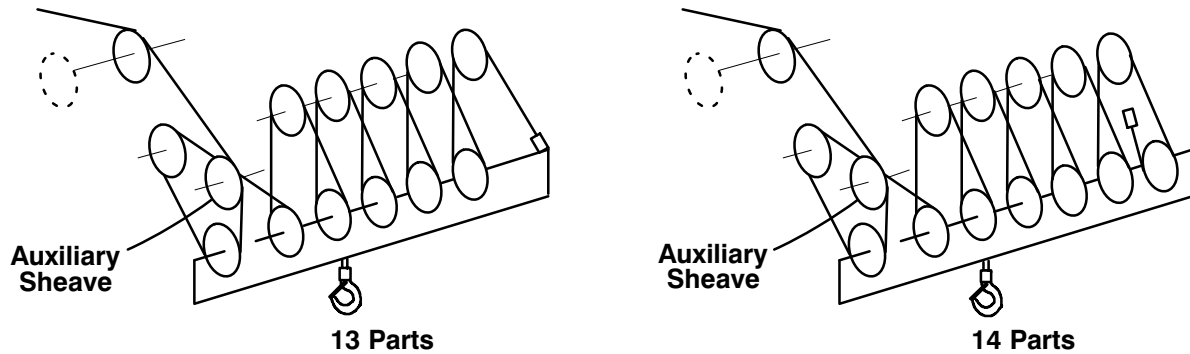


Figure 5-21
Wire Rope Reaving Diagrams

Operator's Manual



CAUTION

These reevings are only applicable for maximum rated capacity lifts that require additional parts of line to maintain the required wire rope safety factor.

Notes: Some of the diagrams shown may not apply to this particular crane.
Do not use a swivel at the dead end of a multi-part reeving.
Refer to Section 4 of this Operator's Manual for positioning of adjustable sheave.
Reeving shown is typical.

Figure 5-22
Wire Rope Reeving Diagrams

Operator's Manual

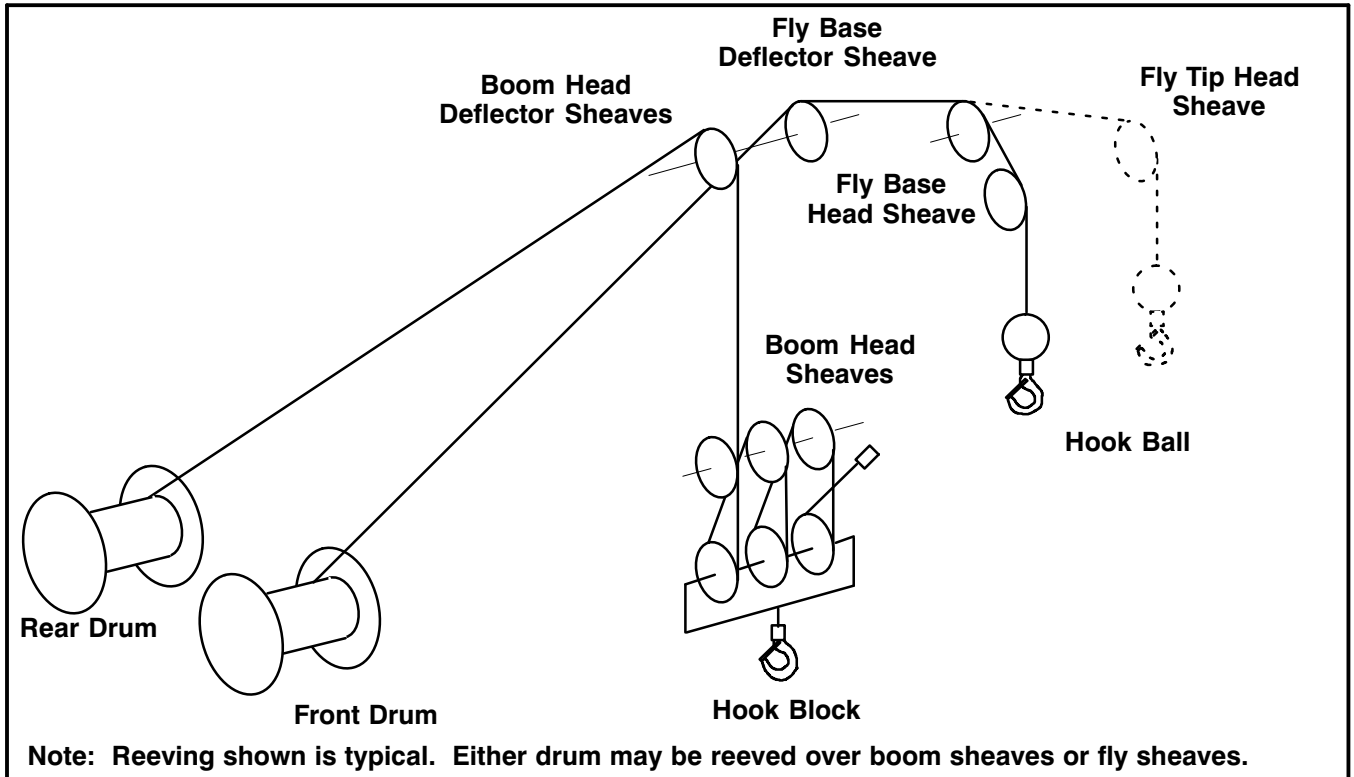


Figure 5-23
Wire Rope Reaving Diagrams

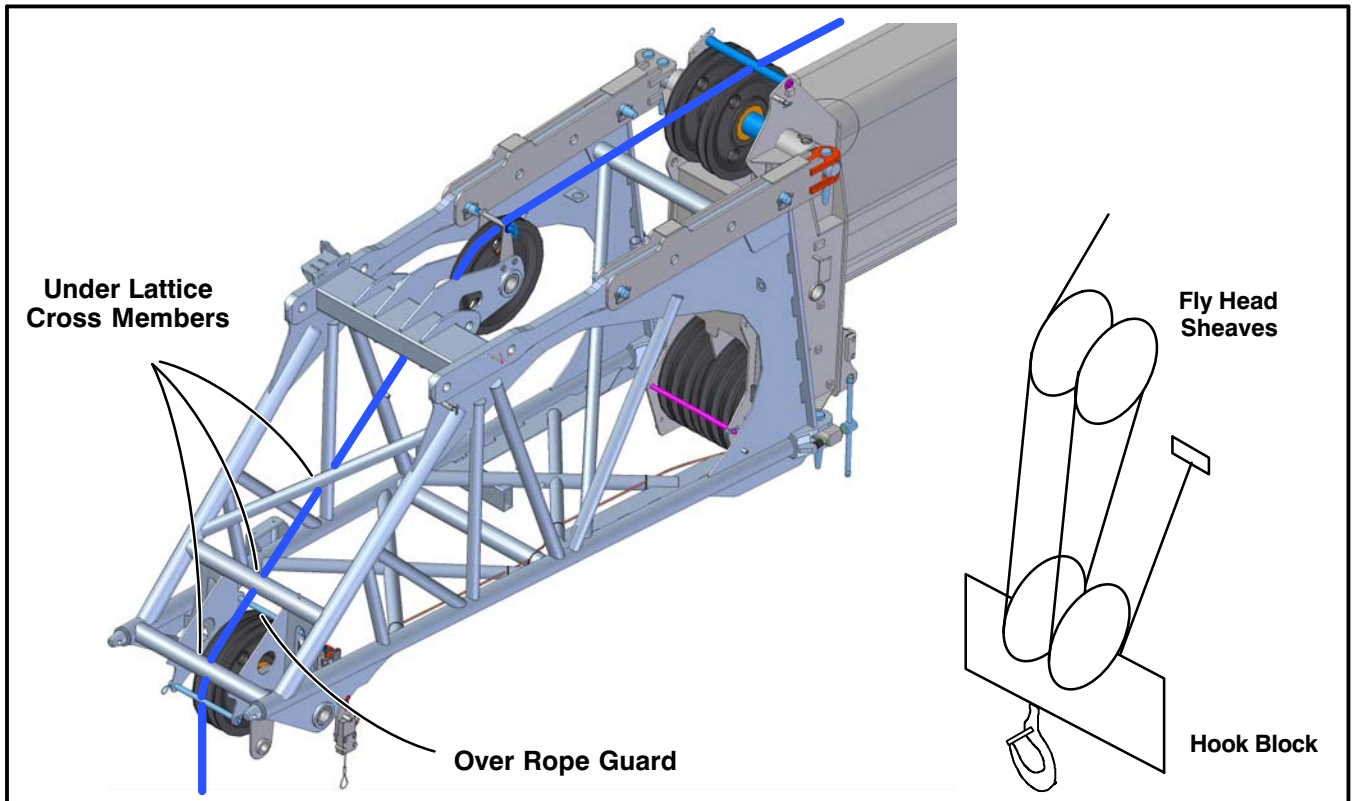


Figure 5-24
10 Ft (3.0m) Fly Section Wire Rope Reaving

Operator's Manual

Event Data Recording

This Link-Belt crane is equipped with one or more computers that monitor and/or control the crane's performance. This crane uses computer modules to monitor and retain crane operation, crane configuration, and as well as crane functions. These modules may aid the operator in the operation of the crane. The modules may also store data to help the Link-Belt dealer/distributor technician service the crane.

Event Data Recorder

This Link-Belt crane has an Event Data Recorder (EDR) system. The main purpose of the EDR is to record data relating to the crane operation and configuration that will assist in understanding how the crane's operating systems perform. The EDR is designed to record data related to crane dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time. The EDR in this crane is designed to record such data as:

- How various systems in the crane were operating
- How the crane was configured (counterweight, boom length, operational mode, etc.)
- What control functions were being used

This data will help provide valuable information as to how the crane was functioning and/or being operated.

Data And Recording Privacy

Important: EDR data is recorded in the crane only if a non-trivial situation occurs; no data is recorded by the EDR under normal operating conditions and no personal data (e.g., name, gender, age, or crane location) is recorded. However, other parties, such as law enforcement, or similar government offices, could combine the EDR data with the type of personal identifying data routinely acquired during a crane accident investigation.

To read data recorded by this EDR system, special equipment is required, and access to the crane and/or the EDR is needed. Link-Belt has the special equipment necessary to retrieve the recorded data.

It is the position of Link-Belt that the crane owner owns any data that is recorded and stored in the EDR or other onboard computer system(s). Link-Belt will not access this data, interpret data, or share the data with others, except by written request from the crane owner(s). The request by the crane owner may be due to an official request of police or similar government offices; as part of Link-Belt's defense of litigation through the discovery process; or as required by law. Data that Link-Belt retrieves may also be used for Link-Belt or component manufacturers for research purposes, where a need is shown and data is not tied to a specific crane or crane owner.

Link-Belt will retrieve crane data only by written request from the crane owner. The Electronic Data Recorder Request Form found at the end of this Operator's Manual can be used for this purpose.

Crane Specifications

The following information is general in nature and is used for reference purposes only. Depending upon the vintage of the crane, some features may no longer be available. Standard and optional features may vary from crane to crane. Consult the factory to verify the specific information if required.

Boom, Attachments, and Upper Structure

■ Boom

Design – Five section, formed construction of extra high tensile steel consisting of one base section and four telescoping sections. The first telescoping section extends independently by means of one, double-acting, single stage hydraulic cylinder with integral holding valves. The second telescoping section extends independently by means of one, double-acting, single stage hydraulic cylinder with integral holding valves. The third and fourth sections extend proportionally by means of one, double-acting, single stage cylinder with integrated holding valves and cables.

Boom

- 40–150 ft (12.2–45.7m) five section full power boom
- Three boom extend modes, controlled from the operator's cab, provide superior capacities by varying the extension of the telescoping sections:
 - **Standard mode** is the full power, synchronized mode of telescoping all sections proportionally
 - **A-max¹** mode (or mode 'A1') extends only the inner and center sections to 95 ft (29m) offering increased capacities for in-close, maximum capacity picks
 - **A-max²** mode (or mode 'A2') tip, outer and center sections extend to 122.5 ft (37.34m) offering maximum stability
- Mechanical boom angle indicator
- Maximum tip height for each extend mode is:
 - Standard is 159 ft 6 in (48.6m)
 - A-max² is 132 ft 6 in (40.3m)
 - A-max¹ is 105 ft 6 in (32.1m)

Boom Wear Pads

- Bottom wear pads are universal for all boom sections
- Top wear pads are universal for all boom sections

Boom Head

- Six 16.38 in (41.6cm) root diameter nylon sheaves to handle up to twelve parts of line
- Easily removable wire rope guards
- Rope dead end lugs on each side of the boom head
- Boom head is designed for quick-reeve of the hook block

Boom Elevation

- One double acting hydraulic cylinder with integral holding valve
- Boom elevation: –2.5° to 80.75°

Auxiliary Lifting Sheave – Optional

- Single 16.38 in (41.6cm) root diameter nylon sheave
- Easily removable wire rope guards
- Does not affect erection of the fly or use of the main head sheaves

Hook Blocks and Balls – Optional

- 140 ton (126.98mt) 7 sheave, quick-reeve hook block, with safety latch
- 100 ton (90.72mt) 6 sheave, quick-reeve hook block, with safety latch
- 80 ton (72.57mt) 5 sheave, quick-reeve hook block with safety latch
- 50 ton (45.36mt) 4 sheave, quick-reeve hook block with safety latch
- 35 ton (31.7mt) 1 sheave, quick-reeve hook block with safety latch
- 12 ton (10.89mt) hook ball (swivel) with safety latch

Fly – Optional

- 31 ft–55 ft (9.4–16.8m) two piece bi-fold lattice fly, stowable, offsettable to 2°, 15°, 30°, and 45°. Maximum tip height is 214 ft (65.2m). Minimum of 14,000 lb (6 350kg) of counterweight required.
- 10 ft, 31 ft – 55 ft (3.0, 9.4–16.8m) three piece bi-fold lattice fly, stowable, offsettable to 2°, 15°, 30°, and 45°. Maximum tip height is 214 ft (65.2m). Minimum of 14,000 lb (6 350kg) of counterweight required.

Fly Extensions – Optional

- One 18 ft (5.5m) lattice extension, equipped with two 16.38 in (41.6cm) root diameter nylon sheaves, to be mounted between the boom head and fly options. Maximum tip height is 232 ft (70.7m). Minimum of 26,000 lb (11 794kg) of counterweight required.
- Two 18 ft (5.5m) lattice extensions, one equipped with two 16.38 in (41.6cm) root diameter nylon sheaves, to be mounted between the boom head and fly options. Maximum tip height is 250 ft (76.2m). Minimum of 26,000 lb (11 794kg) of counterweight required.

■ Operator's Cab and Controls

Environmental Cab – Fully enclosed, one person cab of galvanneal steel structure with acoustical insulation. Equipped with:

- Tilting cab up to 20°
- Seat belt
- Tinted and tempered glass windows
- Five way adjustable, cushioned seat with headrests, and seat belt
- Extra-large fixed front window with windshield wiper and washer
- Swing up roof window with windshield wiper and washer
- Sliding left side door with large fixed window
- Sliding right side window for ventilation
- Engine dependent warm – water heater with air ducts for front windshield defroster and cab floor
- Defroster fan for the front window
- Bubble level
- Circulating fan
- Sun screen
- Dome light
- Cup holder
- Fire extinguisher
- Left side viewing mirror

Operator's Manual

- Two position travel swing lock
- AM/FM Radio

Air Conditioning – Integral with cab heating system utilizing the same ventilation outlets

Steering Column – Pedestal type with tilt and telescope functions for operator comfort. Column includes the following controls and indicators:

Left and right levers include:

- Horn button
- Turn signal switch
- Driving light switch
- Forward/Neutral/Reverse direction switch

Panel mounted switches for:

- Travel park brake
- Steer mode selector
- 2/6 wheel drive/range selector
- Hazard flasher

Panel mounted indicator/warning lights for:

- Travel park brake
- Service brake
- Turn signals
- Case filter restriction
- Charge filter restriction
- Engine overspeed
- Rear wheel offset
- Emergency steer – optional

Armrest Controls – Two dual axis electronic joystick controllers or optional single axis electronic controllers for:

- Swing
- Boom hoist
- Main front winch
- Auxiliary rear winch – optional
- Drum rotation indication
- Drum rotation indicator activation switch
- Winch high/low speed disable switch(es)
- Cab heater and A/C controls
- Throttle lock/unlock switch
- Throttle set switch
- Cab tilt switch
- Warning horn button
- Swing park brake
- Telescope override switches

Foot Controls

- Boom Telescope
- Swing brake
- Engine throttle
- Travel brake

Right Front Console – Controls and indicators for:

- Warning horn button
- Function disable switch
- Cab floodlights switch
- Console dimmer switch
- 2–12 volt accessory outlet (Switched & Unswitched)
- Emergency engine shutdown
- Windshield wiper/washer switch
- Ignition switch
- Programmable heater
- Ignition indication light
- Boom floodlights switch – optional
- Rotating beacon/strobe light switch – optional

Camera Display – Located on dash console

- Displays right side of upper
- Displays main and auxiliary winches

Cab Instrumentation – Ergonomically positioned LCD display, CANBUS instrumentation for crane operation including:

- Tachometer
- Engine water temperature
- Fuel level
- Hydraulic oil temperature
- Travel circuit temperature
- Stop engine
- Check engine
- Wait to start
- High exhaust temperature light (Tier 4f/Stage IV engine only)
- DPF regeneration light (Tier 4f/Stage IV engine only)
- Regeneration disabled light (Tier 4f/Stage IV engine only)
- Swing park brake light
- Fine metering function set & %
- Engine speed
- Engine oil pressure
- Battery voltage
- Fuel rate (gal/hr)
- Engine load
- Third wrap indicator activation & setup – optional
- Engine Diagnostics
- Electronic Control Diagnostics
- Outrigger level indicator
- DPF regeneration inhibit switch (Tier 4f/Stage IV engine only)
- DPF regeneration initiate switch (Tier 4f/Stage IV engine only)

Diagnostic Center – Located on the left side of the front panel below the windshield

- Engine diagnostic
- RCL CANBUS diagnostic
- Crane Controller USB diagnostic
- RCL controller USB diagnostic

Operator's Manual

Link-Belt Pulse – The Link-Belt in-house designed, total crane operating system that utilizes the display as a readout and operator interface for the following systems:

- **Rated capacity limiter** – LCD graphic audio – visual warning system integrated into the dash with anti – two block and function limiter. Operating data includes:
 - Crane configuration
 - Boom length
 - Boom head height
 - Allowed load and % of allowed load
 - RCL light bar
 - Boom angle
 - Radius of load
 - Actual load
 - Wind speed
 - Highlighted unit of measurement on working screen
 - Telescope operation displayed in real time
 - Counterweight installation/removal
 - Third wrap indicator
 - Diagnostics
 - Operator settable alarms (include):
 - Maximum and minimum boom angles
 - Maximum tip height
 - Maximum boom length
 - Swing left/right positions
 - Operator defined area (imaginary plane)
 - Outrigger position sensing
 - Drum rotation direction indication
 - Diagnostics
- **Telematics** – Cellular based data logging and monitoring system that provides:
 - Location and operational settings
 - Routine maintenance
 - Crane and engine monitoring
 - Diagnostic and fault codes

Integrated Third Wrap Indicator – Optional – Link–Belt Pulse color display visually and audibly warns the operator when the wire rope is on the first/bottom layer and when the wire rope is down to the last three wraps.

Integrated Third Wrap Function Kickout – Optional – Link–Belt Pulse color display visually and audibly warns the operator when the wire rope is on the first/bottom layer and provides a function kickout when the wire rope is down to the last three wraps.

Internal RCL Light Bar – Optional – Visually informs the operator when crane is approaching maximum load capacity with a series of green, yellow, and red lights.

External RCL Light Bar – Optional – Visually informs the ground crew when crane is approaching maximum load capacity with a series of green, yellow, and red lights.

■ Swing

Motor/Planetary – Bi–directional hydraulic swing motor mounted to a planetary reducer for 360° continuous smooth swing at 1.5 rpm.

Swing Park Brake – 360°, electric over hydraulic, (spring applied/hydraulic released) multi–disc brake mounted on the speed reducer. Operated by a switch from the operator's cab.

Swing Brake – 360°, foot operated, hydraulic applied disc brake mounted to the speed reducer.

Swing Lock – Two–position swing lock (boom over front or rear) operated from the operator's cab.

360° Positive Swing Lock – Optional – Meets New York City requirement.

■ Electrical

Swing Alarm – Audio warning device signals when the upper is swinging.

Lights

- Two LED working lights on front of the cab
- One rotating amber beacon on top of the cab – optional
- One amber strobe beacon on top of the cab – optional
- One LED working light on top of cab – optional
- Boom floodlight – Single– optional
- Boom floodlight – Dual– optional
- Boom floodlight – High intensity remote controlled– optional

Electrical Center

- RCL by–pass switch
- Hour meter
- Battery disconnect switches
- 3 batteries provide 12 volt operation and starting

Operator's Manual

■ Load Hoist System

Load Hoist Performance

Front and Rear Winches – 7/8 in (22mm) Rope										
Layer	Maximum Line Pull		Normal Line Speed		High Line Speed		Layer		Total	
	lb	kN	ft/min	m/min	ft/min	m/min	ft	m	ft	m
1	21,022	93.51	141	43.0	279	85.0	125	38.1	125	38.1
2	18,985	84.37	156	47.5	310	94.5	138	42.0	263	80.2
3	17,280	76.86	172	52.4	340	103.6	152	46.3	415	126.5
4	15,868	70.58	187	57.0	370	112.8	165	50.3	588	179.2
5	14,669	65.25	202	61.6	400	121.9	179	54.6	759	231.3
6	13,639	60.67	217	66.1	431	131.4	192	58.5	951	289.9

Wire Rope Application		Diameter		Type	Maximum Permissible Load	
		in	mm		lb	kg
Rear Winch	Standard	7/8	22	18x19 rotation resistant – right regular lay (Type RB)	17,520	7 946.9
	Optional	7/8	22	36x7 rotation resistant – right regular lay (Type ZB)	20,920	9 489.2
Front Winch	Standard	7/8	22	18x19 rotation resistant – right regular lay (Type RB)	17,520	7 946.9
	Optional	7/8	22	36x7 rotation resistant – right regular lay (Type ZB)	20,920	9 489.2

2M Main and Optional Auxiliary Winches

- Axial piston, full and half displacement (2–speed) motors driven through planetary reduction unit for positive control under all load conditions.
- Grooved lagging
- Power up/down mode of operation
- Hoist drum cable follower – optional
- Drum rotation indicator
- Drum diameter: 15 in (38.1cm)
- Rope length:
 - Front: 850 ft (215.9m)
 - Rear: 500 ft (127.0m)
- Maximum rope storage: 951 ft (289.9m)
- Terminator style socket and wedge

■ Engine

Specification	Cummins QSL	
Numbers of Cylinders	6	6
Cycle	4	4
Emissions Compliance Level:	Tier 4f/Stage IV ⁽¹⁾	Tier 3/Stage IIIA ⁽²⁾
Bore and Stroke: inch (mm)	4.49 x 5.69 (114 x 145)	4.49 x 5.69 (114 x 145)
Piston Displacement: in ³ (L)	543 (8.90)	543 (8.90)
Max. Brake Horsepower: hp (kW)	345 (257) @ 2,000 rpm	350 (261) @ 1,900 rpm
	333 (248) @ 2,100 rpm	325 (242) @ 2,100 rpm
Peak Torque: ft lb (Nm)	1,050 (1 424) @ 1,500 rpm	1,050 (1 424) @ 1,500 rpm
Electric/starting systems: volts	12/12	12/12
Alternator: amps	160	160
Crankcase Capacity: qt (L)	24 (22.7)	24 (22.7)
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Water/fuel separator w/ heater and water in fuel (WIF) sensor • 120–volt block heater—Tier 4f/Stage IV • 240–volt block heater—Tier 3/Stage IIIA • Grid heater – 200 amp • ⁽¹⁾ Can only be sold and/or operated where Tier 4f and Stage IV off–highway emission standards are accepted. • ⁽²⁾ Can only be sold and/or operated where Tier 3 and Stage IIIA off–highway emission standards are accepted. 		

Operator's Manual

■ Drive System

Hydrostatic type consisting of two variable speed piston pumps supplying hydraulic power to six hydraulic cam lobe wheel drive motors computer controlled for smooth and reliable operation.

■ Fuel Tank

One 90 gal (340.6L) capacity tank

Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF) Tank

- One 10 gal (37.9L) capacity tank

■ Hydraulic System

All functions are hydraulically powered allowing positive precise control with independent or simultaneous operation of all functions.

Main Pumps

- One, two section gear pump for the boom hoist, telescope, and charge circuits.
- Two, closed-loop piston pumps serve as travel pumps. these two pumps supply hydraulic power to the wheel motors.
- Two, closed-loop piston pumps are mounted to the rear of the two travel pumps. The left pump drives the front winch and the right pump drives the optional rear winch.
- One, pressure compensated piston pump mounted to the rear of the left winch pump supplies hydraulic power to the outrigger, counterweight removal (optional), oscillation, and travel brake circuits.
- One, single section gear pump mounted to the rear of the right side winch pump supplies hydraulic power to the swing and steering circuits.
- One, single section gear pump mounted to the engine front gear train accessory drive supplies hydraulic power to the hydraulic system cooling fan motor.

Hydraulic Reservoir – 255 gal (96.5L) capacity equipped with sight level gauge. Diffuser built in for deaeration. Magnetic drain plug and large internal magnet

Filtration

- One, 7-micron filter located inside hydraulic reservoir, accessible for easy replacement
- One, 7-micron charge filter located next to the reservoir with an in-cab indicator light
- Two, 10-micron pressure filters located next to the reservoir with change indicators
- Three, 100 mesh suction strainers located inside the hydraulic reservoir

Counterbalance Valves – All boom extend cylinders and boom hoist cylinder are equipped with counterbalance valves to provide load lowering and prevents accidental load drop when hydraulic power is suddenly reduced.

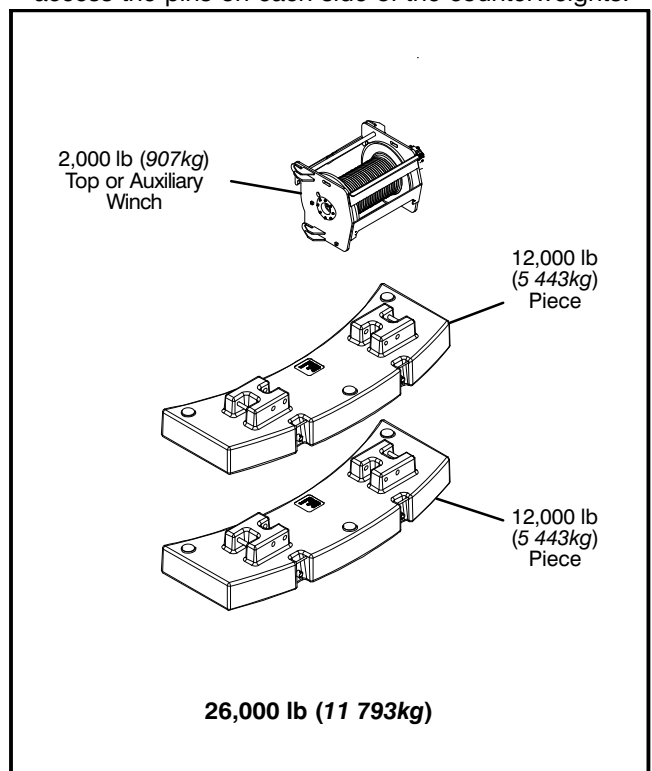
■ Pump Drive

- All pumps except the hydraulic system, cooling fan, drive pump are mounted on the pump drive gearbox and mechanically driven by the diesel engine.
- Boom hoist/telescope pump can be disconnected using a switch in the cab to aid in cold weather starting.

■ Counterweight

Total of 26,000 lb (11 793kg) consisting of two removable counterweights pinned to the upper and auxiliary winch/counterweight with capacities for 0 lb (0kg), 14,000 lb (6 350kg), and 26,000 lb (11 793kg) configurations.

- Optional – Hydraulic counterweight removal activated by a hand-held controller with enough cable to access the pins on each side of the counterweights.



Carrier

■ General

- 9 ft 11 in (3.02m) wide
- 16 ft 1 in (4.90m) wheelbase (centerline of first axle to centerline of third axle).

Frame – Box-type, torsion resistant, welded construction made of high tensile steel. Equipped with front and rear towing and tie-down lugs, tow connections, and access ladders.

Operator's Manual

■ Outriggers

Boxes – Two removable, double box, front and rear pinned to carrier frame. Hydraulic outrigger pin removal – optional.

Beams and Jacks – Four single stage beams with Confined Area Lifting Capacities (CALC™) provide selectable outrigger extensions of full, intermediate, and retracted. Hydraulically controlled from the operator's cab with integral check valves.

Pontoons – Four lightweight, quick release, 26 in (0.66m) diameter, steel pontoons with contact area of 539 in²

(3 477cm²) can be stored for road travel in storage racks on the carrier.

Main Jack Reaction – 132,000 lb (59 874kg) force and 245 psi (1 689kPa) ground bearing pressure.

■ Steering and Wheel Drive Motors

Steering – Four independent modes consisting of two wheel front, four wheel rear, six wheel, and crab. Each mode is controlled from the steering wheel and is selected by a switch in the operator's cab.

Drive – Three modes: 6 x 2 high, 6 x 2 low, and 6 x 6 for off highway travel

Front Drive Motors – Steered, driven for 6 x 2 and 6 x 6

Rear Drive Motors – Steered, non–driven for 6 x 2 and steered, driven for 6 x 6

■ Suspension

Front – Double “A” arms connected to oscillation cylinders that lockout when the upper structure rotates 3° past centerline

Left Rear – Center and rear wheels mounted on double “A” arms connected to oscillation cylinders that lockout when the upper structure rotates 3° past centerline. Oscillation occurs across left center and left rear wheels.

Right Rear – Center and rear wheels mounted on double “A” arms connected to oscillation cylinders that lockout when the upper structure rotates 3° past centerline. Oscillation occurs across right center and right rear wheels.

Ride Height Adjustment – Suspension can be lowered for transport using a hand–held controller from the ground.

■ Tires and Wheels

Front and Rear – Six (single) 23.5R25, earthmover type tires on steel disc wheels

- Spare tires and wheels – optional

■ Brakes

Service – Full hydraulic, dual circuit, disc type brakes on all wheel ends

Parking/Emergency – Spring loaded type, acting on front wheel ends

■ Electrical

Lights

- Front lighting includes two main headlights and two parking/directional indicators
- Side lighting includes two parking/directional indicators per side
- Rear lighting includes two parking/directional indicators, two parking/brake lights, and two reversing lights
- Other equipment includes hazard/warning system

■ Carrier Speeds and Gradeability

Variable Hydrostatic Drive	Speed		Gradeability (@ Peak Torque)	
	Range	mph	km/h	% Grade
6 WD Low		3	4.8	55
2 WD Low		9	14.5	15
2 WD High		18.5	29.8	6

Based on a gross vehicle weight of 123,000 lb (55 792kg).
Crane operating angle must not exceed 30° (66% grade).

■ Hydraulic System

Filtration – One, 60–micron, full flow, line filter in the wheel motor case drain circuit. Filter includes an in–cab change indicator. Accessible for easy filter replacement.

Operator's Manual

Axle Loads – Imperial

Base machine with full tank of fuel and 26,000 lb of counterweight	Gross Vehicle Weight ⁽¹⁾	Upper Facing Front		Upper Facing Rear	
		Front Axle	Rear Axle Group	Front Axles	Rear Axle Group
		lb	lb	lb	lb
Tier 4/Stage IV	129,974	39,458	90,516	58,876	71,098
Tier 3/Stage IIIA	129,490	39,512	89,978	58,450	71,040
Operator in cab	250	161	89	31	219
Hydraulic outrigger pin removal	206	79	127	79	127
Remove outrigger boxes and beams	-17,139	-6,633	-10,505	-6,542	-10,597
Pintle hook, front	13	20	-7	20	-7
Pintle hook, rear	13	-10	23	-10	23
Hydraulic counterweight removal	292	-151	443	-125	167
Remove 12,000 lb counterweight	-12,093	6,453	-18,546	-15,750	3,657
Remove 12,000 lb counterweight	-12,093	6,453	-18,546	-15,750	3,657
Hoist drum follower – main	99	-49	148	-126	-26
Auxiliary winch with 500 ft of wire rope – winch replaces auxiliary counterweight	841	-480	1,321	1,126	-285
Remove auxiliary winch with 500 ft of wire rope – for two winch configuration only	-2,673	1,707	-4,380	-3,763	1,089
Hoist drum follower – auxiliary	101	-75	176	153	-52
Remove 850 ft of wire rope – main winch	-1,451	544	-1,994	-1,659	208
Remove 500 ft of wire rope – auxiliary winch	-863	494	-1,356	-1,157	294
Substitute 500 ft of wire rope with 850 ft of wire rope – auxiliary winch	588	-337	925	789	-201
360° mechanical swing lock	140	57	83	50	90
Air conditioning	86	42	44	24	62
Auxiliary lifting sheave	107	311	-204	-229	336
Boom floodlight	7	18	-11	-13	20
Fly mounting brackets to boom base for fly options	290	508	-218	-285	575
31–55 ft offsettable, two piece bi–fold fly – stowed	2,730	4,460	-1,730	-2,362	5,092
10–31–55 ft offsettable, three piece bi–fold fly – stowed	3,359	5,876	-2,517	-3,293	6,652
12 ton swivel hook ball (stowed at front/rear bumper)	722	1,153	-431	-598	1,320
12 ton swivel hook ball (stowed at boom head)	722	2,016	-1,294	-1,461	2,183
35 ton 1–sheave hook block (stowed at front/rear bumper)	1,100	1,756	-656	-911	2,011
35 ton 1–sheave hook block (stowed at boom head)	1,100	3,072	-1,972	-2,226	3,326
80 ton 5–sheave hook block (stowed at front/rear bumper)	1,411	2,253	-842	-1,168	2,579
80 ton 5–sheave hook block (stowed at boom head)	1,411	3,940	-2,529	-2,855	4,266
100 ton 6–sheave hook block (stowed at front/rear bumper)	1,750	2,794	-1,044	-1,449	3,199
100 ton 6–sheave hook block (stowed at boom head)	1,750	4,886	-3,136	-3,541	5,291
140 ton 7–sheave hook block (stowed at front/rear bumper)	2,394	3,822	-1,428	-1,982	4,376
140 ton 7–sheave hook block (stowed at boom head)	2,394	6,685	-4,291	-4,844	7,238
Tire	Maximum Load @ 20 mph				
23.5R25	57,330 lb				

⁽¹⁾ Adjust gross vehicle weight and axle loading according to component weight.
Note: All weights are ±3%.

Operator's Manual

Axle Loads – Metric

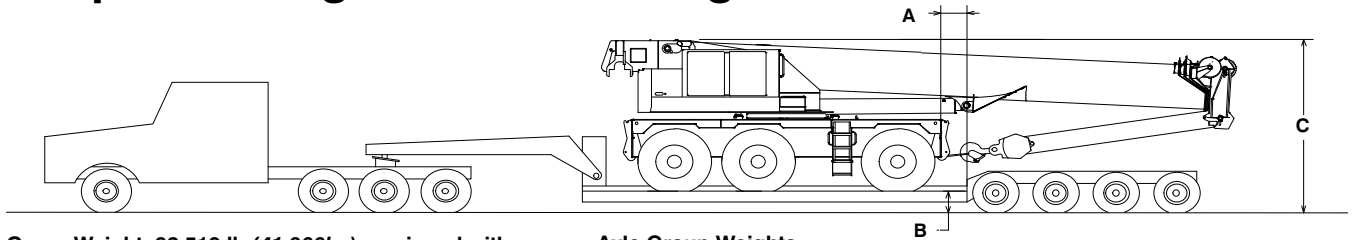
Base machine with full tank of fuel and 11 793.4kg of counterweight Base machine with full tank of fuel and 11 793.4kg of counterweight	Gross Vehicle Weight ⁽¹⁾	Upper Facing Front		Upper Facing Rear	
		Front Axle	Rear Axle Group	Front Axles	Rear Axle Group
	kg	kg	kg	kg	kg
Tier 4/Stage IV	58 955	17 898	41 057	26 706	32 249
Tier 3/Stage IIIA	58 737	17 923	40 814	26 513	32 224
Operator in cab	113	73	40	14	99
Hydraulic outrigger pin removal	93	36	58	36	58
Remove outrigger boxes and beams	-7 774	-3 009	-4 765	-2 967	-4 807
Pintle hook, front	6	9	-3	9	-3
Pintle hook, rear	6	-4	10	-4	10
Hydraulic counterweight removal	132	-68	201	-57	76
Remove 5 443.1kg counterweight	-5 485	2 927	-8 412	-7 144	1 659
Remove 5 443.1kg counterweight	-5 485	2 927	-8 412	-7 144	1 659
Hoist drum follower – main	45	-22	67	57	-12
Auxiliary winch with 152.4m of wire rope – winch replaces auxiliary counterweight	381	-218	599	511	-129
Remove auxiliary winch with 152.48m of wire rope – for two winch configuration only	-1 213	774	-1 987	-1 707	494
Hoist drum follower – auxiliary	46	-34	80	69	-23
Remove 259.0kg of wire rope – main winch	-658	247	-905	-752	94
Remove 152.4m of wire rope – auxiliary winch	-391	224	-615	-525	134
Substitute 152.4m of wire rope with 259.0kg of wire rope – auxiliary winch	267	-153	419	358	-91
360° mechanical swing lock	64	26	37	23	41
Air conditioning	39	19	20	11	28
Auxiliary lifting sheave	49	141	-93	-104	152
Boom floodlight	3	8	-5	-6	9
Fly mounting brackets to boom base for fly options	132	231	-99	-129	261
9.4–16.7m offsettable, two piece bi-fold fly – stowed	1 238	2 023	-785	-1 071	2 309
3.0–9.4–16.7m offsettable, three piece bi-fold fly – stowed	1 524	2 665	-1 142	-1 494	3 017
10.8mt swivel hook ball (stowed at front/rear bumper)	327	523	-196	-271	599
10.8mt swivel hook ball (stowed at boom head)	327	914	-587	-663	990
31.7mt 1–sheave hook block (stowed at front/rear bumper)	499	797	-298	-413	912
31.7mt 1–sheave hook block (stowed at boom head)	499	1 393	-895	-1 010	1 509
72.5mt 5–sheave hook block (stowed at front/rear bumper)	640	1 022	-382	-530	1 170
72.5mt 5–sheave hook block (stowed at boom head)	640	1 787	-1 147	-1 295	1 935
90.7mt 6–sheave hook block (stowed at front/rear bumper)	794	1 267	-474	-657	1 451
90.7mt 6–sheave hook block (stowed at boom head)	794	2 216	-1 422	-1 606	2 400
127.0mt 7–sheave hook block (stowed at front/rear bumper)	1 086	1 734	-648	-899	1 985
127.0mt 7–sheave hook block (stowed at boom head)	1 086	3 032	-1 946	-2 197	3 283
Tire	Maximum Load @ 32.2km/h				
23.5R25	26 004kg				

(1) Adjust gross vehicle weight and axle loading according to component weight.

Note: All weights are ±3%.

Operator's Manual

Transport Configuration and Weights



Crane Weight: 92,519 lb (41 966kg), equipped with:

- 40–150 ft (12.19–45.72m), five section boom
- 80 ton (72.57mt) hook block
- One winch with 850 ft (259.08m) of 7/8 in (22mm) rope
- 10–31–55 ft (3.0–9.4–16.7m) 3 piece bi-fold fly
- Winch roller
- Auxiliary arm
- Air conditioning

Drop Off Load Weight: 44,924 lb (20 377kg)

- Two outrigger boxes with tow shackles
- 24,000 lb (10 886kg) counterweight
- Rear winch with 500 ft (152.40m) of 7/8 in (22mm) rope
- Winch roller
- 12 ton (10.9mt) hook ball

Axle Group Weights

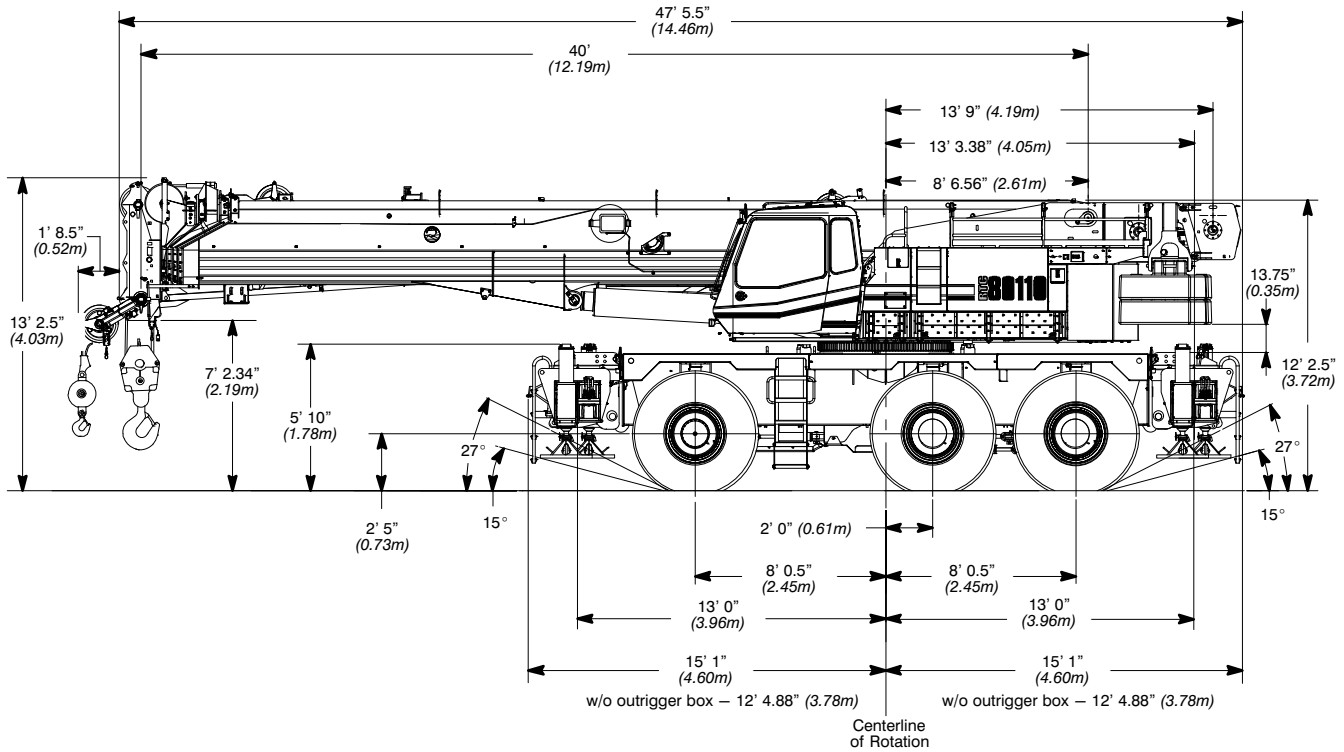
Empty Truck Wt.	Bed Length	Steer	Drivers	Trailer	A
48,500 lb (22 000kg)	25 ft (7.62m)	12,500 lb (5 670kg)	58,461 lb (26 517kg)	70,058 lb (31 778kg)	5 in (0.13m)

B – 18 in (0.46m) or 24 in (0.61m)

	Normal Suspension	Collapsed Suspension
C [with 18 in (0.46m) Trailer]	13 ft 8 in (4.17m)	13 ft 5 in (4.09m)
C [with 24 in (0.61m) Trailer]	14 ft 2 in (4.32m)	13 ft 11 in (4.24m)

General Dimensions

Operator's Manual



Turning Radius – 2 Wheel Steering		
	English	Metric
Wall to wall over carrier	44' 10.3"	13.67m
Wall to wall over boom attachment	55'	16.76m
Curb to curb	41' 4"	12.59m
Centerline of tire	40' 4"	12.29m

Turning Radius – 6 Wheel Steering		
	English	Metric
Wall to wall over carrier	25' 5"	7.75m
Wall to wall over boom attachment	37' 7.3"	11.46m
Curb to curb	21' 9"	6.63m
Centerline of tire	20' 9"	6.32m

Tail Swing		
	English	Metric
of counterweight (w/o auxiliary winch)	13' 9"	4.19m
of auxiliary winch	15' 1"	4.60m

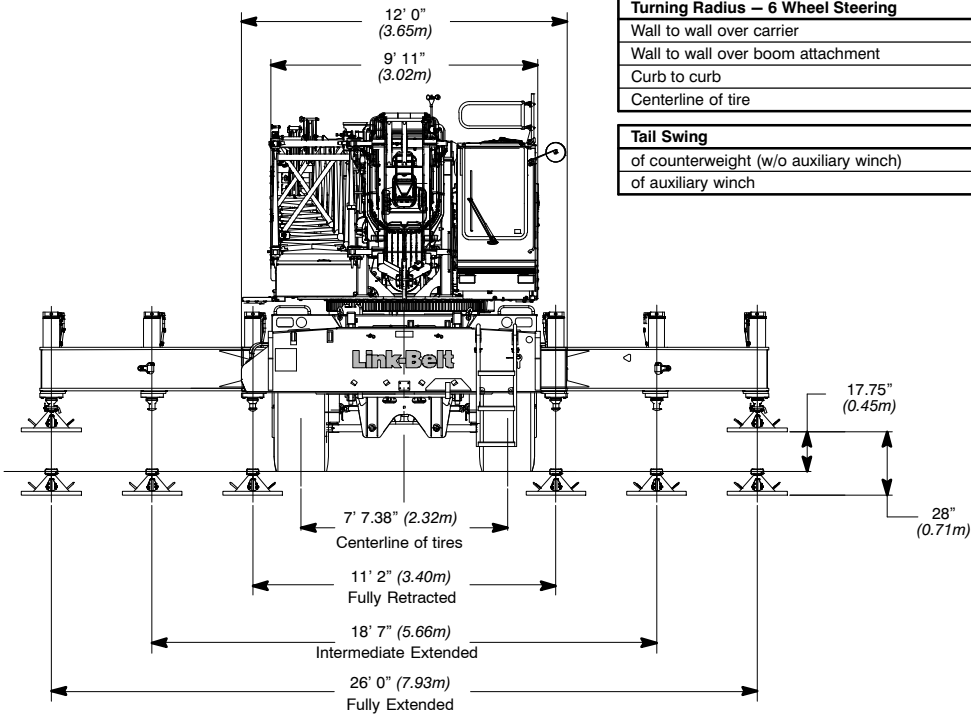


Table Of Contents

Fundamental Terms 6-1

Operator's Manual

Fundamental Terms

Many terms are used which refer to crane function, assembly, operation, and maintenance. The following list gives a brief definition as to how the terms are used in Link-Belt technical literature.

A-frame Jib: The outer most attachment on a hydraulic boom, made of structural channel steel, which is connected to the fly section and is supported by pendants.

ABS: Anti—Lock Braking System or American Bureau of Shipping

Accumulator: A container in which fluid is stored under pressure as a source of hydraulic energy.

Aeration: The condition when air is present in the hydraulic fluid. This causes the fluid to appear milky and components to operate erratically because of the compressibility of air trapped in the fluid.

Aerial Platform: A work platform attached to the main boom head shaft, approved for personnel handling.

Anemometer: An instrument for measuring the direction and force, or velocity, of the wind; a wind gauge.

Angle Jib: A multiple section steel angle iron boom tip extension supported by pendants.

Annually: Once a year

Anti-Lock Braking System (ABS): A system that allows the wheels on the crane to maintain tractive contact with the road surface, preventing the wheels from locking up (ceasing rotation) and avoiding uncontrolled skidding.

Anti-Two Block System (ATB): A system of electro-mechanical devices used to prevent the crane operator from two blocking the crane. Also see “Two Block”.

API: American Petroleum Institute

ATB: Anti-Two Block

ATC: Hydraulic All Terrain Crane

Attachment: 1. The boom assembly, fly section, offset fly section, telescoping fly section, tubular jib, A-frame jib, or the combination of them. 2. The lattice boom assembly and either an angle jib or tubular jib or the combination of both.

Audio/Visual Warning System: 1. Alarm device that signals the operator of low engine oil pressure, high engine coolant temperature, and high hydraulic oil and transmission oil temperature. 2. Device utilizing buzz-

er and/or lights as a signal of approaching two block and/or overload condition. See “Rated Capacity Indicator”.

Auger: A boom attachment used to drill holes into the ground.

Automatic Brake: Drum brake system that is applied automatically any time the drum control lever is in neutral.

Auxiliary Lifting Sheave: A unit which connects to the boom head machinery cross shafts and is used for reeving winch wire rope for a second (auxiliary) winch drum.

Auxiliary Transmission (Creeper Transmission): An additional transmission used in the carrier to provide a low gear ratio for slow, careful movement around the job site and higher ratios for normal use.

Backstop: A device used to limit the angle of the boom, jib, or mast at the highest recommended angle.

Backward Stability: Resistance to overturning of the crane in a rearward direction.

Bail (Hanger): A frame equipped with sheaves. The bail is used in conjunction with the hoist drum(s) and bridle(s) to alter the crane's main boom, luffing boom, and/or luffing jib angle.

Balance Arm: An assembly that attaches to the top of the luffing boom and is connected to the live mast with pendants. It provides a point to attach the luffing jib and luffing jib strut. It also contains a bail assembly for luffing jib hoist reeving.

Band Brake: Circular external contracting type brake having a strap lined with heat and wear resistant friction material.

Bar Pendants: Pendants fabricated from high strength steel plate vs. the normal multi-wired wire rope pendants.

Base Crane: The machine, attachment, and wire rope combination most commonly used when transporting the crane.

Base Section: 1. The segment of a telescoping boom that attaches to the upper frame by the boom foot pin. 2. The lower most section of a lattice boom, tower boom, or luffing boom. 3. The lower most section of any fly or jib.

Basic Boom: Lattice boom attachment made up of only the base and top sections of the boom.

Basic Jib: Jib attachment made up of only the base and top sections of the jib.

Operator's Manual

Boom: 1. The assembly of the base and one or more sections (inner power, inner mid, middle, center, outer power, outer mid, T1 through T7, manual, tip, etc.) used as the telescoping extension for a two, three, four, five, six, or seven section hydraulic attachment. 2. Lattice structure consisting of multiple sections, pinned or bolted together to a specific length, and their support system.

Boom Angle: The angle above or below horizontal of the longitudinal axis of the boom.

Boom Angle Indicator: An accessory which measures the angle of the boom relative to horizontal.

Boom Chord: A main corner structural member of a boom.

Boom Foot: Base of boom where it attaches to the upper revolving frame.

Boom Hoist: 1. The hydraulic method of raising and lowering the boom to different boom angles. 2. Wire rope drum and its drive, or other mechanism, for controlling the angle of the boom.

Boom Lattice: Structural truss members at angles to, and supporting, the boom chords of a boom.

Boom Length: The distance from a straight line through the centerline of the boom foot pin to the centerline of the boom head sheave shaft, measured along the longitudinal axis of the boom.

Boom Section: 1. The base, inner power, inner mid, middle, center, outer power, outer mid, T1 through T6, manual, tip, etc. segments which are used as part of a telescoping attachment. 2. Individual lattice structures which are pinned together to form the boom attachment. Lattice booms are usually in two basic sections, top and base. Such booms may be lengthened by insertion of one or more additional extension sections.

Bridle: A frame equipped with sheaves. The bridle is used in conjunction with the hoist drum(s) and bail(s) to alter the crane's main boom, luffing boom, and/or luffing jib angle.

Bumper (5th) Outrigger: An outrigger mounted on the front of the carrier that provides additional stability for "On Outrigger" capacities when deployed.

Bypass: A secondary passage of fluid, air, or electrical flow, in addition to the main flow path.

Cab Walk: Platform attached to the operator's cab that provides a walkway along the side of the cab.

CALC: Confined Area Lifting Capacities

Cantilever: Any unsupported boom or jib section that projects beyond the supporting point.

Capacity Chart: The plate or plates on the crane or charts in the Crane Rating Manual which gives rated lifting capacities for the crane under different load conditions, crane configurations, and setups.

Carbody: The crawler lower upon which the upper revolving frame is mounted.

Carrier: The portion of the crane below the turntable bearing.

Carrier Cab: A housing which covers the driver's station on the carrier of a truck crane.

Carrier Frame: The main structure of the carrier section of the crane.

Carrier Roller: Rollers of track mechanism which are not power driven but are used to guide the track along the top of the side frame.

Catwalk: Platforms attached to the crane that provide a walkway along the side of the upper.

Cavitation: A condition where air is introduced into a cavity, line, or chamber normally filled with oil. This condition can cause damage to pumps, cylinders, valves, etc.

Center Section: See "Middle Section".

Check Valve: A valve which permits flow in one direction only.

Chord: A main corner structural member of a lattice boom, fly, or jib section.

Circuit: A complete or partial path over which electrical current, air, or hydraulic fluid may flow.

Clamshell Bucket: A device consisting of two or more similar scoops hinged together and used for digging and moving material.

Closed Center Circuit: A circuit where the fluid only flows through the main control valves when a control valve spool is actuated. This can be done two different ways: (1) using a pressure compensated pump or (2) using a fixed displacement pump, unloading valve, and an accumulator.

Closing Line: The wire rope reeved from the hoist drum to control closing of the clamshell bucket.

Clutch: A friction, electromagnetic, hydraulic, or pneumatic device for engagement or disengagement of power.

Collector Ring (Slip Ring): A device used to transmit the electrical power from the carrier to the upper utilizing a rotating disk to allow rotation of the upper and maintain connectivity.

Operator's Manual

Compressibility: The change in volume of air, fluid, or gas when it is subjected to a unit change in pressure.

Concrete Bucket: Bucket for handling wet concrete, fitted with bail or bridle, usually handled on lifting crane for hoisting to dumping location.

Conical Roller: A device which attaches the upper to the carrier and allows the upper to rotate on the carrier.

Counterbalance Valve (Holding Valve): A valve which regulates fluid flow by maintaining resistance in one direction, but allows free flow in the other direction.

Counterweight: Weight used to supplement the weight of the crane in providing stability for lifting loads.

Cracking Pressure: The pressure at which a pressure actuated valve begins to open to allow flow.

Crane Configuration: The relative position and arrangement of the parts or elements of the crane e.g. amount of counterweight, attachment position, outrigger position, side frame position, etc.

Crane Rated Capacity: The maximum weight allowed to be lifted with the crane setup in a particular crane configuration.

Crane Rating Manual: A compilation of the necessary information needed to plan lifts with the crane. It includes instructions such as the allowable Lifting Capacity charts, Working Range diagrams, Working Area diagram, etc.

Crane Set Up: The act or instance of preparing the crane for operation which entails the positioning of the crane and its elements. It concerns such details or items such as finding a suitable location to perform the lift, setting the outrigger position, leveling, cribbing or blocking of the crane, etc.

Crawler Lower: The portion of a crawler crane below the turntable bearing.

Creep: Crane movement limited to 200 ft (60.96m) in a 30 minute period, and not to exceed 1 mph (1.6km/h) maximum speed.

Creper Transmission: See "Auxiliary Transmission".

Cylinder: A device which converts fluid power into mechanical force and motion. It usually consists of a moveable element such as a piston and piston rod, which operates within a cylindrical bore.

Data Logging: See "Event Data Recording".

Delivery: The volume of fluid discharge by a pump in a given time, usually expressed in gallons per minute (gpm) or liters per minute (L/min).

Derricking: Operation of changing boom angle in a vertical plane. See "Boom Hoist".

Displacement: The quantity of fluid which can pass through a pump, motor, or cylinder in a single revolution or stroke.

Double Acting Cylinder: A cylinder in which fluid force can be applied in either direction.

Drag Rope (Inhaul Rope): Wire rope for pulling in bucket during dragline operations.

Dragline: Cranes with dragline attachments are generally used to excavate material from below the grade on which the crane is placed. A dragline bucket is loaded by the drag rope pulling it toward the crane, is lifted and carried by the hoist wire rope reeved over the boom point sheave, and is balanced by the dump wire rope interconnecting the drag and hoist wire ropes.

Drive Chain: Chain used to transfer power from the horizontal traction shaft to the track drive sprocket.

Driver Controlled Differential Lock: A driver operated device which locks the differential gears to prevent wheel spin and provide better traction on slick surfaces.

Drum Lagging: See "Winch Drum".

Drum Rotation Indicator: A device that is used to indicate winch drum motion and can also be used to monitor speed.

Engine Cooling Package: Typically consists of the radiator, surge tank, and engine fans. Can also include such components as the hydraulic oil cooler, transmission oil cooler, and charged air cooler.

Event Data Recording (EDR): May be one or more devices that monitor and/or control the crane's performance. These devices can record crane operation, configuration, and function.

Extension (Boom Or Jib): Sections of the boom or jib which come in various lengths and are used to increase the overall length of the boom or jib.

Fairleader: A combination of sheaves and or rollers mounted at the front of the crane to guide the drag wire rope.

Fan Post: An assembly that attaches to the luffing boom cap and controls the movement of the luffing jib. The front fan post provides a connection for the luffing jib pendants. The rear fan post is connected to the luffing jib's floating bridle with pendants. Center links are used to connect the front and rear fan posts.

Filter: A device which functions to remove insoluble contaminants from a fluid by a porous media.

Fixed Jib: A jib that is attached to the end of the luffing jib.

Operator's Manual

Float: See "Pontoon".

Flow Divider: A valve which divides a flow of oil into two circuits.

Fly Base (Fly Base Section): The lower most section of the fly.

Fly Extension: A fly section, other than the base or tip section, used to increase the overall length of the fly.

Fly Section: Boom tip extension, pin supported at its base.

Force: Any cause which tends to produce or modify motion. In hydraulics, total force is expressed by the product of pressure (P) and the area of the surface (A) on which the pressure acts. (Force = P X A)

Fourth Drum: A fourth hoist drum, in addition to two main hoist drums and a third hoist drum.

Frame: Structure on which either upper or carrier machinery is attached.

Free-Fall: Lowering of the hook and/or load without using power. The motion is caused by gravity and must be controlled by a brake.

Freely Suspended Load: Load hanging free with no direct external force applied except by the hoist line.

Friction: The property which tends to resist the relative motion of one surface in contact with another surface. It always exerts a "Drag" in the direction opposite of the motion, thus consumes power.

Friction Clutch (PTO): Device (which uses friction discs) used for the transfer or transmission of engine power to the operating functions of the crane.

Full Flow: In a filter, the condition where all the fluid must pass through the filter element.

Full Load Speed: The speed at which an engine runs when it is delivering its full rated horsepower.

Full Power Boom: Hydraulic telescopic boom with cylinders, or cylinders and cables, to extend/retract each extendable section of the boom.

Function Limiter (Function Lockout, Hydraulic Cut-outs, Hydraulic Kickouts): Devices incorporated into the anti-two block system or Rated Capacity Indicator system which will disable the crane function of winch up, telescope out, and/or boom down (as applicable) as two block or overload situations approach.

Function Lockout: See "Function Limiter".

Gantry: A structural frame, mounted to the rear of the upper revolving frame and usually extending above the cab. Retractable means are usually available to lower to cab height for transportation convenience. Its purpose is to support the boom hoist system.

Gradability: The slope which a crane can climb expressed as a percentage. (45° equals 100% slope.)

Ground Pressure: Weight of crane divided by the area of the surface directly supporting the crane.

Grouser: Projecting lugs attached to, or integral with, track shoes to provide additional traction.

Guard Rails: Rails used to help provide safety (prevent falls) for personnel when required to be on the upper platforms of the crane during maintenance and/or adjustment procedures.

Hanger: See "Bail".

HC: Highway Crane

HCD: Hydraulic Cab Down

Head Machinery: An arrangement of sheaves on the end of an attachment used to reeve wire rope.

High Idle: Governed engine speed at full throttle and no load.

HLA: Heavy Lift Attachment

Hoist: Function of lifting and lowering loads.

Hoist Drum: A rotating cylindrical spool with side flanges used to wrap the winch wire rope during the raising and lowering of the load with the winch.

Hoist Wire Rope: The wire rope used to reeve the winch and the attachments for lifting loads.

Holding Valve: See "Counterbalance Valve".

Hook Ball: Ball with hook attached and used for lifting service. It is used with one part of line only.

Hook Block: Block with hook attached used in lifting service. It may have a single sheave for two or three part line, or multiple sheaves for four or more parts of line.

House Assembly: The housing which covers the machinery mounted on the upper revolving frame.

HSC: Hitachi Sumitomo Heavy Industries Construction Crane Co., Ltd.

HSL: Hitachi/Sumitomo/Link-Belt

HSP: Hydraulic Self-Propelled, Rough Terrain Crane.

HT: Hydraulic Truck

HTC: Hydraulic Highway Truck Crane

Operator's Manual

HTT: Hydraulic Truck Terrain Crane

Hydraulic Cutout: See “Function Limiter”.

Hydraulic Kickout: See “Function Limiter”.

Hydraulic Reservoir (Sump Tank): The storage tank for hydraulic fluid.

Idler Roller: Rollers of track mechanism which are not power driven but are used to maintain proper tension on the track.

Inhaul Rope: See “Drag Rope”.

Inner Mid Section: The segment of a four section telescoping boom which is attached to the base and outer mid sections.

Instability: A “tipping condition” in which the moments acting to overturn a crane exceed the moments acting to resist overturning.

Jack Shaft: Term applied to an intermediate shaft used to transfer power.

Jib: A pendant supported extension attached to the boom or fly head to provide added boom length for handling specified loads. The jib may be in line, or offset, with the boom.

Jib Base (Jib Base Section): The lower most segment of the jib.

Jib Extension: A jib section, other than the base or tip section, installed to increase the overall length of the jib.

Latching Boom: Hydraulic telescopic boom that uses one telescope cylinder to extend/retract all sections of the boom. The cylinder extends/retracts one section at a time and pins them in place until desired length is reached based on the boom extend mode selected.

Lattice Boom: Boom of open construction with angle, or tubular, lacing between main corner members (chords) in the form of a truss.

LBCE: Link-Belt Construction Equipment

Lifting Capacity: The rated load for any given load radius and boom angle under specified operating conditions and crane configurations.

Line Pull: The wire rope pull generated off a wire rope drum or lagging at a specified pitch diameter.

Line Speed: The wire rope velocity at a wire rope drum or lagging at a specified pitch diameter.

Live Mast: Frame hinged at or near the boom foot and extending above the cab for use in connection with supporting a boom. Head of mast is usually supported and raised or lowered by the boom hoist wire ropes.

LMI: Load Moment Indicator.

LML: Load Moment Limiter.

Load Factor: Load applied at the boom tip which gives the same moment effect as the boom mass.

Load Indicator: A device for measuring and displaying the net load being lifted.

Load Line: Another term for “Hoist Rope”. In lifting crane service it refers to the main hoist. The secondary hoist is referred to as a “Whip Line”.

Load Moment Indicator (LMI): See “Rated Capacity Indicator”.

Load Moment Limiter (LML): A device which aids the operator by automatically sensing the overturning moment of the crane, i.e. load X radius. It compares this lifting condition to the crane's rated capacity, provides an audible/visual signal when the loading conditions approach the rated capacity, and when the rated capacity is reached and/or exceeded, it limits crane functions that would result in an overload condition.

Load Radius: Horizontal distance from a projection of the axis of rotation to the supporting surface, before loading, to the center of the vertical hoist line or tackle with load applied. See “Radius”.

Load Stepping: The procedure of moving a load without traveling the crane when conditions do not allow traveling with a load (pick and carry). Park the crane on a level area, lift the load, swing around, and set it down ahead of the crane. Travel the unloaded crane beyond the load, level the crane, lift the load, swing, and set it down farther along the route. Continue this procedure until the load is at its destination.

Loaded Boom Angle: The angle between the boom base section and horizontal with a freely suspended load at the rated radius.

Lower Roller: See “Track Roller”.

LS: A track driven crawler crane.

Luffing Attachment: A crane attachment adaptable to a basic cable crane. The attachment consists of a vertical luffing boom which is capable of being offset, with a luffing jib (usually the basic crane boom) affixed to the upper part of the luffing boom.

Luffing Boom: The main boom of the luffing attachment. It is connected to the upper frame of the crane and can be set at certain angles to provide different working ranges for the luffing attachment.

Luffing Boom Cap: A structure mounted to the top of the luffing boom where the luffing jib and fan post are mounted.

Operator's Manual

Luffing Jib: The working boom of the luffing attachment. It is connected to the luffing boom cap.

Manual Section: The outer most segment (tip) of a four or five section telescoping boom attached to the outer mid section. This boom section shares the telescope cylinder used to operate the outer mid boom section. This section also contains the head machinery of the attachment.

Mat: Material, usually of timber or wire construction, for supporting pontoons or tracks on soft surfaces to add stability.

Middle Section (Mid Section): The segment of a telescoping boom which is midway between the base and tip sections.

Midpoint Pendants: Wire rope pendants used to support the center portion of a long lattice boom at lift off.

Motor (Hydraulic): 1. A rotary motion device which changes hydraulic energy into mechanical energy.
2. A rotary actuator.

No Load Stability Limit: The radius or boom angle beyond which it is not permitted to position the boom because the crane can overturn without any load on the hook.

Offset Fly: A fly section that is capable of being pinned at different working angles for greater reach or height. The working angle can also be changed with hydraulic cylinders.

Oil Cooler: A heat exchanger used to remove heat from the hydraulic or transmission fluid.

Open Center Circuit: A circuit where the pump continuously circulates fluid through the control valves when they are in a neutral position.

Operational Aid: An accessory that provides information to facilitate operation of a crane or that takes control of particular crane functions without action of the operator when a limiting condition is sensed.

Operator's Cab (Upper Cab): A housing which covers the operator's station.

Outer Mid Section: The segment of a four section hydraulic boom which is attached to the inner mid and manual or tip sections.

Outrigger: An extendable supporting device used to level the crane and increase stability.

Outrigger Beam: The part of the outrigger which extends horizontally and acts as the support for the outrigger jack.

Outrigger Jack: The hydraulic cylinder on the outrigger beam which extends vertically to raise and lower and support the crane during on outrigger operations.

Outrigger Pin System: A hydraulic system available to facilitate outrigger box removal by means of hydraulic cylinders used in place of the standard outrigger box mounting pins.

Outrigger Removal System: A system for removing front and rear outrigger boxes in order to reduce overall weight.

Pawl: A pivoting locking lever which will permit movement in only one direction. Movement in the opposite direction can be achieved only by manually releasing the mechanism.

Peak Section: See "Top Section".

Pendant: A supporting wire rope or bar, which under tension, maintains a constant distance between its points of attachment.

Pick And Carry: The crane operation of lifting a load and traveling with it suspended.

Pilot Pressure: Hydraulic pressure used to actuate or control hydraulic components.

Pinion: The small gear in a gear train which drives the other gears.

Pitch Diameter: Root diameter of drum, lagging, or sheave, plus the diameter of the wire rope.

Planetary: A set of gears used to either speed up or slow down the input vs. the output to gain speed or power, whichever is applicable.

Platform: A device (basket, work platform, bucket, cage, etc.) designed and fabricated with its intended use being to position personnel.

Pontoon (Float): The support which attaches to the outrigger jack to increase the supporting area.

Poppet: A disc, ball, or cone shaped part of certain valves, which when closed against a seat, prevents flow.

Port: The open end of a passage. May be within or at the surface of a hydraulic component housing or body.

Power Take-Off (PTO): Device used for the transfer or transmission of engine power to the operating functions of the crane.

Pressure: Force per unit of area usually expressed in pounds per square inch (psi) or Kilopascals (kPa).

Operator's Manual

Pressure Drop: The reduction in pressure between two points in a line or passage due to the energy lost in maintaining flow.

Pressure Reducing Valve: A valve which limits the maximum pressure at its outlet regardless of the inlet pressure.

PTO: See "Power Take-Off".

Pulse: A Link—Belt designed, total crane operating system that utilizes an in—cab display as a readout and operator interface with on—board diagnostics including the rated capacity limiter, wind speed, boom length and angle, radius of load, and crane configuration.

Pump (Hydraulic): A device which converts mechanical force and motion into hydraulic fluid flow.

Pump Disconnect: Device which engages and disengages the main hydraulic pump. Disengaging the pump aids in engine start up by reducing cranking resistance.

Radius: The horizontal distance from the centerline of rotation of the crane, with no load, to the center of gravity of the hook or suspended load.

Radius Of Load: The horizontal distance from the centerline of rotation of the crane to the center of gravity of the suspended load.

Rated Capacity Indicator (RCI): A device that automatically monitors radius, load weight, and load rating and warns the crane operator of an overload condition.

Rated Capacity (Load) Limiter (RCL): A device that automatically monitors radius, load weight, and load rating and prevents movements of the crane that would result in an overload condition.

Rated Load Indicator (RLI): See "Rated Capacity Indicator".

RCI: Rated Capacity Indicator

RCL: Rated Capacity Limiter

Reeving: Passing of ropes over pulleys and/or sheaves.

Relief Valve: A pressure operated valve which bypasses pump delivery to the reservoir, limiting system pressure to a predetermined maximum value.

Reservoir: A container for storage of fluid.

Restriction: A reduced cross-sectional area in a line which produces a pressure drop.

Rigging Switch (System Override Switch): A switch which can be used to override any or all of the function limiters (cutouts) which have been activated on the crane during crane rigging/set up.

Rope: Refers to wire rope unless otherwise specified. See "Wire Rope".

Rotating Joint: Component which transfers fluid, air, and/or electricity between a stationary and a rotating member.

Rotating Joint And Center Section: The assembly of the rotating joint and all its pneumatic, hydraulic, and electrical components.

RTC: Hydraulic Rough Terrain Crane.

Schematic: A diagram or representation of a system showing everything in a simple way. No attempt is made to show the various devices in their actual relative positions. A schematic points out the operation of a circuit for troubleshooting purposes.

SCM: Sumitomo Construction Machinery

Seasonally: Four times per year

Semiannually: Twice per year

Service Brake: A foot operated brake which regulates the amount of air or fluid delivered to the brake chamber, which determines the braking force.

Shall: The work shall is to be understood as mandatory.

Shim Pack (Wedge Pack): Wedging mechanism used to secure crawler crane side frames to the lower frame.

Should: The word should is to be understood as advisory.

Side Frame: Supporting structure of the track mechanism. Side frames are attached to the crawler crane lower frame and may be extendable and/or removable.

Side Load: 1. Load applied at an angle to the vertical plane of the boom. 2. Horizontal side force applied to the lifted load either on the ground or in the air.

Single Acting Cylinder: A cylinder in which fluid power can only be used in one direction. Another force must be used to return the cylinder.

Slew: See "Swing".

Slip Ring: See "Collector Ring".

SmartFly: Simple one—person fly erection and storage technology that minimizes work at height.

Operator's Manual

Speed-O-Matic (S-O-M): A term which applies to the hydraulic control system originally developed to apply two shoe clutches for transmission of power on Link-Belt products.

Spool: Term applied to almost any moving cylindrically shaped part of a hydraulic component which moves to direct flow through the component.

Sprocket: The driving element of the track mechanism. Receiving power through the drive chain, the sprocket meshes with the track to travel the crawler.

Strainer: A filtering device for the removal of coarse solids from a fluid.

Stroke: The length of travel of a piston, spool, lever, etc.

Structural Member: Lattice booms, telescopic booms, jibs, gantries, masts, outriggers, carrier frames, and upper frames are considered structural members per ASME B30.5

Suction Line: The hydraulic line connecting the pump inlet port to the hydraulic reservoir.

Sump Tank: See "Hydraulic Reservoir".

Support Line: The cable reeved from the second hoist drum for holding the clamshell bucket suspended during dumping and lowering operations.

Surge: A very sudden rise in the hydraulic or air pressure or electrical potential in a circuit.

Swing (Slew): The rotation of the upper with the carrier remaining stationary.

Swing Brake: A brake which is used to stop the rotation of the upper.

Swing Lock: A mechanical lock that engages with the upper frame in any position over the lower frame.

Swing Motor: Hydraulic device which uses a planetary to rotate the upper on the carrier.

Swing Park Brake: A self contained brake used for holding the upper, in any position, during normal, stationary crane operations.

System Override Switch: See "Rigging Switch".

T1 Section Through T7 Section: Segments of a hydraulic boom. Some are numbered starting with the base section while others are numbered starting with the section next to the base section.

Tagline: A wire rope or cable attached to the bucket and a spring loaded, counterweighted, or powered unit keeping it under tension to retard rotation and pendulum swaying of the otherwise freely suspended bucket.

Tailswing: The distance from the centerline of rotation of the upper frame to the extreme rear swing arc of the counterweight.

TC: 1. Tower crane 2. An upper mounted on any supporting pedestal other than the usual crane lower.

TCC: Telescopic Crawler Crane.

Telematics: The use of wireless devices and computer module technology to transmit data in real time back to an organization.

Telescoping Fly: An extension to the fly section which is stored through its center. Mounted on rollers, this extension is easily erected by telescoping (pulling) it out of the center of the fly and then pinning it into position.

Third Drum: A third hoist drum, in addition to two main hoist drums, often used in piledriving.

Tip Section: The outer most live segment of a telescopic boom. It is attached to a middle, or outer mid, section and contains the head machinery of the attachment.

Top Section (Peak Section): The upper most section of a lattice boom or jib which also contains the head machinery of the attachment.

Torque: Turning or twisting force usually measured in foot-pounds (ft lb) or Newton meters (Nm).

Torque Converter (PTO): Device (which uses hydraulic fluid) used for the transfer or transmission of engine power to the operating functions of the crane.

Tower Attachment: A crane attachment usually adaptable to a basic crane. The attachment consists of a vertical tower with a working boom and/or jib attached to the upper part of the tower.

Track: 1. Assembled crawler track shoes and connecting pins around idler rollers and drive sprockets. 2. That part of the crawler which contacts the ground.

Track Roller: Rollers of track mechanism which are not power driven but are used to guide the track along the ground.

Traction Shaft: The horizontal shaft in the crawler lower which transfers power from the gear train in the upper to the track mechanism of the carrier.

Travel Swing Lock (2 Position Swing Lock): A mechanical lock that engages with the upper directly over either the front or the rear of the carrier only. Use of the travel swing lock is mandatory when traveling or transporting the crane and during pick and carry operations.

Tubular Jib: Multiple section lattice extensions supported by pendants and attached to the main boom head.

Operator's Manual

Turntable Bearing: A large bearing which attaches the upper to the carrier allowing the upper to rotate on the carrier.

Two Block: The situation when the crane's hook block, hook ball, or load contacts the attachment's head machinery.

Two Block Warning System: A system of electromechanical devices used to warn the crane operator of an impending two block condition.

UC: Utility Crane

Unloading Valve: A valve which bypasses flow to tank when a set pressure is maintained on its pilot port.

Upper: The portion of the crane above the turntable bearing.

Upper Cab: See "Operator's Cab".

Upper Revolving Frame: The main structure of the upper section of the crane which serves as mounts for other components of the upper.

Upper Roller: See "Carrier Roller".

V-CALC (Variable Confined Area Lifting Capacities): Lift system that features infinite outrigger/crawler configurations with real time 360° charts.

Valve: A device for controlling flow rate, flow direction, or pressure of a fluid.

Viscosity: The resistance to flow. High viscosity indicates a high resistance; low viscosity, a low resistance.

Wedge Pack: See "Shim Pack".

Whip Line: Secondary hoist line. Also see "Load Line".

Winch: Function of lifting and lowering loads.

Winch Drum: A rotating cylindrical spool with side flanges used to wrap the winch wire rope during the raising and lowering of the load with the winch.

Winch Rope: The wire rope used to reeve the winch and the attachments for lifting loads.

Wire Rope (Rope): A flexible, multiwired member usually consisting of a core member around which a number of multiwired strands are helically wrapped.

Wiring Diagram: A diagram which includes all the devices in an electrical system and shows their functional relationships to each other. Such a diagram gives the necessary information for physically tracing circuits when troubleshooting is necessary.

Work Platform: See "Platform".

Working Area: Area measured in a circular arc about the centerline of rotation as shown on the Working Areas diagram.

Working Weight: Weight of crane with full radiator, half full fuel tank, and attachments installed.

YC: Yard Crane

360° Swing Lock: A positive mechanical lock against rotation of the upper over the carrier during normal, stationary crane operations.

Link-Belt Cranes
2651 Palumbo Drive
Lexington, Kentucky 40509
(859)-263-5200
http://www.linkbelt.com



ELECTRONIC DATA RECORDER REQUEST FORM

We, _____, hereby request
(Company Name)
Link-Belt Cranes (LBC) retrieve, interpret, and
provide a summary of the electronic data recovered from the computer system
installed by LBC on model _____, with assigned serial
number _____.

We request the following data be retrieved:
(Place check mark in box for information requested)

- Operational Mode (computer set-up)
- Boom Length
- Boom Angle
- Load Radius
- Counterweight Configuration
- Lifted Load(s)
- Number of Lifts
- Anti -Two Block (ATB) Status
- Status
- Other

Note: All data may not be available for every crane model:

Date(s) and Time Range(s) of data requested: _____

The time to reply to this inquiry will be three (3) weeks from the time the data is received by the Link-Belt Cranes Technical Product Support Department in Lexington Kentucky. The reply time may increase due to the amount of Data, and/or the Date and Time Range requested.

Link-Belt Cranes may assess a charge to provide the service of retrieve and interpretation of the data requested, plus travel time that may be involved by a Link-Belt Cranes representative to retrieve the data.

Requesting Company Representative

Date

